



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

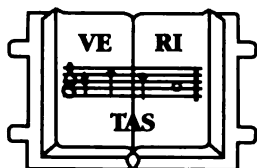
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



---

---

**EDA KUHN LOEB  
MUSIC LIBRARY**



**HARVARD UNIVERSITY**

---

---







THEORY  
OF  
MUSICAL COMPOSITION.

**LONDON :**  
**PRINTED BY J. MALLET, 59, WARDOUR STREET, SOHO.**

THE  
THEORY  
OF  
MUSICAL COMPOSITION,

TREATED

WITH A VIEW TO A NATURALLY CONSECUTIVE  
ARRANGEMENT OF TOPICS;

BY

GOTTFRIED WEBER,

DOCTOR HONORARIUS, KNIGHT OF THE FIRST CLASS OF THE HESSIAN ORDER OF LEWIS,  
HONORARY MEMBER OF THE ROYAL SWEDISH ACADEMY IN STOCKHOLM,  
OF THE HOLLANDIC UNION FOR THE PROMOTION OF MUSIC, ETC.

TRANSLATED FROM THE THIRD, ENLARGED AND IMPROVED, GERMAN EDITION,

WITH NOTES,

BY

JAMES F. WARNER,

OF BOSTON, U. S.

EDITED, WITH ADDITIONS DRAWN FROM THE GERMAN ORIGINAL,

BY

JOHN BISHOP,

OF CHELTENHAM.

---

VOL. II.

---

LONDON :

MESSRS. ROBERT COCKS AND CO.

MUSIC PUBLISHERS, BY SPECIAL WARRANT, TO HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY THE QUEEN,  
NEW BURLINGTON STREET.

MDCCCLI.

Ms. 292.65 (2)

**EDA KUHN LOEB MUSIC LIBRARY  
HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
CAMBRIDGE, MASS. 02138**

igitized by Google

## CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

### CHAPTER V.

#### HARMONIC PROGRESSION.

	PAGES.
§§ 226—288. . . . .	417—511
<b>DIVISION I.</b> <i>Harmonic progression in general</i> , §§ 226—242 . . . . .	417—454
(A.) Enumeration of the different harmonic steps, §§ 226—228 . . . . .	417—419
(B.) Different species of harmonic steps, §§ 229— 232 . . . . .	419—422
(1.) Steps in the scale and out of it, § 229 . . . . .	419
(2.) Magnitude of harmonic steps, §§ 230— 232 . . . . .	419—422
(C.) Sequences, §§ 233—240 . . . . .	422—430
(D.) Respective merits of the different harmonic steps, §§ 241—242 . . . . .	430—454
 <b>DIVISION II.</b> <i>Harmonic successions in the same scale</i> , §§ 243—271. . . . .	455—497
(A.) Succession of one three-fold chord after ano- ther in the same scale, §§ 244—250 . . . . .	455—470
(1.) Steps of a second, § 245 . . . . .	456
(2.) Steps of a third, § 246 . . . . .	459
(3.) Steps of a fourth, § 247 . . . . .	461
(4.) Steps of a fifth, § 248 . . . . .	462
(5.) Steps of a sixth, § 249 . . . . .	466
(6.) Steps of a seventh, § 250 . . . . .	468
(B.) Harmonic steps in which a three-fold chord is followed by a four-fold chord in the same scale, § 251 . . . . .	470
(C.) Harmonic steps in which a four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord in the same scale: Cadences, §§ 252—268 . . . . .	471—493
(1.) Principal cadences, §§ 255—261 . . . . .	474—485
(a.) Natural principal cadences, § 255 . . . . .	474
(b.) False principal cadences, §§ 256— 261 . . . . .	476—485

	PAGES.
(2.) Secondary cadences, §§ 262—268 . . . . .	486—493
(a.) Natural secondary cadences, §§ 263—265 . . . . .	486—490
(b.) False secondary cadences, §§ 266—268 . . . . .	490—493
(D.) Succession of one four-fold chord after another in the same scale, §§ 269—271 . . . . .	493—497
(1.) Evitated principal cadences in the same scale, § 270 . . . . .	494
(2.) Evitated secondary cadences in the same scale, § 270 . . . . .	494
 DIVISION III. <i>Digressive harmonic progression</i> , §§ 272—288 . . . . .	 497—511
(A.) Enumeration of the various species, § 273 . . . . .	498
(B.) Merits of ditto, §§ 274—275 . . . . .	498—499
(C.) Classification according to the leading harmony, §§ 276—288 . . . . .	499—511
(1.) Digressions by I or i, § 278 . . . . .	500
(2.) Digressions by the dominant harmony of the new key, §§ 279—284 . . . . .	501—506
(A.) Digressions by V <sup>7</sup> , §§ 279—282 . . . . .	501—505
(B.) Digressions by V, §§ 283—284 . . . . .	505—506
(3.) Digressions by IV or iv, §§ 285—286 . . . . .	506—508
(4.) Digressions by a secondary harmony, §§ 287—288 . . . . .	508—511

## CHAPTER VI.

### MODULATORY STRUCTURE OF A PIECE OF MUSIC AS A WHOLE.

§§ 289—312 . . . . .	512—544
 DIVISION I. <i>Musical unity in general</i> , § 289 . . . . .	 512—513
 DIVISION II. <i>Beginning of a piece of music</i> , §§ 290—295 . . . . .	 513—522
 DIVISION III. <i>Modulation in the course of a piece</i> , §§ 296—302 . . . . .	 522—527
 DIVISION IV. <i>Ending of a piece</i> , §§ 303—312 . . . . .	 527—544
(A.) Authentic endings, §§ 303—305 . . . . .	527—531
(B.) Plagal endings, §§ 306—308 . . . . .	531—538
(C.) Other endings, §§ 309—310 . . . . .	539—542
(D.) Merits of these different endings respectively, § 311 . . . . .	542—543
(E.) Characteristics of the key of a piece of music, § 312 . . . . .	543—544

## CHAPTER VII.

## RESOLUTION.

	PAGES.
§§ 313—342 . . . . .	545—601
<b>DIVISION I.</b> <i>Various forms of resolution, § 314 . . . . .</i>	<i>546—548</i>
<b>DIVISION II.</b> <i>Progression of the intervals of four-fold chords, §§ 315</i>	
—338 . . . . .	548—597
(A.) Of the principal four-fold chord, §§ 315—326.	548—579
(1.) Of the principal seventh, §§ 316—320.	549—560
(a.) Restricted progression, §§ 316—319.	549—554
((I.)) In the natural principal cadence,	
§ 317 . . . . .	549—553
((A.)) Normal progression of in-	
tervals.	
((B.)) Deviation from the normal	
progression.	
((II.)) Progression of the principal	
seventh in the false princi-	
pal cadence, § 318 . . . . .	553—554
((III.)) In the evitations of cadences	
in the same scale, § 319 . . . . .	554
(b.) Free progression, § 320 . . . . .	554—560
(2.) Progression of the third of the principal	
four-fold chord, §§ 321—324 . . . . .	561—574
(a.) Restricted, §§ 321—323 . . . . .	561—569
((I.)) In the natural cadence, § 321.	561—566
((A.)) Normal.	
((B.)) Deviations.	
((II.)) Progression of the sub-semi-	
tone in the false cadence,	
§ 322 . . . . .	566—567
((III.)) In evitations of cadences in	
the same scale, § 323 . . . . .	568—569
(b.) Free progression, § 324 . . . . .	569—574
(3.) Progression of the independent ninth,	
§§ 325—326 . . . . .	574—579
(a.) Restricted, § 325 . . . . .	574—575
(b.) Free, § 326 . . . . .	575—579
(B.) Progression of the intervals of secondary four-	
fold chords, §§ 326½—333 . . . . .	579—590
(1.) Of the secondary sevenths, §§ 327—328.	580—584



	PAGES.
(a.) Restricted, § 327 . . . .	580—582
(b.) Free, § 328 . . . .	582—584
(2.) Progression of the third of secondary four-fold chords, §§ 329—332 . . . .	584—589
((I.)) In natural secondary cadences, § 329 . . . .	584—586
((II.)) In false secondary cadences, § 330 . . . .	586—587
((III.)) In evitations of cadences in the same scale, § 331 . . . .	587—589
((IV.)) In digressions, § 332 . . . .	589
(3.) Progression of the fifth of secondary four- fold chords, § 333. . . .	589—590
(C.) Progression of the intervals of the principal four-fold chord with lowered fifth,—or of the four-fold chord with a minor fifth and elevated third, §§ 334—338 . . . .	590—597
DIVISION III. <i>Progression of the intervals of three-fold chords,</i> §§ 339—341. . . .	597—601
DIVISION IV. <i>Progression of transition-tones, §§ 342 . . . .</i>	601

## CHAPTER VIII.

### TRANSITION-TONES.

§§ 343—456 . . . .	602—719
DIVISION I. <i>Definition and nature of transition-tones, §§ 343—</i> 344 . . . .	602—607
(A.) In general, § 343 . . . .	602—605
(B.) Transition-tones of a subordinate rank, § 344. . . .	605—607
DIVISION II. <i>Different ways in which transition-tones may occur,</i> §§ 345—363 . . . .	607—622
(A.) To intervals of the present or of the following harmony, §§ 346—349 . . . .	607—610
(B.) Short and long, §§ 350—351 . . . .	610
(C.) Light and heavy, §§ 352—354 . . . .	611—612
(D.) Transition-tones in several parts at once, §§ 355—358 . . . .	612—615
(E.) Transitions in broken progressions, § 359 . . . .	615—617
(F.) The principal tone sounding in connection with the secondary tone, §§ 360—361 . . . .	617—620

	PAGES.
(G.) Transition-tones struck simultaneously with harmonic tones, §§ 362—363 . . .	620—622
<b>DIVISION III.</b> <i>What tones may be struck as secondary tones before a principal tone, §§ 364—387 . . .</i>	622—657
(A.) Transitions from below and from above, § 365. . .	622
(B.) Major-second transitions, and minor-second transitions, § 366 . . . . .	622—623
(C.) In the scale, and foreign to the scale, §§ 367—370 . . . . .	623—628
(1.) Arbitrary or necessary approximation, §§ 371—375 . . . . .	628—637
(2.) Remote transitions, §§ 376—379 . . . . .	637—641
(3.) Transition-tones as leading-tones, § 380. . . . .	641—644
(4.) Examples for illustration, § 381 . . . . .	644—649
(D.) Transitions on harmonic degrees, §§ 382—387. . . . .	649—657
<b>DIVISION IV.</b> <i>Equivocalness, §§ 388—408 . . . . .</i>	658—678
(A.) Exhibition, § 388 . . . . .	658
(B.) Limits, §§ 389—406 . . . . .	658—676
(C.) Softening influence, §§ 407—408 . . . . .	676—678
<b>DIVISION V.</b> <i>Transition-tones considered in their relations to the preceding note, §§ 409—416 . . . . .</i>	679—685
(A.) Commencing transitions, §§ 410—411 . . . . .	679—680
(B.) Transitions occurring by skips, § 412 . . . . .	680—681
(C.) Transitions occurring by single degrees, §§ 413—414 . . . . .	681—683
(1.) Intermediate notes, § 413 . . . . .	681—682
(2.) Returning notes, § 414 . . . . .	682—683
(D.) Prepared transitions, §§ 415—416 . . . . .	683—685
<b>DIVISION VI.</b> <i>Suspensions, §§ 417—441 . . . . .</i>	685—702
(A.) General principles, §§ 417—429 . . . . .	685—693
(1.) Idea of suspension and preparation, § 417. . . . .	685
(2.) How preparation is effected, §§ 418—429. . . . .	685—693
(a.) At the same pitch, § 419 . . . . .	686
(b.) In the same part, § 420 . . . . .	686
(c.) By ties, §§ 421—422 . . . . .	686—687
(d.) Of sufficient length, § 423 . . . . .	687
(e.) By an harmonic interval, §§ 424—426 . . . . .	687—690
(f.) On a light or on a heavy part of the measure, §§ 427—429 . . . . .	691—693

	PAGES.
(B.) Different ways in which suspensions may occur, §§ 430—436 . . . . .	693—697
(1.) To intervals of the present or of the following harmony, § 430 . . . . .	694
(2.) Long and short, § 431 . . . . .	694
(3.) Heavy and light, § 432 . . . . .	694
(4.) In different parts, § 433 . . . . .	695—696
(5.) Suspensions in harpeggiate progressions, § 434 . . . . .	696
(6.) Suspension-tone and principal-tone sounding together, § 435 . . . . .	696—697
(7.) Suspension-tones struck simultaneously with harmonic-tones, § 436 . . . . .	697
(C.) What tones may be employed as suspension-tones to an harmonic interval, §§ 437—440. . . . .	697—701
(1.) Suspensions from above, and from below, § 437 . . . . .	697—698
(2.) Major-second suspensions, and minor-second suspensions, § 438 . . . . .	698
(3.) Belonging to the scale, and foreign to the scale, § 439 . . . . .	698—699
(4.) Suspension-tones on harmonic degrees, § 440 . . . . .	700—701
(D.) Equivocalness, § 441 . . . . .	701—702
 DIVISION VII. <i>Resolution of transition-tones</i> , §§ 442—455 . . . . .	 702—718
(A.) General principle, § 442 . . . . .	702
(B.) Different forms, §§ 443—455 . . . . .	703—718
(1.) The secondary tone either slurred to the principal tone, or detached from it, § 444 . . . . .	703—704
(2.) The secondary tone separated from the principal by rests, § 445 . . . . .	704
(3.) Inserted tones, §§ 446—448 . . . . .	704—708
(4.) Resolution during the present or during the following harmony, §§ 449—451 . . . . .	708—715
(5.) Resolution into consonant or dissonant tones, § 452 . . . . .	715—716
(6.) Movement of other parts during the resolution, §§ 453, 454 . . . . .	716—718
(7.) Resolution on light or on heavy portions of the measure, § 455 . . . . .	718
 DIVISION VIII. <i>Merits of transitions in general</i> , § 456 . . . . .	 718—719

## CHAPTER IX.

## SOME PECULIAR SPECIES OF TONES FOREIGN TO THE HARMONY.

	PAGES.
§§ 457—466 <sup>bis</sup> . . . . .	720—754
DIVISION I. <i>Prolonged intervals</i> , §§ 458—459 . . . . .	721—723
DIVISION II. <i>Anticipated tones</i> , § 460 . . . . .	723—725
DIVISION III. <i>Appended tones</i> , § 461 . . . . .	725
DIVISION IV. <i>Organ-point</i> , §§ 462—465 . . . . .	726—731
Concluding remark on the doctrine of tones foreign to the harmony, § 466 . . . . .	731—732
On a particularly remarkable passage in Mozart's Violin Quartett in C, § 466 <sup>bis</sup> . . . . .	733—754

## CHAPTER X.

## MOVEMENT BY SKIPS.

§§ 467—496 . . . . .	755—788
DIVISION I. <i>Merits in general</i> , §§ 468—474 . . . . .	755—762
DIVISION II. <i>More particular consideration of some certain species of skips</i> , §§ 475—496 . . . . .	762—788
(A.) Measurement of skips, §§ 476—483 . . . . .	762—773
(B.) Skips in the base part, §§ 484—489 . . . . .	774—779
(C.) Cross-relation, §§ 490—496 . . . . .	780—788

## CHAPTER XI.

## MERITS OF THE DIFFERENT PARALLEL PROGRESSIONS.

§§ 497—558 . . . . .	789—857
DIVISION I. <i>Parallelism by primes</i> , § 498 . . . . .	789
DIVISION II. <i>Parallelism by seconds</i> , §§ 499—500 . . . . .	789—793

	PAGES.
DIVISION III. <i>Parallelism by thirds</i> , §§ 501—502 . . .	793—795
DIVISION IV. <i>Parallelism by fourths</i> , §§ 503—504 . . .	795—798
DIVISION V. <i>Parallelism by fifths</i> , §§ 505—544 . . .	798—837
(A.) Enumeration of the different species, §§ 506	
—521 . . . . .	799—821
(1.) Proper, actual, or open, §§ 506—508 . . .	799—806
(a.) In strictly parallel movement, § 507.	799—805
(b.) In movement not strictly parallel,	
§ 508 . . . . .	805—806
(2.) Improper or concealed, §§ 509—521 . . .	807—821
(a.) Interrupted by rests, § 510 . . .	807—808
(b.) Harpegiate fifths, §§ 511—512 . . .	808—810
(c.) Accent-fifths, § 513 . . . . .	810—811
(d.) Fifths concealed by tones foreign to	
the harmony, § 514 . . . . .	811—813
(e.) Fifths by the crossing of parts, §§ 515	
—516 . . . . .	813—816
(f.) Inserted fifths, §§ 517—518 . . .	816—819
(g.) Fifths in contrary movement, § 519.	819
(h.) Ear-fifths, § 520 . . . . .	820
(3.) More extended survey, § 521 . . . . .	821
(B.) Merits of parallel progressions by fifths,	
§§ 522—539 . . . . .	821—835
(1.) Fundamental principle, § 523 . . . . .	822—823
(2.) Deduction from the foregoing principle,	
§§ 524—539 . . . . .	823—835
(a.) Fifths in passages having several	
parts, § 524 . . . . .	823
(b.) In principal and in secondary parts,	
§ 525 . . . . .	823
(c.) Fifths by the doubling of parts,	
§§ 526—527 . . . . .	823—824
(d.) Fifths between harmonic and non-	
harmonic tones, § 528 . . . . .	824—825
(e.) Like and unlike fifths, § 529 . . .	825—826
(f.) Concealed or improper fifths, §§ 530	
—539 . . . . .	826—835
(a.) Interrupted by rests, § 531 . . .	826
(b.) Harpegiate fifths, § 532 . . .	826—827
(c.) Accent-fifths, § 533 . . . . .	827
(d.) Fifths concealed by transition	
tones, § 534 . . . . .	827

	PAGES.
(e.) Fifths by the crossing of parts, § 535 . . . . .	828
(f.) Inserted fifths, § 536 . . . . .	828—829
(g.) Fifths by contrary movement, § 537 . . . . .	829—830
(h.) Ear-fifths, § 538 . . . . .	830—831
(g.) Concluding remark, § 539 . . . . .	831—835
(C.) Means of avoiding parallelisms by fifths, §§ 540—543 . . . . .	835—848
(D.) Organ-register of fifths, § 544 . . . . .	836—837
<b>DIVISION VI. <i>Parallelism by sixths</i>, § 545 . . . . .</b>	838
<b>DIVISION VII. <i>Parallelism by sevenths</i>, § 546 . . . . .</b>	838—839
<b>DIVISION VIII. <i>Parallelism by octaves</i>, §§ 547—558 . . . . .</b>	839—857
(A.) Enumeration of the different species, §§ 548 —556 . . . . .	839—851
(1.) Proper, actual, or open, § 548 . . . . .	839—840
(2.) Improper or concealed, §§ 549—556 . . . . .	840—851
(a.) Separated by rests, § 549 . . . . .	840—841
(b.) Harpegiate octaves, § 550 . . . . .	842—844
(c.) Accent-octaves, § 551 . . . . .	844—845
(d.) Concealed by transition-tones, § 552 . . . . .	845—847
(e.) Octaves by the crossing of parts, § 553 . . . . .	847—848
(f.) Inserted octaves, § 554 . . . . .	848—850
(g.) Octaves by contrary movement, § 555 . . . . .	850
(3.) More extended survey, § 556 . . . . .	851
(B.) Merits of parallelisms by octaves, § 557 . . . . .	851—857
(1.) Fundamental principle . . . . .	851
(2.) Results . . . . .	851
(a.) Octaves in compositions in several parts . . . . .	851
(b.) In principal and in secondary parts . . . . .	851
(c.) Octaves by the doubling of parts . . . . .	851
(d.) Concealed . . . . .	854
(a.) Interrupted by rests . . . . .	854
(b.) Harpegiate octaves . . . . .	854
(c.) Accent-octaves . . . . .	855
(d.) Concealed by transition-tones . . . . .	855
(e.) Octaves by the doubling of parts . . . . .	856
(f.) Inserted octaves . . . . .	856
(g.) Octaves in contrary motion . . . . .	856
(e.) Concluding remark . . . . .	856
(C.) Method of avoiding octave parallels, § 558 . . . . .	857

## CHAPTER XII.

## HINTS TO PRACTICAL EXERCISE IN PURE COMPOSITION.


	PAGES.
§§ 559—578 . . . . .	858—896
DIVISION I. <i>To one or more given parts, to compose one or more others, §§ 559—576</i> . . . . .	858—895
(A.) When the harmonies to be chosen are fully designated by our mode of marking, § 560. . . . .	863
(B.) When, though the fundamental chords are given, yet their situation and relationship are not designated, § 561 . . . . .	863—865
(C.) When the harmonic combinations to be chosen are indicated only by thorough-base figures, §§ 562—575 . . . . .	865—890
(1.) Description of the usual thorough-base notation, §§ 563—574 . . . . .	866—884
(2.) Application of the thorough-base writing, particularly to our contrapuntic exercises:—to one or more given parts to compose one or more others, when the given parts are furnished with thorough base figures, §§ 574 <sup>ba</sup> —575 . . . . .	884—890
(D.) To set one or more parts to one or more given parts, when the harmonies to be chosen are not expressly indicated, § 576 . . . . .	890—895
DIVISION II. <i>To form a given harmonic succession into parts, § 577</i> . . . . .	895—896
DIVISION III. <i>To invent a piece of music, when nothing is given, § 578</i> . . . . .	896

## APPENDIX.

<i>On the Ancient Music; particularly the old Greek or Church Keys, §§ 579—587</i> . . . . .	897—917
--	---------

# CORRECTIONS.

## VOL. II.

REMARK.—Owing to the numerous and wholly unacknowledged errors in Mr. Warner's edition, and to many mistakes in the original, it has been impossible, with every care, to produce the present edition altogether free from faults. Those of chief importance are marked ; and should the minuteness of the others excite the reader's smile, it is hoped it will be one of satisfaction at the efforts of the present Editor to attain the greatest accuracy.


Page 422, Fig. 239, *d*, the designations of chords under the last three base notes should be  $\flat$   $\sharp$   $\flat$ .

— 434, last staff, 4th measure, the  $\flat$  should stand before  $\bar{a}$ , not before  $\bar{f}$ .

— 458, line 3, read fig. 270, *i*, p. 457, and fig. 270 $\frac{1}{2}$ , *i*, *k*.

— ib. — 2 below Fig. 270 $\frac{1}{2}$ , read fig. 270, *i*, p. 457.

— 460, Fig. 274, *e*, and page 517, Fig. 383, *k*, the two flats of the signature (B and E) are wrongly placed.

 — ib. line 5 below Fig. 274, *o*, for  $\sharp g$ ? read  $\sharp g$ .

— 462, — 10 from below, for p. 259 read p. 459.

 — 464, 2nd staff, for VI read vi, under third note.

 — 472, line 10, for  $\nabla$   $\nabla$ , read  $\nabla$   $\nabla$ .

 — ib. — 18, for VI  $\nabla$  — III, read IV  $\nabla$  — III.

— 474, — 10 from below, for to, read after.

— 479, Fig. 303, *f*, for  $\nabla$  read  $\bar{a}$ , in the alto part.

— 480, line 2 below 4th staff, for is, read are.

— 488, 6th staff, the mark of transition  $\nabla$  over  $\bar{d}$  should stand over the following base note  $\bar{c}$ .

— 510, line 6 below Fig. 371, for p. 377, read p. 337.

— 515, Fig. 379, insert  $\nabla$  over  $\bar{f}$   $\sharp$  in the treble, the third note from the end.



 — 516, line 9, for *g*-minor, read *g* $\sharp$ -minor.

— 525, — 2, for p. 524, read p. 513.


— 538, — 4 below Fig. 426, for [ $\bar{f}$   $\nabla$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ] read [ $\bar{f}$   $\nabla$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ].

— 543, — 7, for p. 335, read p. 535.

— 561, — 3 below 2nd staff, for fig. 469, *i*, read fig. 469, *i*—*m*.


 — 581, Fig. 523, the 3rd chord of 1st staff should read thus: 

— ib. below Fig. 524, and p. 582, below Fig. 529, for  $\flat$  read  $\sharp$ .

 — 587, line 5 from below, for upwards, read downwards.

— 590, — 2, for fig. 508, p. 574, read fig. 506, p. 573.


— 594, below Fig. 559, for  $\flat$  read  $\sharp$ .

 — 602, line 9 from below, for  $\nabla$ , read *g*.

— 609, — 12, for tone, read tones.

 — 614, — 3 below Fig. 601, for  $\bar{f}$   $\sharp$ , read  $\bar{f}$   $\nabla$ .


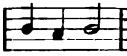
— 625, Fig. 625, *k*, the base notes in the 2nd measure should probably be named G F $\sharp$  G G $\sharp$  A A $\sharp$  B, to illustrate p. 732.

 — 635, below Fig. 647, for *c*: V, read *c*: V.

— 667, Fig. 705, for  $\nabla$  read  $\nabla$  over  $\bar{c}$   $\nabla$ , in the first measure.



# CORRECTIONS.

- Page 667, line 2 from below, for  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , read  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{c}$ .  
 — 671, — 4 from below, for  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony, read  $\mathbb{E}$ -harmony.  
 — 706, Fig. 790, *i*, insert  $\flat$  above, and  $\sharp$  below, the first double note, as in Fig. 607, *i*, p. 616.  
 — 710, 2nd staff, the 6th chord should read like the 3rd chord, thus:   
 — 711, line 8, for three-fold of  $\bar{c}$ , read three-fold chord of  $\bar{c}$ .  
 — 720, Fig. 817, 5th measure, the last eighth-note of the *alto* part should be  $\bar{b}$ .  
 — 726, line 6, for  $[c \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{b}]$ , read  $[c \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{g} \bar{b}]$ .  
 — 730, — 13, for consider, read continue.  
 — 750, — 6, for  $\bar{b}$ , read  $\bar{b}$ .  
 — 773. — 18 from below, for pp. 765, 766, 767, read pp. 765, 767, 768.  
 — 782, Fig. 892, *l*, the letters  $\bar{b}\bar{b}$  (*a*)  $\bar{g}$  should stand respectively under  $\bar{d}$  ( $\bar{c}$ )  $\bar{b}$ .  
 — 800, Fig. 933, *g*, for  $\bar{R}$ , read  $\bar{t}$ , under  $\bar{g}$ , the last note of the *alto* part.  
 — 805, Fig. 958, *i*, for  $\bar{F}$ , read  $\bar{R}$ , under 2nd chord.  
 — 809, Fig. 975, *l*, penultimate chord, for  $\bar{e}$ , read  $\bar{d}$ , lowest note.  
 — 811, line 5, for  $\bar{d}$ , read  $\bar{d}$ .  
 — 812, Fig. 982, *a*, for  $\bar{VI}$ , read  $\bar{vi}$ , under  $\bar{a}$ .  
 — 817, between Figs. 993 and 994, the upper clasp should only extend over  $\bar{b}\bar{b}$   $\bar{a}\bar{b}$ .  
 — 820, line 4 from below, the upper clasp should only extend over  $\bar{g}$   $\bar{a}$   $\bar{a}$ .  
 — 825, — 2 from below, for *to*, read after.  
 — 847, Fig. 1028, *i*, the first double bar should be a single bar.  
 — 851, line 10 from below, for higher, read lower.  
 — 867, — 9 below 2nd staff, insert *at i*, after 1054.  
 — 868, Fig. 1055, *p*, the  $\sharp$  before 6 should stand before 4.  
 — 875, Fig. 1072, *i*, 3rd measure, for  $\bar{l}$ , read  $\bar{Xl}$ .  
 — 881, line 18 from below, for 1052, *k*, read 1053, *k*.  
 — 884, — 1 below 3rd staff, for as in *k*, read as in *k*, *l*, *m*.  
 — *ib.* note  $\circ$ , 5th chord of upper staff, insert  $\bar{l}$  before  $\bar{a}$ .  
 — 892, 6th staff, 4th note of the base, for  $\bar{l}$ , read  $\bar{e}$ .  
 — 907, 1st staff, the 3rd measure should read thus:   
 — *ib.* line 5 from below, for 69, read 96.  
 — 910, — 25, for  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{c}$ , read  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{e}$ .

## CHAPTER V.

## HARMONIC PROGRESSION.

## DIVISION I.

## OF HARMONIC PROGRESSION IN GENERAL.

## (A.) ENUMERATION OF THE DIFFERENT POSSIBLE HARMONIC STEPS.

## § 226.

HAVING thus far considered modulation as a connected series of harmonies, we will now take a more minute and particular view of it analytically, by turning our attention to *the individual harmonic steps* of which a piece of music is made up.

The step from one harmony to another, the succession of two harmonic combinations which depend upon two distinct fundamental harmonies, or briefly, the succession of two fundamental harmonies, may be called, as it has several times been called already, *an harmonic step*, *an harmonic succession*, or *an harmonic progression*. In order, however, strictly to define the thing, these terms should be preceded by the word *fundamental*, thus: *fundamental harmonic step*, *fundamental harmonic succession*, *fundamental harmonic progression*; or—for the sake of avoiding terms so disagreeably long—briefly, *fundamental step*, *fundamental succession*, *fundamental progression*.

## § 227.

We will now, before proceeding farther, make ourselves acquainted with the extent of the field into which we are about to enter. Let us enquire, therefore, how many different successions of one harmony to another, or how many different ways of passing from one harmony to another, are possible or conceivable.

Inasmuch as every harmonic step consists of two harmonies immediately succeeding each other, it follows that

- (1.) each of the fourteen harmonies appropriate to a major key may be followed by one of the thirteen others belonging to the same scale, thus making 14 times 13 different cases— $14 \times 13 =$  - - 182;
- (2.) each of the ten harmonies of a minor key may be followed by one of the nine others, thus making 9 times 10 cases— $9 \times 10 =$  90;

Total, 272

- (3.) each of the fourteen harmonies appropriate to a major key may be followed by one of the fourteen harmonies of either

- of the other eleven major keys, thus making 14 times 14 times 11 cases— $14 \times 14 \times 11 =$  - - - - - 2156;
- (4.) each of the fourteen harmonies appropriate to a major key may be followed by one of the ten harmonies of either of the twelve minor keys, thus making 14 times 10 times 12 different cases— $14 \times 10 \times 12 =$  - - - - - 1680;
- (5.) each of the ten harmonies appropriate to a minor key may be followed by one of the fourteen harmonies of either of the twelve major keys, thus making 10 times 14 times 12 different cases— $10 \times 14 \times 12 =$  - - - - - 1680;
- (6.) each of the ten harmonies appropriate to a minor key may be followed by one of the ten harmonies of either of the other eleven minor keys, thus making 10 times 10 times 11 different cases— $10 \times 10 \times 11 =$  - - - - - 1100;

Total, 6616;

and thus we have, in all, six thousand six hundred and sixteen essentially different digressive harmonic steps [*i. e.* harmonic steps out of the scale of a key, or from one scale into another]. To these add the above 272 different cases of harmonic steps in one and the same scale - - - - - 272;

Grand total, 6888.

Thus, according to our mode of exhibition, which proceeds upon the supposition of only seven fundamental harmonies, and which assumes only fourteen fundamental harmonies in a major key and only ten in a minor key,—the entire number of different conceivable harmonic steps is 6888. According to other systems, which assume a far greater number of fundamental harmonies, it can scarcely be told to what sum these varieties of progression might amount. (§ 51.)

### § 228.

I cannot believe that this estimate will be misconstrued and regarded as an exaggeration, under the plea that each harmony is common to several keys, and that consequently many of the above 6888 cases are reckoned twice, as, e. g. *C*: I—*G*: V, and *G*: IV—V, and *F*: V—*G*: V,—examples which involve the same harmonic succession in each instance, namely, the progression from **C** to **D**. For, how manifestly different is the harmonic succession **C**—**D**, in fig. 236, *i*, *k*, *l*.

(Fig. 236, *i*.)

*C*: I    V    I    *G*: V

(*k*.)

*G*: I    V7    I    IV

(Fig. 236, *l.*)

*e*: I V7 VI G: V

(*m.*)

C: I V I G: IV I V I

In the example, fig. 236, *l.*,  $\text{C}$  as I of *C*-major is followed by the harmony  $\text{G}^7$ ; in *k*,  $\text{C}$  as IV of *G*-major is followed by the harmony  $\text{G}^7$ ; in *l*,  $\text{C}$  as VI of *e*-minor is followed by the harmony  $\text{G}^7$ ; consequently these three examples of the progressions of the fundamental harmonies  $\text{C} \rightarrow \text{G}^7$  are in fact three entirely different cases. In the example, fig. 236, *m.*, above, as we shall more fully understand in the sequel (§ 380),  $\text{C}$  as I of *C* is followed by  $\text{C}$  as IV of *G*. This results from the fact, that, on account of the transition tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , which could not thus occur before  $\bar{e}$  in *C*-major, the ear perceives the harmony  $\text{C}$  in the second half of the second measure as *G*: IV, and not as *C*: I, whereas this harmony impressed itself on the ear in the first half of the second measure as *C*: I. (Thus the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is in this case a leading tone. Compare § 187 at the end, and §§ 203 and 380, also fig. 194.)

#### (B.) DIFFERENT SPECIES OF HARMONIC STEPS.

##### (1.) *Steps which are taken in one and the same Scale,—Steps which pass from one Scale into another.*

###### § 229.

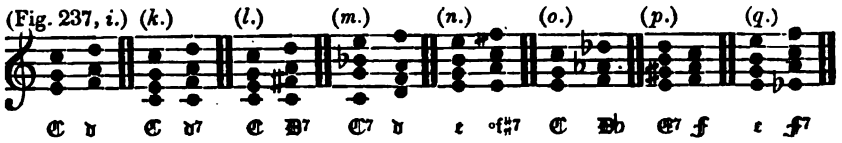
The collective mass of all possible fundamental harmonic steps admits of being differently divided, according to the different grounds of division.

One very essential division depends upon the circumstance whether the two harmonies following one another *both belong to one and the same key, or not*. In the first case (*i. e.* when one harmony is followed by another which belongs to the same key), we say of the harmonic step, that it is *appropriate to the scale, that it belongs to the scale, or that it is taken in the scale*; but in the second case (*i. e.* when a harmony is followed by another which belongs to a different key), we denominate the step a *digressive one—a step taken out of the scale*.

##### (2.) *Magnitude of Harmonic Steps.*

###### § 230.

A second division of the different possible progressions of a fundamental harmony depends upon *the distance of the two fundamental notes of the two harmonies which follow one another*. That is to say, when a harmony is followed by another harmony whose fundamental tone is one degree higher than that of the former, as, *e. g.* when the major three-fold chord  $\text{C}$  is followed by the major three-fold chord  $\text{D}$  or by the minor three-fold chord  $\text{D}$ , fig. 237, *i*,



we call the progression or step of the fundamental harmony that of a *second*, because the fundamental note *C* of the first chord lies at the distance of a second from the fundamental note *D* of the second chord. And it is to be observed farther, that the fundamental progression C—D is a step of a *major* second. So likewise the steps are those of a major second when the harmony C is followed by that of D<sup>7</sup>, as in fig. 237, *k*, above, or when the harmony C is followed by that of E<sup>7</sup>, as in fig. 237, *l*, or when the harmony E<sup>7</sup> is succeeded by that of F, as in fig. 237, *m*, or when the harmony F is followed by that of G<sup>7</sup>, as in fig. 237, *n*, &c.—A step of a *minor* second is found in successions like that in case of C—B<sup>b</sup>, as in fig. 237, *o*, or E<sup>7</sup>—F, as in fig. 237, *p*, or F—F<sup>7</sup>, as in fig. 237, *q*. In the same way we denominate such a fundamental harmonic progression as that of A—C, fig. 238, *i*.



or that of F—C<sup>7</sup>, fig. 238, *k*, or that of B—F<sup>7</sup>, fig. 238, *l*, &c. a progression or step of a *third*;—an harmonic step like that of C—E, in fig. 238, *m*, or that of D<sup>7</sup>—C<sup>7</sup>, in fig. 238, *n*, &c. is termed a step or progression of a *fourth*;—the step in fig. 238, *o*, is called that of a *fifth* or *under-fourth*; the one in fig. 238, *p*, a step of a *sixth* or *under-third*; that in fig. 238, *q*, a step of a *seventh* or *under-second*.

### § 231.

The above-mentioned different magnitudes of fundamental harmonic steps may be exhibited to the eye by connecting the two harmonies with a brace and writing within or under it the figure that indicates the sign of the interval; as, *e. g.* below: (Compare § 188\*.)



or,



## § 232.

Care must be taken not to confound the idea of thirds, fourths, &c. as here applied to the successive steps of fundamental harmonies, with that of digression into the key of the third, the fourth, &c. which was the subject of consideration in § 188.

We were there speaking of the succession of one *key* to another, of the re-attunement of the ear to a new key by means of the circumstance that, after one or more harmonies belonging to a key had been heard, a harmony occurred which impressed the ear as belonging to another key, and which thus re-attuned the ear to this new key, in this way dispossessing the previous tonic, and giving its place to a new tonic note (§ 185) situated at the distance of more or fewer degrees from the previous tonic note. (§ 188.)

But in the present case we speak merely of the succession of one *harmony* to another (§ 226). In § 230, in particular, the only point considered is, whether the fundamental note of the first harmony is such and such a number of degrees distant from the fundamental note of the immediately following harmony, (without considering at all whether these harmonies belong to one key or to different keys, whether the harmonic progression is a digressive one, or otherwise).

The expression "to digress into this or that interval" refers to the succession of *one key to another*; whereas, the expression "the fundamental harmony progresses or steps into the third, the fourth," &c. has reference only to the succession of *one harmony to another*. The former expression relates to the distance of *tonic notes*; but the latter refers to the distance of *fundamental notes*: or, to speak in our language of signs, that which we denote by the succession of two *Italic letters* (§§ 121, 153, and 187) is a passing of the modulation into a new key; but that, on the contrary, which we represent by two German letters following each other (§ 52), or by Roman numerals (§ 151), is only the progression of fundamental harmonies—the succession of one harmony to another.

The following example (compared with §§ 188\* and 231) exhibits both the *harmonic* progression, of which we have been speaking in the foregoing §§ 230 and 231, and the digressive modulations according to the mode of designation proposed in § 188\*: in this figure the nature and difference of the two are very clearly presented.

The musical notation shows a sequence of chords on a staff. Below the staff, intervals are indicated by numbers with dots: 5°, 4°, 6°, 4°, 7°, 4°, 2°, 4°, 1°. Below these, harmonic designations are given: C: I, V7, I, d: V7, I, F: V7, I, C: V7, I, F: V7. Further below, another set of intervals is shown: 2°, 3, 5°, 4°.

§ 232 *bis*.

Nor is the progression of fundamental harmonies to be confounded with *that of a part* (§§ 40 and 41.)

In the foregoing example, where, from the first chord to the second, the base makes the step of a fourth from *c* to *f*, the harmonic succession from the chord

$\mathbb{C}$  to the chord  $\mathbb{G}^7$  (from the harmony of the first degree of the scale to that of the fifth degree) is the step of a fifth. The following progression (from the second chord to the third), where the base proceeds a second downwards from  $f$  to  $e$ , is, as it respects the successions of the harmonies, a step from  $\mathbb{G}^7$  to  $\mathbb{C}$ , thus the step of a fourth. The succession from the third chord to the fourth, where *the base does not move at all*, but continues on the tone  $e$ , is a *step of the fundamental harmony to the distance of a sixth*, the fundamental harmony proceeding from  $\mathbb{C}$  to  $\mathbb{A}^7$ ;—in connection with the last step, a *digressive modulation* takes place from the previous key  $C$ -major into the key of *the second*—into  $d$ -minor, &c.

(C.) HARMONIC SERIES OR SEQUENCES.

§ 233.

*A continued succession of harmonic steps which are similar to one another is called an harmonic series or sequence.*

This similarity of harmonic steps may be of several different species.

(1.) It may consist merely in the circumstance that *harmonic steps of one species of magnitude follow one another*; as, *e. g.* steps of a second, steps of a third, &c. Thus, fig. 239, *a*, for instance,

(Fig. 239, *a*.)

(*b*.)

(*c*.)

is a series of steps of a second,—steps too of different-sized seconds, two being major seconds, namely,  $\mathbb{C}-\mathbb{D}$ ,  $\mathbb{D}-\mathbb{E}$ , and one being a minor second, namely,  $\mathbb{E}-\mathbb{F}$ , &c. Fig. 239, *b*, above, is another second-series of the same kind. Fig. 239, *c*, above, is a sequence of harmonies each of which is situated *two* degrees higher than the preceding, and thus is a progression of fundamental harmonies by thirds. In fig. 239, *d*,

(Fig. 239, *d*.)

each succeeding harmony is situated three degrees, *i. e.* a fourth higher than the foregoing one; and thus this figure contains a series of fourths. The case is the same in figs. 239, *e* and *f*:

(Fig. 239, *e*.) (f.)

G7 A7 B7 C7 D7 E7 F7 G7 A7 B7 C7 D7 E7 F7

In fig. 239, *g*,

(Fig. 239, *g*.)

G A B C D E F G A B C D E F G

we have a series of steps of a fifth. In fig. 239, *h*,

(Fig. 239, *h*.) (i.)

G A B C D E F G A B C D E F G

we find a succession of sixths, or under-thirds; and in fig. 239, *i*, above, we have a series of sevenths or under-seconds.

The following examples are more complicated. In fig. 239, *k*, *l*, *m*,

(Fig. 239, *k*.) (l.)

G A B C D E F G A B C D E F G

(Fig. 239, *m*.) (n.) (o.)

G A B C D E F G A B C D E F G

the fundamental harmony does not proceed by merely one species of interval, but



moves at one time by fourths, and at another by sixths (under-thirds). This is done, however, by so regular an alternation of fourths and of under-thirds, that each successive pair of chords is a symmetrical counterpart to the foregoing pair, in virtue of the fact that each consists of the progression of an under-third and a fourth, with the difference merely that each pair is one degree higher than the preceding. The third and fourth measures are as it were a copy of the first and second, differing merely by being on higher degrees of the scale: the first and second measures together form a group; the third and fourth form a similar group corresponding to it; the fifth and sixth measures form another similar group corresponding to the last, &c. The case is the same in fig. 239, *n*.

In fig. 239, *o*, above, we have a similar successive alternation of fifths and seconds: here too each pair of measures is virtually a copy of the preceding pair—a repetition of the same form on another degree of the scale—a fac-simile of the foregoing group.

Another variety of this species of progression is found in fig. 239, *p*:

(Fig. 239, *p*.)



Here two steps of a fifth follow each other in a continued succession, and form a group consisting of three chords contained in two measures: this group repeats itself in the following two measures in the same form, but one degree lower.

In fig. 239, *q* and *r*,

(Fig. 239, *q*.)



steps of a fourth alternate with those of a seventh or under-second.

#### § 234.

(2.) Another peculiar species of similarity in the successive fundamental steps of a sequence arises from the fact that the successive harmonies are not merely all *similar* to each other, but are absolutely *alike*,—*e. g.* not merely three-fold or four-fold chords, or three-fold and four-fold chords in symmetrical alternation, but are three-fold or four-fold chords of precisely *the same species*; as, for instance, all major three-fold chords, all principal four-fold chords, &c. We find, in fig. 239, *a*, *b*, *c*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *k*, *l*, and *o*, on pp. 422 and 423, exclusively

three-fold chords; but yet these three-fold chords are not entirely of one sort: at one time, as is shown by the letters placed beneath, these chords are major, at another, they are minor, and at another they are diminished. There is, in fig. 239, *d*, p. 422, a regular alternate succession of three-fold chords and four-fold chords; but these again are of different magnitudes, as the subjoined letters show. In fig. 239, *e* and *f*, p. 423, we have exclusively principal four-fold chords;—in fig. 239, *m*, p. 423, we have the same interchanged with major three-fold chords. Nearly the same is found in fig. 239, *n*, p. 423. In fig. 239, *m* and *n*, each pair of measures is a new copy of the foregoing, differing only by being placed one degree higher, for which latter reason it is usual to denominate progressions of this sort *transpositions*.

---

§ 235.

It will be perceived that, fundamentally considered, all the harmonies occurring in the examples *a, b, c, d, g, h, i, k, l, o*, and *p*, of fig. 239, pp. 422—424, are constructed of elements belonging to one and the same key. Fig. 239, *d*, exhausts, in a regularly alternating succession, the entire mass of the three-fold and four-fold chords appropriate to the key of *C*-major. But since the harmonies occurring on the different degrees of a scale differ from each other in size, *e. g.* a three-fold chord on the first degree, being *major*, while the three-fold chord on the second degree is *minor*, &c. it follows of course that the chords in a sequence of harmonies in one key are not of the same magnitude: and it follows, *vice versâ*, that, in case the chords are to be of the same size, the succession must necessarily be composed of chords taken from several different keys, as in fig. 239, *e, f, m* and *n*, p. 423 (though it is true, indeed, that not every series composed of harmonies taken from different keys is in all cases of precisely one and the same magnitude throughout, as is clearly shown by fig. 239, *q* and *r*, p. 424).

---

§ 236.

It will be perceived from this point of view, that a sequence proceeding in one key *cannot possibly consist of fundamental steps precisely equal in point of size*: thus, *e. g.* in fig. 239, *a* and *b*, p. 422, the fundamental harmony moves, it is true, exclusively by seconds; in fig. 239, *c*, p. 422, exclusively by thirds; in fig. 239, *d*, p. 422, exclusively by fourths, &c.; in fig. 239, *o*, p. 423, alternately by fifths and seconds, &c.; but still, in fig. 239, *a* and *b*, the seconds are at one time major and at another time minor; in fig. 239, *c*, the case is the same with the thirds; in fig. 239, *m*, the same holds true of the fourths, &c.; in fig. 239, *o*, we have at one time major seconds and at another minor seconds; and, in case the series is continued farther, we have here also at one time major fifths and at another minor fifths, &c.

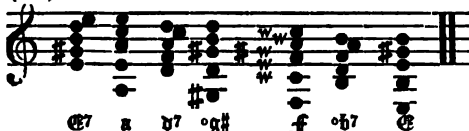
This, moreover, is a very natural fact: for, it results necessarily from the circumstance that the degrees of the scale are not all of the same size.

## § 237.

It is perceived also from the same point of view, that, while no sequence of chords of equal magnitude can be constructed out of the chords of a major key, no unbroken series whatever, consisting exclusively of harmonies appropriate to the minor key, can be carried entirely through the scale of that key; for, in the case of the minor key, harmonies are not to be found on every degree of the scale, as they are in the case of the major key, but the series of chords appropriate to the former has several chasms in it. If, *e. g.* we should undertake to form a series of seconds from the tonic harmony upwards, in *a*-minor, as in fig. 239, *bb.*

(Fig. 239, *bb.*)

(dd.)



we should find, on coming to the second step, that a harmony is wanting on the third degree of the scale (§ 149). The same thing occurs in the sequences exhibited in fig. 239, *dd.* above, as also in every other sequence which can be constructed in the minor key by transforming any one of the major key examples found in fig. 239, *a-r*, pp. 422—424, into the minor key, as in fig. 239, *gg* and *hh*:

(Fig. 239, *gg.*)

(hh.)



Certain other infelicities which connect themselves with this case, as it respects the appropriate flowing progression of the parts, are not here to be taken into the account. There are indeed some instances of progressions in pieces written in the minor key which resemble these sequences; such, *e. g.* as those in fig. 240:

(Fig. 240.)

My Op. 15.



but passages of this kind, as we have already seen in §§ 131, 211, and 379, always depend either upon foregoing digressive modulations, or upon transition-tones, or mere apparent chords. Compare fig. 169, *i*, *k*, p. 265, and fig. 215, p. 361.

## § 238.

(3.) The symmetry of a sequence may be heightened *by placing all the chords in one position, or by giving them all alike one species of transformation.*

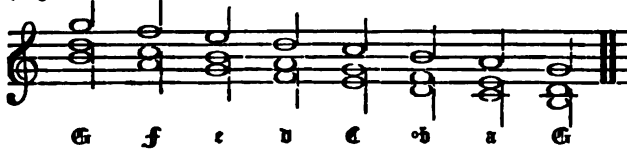
Thus, e. g. in fig. 239, b,

(Fig. 239, b.)



all the chords are in the first inversion, the fundamental tone being at the top and the original fifth in the middle. The example in fig. 239, i,

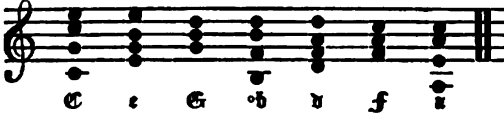
(Fig. 239, i.)



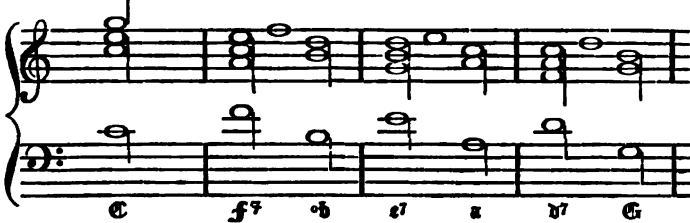
is of a similar character.

In examples, fig. 239, c, d, g, h, k, o, p, q and r.

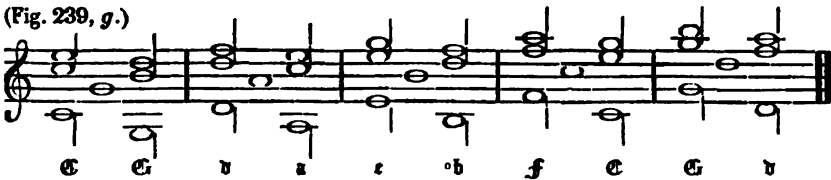
(Fig. 239, c.)

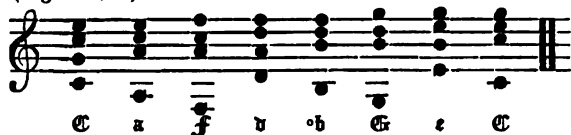
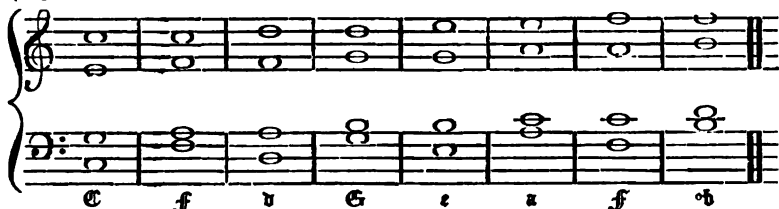
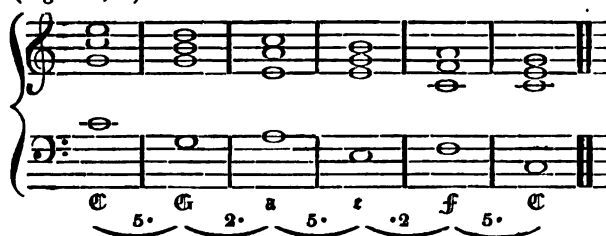
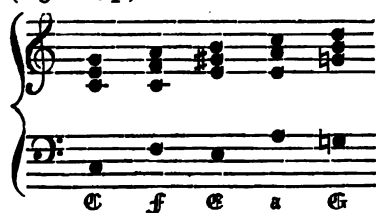


(Fig. 239, d.)



(Fig. 239, g.)



(Fig. 239, *h.*)(Fig. 239, *k.*)(Fig. 239, *o.*)(Fig. 239, *p.*)(Fig. 239, *q*)

all the chords are found in their uninverted position. Here the same position of the upper intervals recurs at every other chord alternately: *i. e.*, in examples *d* and *k*, at one time the fifth is uppermost, and at another the fundamental tone; the next highest tone in example *d*, is at one time the third and at another the seventh; while, in *k*, it is at one time the third, and at another the fundamental itself, &c. In examples *g*, *o*, *q*, and *r*, at one time the third is uppermost and at another the fifth; in examples *c* and *h*, at one time the fundamental

tone is uppermost, at another its fifth, and at another its third; in example *p*, at one time the fifth is uppermost and at another the third.

In example, fig. 239, *e*.



the intervals of one chord occur in an uninverted position, while those of the other appear in the second inversion. In the example, fig. 239, *f*.



consisting exclusively of principal four-fold chords, all the chords appear without the fundamental tone and with the minor ninth, while the one chord stands in the second inversion and the other in the fourth. In examples, fig. 239, *l*, *m* and *n*,

(Fig. 239, *l*.)

(*m*.)



(*n*.)



uninverted chords alternate with chords in the first inversion. In example *e*, at one time the third of the fundamental tone is uppermost, at another the seventh; while, in example *f*, at one time the ninth of the fundamental tone is uppermost, and at another the fifth. In example *l*, at one time the fifth of the fundamental is uppermost, and at another the third; in example *m*, at one time the fundamental note is highest, and at another its fifth. In a like symmetrical manner, in *n* also, the same position of the upper intervals regularly recurs at every successive group.

#### § 239.

(4.) A series of successive harmonies is the more symmetrical when these

harmonies are all *alike in respect to the rhythmical accent*. In fig. 239, *l*, p. 423, *e. g.* the one harmony alternately falls on the heavy part of the measure, and the other on the light: it happens also, in connection with this circumstance, that all the chords falling on the first half of the measure are alike in respect to position, as are also all those falling on the second half. This is the case in example, fig. 239, *g*, p. 423, as also in fig. 239, *d*, p. 422: in the last case, moreover, a four-fold chord regularly falls on the heavy part of the measure, and a three-fold chord on the light. In like manner also, in fig. 239, *n*, p. 423, the same group of three fundamental successions regularly recurs on similar parts of the measure. In fig. 239, *m*, p. 423, this order is disturbed,—a circumstance which again produces a peculiar effect.

---

§ 240.

It is readily perceived, that these sequences may be infinitely varied, according as we arrange into a successive series either merely three-fold or four-fold chords, or both together, either chords that are merely similar or those which are exactly alike, at one time all in the same position, and at another interchangeably in different positions, at one time recurring on like parts of the measure, and at another alternately on opposite parts of the measure.—The different possible combinations in this case are almost endless.

As to whatever also pertains to the subject of sequences, nothing farther need here be said. It is enough merely to have become acquainted with their different species. The rules which are to be observed in the construction of such modulatory successions of tones are no other than the rules of all other modulations; and, accordingly, we have nothing peculiar to say in this connection, relative to the merits of particular sequences, or of particular modulations occurring in a sequence, or relative to any other rules to be observed in the case. All we have to do, on this point, is simply to refer to the general rules with which we have in part already become acquainted, and which in part we are about to learn in what follows.

---

(D.) REMARKS ON THE RESPECTIVE MERITS OF THE DIFFERENT HARMONIC STEPS IN GENERAL.

§ 241.

The 6888 different fundamental successions enumerated in § 227 are all essentially diverse from each other; no one is exactly the same as another, but each has its own distinct and peculiar merits. Nay, more! Each appears again in an entirely different light, according to the difference of circumstances under which it occurs, so that one and the same succession, under certain relations and circumstances, in certain situations, inversions, permutations, or other transformations of the one or the other chord, or of both at once, introduced on one or another heavy or light part of the measure, and under this or that particular combination of circumstances, produces at one time entirely a different

effect from what it does at another. By this means, the 6888 essentially different cases become multiplied perhaps an hundred-fold, or rather almost into infinity.

(1.) Thus, *e. g.* an otherwise unusual and repulsive harmonic succession may sometimes be rendered less harsh and disagreeable by introducing in it a somewhat *slower grade of time*; for, in this case, the ear has more time to comprehend, digest, and reconcile itself to the succession, though the latter be in itself rather foreign and unnatural.

(2.) It often makes a great difference also, whether the two harmonies following each other are both in their *original form*, or whether one or both of them appear under some *transformation*, and also in what *position* the two chords occur. In fig. 241,

(Fig. 241, i.)      (k.)      (l.)      (m.)

C:V7   a   C:V7   a   C:V7   a   C:V7   a

the fundamental progression  $\text{C}^7 - \text{a}$  occurs four times, and, in each instance, moreover, as  $\text{C}:\text{V}^7 \text{VI}$ . In the first case, however, the two harmonies appear in their uninverted position, while in the second they are both inverted; in the third and fourth cases,  $\text{C}^7$  occurs in the second inversion, with the major ninth and without the fundamental tone. Every one perceives, that here the very same fundamental step sounds far more agreeably in the first position, than it does in the remaining three.

(3.) Many harmonic successions are rendered more agreeable by the fact that *one or more intervals* of the first harmony are continued in the second; as, *e. g.* in fig. 197, i, p. 346, the tones *e* and *c* of the chord  $\text{a}$  had already been heard in the chord  $\text{C}$ . By this means the harmonic succession sounds far more soft and flowing than it would if the two harmonies followed each other in less neighbourly positions, as they do, *e. g.* in fig. 197, k.

(Fig. 197, k.)

Such a previous introduction of one or more tones of a harmony which is about to appear, may be considered as a sort of preparation of it. (See § 107, p. 240.)

The transitions from *C*-major to *b*-minor, in fig. 201, l, p. 349, and partially also that into *B*-major, in fig. 201, m, p. 349, are of a similar species.

(4.) Again, much often depends upon the circumstance whether the one or



the other of two successive harmonies *falls on a heavy or on a light part of the measure*. Thus we have already observed, in § 114, that the step from a three-fold chord, or even from a four-fold chord, to a secondary four-fold chord, takes place most conveniently on a heavy part of the measure, while the reverse progression is best made on a light part of the measure, so that the secondary four-fold chord always comes to stand on the heavy part of the measure.

(5.) The degree of *loudness* or *softness* of performance may also have influence. The energy and decision with which an harmonic succession, not very acceptable in itself, makes its appearance, as it were takes the ear by force, whereas the very same succession, presenting itself with less boldness and decision, would be rejected by the ear. It is for this reason, that so much is admissible on the mighty organ, or in full vocal or instrumental choruses, which, presented with a less imposing power of tone, would not be received.

(6.) An harmonic succession, which would otherwise be repulsive to the ear, may often be rendered more acceptable by occurring *in an harmonic series*. The harmonic succession  $^{\circ}\text{VII}-\text{III}$ , or  $\text{IV}-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ , is, when taken by itself, rather disagreeable; but in a series, as in fig. 242, *l*,

(Fig. 242, *i.*)      (*k.*)      (*l.*)

C-I VI II V I IV- $^{\circ}$ VII III VI II V I

it is far less so\*; for, as there are here several successive steps of fundamental harmonies at the distance of a fourth, one, so to speak, gets into the habit of hearing progressions of this species, and therefore the more readily welcomes, in this series, the progression of a fourth in the case of  $\text{IV}-^{\circ}\text{VII}$  and  $^{\circ}\text{VII}-\text{III}$ .—Compare fig. 243, *i*, and *k*.

(Fig. 243, *i.*)

MOZART.

*Allo.*

Mada—mi - na !      il ca - ta - lo - go è

I      VI

\* Figs. 242, *i* and *k*, not referred to by the author, are probably only given as examples of the steps of the *harmonic series* named above.—Ed.

ques-to, del-le bel - le, che amò il pa-dron mio,

II VII III I

(Fig. 243, k.)

MOZART.

Vlni.  
Vla.  
Fl.  
Ob.

v'han fra ques-te con-tra-

I VI

di-ne, ca-me-rie-re cit-ta - di-ne,

A: V III VI C

VOL. II.

(Fig. 243, *k*, continued.)

v'han con-tes-se, ba-ro-nes-se, marche-sa-ne, princesse.

IV VII V

(7.) Two harmonies which, in case they occurred in the course of the same musical period, would justly be regarded as making a harsh and grating harmonic succession, become less offensive, provided the one stands at the close of a period and the other at the commencement of the following period. This is, indeed, very natural; for, by this means, they cease to stand in so close a connection with each other.

This is very especially the case after a dominant pause, *i. e.* a pause or rest on the harmony V. In fig. 244,

(Fig. 244.)

MOZART.

after a pause on *f*:V, or *F*:V, the harmony *Ab*:I occurs, very suddenly and unexpectedly, it is true, but yet with very beautiful effect. So also, in fig. 245, *i*,

(Fig. 245, *i*.)

ROSSINI.

F:V7 I V V7 I V *Ab*:I IV I V7 I

(to quote a very familiar example), after the harmony  $F:V$ , with which the period terminates,  $A\flat:I$  immediately occurs in the commencement of the following passage.—(This last harmonic succession would be still farther very materially softened by observing the suggestion made in No. 3 of the present section; somewhat, *e. g.* as in fig. 245, *k.*)

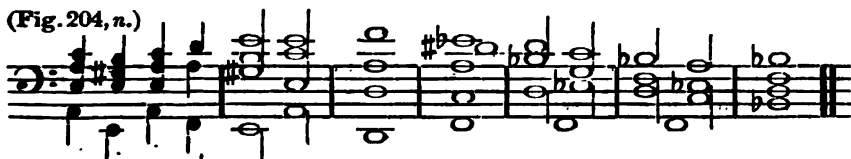


In the example, fig 197, *i*, also, p. 346,—an example which has already several times been referred to,—the succession of what would otherwise be very foreign and dissimilar harmonies and keys, is essentially softened by the intermediate pause on the fifth.

(8.) Another very effective means of softening many otherwise harsh harmonic successions, particularly those which involve a transition from one key to another, is *equivocalness*. The ear much more readily reconciles itself to many harmonic successions which would otherwise be offensive, when the chord immediately preceding the transition into a new key leaves the ear in doubt as to the key. (§ 223, p. 374.)

Examples of this kind may be found in § 219, pp. 368—371. In fig. 204, *o*, p. 371, for instance, the ear, at the chord [ $c, f, a, \sharp d$  or  $\bar{e}b$ ], is really in doubt in which key it is; and when the harmony  $\sharp b$  occurs immediately afterwards, the ear readily assumes it to be the tonic, though  $B\flat$ -major is but very remotely related to the previous key, *a*-minor. It might be said, that the ear, which, for a moment, is without the resting point of a definite centrality, and accordingly feels as if it were lost, therefore the more readily seizes any key that presents itself, and that too usually with eagerness, just for the sake of being somewhere at home again. But, on the contrary, this same digressive modulation from *a*-minor into  $B\flat$ -major in the following case, fig. 204, *n*,

(Fig. 204, *n*.)



(compare § 208) seems far more foreign, because the chord which here immediately precedes the three-fold chord  $\sharp b$  is not, as in fig. 204, *o*, p. 371, really equivocal, but, from its connection, its position, and its form, it pretty clearly presents itself as being in *a*-minor.

In the example before adduced, a chord preceded the digressive modulation which left the ear in doubt as to the key. But an otherwise harsh digressive modulation may be softened by preceding it with a chord which, even if not really equivocal, still, in itself considered, may be found in the key into which the digressive modulation is to be made. For example, in fig. 246, *i*,

(Fig. 246, i.)



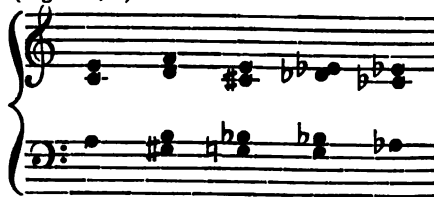
the fourth chord appears decidedly as  $d:V^7$ , and the ear is far from being in doubt as to the key; but yet, this harmonic combination, in itself considered, might also be found in  $b$ -minor, as [G e a $\sharp$ , c $\sharp$ ]. If now the harmony  $F\sharp^7$  occurs after this chord belonging alike to the keys  $b$ -minor and  $d$ -minor, and effects a digressive modulation into the key  $b$ -minor—a key very foreign from  $d$ -minor, the harmonic succession is far less harsh and disagreeable than if the  $F\sharp^7$  had been preceded by another harmony not to be found in  $b$ -minor, as in fig. 246, *k*.

(Fig. 246, k.)



So also, in fig. 247, *i*,

(Fig. 247, i.)



the transition from  $a$ -minor through  $d$ -minor into the very foreign key  $ab$ -minor, is favoured by the circumstance that the chord  $A^7$  [g b b c $\sharp$  e], immediately preceding the very remote  $ab$ -minor, is still to be found also in  $ab$ -minor as  $Ab^7$ ; namely, in the form [g b b db f $\flat$ ]. Another case of the same species may be seen in fig. 247, *k*,

(Fig. 247, k.)



where a transition is made from  $g$ -minor through  $c$ -minor into  $gb$ -minor. Another example occurs in fig. 247, *l*.

(Fig. 247, l.)



So also, in fig. 248,  
(Fig. 248.)



a chord common to two different keys. Still, however, the modulation, though remote, does not sound harshly; and chiefly for this reason, among others, that the harmonic combination  $[Bb \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{a}b \bar{d} \bar{f}]$  which precedes the new  $D:I$  is to be found also in  $d$ -minor under the form  $[Bb \bar{d} \bar{f} g\sharp \bar{d} \bar{f}]$ , and even in  $D$ -major (§ 94).

The example in fig. 250 also is of a similar species.

(Fig. 250.) MOZART.

Unisono.  
 $D:I$

V  $F:I$  V I V I

$F:V7$

A passage in  $D$ -major is immediately followed by one beginning with  $F:I$ . But, in this case, the single intermediate tone  $\bar{e}$  is worthy of special remark. One scarcely knows, in fact, what to do with this  $\bar{e}$ , as what to regard it. It can perhaps be most simply explained as the fifth of the harmony  $D:V$ , or possibly as a transition tone.—But, again, this  $\bar{e}$  sustains also another relation, and that too not an idle one: it admits of being taken as the third of the harmony  $F-V7$ ; and, regarded in this point of view, it would (especially after a repeated hearing of the passage) contribute in no small degree to smooth the transition into  $F$ . This will readily be perceived, if the  $\bar{e}$  is omitted, or if, instead of it, the tone  $\bar{d}$  is repeatedly struck and then  $F$ -major is immediately taken.

Fig. 251, *i*, gives also an interesting example of such an effect of equivocalness.

(Fig. 251, *i*) MOZART'S HYMN, MISERICORDIAS.

Moderato.  
V LNI.

Voc. *p*

cor-di-as Do - - - - - mi -

Bass.

*p* I V7 I V7

ni, Mi - - - - - se - - ri -

corni. p

d:I V7 I V7

Here the phrase expressed in the first two measures in *c*-minor is immediately repeated in the following two measures in *d*-minor. The new commencement of a phrase similar to the foregoing, which takes place at the beginning of the third measure, is unhesitatingly taken by the ear as a new commencement in *d*-minor; and this succession of two passages in keys so little related to each other would be sufficiently harsh, were it not for the fact that a softening effect is produced by the equivocalness of the second half of the second measure. At this point the tone  $g\sharp$ , which occurs in the vocal part, strikes the ear, now attuned to *c*-minor, as  $ab$ , and hence as the ninth of the fundamental harmony  $\mathbb{E}^7$ ; but it might perfectly well be regarded also as a transition tone— $g\sharp$ —to a of the following harmony (and indeed, after the passage has several times been heard, it comes at last to be actually regarded in this light). This equivocalness materially softens the harshness of the transition; and an incidental circumstance, which contributes to the same result, is the fact that *d*-minor is the principal key of the whole piece—a key to which the ear very naturally recurs, even independently of any other cause; and, finally, we may still farther bring into account the fact that the harmonic combinations [ $g\sharp \bar{f} \bar{d}$ ] and [ $g\sharp \bar{d} \bar{b}$ ] present a harmony which is in itself equivocal between  $\mathbb{E}^7$  and  $\mathbb{E}^7$ , and which, regarded as  $\mathbb{E}^7$ , points, as a dominant harmony of transition, to *d*-minor; and accordingly, if, after the rest in the base, the vocal part be taken as the base, the case assumes the shape presented in fig. 251, *k*:

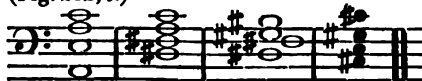
(Fig. 251, *k*.)

d:I V7

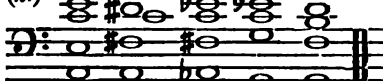


Instances of a similar character are to be found also in figs. 252 and 253 :

(Fig. 252, i.)



(k.)



(l.)



(Fig. 253.)



In like manner, in fig. 235, measures 24—26, p. 411, the transition from  $c$ -minor into the widely remote key  $c$ -minor is made by means of the diminished three-fold chord common to these two keys. Let it be attempted, on the contrary, to make this transition without any such means of softening the effect, and by the immediate introduction of the unequivocal four-fold  $C^7$ , as in fig. 235, *l*, p. 414, and it will be found, that all the harshness which had in the former case been concealed, will here again make its appearance.

The digressive modulation from  $C$ -major into  $b$ -minor, occurring in fig. 201, *l*, p. 349, and already remarked upon in § 241, No. 3, is also, in the same way, as well as by the circumstance there mentioned, favoured by the chord  $[G d b \bar{f}]$ , which, as  $[G d b \bar{c}\sharp]$ , is to be found also in  $b$ -minor. The same is true to some extent, even of the transition into  $B$ -major, in fig. 201, *m*, p. 349.

Compare also fig. 132, p. 212, which has been several times mentioned already (§ 91, § 189 Remark, § 194, § 208).

So, likewise, in fig. 203, p. 350, the harmonic step from  $C$ -major into the remote  $b$ -minor is very much favoured by the fact that the chord  $\sharp$ , which occurs, also in  $b$ -minor, precedes the chord  $\flat$ .—Moreover, it may, perhaps, be maintained, that in this example even the harmony  $\sharp$  does not altogether unequivocally strike the ear as  $\text{III}$  of  $C$ -major: for, as the harmony  $\text{III}$  is not in itself very natural and familiar to the ear, and indeed we may say is rather unusual (§ 147, No. 3), and hence the ear is not, in general, particularly inclined to take a harmony for  $\text{III}$ , so here, if the harmony  $\sharp$  is struck again in the second half of the second measure, the ear will begin to doubt whether it should not take this  $\sharp$  as something else than as  $C:\text{III}$ .

The digressive modulation from  $a$ -minor through  $d$ -minor into  $b$ -minor, in fig. 224, *i*, p. 374, is of a similar species, as is also that in fig. 224, *k*, p. 374, where harmonies belonging to  $b$ -minor and  $B\flat$ -major immediately follow each other. The case is the same also with the succession  $E\flat:V^7 d:1$ , &c.

(9.) It is to be observed farther, that those digressive modulations which are effected by the sixth-fourth position of the new tonic chord (§ 207, at \*1)

are the most agreeable, so that we may in this way not only pass into very remote keys, but this mode of modulating is for the most part of peculiarly fine effect.

Thus, *e. g.* the transition from *Bb*-major or *Eb*-major into *D*-major, in fig. 249, p. 437, already referred to, is favoured, not only by the equivocalness of the preceding harmony, but also by the fourth-sixth position of the chord *Bb*.

In fig. 253, p. 440, also, where a new passage commences with *Db*:I, after *f*:V<sup>7</sup> or *Ab*:V<sup>7</sup>, the transition is of a peculiarly happy effect, from the union of several favourable circumstances, namely, the fourth-sixth position of the new tonic harmony (§ 207), the preceding rest (adverted to in No. 7 of the present section), and the equivocalness of the chord [*g db ē bb*].

In fig. 251, *i*, also, p. 438, the coming in of the horns with [*A a*] tends to beguile the ear into the impression that the new phrase in *d*-minor actually commences in the fourth-sixth position, as in fig. 251, *k*, p. 439.

The same will be found to hold true in most of the digressive modulations of this species which are referred to in figs. 200 and 201, pp. 348 and 349. It must not be overlooked in these cases, however, that in many instances the transition is facilitated also by the equivocalness of the foregoing chord and by other favourable circumstances, as has been in part already observed.

Such passages as those in fig. 253½, *i* to *p*,

(Fig. 253½, *i*.) (k.) (l.)

C:I II G:V C:I V7 VI G:V7 C:I V7 I G:V7 C:I V7

(m.) (n.)

I G:V7 C:I V7 c:I II G:V c:I V7

(o.) (p.)

I G:V7 c:I V7 I G:V7 c:I V7 I

where the decisive tonic fourth-sixth chord follows a chord which may be regarded as its dominant of transition, are also particularly agreeable to the ear in this respect. The digressive modulations in figs. 249, 251, 252, *k*, 253, &c. pp. 437, 438, 440, are of a similar species.

Numerous *other* circumstances of every sort, some of which cannot here be explained at all, but to which we shall hereafter call attention in particular cases that will occur, may contribute very much to soften the harshness otherwise attendant upon the succession of harmonies, even if not in some cases entirely to remove it. One of these circumstances is a perfectly natural *flow of the parts*. So also mere single *transition-tones*, *suspensions*, or intermediate

*transition* or *apparent chords*, often contribute to render harmonic successions which would otherwise be harsh, very peculiarly smooth and agreeable.

---

§ 242.

It will at once be perceived from our present view of the matter, that the merits of the different possible harmonic successions and of all their various possible combinations, can by no means be disposed of by a few general *maxims*; and that a concise answer to the questions, "what harmonies *may* follow each other? what harmonic successions are good, and what are objectionable?" cannot be given. No class of harmonic successions admits of being pronounced good or bad universally, *none* can be approved or reprobated in the gross; and *whoever* should here attempt to establish a universal precept, would, as a matter of course, either deceive himself or others; because such universal maxims would not apply to cases so multifariously and essentially unlike. No! He who would fully answer the above questions and would determine the precise extent to which each harmonic succession is good or ill—is flowing, agreeable, repulsive, harsh, or even wholly to be rejected, would have no less a task to perform than that of going over individually all the 6888 different cases, and, subjecting each by itself to a separate and distinct examination, settle its own peculiar merits, and that too under all possible combinations, and under all the various circumstances that can be connected therewith. This would be a huge undertaking indeed, one which folios would scarcely be sufficient to accomplish: it would require books too voluminous for anybody to read, even if anybody could be found to write them.

In the alternative, therefore, of either unqualifiedly laying down universal affirmations as to the merits of entire classes of harmonic successions—affirmations which would at best be true only to a limited extent, while in all other cases they would necessarily be false, or of falling into an interminable strain of detail,—and for the purpose of keeping ourselves equally far from a deceptive universality on the one hand, and from a tedious course of detail on the other—for the sake of neither presenting as entire what is really incomplete, nor of pronouncing an extended and tiresome critique upon every individual case, we propose to pursue a middle course in the matter. We shall pass over the entire field, it is true; but yet a minute examination of every foot of the ground we shall by no means attempt. Of the much that might be said upon the different cases occurring in these classes, we shall exhibit only that which seems most important, without any view to furnishing, in these individual sketches, any thing like a complete theory of harmonic succession. All the rest we leave to each individual's own correct musical feeling; and it very fortunately happens that this property itself, without theory, and often, as past experience has already shown, even in spite of false theories, is, in practice, a pretty sure guide.

Many, moreover, may find it an interesting exercise, ultimately, to go through, by themselves, all the different harmonic successions, according to the divisions made below, and to ascertain whether and in what way this or that harmony can be struck after one or another, &c. By this means one will some-

times unexpectedly fall upon new and often very effective harmonic turns which otherwise would never have been thought of. (It is true, indeed, that *beginners* will not be able to institute researches of this kind with entire success, so long as they are not familiar with the laws which relate to the conduct of parts.)

According to the view which has been taken, from § 241 to the present place, *there is not a single harmonic succession which we should be able absolutely and unconditionally to forbid*. It is indeed true, as we shall find even in our proposed survey of the field, that many successions produce a very strange, unnatural, and often extremely repulsive effect. But such successions may not only sometimes be very much, and often, indeed, entirely softened technically, by circumstances of the kind mentioned in § 241, but, regarded in ~~an~~ *æsthetical* point of view, even that which, in respect to art, is foreign and unnatural, and which is to some extent harsh, and indeed that which is positively rough and irregular, may, when used in *the right place*, be entirely proper and of very happy effect.

---

#### REMARK.

The doctrine of the different harmonic successions and of their various merits is also, like many others, found in our books of instruction in a very sad, and one might even say pitiful, condition.

Most writers cut the matter short and pass over the subject altogether.

A few others who touch upon it, do it in so superficial a manner, that it would have been better if they had not treated it at all. They propose, namely, to despatch the subject by giving, on a page or two of their books, at best a few rules, intended to show "by what intervals the fundamental harmony, or, as they term it, the fundamental base (?) may move," i. e. whether steps of a second, third, &c. are allowable in the fundamental harmony, &c.

Thus, e. g. Rousseau\* teaches that there may be three different progressions of the so-called fundamental base, and only three, namely: 1. "*Monter ou descendre de Tierce ou de Sixte*—the ascent or descent of the third or the sixth; 2. *De Quarte ou de Quinte*—of the fourth or the fifth; 3. *Monter diatoniquement au moyen de la Dissonance qui forme la liaison* (which I do not understand!) *ou par licence* (See Remark at § 107) *sur (?) un Accord parfait*. *Quant à la descente diatonique, c'est une marche absolument interdite à la Basse-fondamentale, ou tout au plus tolérée dans le cas de deux Accords parfaits consécutifs, séparés par un repos exprimé ou sousentendu:*" (here again an ellipsis!) *cette règle n'a point d'autre exception, et c'est pour n'avoir pas démêlé le vrai fondement de certains passages, que M. Rameau a fait descendre diatoniquement la Basse-fondamentale sous des Accords de Septième, ce qui ne se peut en bonne Harmonie:*"—"The diatonic ascent by the dissonance which forms the connection; or, by license, in a perfect chord. As it respects descending diatonically, it is a progression absolutely forbidden to the fundamental base, or, at most, tolerated only in the case of two consecutive perfect chords, separated by a rest either expressed or understood:—this rule has no other exception, and it is from not having discovered the true fundamental of certain passages, that Mr. Rameau has made the fundamental base in the chord of the seventh descend diatonically—a thing which is incompatible with good harmony."

---

\* In his *Diction. de Mus. art. Basse-fondamentale*.

Here, then, we find expressed in a few lines the entire code of laws which are to determine what modulation\* may do, and what it may not do!

Now who does not see how impossible it is to pronounce decisions of this character which shall be universally applicable? How many entirely different questions, *e. g.* are involved in the single one which follows; namely, are progressions of the fundamental harmony by seconds to be deemed good or bad, allowed or forbidden? After a chord whose fundamental tone is *c*, *e. g.* can another follow whose fundamental tone is a major or minor second higher than *c*?

If, namely, one will compute how many essentially different major or minor second steps may occur to a major, minor, or diminished three-fold chord, or to a principal or secondary four-fold chord of this or that key, from each of the fourteen harmonies belonging to a major key, or the ten harmonies appropriate to a minor key, he will find that there may be neither more nor less than 1152 steps of a second, each of which is entirely different from the others, each is an entirely distinct fundamental progression: 576 of these steps of a second being minor, and an equal number being major. For, reckoning, first,

(I) The *minor* second steps of the fundamental harmony; there may follow

(A.) in a *major* key,

(1.) after a *three-fold* harmony, and in the first place,

(a.) after that of the *first* degree,

(a.) another *three-fold* harmony, and that too, *e. g.* in *C*-major, either

(aa.) a *major* three-fold chord, and thus, in *C*-major, the three-fold chord  $\mathbb{B}b$  may follow that of  $\mathbb{C}$ . But this  $\mathbb{B}b$  may be at one time  $Db : I$ , at another  $Gb : V$ , at another  $Ab : IV$ , at another  $gb : V$ , and again  $f : VI$ —(see table *a*, p. 294); —thus making five different minor second steps - - - 5

(bb.) or there may follow after  $C : I$  the *minor* three-fold harmony of the next degree, namely,  $\mathfrak{v}b$ . This harmony also is at one time  $Cb : II$ , at another  $Bbb : III$ ,  $Fb : VI$ ,  $ab : IV$ , or  $db : I$ —(see table *b*, p. 295); thus making five other minor second steps - - - - - 5

(cc.) or there may follow after  $C : I$  a *diminished* three-fold harmony, namely  $\mathfrak{v}b$ , which harmony has three different meanings (see table *c*, p. 296); thus giving us again three different species of minor second steps - - - - - 3

Altogether, thus far, amounting to - - - - - 13

(b.) We find, in like manner, that four different *four-fold* chords may follow the three-fold harmony of the first degree of the major key; in *C*-major, *e. g.*

(aa.) the *principal* four-fold chord  $\mathbb{B}b7$  in two different relations (see table *d*, p. 297) - - - - - 2

(bb.) the *minor* four-fold chord in four different relations (see table *e*, p. 298) - - - - - 4

(cc.) the four-fold chord with *minor fifth* in two different relations (see table *f*, p. 299) - - - - - 2

(dd.) the *major* four-fold chord in three different relations (see table *g*, p. 300) - - - - - 3

Making again - - - - - 11

Total thus far - - - - - 24

\* It will be perceived that the term "modulation" is here used in the sense of *harmonic progression*.—TR.

Total, brought forward	- - - - -	24
(b.) So, in like manner, an equal number of different minor second steps may be had after the three-fold harmony of the <i>second</i> degree in a major key	- - - - -	24
(c.) So likewise after the three-fold harmony of the <i>third</i> degree	- - - - -	24
(d.) After that of the <i>fourth</i> degree	- - - - -	24
(e.) After that of the <i>fifth</i> degree	- - - - -	24
(f.) After that of the <i>sixth</i> degree	- - - - -	24
(g.) After that of the <i>seventh</i> degree	- - - - -	24
Total thus far	- - - - -	168
(2.) We find in the same manner an equal number of different minor second steps after each of the seven <i>four-fold</i> harmonies of the major key	- - - - -	168
Total	- - - - -	336
(B.) So also in a <i>minor key</i> there may follow		
(1.) after a <i>three-fold</i> harmony, and, first,		
(a.) after that of the <i>first</i> degree,		
(a.) another <i>three-fold</i> harmony, and that too, in a-minor, <i>e.g.</i> either		
(aa.) a <i>major</i> three-fold harmony, as above, in five different meanings	- - - - -	5
(bb.) or a <i>minor</i> three-fold harmony in the same variety of significations	- - - - -	5
(cc.) or a <i>diminished</i> three-fold chord, in three different relations	- - - - -	3
Amounting thus far to	- - - - -	13
(b.) Four different <i>four-fold</i> chords, constituting together eleven different varieties of relationship (as above)	- - - - -	11
Total	- - - - -	24
(b.) So likewise after the three-fold harmony of the <i>second</i> degree in a minor key	- - - - -	24
(c.) After that of the <i>fourth</i>	- - - - -	24
(d.) After that of the <i>fifth</i>	- - - - -	24
(e.) After that of the <i>sixth</i>	- - - - -	24
(f.) After that of the <i>seventh</i>	- - - - -	24
Total	- - - - -	144
(2.) So likewise after each of the four <i>four-fold</i> harmonies of the minor key, we find 96 minor second steps	- - - - -	96
Total	- - - - -	576
(II.) In just the same way we obtain an equal number of <i>major</i> second steps	- - - - -	576
Grand total, as above stated	- - - - -	1152

We will assume, then, that there are eleven hundred and fifty-two different steps of a second (and an equal number of *under-second* steps, which those gentlemen likewise include in their prohibition of second steps,—thus making strictly 2304 steps of a second); to say nothing of the very various combinations of circumstances (§ 241 to this place) by which the merits of every progression of this kind may be so materially affected.

And now I ask, how is it possible, in a single sentence, to pronounce, with any pro-

priety, upon the merits of an entire class of fundamental progressions so essentially diverse!!

But notwithstanding all this, our writers find it, as we have seen, a very easy matter to pass sentence in this very way. It is very plain, however, that such a proceeding has been abundantly productive of the most serious and palpable errors.

We will mention a few, by way of example; and as we have just been speaking above of *second* progressions, we will begin with these.

These progressions, as above observed, are all very summarily forbidden in our most approved systems of musical doctrine. Now, I must be permitted to ask, have those gentlemen, as they forbid, at a single stroke, all possible steps of a second, examined all the 1152, and much more the 2304, different possible second progressions of the fundamental harmony, and that too under all possible circumstances and combinations of circumstances, &c. &c.?? or have they most frivolously issued their interdict *without* such examination!—or do they know how to adduce some fundamental principle from which the musical impossibility of such progressions would follow *a priori*!—plain questions, whose answer is readily given by the first look at the hundreds of second progressions occurring in every piece of music that comes to hand.

I must be allowed, farther, to subject some of those prohibitions to the test of experiment and of a good musical ear.

According to the passage quoted from *Rousseau*, as we have seen, progressions of a second are one and all condemned at a dash! *Rameau* also, coinciding with this view (in *d'Alembert*, §§ 36 and 37), demonstrates, from the most learned considerations, that a three-fold harmony can by no means be followed by another three-fold harmony on the next degree of the scale: *e. g.* C—D, and least of all when both three-fold harmonies are major: *e. g.* C—D.

According to this view, all the progressions occurring in the examples hitherto exhibited would be faulty and bad.—(And I here perceive with no little dismay, but, alas, too late! how criminally I offended against *Rameau* and *Rousseau*, when I began the first Allegro of my *Te Deum laudamus* with a whole series of harmonic steps of the description I—II and V7—VI—II—I—V Fig. 254.)

(Fig. 254.)

*Allegro.*

MY "TE DEUM."

*ff*

*E♭: I II I II I V7 VI II I V*

*Marpurg* ventures, indeed, in his remark (10) on *Rameau's* system, to undertake the defence of such second progressions. But on what does he found his defence? It is true, says he, that the second progression in fig. 255, *i.*

(Fig. 255, *i.*)

is not natural to the fundamental base; but art here comes in to the help of nature. The progression would be natural, if it were as in fig. 255, *k*,

(Fig. 255, *k*.)



that is, if a  $\text{C}$ -chord stood between the  $\text{C}$  and the  $\text{F}$ -chord:—now! in fig. 255, *i*, above, the  $\text{C}$ -chord is merely—omitted.—Thus “a second progression in the fundamental base is an *elliptical progression*.”

But what sort of a justification is this! For, such an ellipsis or omission having taken place, the chords  $\text{C}$  and  $\text{F}$  still immediately follow each other, after all!—Do not explanations of this species form a worthy counterpart to the *elliptic resolution* already adverted to (in the Remark on § 107, p. 240)? In either case, and in all cases of the kind, the argument is nothing more nor less than reasoning in a circle; namely, the progression would be right, if it were otherwise; hence, it is right as it is, for one has only to conceive it to be otherwise.

Kirnberger also expresses himself, in general, very much against progression by seconds, and really tolerates\* none but the following: 1—117. But, in his Science of pure Composition (*Kunst des reinen Satzes*†), he allows again, in general, the second progression (1) from a major three-fold chord to a minor one, e. g.  $\text{C}-\text{D}$  or  $\text{C}-\text{a}$ ; (2) from a minor three-fold chord to a diminished three-fold chord, e. g.  $\text{a}-\text{b}$ ; (3) in the minor key, the succession  $\text{V}-\text{VI}$ ; and by way of exception also,  $\text{IV}-\text{V}$  in the minor key; (but not  $\text{IV}-\text{V}$  in the major key).

It truly gives me pleasure to observe, that, by these precepts, Kirnberger absolves me again from my sins against Rameau and Rousseau; but even after such liberal principles, still a multitude of second progressions remain forbidden according to Kirnberger, which are not so according to the ear, which daily occur, and which are regarded by the best composers and hearers as free from fault.

Even the constantly occurring succession  $\text{f}-\text{C}$ , in *C*-major, e. g. still remains under prohibition.

It is true that Kirnberger would be far from maintaining that it sounds ill to pass directly from the harmony  $\text{f}$  to that of  $\text{C}$  in a passage in *C*-major; but the harmonic succession  $\text{f}-\text{C}$  (so he teaches in section 22 of his “*Wahren Grundsätze*,” p. 52) in this case is not to be understood as it stands—not as  $\text{f}-\text{C}$ , but as  $\text{f}-\text{b}^7-\text{C}$ , and the middle chord  $\text{b}^7$ —is merely again—omitted. . . . . (another ellipsis!).

Likewise the universally received succession  $\text{V}^7-\text{VI}$ ,  $\text{C}^7-\text{a}$  remains, according to Kirnberger, forbidden, and that too as a *second progression*; but, under the same denomination of an *elliptical* harmonic succession, it is afterwards again allowed. The chord  $[\text{G B d f}]$ , says Kirnberger‡, is not, in such cases, to be understood as  $\text{C}^7$ , but as being really the chord  $[\text{E G B d f}]$ , and consequently  $\text{c}^7$  with the ninth, *f*. Only the fundamental tone *E* is again—omitted. (Why does Kirnberger allow the succession  $\text{C}^7-\text{f}$  in the minor key? why does he not then also explain the chord  $\text{C}^7$  as  $[\text{C E G\sharp B d}]$ ?—or, if he allows  $\text{C}^7-\text{f}$  without an ellipsis, why not also, in like manner,  $\text{C}^7-\text{a}$ ?)

\* In his *Grunds. zum Geb. der Harm.* (§ 22, pp. 51 and foll. and in the *Nacherinnerung*).

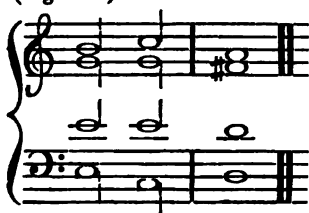
† II Theil, 1 Abschn. 1. Abtheil, page 14.

‡ *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I Theil, page 62.



He, in the same manner\*, explains the succession  $\mathbb{C}$ — $\mathbb{B}$ , fig. 256,

(Fig. 256.)



as an *elliptical* one, not allowing the second chord to be  $\mathbb{C}$ , but making it  $\mathbb{a}^7$  with the fundamental note omitted.

It is almost lamentable to see how he writhes and twists to explain whole series of second progressions, which his own correct ear forbids him to denominate faulty, as being something else than second progressions, and all this just for the purpose of maintaining the honor of the prohibition of second progressions. The *ellipsis*, which did him such excellent service in the before-mentioned cases, seems here not entirely to satisfy him. Hence he devises again two other modes of explanation. The progressions of the fundamental harmony in such a series as that in fig. 257, *i*,

(Fig. 257, *i*.)



he says†, are by no means second steps; but the succession of chords is to be understood as it stands in fig. 257, *k*;

(Fig. 257, *k*.)



only in the second measure of the upper part in fig. 257, *i*, the note  $\bar{d}$  occurs in the first part of the measure, and thus prematurely, instead of coming in the second part of the measure, as in fig. 257, *k*,—it *anticipates* the  $\bar{d}$ . The fundamental harmony of the first half of the second measure in fig. 257, *i*, is accordingly not properly  $\flat$ , but rather  $f$ . Fig. 257, *l*!

\* Sec. 22 of his "*Wahren Grunds.*" page 51.

† In his "*Wahren Grunds.*" § 20, page 45, and following.

(Fig. 257, l.)



Here again we have a *word* instead of the *thing*. At first it was an *ellipsis*, now it is an *anticipation*.—But, even after this new invention of a word, the question still remains wholly unanswered: if the fundamental harmony of the first half of the second measure is *f*, with what propriety does the note *d* stand in that place—a note which even constitutes the distinguishing sign between *f* and *d*! With what propriety could this *d*, foreign to the harmony *f*, occur unprepared in the heavy part of the measure, and continue unresolved?

This was one of Kirnberger's modes of explaining such series of seconds. The second is called *retardation*. We may also, he says, suppose to such a series the fundamental harmonies which are indicated in fig. 257, *m*,

(Fig. 257, m.)



and in this way it is strictly to be understood as presented in fig. 257, *n*,

(Fig. 257, n.)



only, in fig. 257, *m*, the two under parts are retarded, and first make their appearance with *f* and *a* at the third quarter, instead of the second. Thus, in fig. 257, *m*, the tones *e* and *g*, still continuing at the second quarter, would be suspensions of *f* and *a*, prepared on the heavy part of the measure, dissonant on the light, and resolved on the following heavy part!

In like manner as our theorists are accustomed to prohibit the progression of the fundamental harmony by one degree *upwards*, they have also laid their interdict upon progressions by the same degree *downwards*; as, *e. g.* in the passage above quoted from *Rousseau*, or in *Kirnberger*, &c.

With renewed amazement, I here again observe the fundamental succession II—I several times successively recurring in fig. 254, p. 446! Of a similar character too are the progressions IV—III—II—I, in fig. 258,

(Fig. 258.)

MOZART.

Do - minus De - us. Sa - - ba - oth.

D: IV III II I V7 I V

V—IV—III—II—I, in fig. 259,

(Fig. 259.)

GLUCK.

C: V IV III II I

IV—III—II in fig. 260.

(Fig. 260.)

VOGLER.

D: I IV III II A: V7

And yet, who has ever heard that passage of the *Sanctus* in Mozart's *Requiem*, found in fig. 258, above, without being enraptured by its majesty? Who can hear, without emotion, Gluck's overture to *Ifigenia*, fig. 259, above? Who can fail of being inspired by the splendid *Gloria* of Vogler's Mass, in *d*-minor, fig. 260, above?

Are we prepared, then, to expunge the passages from the works of Mozart, Gluck, Vogler, and others, as faulty? or rather will we not expunge the prohibition of them from our books of instruction?

The succession II—I, in the fundamental (§ 56) or uninverted position of the chords, is, according to Kirnberger, particularly faulty.\* But, so far as I can perceive, this succession of chords, in fig. 261, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 261, *i*.)

II I

(Fig. 261, *k*.)

II I V7 I

\* *Kunst des reinen Satzes* II. Th. I. Abschn. page 14.

does not, to say the least, sound so ill as to merit rejection. Shall we, then, unconditionally prohibit successions of this species? Are we prepared, *e. g.* to strike out the passage in Mehul's *Une folie* where Carlin's waggish simplicity is expressed in a most perfectly humorous manner by means of this very succession of harmonies!—Fig. 262.

(Fig. 262.)

F: I    V    I    II        I    IV    I    II        I    IV    I

Others, again, *e. g.* Vogler\* and his apostle, J. H. Knecht, absolutely forbid the immediate succession of two three-fold harmonies standing on two proximate degrees of the scale, in cases where both chords are of the same species, namely, either both major or both minor, *e. g.*  $f-G, G-f$ , or  $b-a, a-b$ .

It is true, indeed, that this theory does not forbid such progressions as II—I in fig. 254, p. 446, &c.: but yet a multitude of others it does prohibit; *e. g.* II—III, III—II, IV—V, V—IV, &c.

Now, in the first place, as it respects the succession of *two major* three-fold chords, enough has been said already. But as regards minor three-fold chords, it is fully demonstrated, by fig. 263,

(Fig. 263.)

V    IV    III    II    III    IV    V    I    V    IV    V

that such a succession is at the farthest possible remove from sounding disagreeably, notwithstanding the two minor three-fold chords  $\sharp$  and  $\flat$  are arranged, both forwards and backwards, immediately after one another.—Who can reproach such a succession of chords as that in fig. 264, *i.*, with being faulty?

(Fig. 264, *i.*)

C: I        C: II    V7        III    II

And, according to Vogler's rule, would not the interdict rest upon all the passages quoted from Mozart, Gluck, and—what is the finest of all—upon that even which is quoted from

\* *Handbuch zur Harmonielehre*, chap. 3, § 21, p. 80.

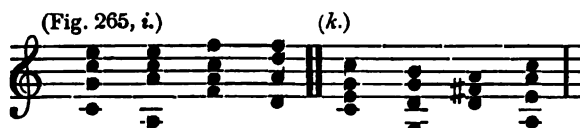
Vogler himself? It is indeed true, that the uniform succession of the two proximate harmonics  $\sharp$  and  $\flat$ , in fig. 264,  $k$  and  $l$ ,



does not please the ear (compare § 502); but still it does not follow, as the above-mentioned examples show, that *every* succession of minor three-fold chords by proximate degrees is faulty, in other cases: the fault lies in the rule itself.

In like manner we also find the progression of *sixths* forbidden in our books of instruction; e.g. in *d'Alembert's* and others.

I here again beg to know, whose ear is offended by the progression of sixths and under-thirds in fig. 265?



And have we not already seen that Kirnberger places his only justification of the second progressions, in fig. 257,  $i$ , p. 448, on the ground that progressions of sixths are to be inserted between them!!

And here again Marpurg, already referred to, appears before us, explaining† the sixth progression  $\text{C}-\sharp$ , in fig. 265,  $i$ , above, as an *ellipsis* or *elision* of the phrase in  $k$ !—(In this way the above-mentioned passage, in fig. 257,  $i$ , p. 448, would be an *ellipsis* of an *ellipsis*.)

But why, for heaven's sake, all this far-fetched, unnatural, and senseless explanation of harmonic successions, in themselves natural and faultless, merely to maintain the credit of an unnatural and erroneous rule which these progressions contradict!!

Others, again, for the most part, limit only the progression of *certain harmonies*; e.g. the diminished three-fold chord. Thus Kirnberger says‡, “the diminished three-fold chord has no other progression than that of four degrees above itself” (meaning a fourth upwards). But, from his own examples, the last but one quoted, it is clear that he could not condemn such a passage as that in fig. 266.

(Fig. 266.)

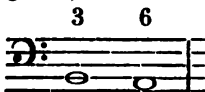


\* In the place before cited, § 36. † In the place before cited.

‡ *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I Theil, p. 38.

Finally, he himself even quoted  $\text{♩} \text{—} \text{f}$  as an example of an harmonic succession! Fig 267.

(Fig. 267.) KIRNBERGER.



This rule again is obviously false; and Kirnberger will here also find it necessary to summon up his sagacity to invent an explanation of the above-mentioned examples by an ellipsis, by anticipation, retardation, or some other ingenious fiction, and to show that the above successions  $\text{♩} \text{—} \text{I}$  are not  $\text{♩} \text{—} \text{I}$ , but really  $\text{♩} \text{—} \text{V}$ .

Or, are the numerous examples of harmonic progression which have been referred to and which run directly counter to the prohibitions laid down by music-teachers, while at the same time they do not sound ill, only exceptions to the rule, and, as the hackneyed phrase is, "only allowable to good composers?"—But, to say nothing of the fact that the exceptions would in this case be more numerous than the instances in which the rule would apply, I should at least suppose, that if the rule were really correct, its violations must necessarily be bad, without any subjective reference to the pen from which they flowed: and, vice versâ, if the violation or exception were good and thus objectively allowable, it must be equally so to all persons alike. But a rule to which any one may make an exception, i. e. which any one may transgress, is no rule at all.

Or, again, are such exceptions allowable "only in the *free style*, but forbidden in the strict?" I have already expressed my views upon this subject in general, in the remark on § 95. But let me ask still further, *why* they are allowed in the former style and not in the latter? Is it for any reason in the nature of the case, or merely because theorist Y or Z has said so?

But enough, and more than enough, to demonstrate the *gross* inaccuracy of this part also of our previous theories!

I wish it to be observed, however, that, in thus exposing the defects of existing musical doctrines, it has not been so much my object to reproach theorists for not having laid down more appropriate general rules, or for not having more perfectly treated the doctrine in question in other respects. I am by no means ignorant of the fact that it would be altogether too tedious a business, not only to theorists themselves, but also to their readers, to go over, step by step, so immense a field as that of all the different possible harmonic steps (for it does not admit of being summarily despatched by a few general and sweeping precepts and prohibitions), and to enter into a radical investigation of the merits of every fundamental succession under all possible varieties of circumstances. This could not reasonably be required of them. It were but reasonable, however, to expect, that, in an affair so obviously impracticable, they should not have falsely concealed the fact, and have given themselves the appearance of being able to dispose of so vast a field with a few superficial and dogmatically exhibited general rules. It was their duty to disclose the existing vastness and variety of the ground to be surveyed, and to let their readers have a view of it, instead of deceiving them by puzzling rules and prohibitions, which every one who has confidence in his own or in others' ears, finds superfluous and untrue in practice, and hence learns, very properly, to despise, violate, and set aside.

Hence it is no wonder that in the eyes of composers the names *theorist* and *pedant*, *theory* and *scholasticism* [school-dust?], have become synonymous terms. Indeed, so long as the case is strangely thus with the theory of an art which holds so very advanced a position practically, it may with propriety be said that theorists really possess incomparably less of theory than practitioners themselves. For, the former teach false rules,

while the latter act according to those which are true. The rules which the former lay down, infinitely more often prove erroneous than correct; while the latter produce elevated works of art, from which we might and should long since have deduced better rules. For, if it is true, that, in art, practice must precede theory, and that the latter is at first drawn from the former, then must theory be willing really to follow, and, free from implicit faith, must be ready to give up without farther hesitation any rules which prove themselves untrue in practice. Indeed, if we had nothing to substitute in the place of these false rules, and were to be left with no rules at all, even then it would be our first duty to throw away the old ones, after their having once been found to be false, and no longer to repose confidence in prescriptions of whose falsity we have the proof before us. For the mere recognition of the fact that a man does not know a thing, is far better than an erroneous belief in a false science, the latter being at all times the most stubborn hindrance to the investigation of truth.

But so long as rules are suffered to retain their hold of our confidence, which condemn thousands and tens of thousands of passages which daily occur in every piece of music and sound perfectly well, rules which even their authors themselves contradict on the very same page on which they gave them, while not the slightest caution is given against many things which are really of bad musical effect\*,—so long as confidence in such rules is entertained and inculcated, it is truly more than an herculean labour to study the art; and, in this sense, there is but too much truth in the lament with which the brave Fux, in his *Gradus ad Parnassum*, bids the disciple of art a friendly welcome: "*An nescis, Musicæ Studium immensum esse mare, neque Nestoris annis terminandum? Verè rem difficilem, onusque (!) Ætnâ gravius suscipere intendis!*"† "*Do you not know, that the study of music is an immense ocean,—a study which cannot be consummated in the age of a Nestor? You are about to engage in a thing that is truly difficult; yes, to assume a load more heavy than Mount Ætna!*" Truly, regarded in this point of view, it is not strange—nor indeed unreasonable, that one often prefers to engage in the study of composition from mere current custom, rather than from the principles and rules laid down in books; for, it is not to be denied, that he is not only led far more easily, but also very much more certainly and safely, by the former, than by false principles like these.

From the foregoing considerations, as to the manner in which the doctrine of harmonic successions has been hitherto treated in our books of instruction, from an examination of some of the precepts and prohibitions laid down by our writers (and it would be easy to increase the proofs of their incorrectness by innumerable others, and in fact we have ourselves still much more to say hereafter, in connection with the doctrine of digressive harmonic successions, upon some similar prohibitions of certain digressive modulations), it follows, that the few rules which the instruction books give us relative to the different harmonic successions, even scarcely touch the thousandth part of the immeasurable field, and that they are not true even in relation to half of this small part, but, in reference to far the greatest proportion, are directly and positively false. All the rest of the field, upon which the practical composer is daily and hourly so richly and successfully reaping, has as yet never been trodden by a single theorist; no, not even surveyed, and, indeed, one might say, not yet even discovered to have a being, and much less is it cultivated.

We have ourselves surveyed it above, in § 227, and now enter upon it with a view, so far as its immeasurable extent permits, to examine it. May the absolute want of assistance from any previous labours excuse the imperfection of my own attempts!

---

\* Compare, e. g. the last part of the remark on § 95.

† Liber II. p. 43.

## DIVISION II.

## HARMONIC SUCCESSIONS IN THE SAME SCALE.

## § 243.

Having thus far considered the nature and merits of the different harmonic steps in general, we will now pass to a review of the various species of these steps, taken separately, and will advert to whatever is worthy of remark in each.

We will first take a view of the fundamental or harmonic steps found in one and the same scale, or, in other words, those harmonic steps in the case of which one harmony follows another belonging to the same key.

It may be said in general of all these fundamental successions, that, in like manner as the most essential harmonies of a key usually occur more frequently than the secondary harmonies, so, for this reason, those harmonic successions in which the one or the other harmony is a secondary harmony, not only more seldom occurs than others, but are ordinarily also somewhat less satisfactory in themselves.

This fact is especially palpable, as we shall see in the review which we are about to take in the case of those harmonic steps in which the harmony *III* occurs. (See § 147, No. 3.) All those steps also in which the three-fold harmony of the seventh degree occurs, are for the most part somewhat equivocal. (§ 147, No. 7.)

After these few preliminary remarks, we will take a general survey of all conceivable harmonic successions, according to the following divisions.

(A.) One *three-fold chord* follows another *three-fold chord* belonging to the same key; or

(B.) A *four-fold chord* follows a *three-fold chord* belonging to the same key; or,

(C.) A *three-fold chord* follows a *four-fold chord* of the same key; or,

(D.) One *four-fold chord* follows another *four-fold chord* in the same key.

(A.) OF THE SUCCESSION OF ONE THREE-FOLD CHORD AFTER ANOTHER IN THE SAME KEY.

## § 244.

We will first consider those harmonic successions in which we pass from one three-fold harmony to another three-fold harmony belonging to the same key.

Where one three-fold chord is followed by another three-fold chord belonging to the same key, the latter is either that of the next higher degree, thus making the progression of the fundamental harmony that of a second—or it is that of the second higher degree, thus making the progression of the fundamental harmony that of a third—or it is that of the third higher degree, &c.

A synoptical view of all these possible cases is exhibited in the following table. (It is not intended to be thoroughly studied or to be otherwise committed



to memory, but only to exhibit a view of the multiplicity of different cases belonging to this class.)

(1) *Successions by Seconds.*

The possible cases in which a three-fold chord may be followed by another three-fold chord in the same key, one second higher, are as follow :

In a major key :

I—II, II—III, III—IV, IV—V, V—VI, VI— $\circ$ VII,  $\circ$ VII—I;

In a minor key :

I— $\circ$ II, ———, ———, IV—V, V—VI, VI— $\circ$ VII,  $\circ$ VII—I.

(2) *Successions by Thirds.*

The possible cases are—

In a major key :

I—III, II—IV, III—V, IV—VI, V— $\circ$ VII, VI—I,  $\circ$ VII—II;

In a minor key :

———,  $\circ$ II—IV, ———, IV—VI, V— $\circ$ VII, VI—I,  $\circ$ VII— $\circ$ II.

(3) *Successions by Fourths.*

In a major key :

I—IV, II—V, III—VI, IV— $\circ$ VII, V—I, VI—II,  $\circ$ VII—III;

In a minor key :

I—IV,  $\circ$ II—V, ———, IV— $\circ$ VII, V—I, VI— $\circ$ II, ———.

(4) *Successions by Fifths.*

In a major key :

I—V, II—VI, III— $\circ$ VII, IV—I, V—II, VI—III,  $\circ$ VII—IV;

In a minor key :

I—V,  $\circ$ II—VI, ———, IV—I, V— $\circ$ II, ———,  $\circ$ VII—IV.

(5) *Successions by Sixths.*

In a major key :

I—VI, II— $\circ$ VII, III—I, IV—II, V—III, VI—IV,  $\circ$ VII—V;

In a minor key :

I—VI,  $\circ$ II— $\circ$ VII, ———, IV— $\circ$ II, ———, VI—IV,  $\circ$ VII—V.

(6) *Successions by Sevenths.*

In a major key :

I— $\circ$ VII, II—I, III—II, IV—III, V—IV, VI—V,  $\circ$ VII—VI;

In a minor key :

I— $\circ$ VII,  $\circ$ II—I, ———, ———, V—IV, VI—V,  $\circ$ VII—VI.

We will at least give examples of all these harmonic successions, and upon some of them will also add a few remarks.

(1.) *Of Second Steps, where a three-fold chord is followed by the three-fold chord of the next degree in the same key.*

(§ 244, No. 1.)

§ 245.

(a.) We have already, in figs. 254, 257, 261, 262, and 266, pp. 446, 448, 450, 451, and 452, had examples of the succession I to II, or I to  $\circ$ II, i. e. where

the major three-fold chord of the first degree in a major key is followed by the minor three-fold chord of the second degree,—or where the minor three-fold chord of the first degree in a minor key is followed by the diminished three-fold chord of the second degree. They occur with special frequency in such phrases as those in fig. 268, *a* to *h*, as well as in others.

(Fig. 268, *a.*) (b.) (c.) (d.)

Musical notation for measures (b.), (c.), and (d.) of Fig. 268. Each measure is on a single staff with a treble clef. Measure (b.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5). Measure (c.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5). Measure (d.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5).

I II I  $\bar{V}7$  I II I  $\bar{V}7$  I II V I II V I

(e.) (f.) (g.) (h.)

Musical notation for measures (e.), (f.), (g.), and (h.) of Fig. 268. Each measure is on a single staff with a treble clef. Measure (e.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5). Measure (f.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5). Measure (g.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5). Measure (h.) contains a half note chord (F4, A4) and a half note chord (C5, E5).

I II I  $\bar{V}7$  I II I V I I II V I II V I

It is worthy of remark that this harmonic succession always sounds rather repulsively, if the fundamental tone in the second harmony lies in the Base, and the fifth in the upper part, as in fig. 269. (Compare §§ 520 and 538).

(Fig. 269.)

(b.) Examples of the succession II—III, *i. e.* when the minor three-fold harmony of the second degree in a major key is followed by that of the third, are found in fig. 270, *i* and *k*.

(Fig. 270, i.)

*D: I II III IV III II I V<sup>7</sup> I*

(k.)

*II III*

Successions of this kind in the minor key are, for reasons already known (§ 150), inconceivable. If, however, we would imitate these in the minor key, we must borrow, to fill up the chasms, chords from the nearest related major key; as, *e. g.* in fig. 270, *l*.

(Fig. 270, l.)

*d : I   °II   F: I   II   I   d°II   I   V7   I*

But we shall find, in the doctrine of transition-chords and apparent-chords, that such passages as the one in fig. 270, *i* and *l*, above, often admit of being explained also as transitions.

(c.) The succession III—IV seldom occurs, and always has something odd and singular in its sound, as do all those successions in which the harmony III is concerned. (Compare § 243), fig. 270, *i*, 457, and 270½, *i*, *k*.

(Fig. 270½, *i*.) (k.)

I III IV V I V III IV V7 I

In the minor key, again, such a fundamental succession as this is not possible. (Compare 270, *l*, 457.)

(d.) The succession IV—V, or iv—V, occurs very frequently in almost every piece of music. Fig. 271.

(Fig. 271.)

IV V IV V IV V

(e.) Examples of the succession V—vi, or V—VI, are found in fig. 272 :

(Fig. 272, *i*.) (k.)

I V vi I V vi III

(Fig. 272, *l*.)

I V VI °II V VI V

(f.) The succession vi—°vii will scarcely occur except in sequences; *e. g.* fig. 273.

(Fig. 273.)

vi °vii

The succession VI— $^{\circ}\text{VII}$  is to be introduced in a minor key still more seldom, and, indeed, so far as I have investigated, never with good effect.

(g.) The successions  $^{\circ}\text{VII—I}$  and  $^{\circ}\text{VII—I}$  will hardly occur, since the ear will perceive the harmony  $^{\circ}\text{VII}$  in by far the most cases as  $\text{V}^7$  (with the omission of the fundamental tone), and hence will far more readily take the harmony to be  $\text{V}^7—I$ , than to be  $^{\circ}\text{VII—I}$ . (§ 243.)

(2.) *Of Progressions by Thirds, where a three-fold chord is followed by another three-fold chord in the same key, two degrees higher.*

(§ 244, No. 2.)

§ 246.

(a.) The succession I—III, *i. e.* when the three-fold chord of the first degree is followed by that of the third, as *e. g.* in fig. 274, *i—n*, but rarely occurs.

(Fig. 274, i.)                      (k.)                      (l.)                      (m.)

C : I    III    II    V    I    III    I    III    I    III

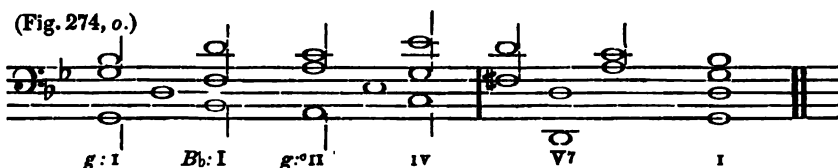
(n.)

G : I    III    II    IV    V<sup>7</sup>    I

Kirnberger\* would like to forbid it altogether. It truly sounds rather strange and unusual (compare § 243); but it may, for that very reason, if employed in the right place, be of very striking effect. Very much depends, as we see from the examples referred to, upon the different positions in which the one or the other chord appears, and upon the connection in which they both occur. (Compare also what was said in relation to the 20th and 21st measures of fig. 234, p. 384.)

The minor key affords no harmonic succession corresponding to the I—III, just mentioned; because, in a minor key, no harmony belongs to the third degree of the scale. And if, for the sake of carrying through a sequence in the minor key, or of copying a passage in the minor key, as *e. g.* that in fig. 274, *n*, above, we interpolate, say, the major three-fold chord **III**, in the place of the three-fold chord which is wanting on the third degree of the minor scale of *g*, as in fig. 274, *o*,

\* *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, II. Th. p. 13.

(Fig. 274, *c.*)

this is, as we know (§ 237), a transient digressive modulation. The reason why the ear pays so little attention to this, is the fact that the ear as it were instinctively infers upon what ground the chord  $Bb$  is inserted as a sort of patch, and therefore, without bestowing much attention upon it, at once unhesitatingly again takes the following  $G^{\circ}II$  as the harmony of the second degree of  $g$ -minor, and not as  $Bb:V7$ , nor as  $Bb:V7$  with the omission of the fundamental note. (Compare § 211 at the end.)

(*b.*) The succession  $II-IV$ , or  $^{\circ}II-IV$ , but rarely occurs: fig. 275; also fig. 274, *n.*, p. 459.

(Fig. 275.)



(*c.*) What was said in § 245, *c.*, p. 458, applies also here to the succession  $III-V$ . Fig. 275½.

(Fig. 275½.)



(*d.*) The succession  $IV-vi$ , or  $iv-VI$ , always sounds rather odd and strange, in whatever form or position it may be introduced, and it very rarely occurs. Fig. 276.

(Fig. 276.)



(*e.*) The succession  $V-^{\circ}VII$  is so equivocal and indefinite as only to appear to be some one in which the harmony  $^{\circ}VII$  occurs. Fig. 277:

(Fig. 277.)



For, the ear, which always explains to itself every harmonic succession in the simplest manner, will naturally, after it has once heard the major three-fold

chord  $\text{C}\sharp$  as a dominant harmony, incline to take the following chord  $[\text{b d f}]$  as the principal four-fold chord  $\text{C}\sharp^7$ , rather than as the diminished three-fold chord of the seventh degree; and that too for several reasons. *First*, the principal four-fold chord is in itself, as an essential harmony of the key, more natural and familiar to the ear than the secondary harmony of the seventh degree; *secondly*, the antecedent three-fold chord  $\text{C}\sharp$  is more nearly allied to the principal four-fold chord, also for the reason that both are situated on one and the same degree, the fundamental tone of the former being also the fundamental tone of the latter, the third of the one being also the third of the other, &c. On this account, moreover, these two harmonies are to some extent regarded as only one and the same (§ 142). In view of all this, it is very plain that an harmonic succession will never very readily strike the ear as really being  $\text{V}—\text{o}\text{VII}$ .

(*f*.) Examples of the succession  $\text{VI}—\text{I}$ , or  $\text{VI}—\text{I}$ , may be seen in fig. 278 :



(*g*.) What was said in § 245, at *g*, p. 459, applies also to the fundamental successions  $\text{o}\text{VII}—\text{II}$  and  $\text{o}\text{VII}—\text{o}\text{II}$ .

(3.) *Of Progressions by Fourths, in which a three-fold chord is followed by another three-fold chord in the same key, three degrees higher.*

(§ 244, No. 3.)

§ 247.

(*a*.) The succession  $\text{I}—\text{IV}$ , or  $\text{I}—\text{IV}$ , consisting of two of the most essential harmonies of the key, occurs, for that reason, with the utmost frequency; *e. g.* fig. 282, *i*;

(Fig. 282 *i*.)



especially in a similar way as the successions  $\text{I}—\text{II}$ , or  $\text{I}—\text{o}\text{II}$ , in such phrases as those in fig. 268, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*.

(Fig. 268, *p*.)

(*q*.)

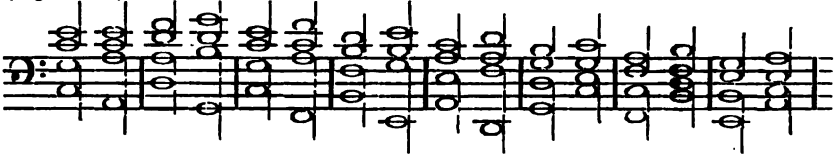
(*r*.)

(*s*.)



(b.) The succession  $\text{II—V}$ , or  $^{\circ}\text{II—V}$ , is very common: Fig. 279, *i*, and also fig. 268, *c, d, g, h*, p. 457.

(Fig. 279, *i*.)



(Fig. 268, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.)

I II I V II<sup>7</sup> I V IV I V °II<sup>7</sup> I V<sup>7</sup>

(n.) (o.)

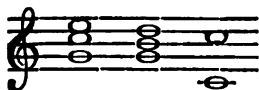
*Fundamental Base.*

7 7

Compare Fig. 140.

## REMARK.

It is worthy of remark, that, in many cases, successions of chords which common sense would recognize as nothing else than I—V, or I—V, still are not allowed to be regarded in that light by music-teachers. This is especially the fact in cases of the species just mentioned; *e. g.*



and generally in such as occur in fig. 268, i—o, above. They maintain, namely, that, in such phrases, the fundamental harmony of the fourth-sixth chord is the dominant harmony V, and that the fourth and sixth of the base tone are only so-called accidental dissonances, namely, suspensions of the third and fifth; though not subject to the laws of preparation and progression usually incident to dissonances. (See remark at the end of § 103, p. 236.)

For what reason it should be desirable to assume this, I am at a loss to conceive. In my opinion, it would be more natural and more simple to allow a chord, consisting of the tones [G c e], to be a C-chord, than, in despite of its elements, containing, as it does, only the very tones which constitute the harmony C, to call it C or C<sup>7</sup>, and to stamp two of these tones, under the most learned technical terms, as—dissonances, which, moreover, would even in this case be entirely anomalous, and, on account of their irregular attitude, would themselves again require an explanation. For, if the fourth and sixth, in the examples presented by fig. 268, pp. 457, 461, and above, were suspensions, how could they thus, in spite of the most essential attributes in the nature of suspensions, at one time move by diatonic degrees, and at another by skips, at one time upwards, and at another downwards? Where, moreover, can reasons be found to justify



this new irregularity? Here again recourse must necessarily be had to elliptic and catachretic resolutions, licenses, and other phrases of this sort, to relieve the difficulty and to give a plausible appearance to the absurd idea!

But why, for heaven's sake, all this troublesome and unnatural routine of puerile explanations!! Only let the harmonic succession [G c e]—[G b d] be, and be considered as being, I—V in *C*-major, and then nothing hinders its really being so and being so called!

(*b.*) The succession II—VI but rarely occurs; the succession  $\circ$ II—VI still more rarely; both, however, are most apt to occur in sequences. See, *e. g.* figs. 280 and 281.—Compare § 237, p. 426.

(Fig. 280, i.)

VI III II VI  $\circ$ VII

(*k.*)

*c*:I *g*:I *E*b:IV I *c*:IV I V7 I

(Fig. 281, i.)

I V II VI IV

(*k.*)

*c*:I *g*:I *E*b:IV I *c*:IV I V7 I

(*l.*)

I V II VI IV

(*m.*)

*c*:I *g*:I *E*b:IV I *c*:IV I V7 I

(c.) What was said in § 245 (c), p. 458, applies likewise to the succession III—<sup>o</sup>VII. Compare fig. 281 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

(Fig. 281 $\frac{1}{2}$ .)



(d.) The succession IV—I, IV—I, consisting, as it does, of two of the most essential harmonies of the key, occurs with extreme frequency. Examples may be found in fig. 282:

(Fig. 282, i.)



(Fig. 282, k.)



(Fig. 282, l.)



It will be recollected, among other things, that many pieces of music close with such successions of chords as those in fig. 282, l—o, above, particularly church pieces. There is something in an ending of this kind peculiarly grave, solemn, and imposing. The learned call such an ending a *Greek cadence*, and also a *plagal cadence*. We shall recur to this subject again, farther on (§ 306).

But the succession IV—I, or IV—I, frequently occurs also under another form and in another connection; namely, so that the harmony I or I appears in the second inversion, in the sixth-fourth position, whereupon the dominant harmony usually follows, and in this way arise the well-known phrases found in fig. 268, p, r, s, p. 461.

(e.) Examples of the succession V—II, or V—<sup>o</sup>II, are found in fig. 281, i, k, p. 464, and fig. 283:

(Fig. 283.)





(Fig. 284, *n*.)

(*b*.) The succession  $\text{II} - \text{°VII}$ , or  $\text{°II} - \text{°VII}$ , is always somewhat indefinite and equivocal, for the same reasons as were given above in § 246 (*e*), p. 460, in the case of the succession  $\text{V} - \text{°VII}$ : that is to say, the ear easily mistakes such a succession of chords for  $\text{II} - \text{V}^7$  or  $\text{°II} - \text{V}^7$ . This is less the case, however, when such an harmonic step occurs in an harmonic series; as, *e. g.* in fig. 284, *l* and *m*, above; for, in this case, the ear, having already become accustomed, in the course of the first four chords, to find the fundamental tone of the following chord every time a third lower, will also, in the example fig. 284, *m*, take the note  $\text{G}\sharp$  in the fifth chord as the fundamental tone, and hence will perceive the chord as  $\text{°G}\sharp^7$  and will not suspect the note  $\text{E}$  to be the fundamental tone nor the chord to be  $\text{E}\flat^7$  in the first inversion, with the omission of the fundamental tone. And as little likely would it be to take the chord  $\text{°b}$  for  $\text{E}\flat^7$ , in fig. 284, *l*, & *c*.

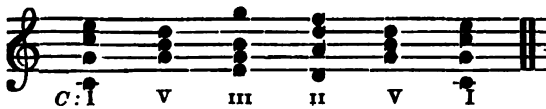
(*c*.) What was said in § 245 (*c*), p. 458, applies also to  $\text{III} - \text{I}$ .

(*d*.) Examples of the succession  $\text{IV} - \text{II}$ , or  $\text{IV} - \text{°II}$ , are found in fig. 284, *l*, *m*, p. 466, and in fig. 285.

(Fig. 285.)



(*e*.) The succession  $\text{V} - \text{III}$  can occur only in a major key, and not even then very commonly. Compare fig. 286, *i*.

(Fig. 286, *i*.)

This succession of chords can be copied in the minor key only by the interpolation of chords foreign to the scale of that key; as, *e. g.* in fig. 286, *k*, *l*. (Compare § 237.)

(Fig. 286, *k*.)

(l.)



(f.) Examples of the succession  $\text{vi—IV}$ , or  $\text{VI—iv}$ , are to be found in fig. 284, *l, m*, p. 466.

(g.) What was said in § 245 (*g*), p. 459, applies also to the succession  $^{\circ}\text{vii—iii}$ .

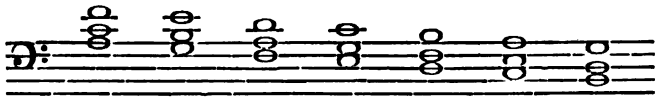
(6.) *Of Progressions by Sevenths or Under-seconds, where a three-fold chord is followed by another three-fold chord on the next lower degree.*

(§ 244, No. 6.)

§ 250.

(a.) The succession  $\text{I—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ , or  $\text{i—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ , properly occurs but seldom; or rather, whenever it occurs, our ear easily understands it as something else than  $\text{I—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ , or  $\text{i—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ . That is to say, it easily mistakes the chord  $^{\circ}\text{vii}$  for  $\text{V}^7$  with the omission of the fundamental tone, and accordingly understands such a succession of chords as being  $\text{I—V}^7$ , or  $\text{i—V}^7$ ; not only because this latter succession of harmonies is far more familiar to it than is the succession  $\text{I—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ , or  $\text{i—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ , but because the harmony  $\text{V}^7$ , as being one of the most essential of the key, is also more familiar to it than the secondary harmony  $^{\circ}\text{vii}$ . It is perhaps only in sequences that the ear can be brought to apprehend such an harmonic succession as  $[\text{e g c}][\text{d f b}]$ , or  $[\text{eb g c}][\text{d f b}]$  as  $\text{I—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$  or  $\text{i—}^{\circ}\text{vii}$ ; e. g. fig. 287:

(Fig. 287.)



because, being here once accustomed to hear a series of three-fold chords in the first inversion, and that too in a gradual descending progression by diatonic degrees, it will be already predisposed to understand the chord  $[\text{d f b}]$ , occurring in such a series, as the three-fold chord  $^{\circ}\text{b}$  in the first inversion.

(b.) The succession  $\text{ii—I}$ ,  $^{\circ}\text{ii—I}$ , which, in an inverted position of both chords, sounds perfectly well, as, e. g. in fig. 288, *i, k*,

(Fig. 288, *i*.)

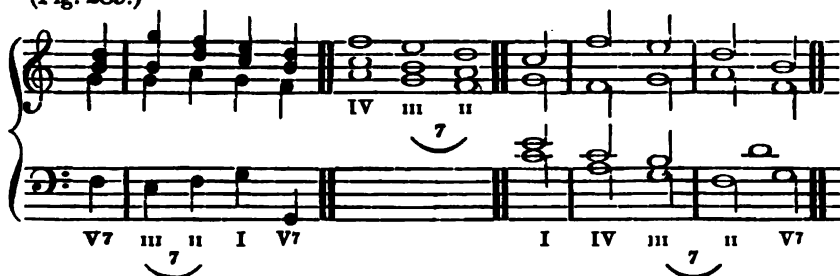
(*k*.)

sounds for the most part rather strangely, when both chords appear in their fundamental position, as in figs. 261 and 262, pp. 450 and 451.

One case of this succession, particularly worthy of remark, is that in which the harmony I or *i* occurs in the fourth-sixth position, which position of the tonic chord, as we know (§ 248, *a*, p. 462), usually brings after it the dominant harmony; or, in other words, in which I or *i* in the second inversion is usually followed by V or *V*<sup>7</sup>, giving birth to the well-known phrase, fig. 268, *a*, p. 457, &c.

(*c.*) Section 245 (*c.*), p. 458, applies also to the succession III—II. Fig. 289:

(Fig. 289.)

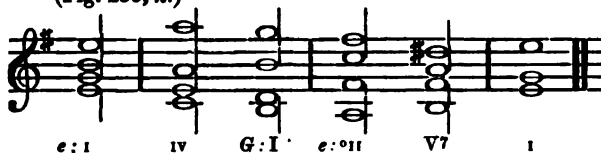


(*d.*) As it respects the succession IV—III, see fig. 290, *i.*

(Fig. 290, *i.*)



(Fig. 290, *k.*)



In the minor key, for well-known reasons, there is no harmonic succession which corresponds to the above; and, therefore, if we would imitate a passage of this species in the minor key, we must have recourse again to transient digressive modulations; as, *e. g.* in fig. 290, *k*, above. (Compare § 237.)

(*e.*) The succession V—IV, or V—*iv*, is, in some respects, the reverse of the before-mentioned successions IV—V, or *iv*—V. The former, however, does not occur quite so frequently as the latter. Fig. 291.

(Fig. 291.)



(*f.*) Examples of the succession *vi*—V, or VI—V, are to be found in fig. 292, *i*, *k*.

(Fig. 292, i.) (k.)

I V VI V I °vII VI V i V7 VI V i V VI V

(g.) Section 245 (g), p. 459, applies also to the successions °vII—VI and °vII—VI.

(B.) OF THOSE HARMONIC STEPS IN WHICH A THREE-FOLD CHORD IS FOLLOWED BY A FOUR-FOLD CHORD BELONGING TO THE SAME KEY.

### § 251.

The possible cases of this class are as follow :

#### (1.) *Successions by Primes.*

In a major key :

I—I<sup>7</sup>, II—II<sup>7</sup>, III—III<sup>7</sup>, IV—IV<sup>7</sup>, V—V<sup>7</sup>, VI—VI<sup>7</sup>, °vII—°vII<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

—, °II—°II<sup>7</sup>, —, IV—IV<sup>7</sup>, V—V<sup>7</sup>, VI—VI<sup>7</sup>, —.

#### (2.) *Successions by Seconds.*

In a major key :

I—II<sup>7</sup>, II—III<sup>7</sup>, III—IV<sup>7</sup>, IV—V<sup>7</sup>, V—VI<sup>7</sup>, VI—°vII<sup>7</sup>, °vII—I<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

I—°II<sup>7</sup>, —, —, IV—V<sup>7</sup>, V—VI<sup>7</sup>, —, —

#### (3.) *Successions by Thirds.*

In a major key :

I—III<sup>7</sup>, II—IV<sup>7</sup>, III—V<sup>7</sup>, IV—VI<sup>7</sup>, V—°vII<sup>7</sup>, VI—I<sup>7</sup>, °vII—II<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

—, °II—IV<sup>7</sup>, —, IV—VI<sup>7</sup>, —, —, °vII—°II<sup>7</sup>.

#### (4.) *Successions by Fourths.*

In a major key :

I—IV<sup>7</sup>, II—V<sup>7</sup>, III—VI<sup>7</sup>, IV—°vII<sup>7</sup>, V—I<sup>7</sup>, VI—II<sup>7</sup>, °vII—III<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

I—IV<sup>7</sup>, °II—V<sup>7</sup>, —, —, —, VI—°II<sup>7</sup>, —.

#### (5.) *Successions by Fifths.*

In a major key :

I—V<sup>7</sup>, II—VI<sup>7</sup>, III—°vII<sup>7</sup>, IV—I<sup>7</sup>, V—II<sup>7</sup>, VI—III<sup>7</sup>, °vII—IV<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

I—V<sup>7</sup>, °II—VI<sup>7</sup>, —, —, V—°II<sup>7</sup>, —, °vII—IV<sup>7</sup>.

#### (6.) *Successions by Sixths.*

In a major key :

I—VI<sup>7</sup>, II—°vII<sup>7</sup>, III—I<sup>7</sup>, IV—II<sup>7</sup>, V—III<sup>7</sup>, VI—IV<sup>7</sup>, °vII—V<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

I—VI<sup>7</sup>, —, —, IV—°II<sup>7</sup>, —, VI—IV<sup>7</sup>, °vII—V<sup>7</sup>.

(7.) *Successions by Sevenths.*

In a major key :

I— $\circ$ VII<sup>7</sup>, II—I<sup>7</sup>, III—II<sup>7</sup>, IV—III<sup>7</sup>, V—IV<sup>7</sup>, VI—V<sup>7</sup>,  $\circ$ VII—VI<sup>7</sup> ;

In a minor key :

———, ———, ———, ———, V—IV<sup>7</sup>, VI—V<sup>7</sup>,  $\circ$ VII—VI<sup>7</sup>.

Of all these fundamental steps, we will only remark, in general, that a preparation of the seventh can be had only in the case of those which form progressions of seconds, fourths, or sixths (§ 104, p. 236), since it is only in these that the tone which constitutes the seventh of the second harmony is contained also in the foregoing harmony. For this reason, the progression of a third—say II—IV<sup>7</sup>, *e. g.* that is, a progression in which the three-fold chord of the second degree in a major key is followed by the major four-fold chord of the fourth degree, cannot well be employed ; or, in other words, the major four-fold chord of the fourth degree cannot be used after the three-fold chord of the second degree, &c.

Here our investigation of the merits of all these harmonic successions individually must for the present terminate.

We will just say, of the succession I—V<sup>7</sup>, or I—V<sup>7</sup>, however, that it frequently occurs under relations similar to those which were above predicated of the succession I—V, or I—V (§ 248).

(C.) OF THE HARMONIC STEPS IN WHICH A FOUR-FOLD CHORD IS FOLLOWED BY A THREE-FOLD CHORD BELONGING TO THE SAME KEY. (CADENCES.)

§ 252.

Every harmonic succession of this third species, *every harmonic step in which a four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord belonging to the same key*, is called a *cadence*.

A general view of all the conceivable fundamental successions of this class is afforded by the following table.

(1.) *Successions by Primes.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—I, II<sup>7</sup>—II, III<sup>7</sup>—III, IV<sup>7</sup>—IV, V<sup>7</sup>—V, VI<sup>7</sup>—VI,  $\circ$ VII<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ VII ;

In a minor key :

———,  $\circ$ II<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ II, ———, IV<sup>7</sup>—IV, V<sup>7</sup>—V, VI<sup>7</sup>—VI, ———.

(2.) *Successions by Seconds.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—II, II<sup>7</sup>—III, III<sup>7</sup>—IV, IV<sup>7</sup>—V, V<sup>7</sup>—VI, VI<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ VII,  $\circ$ VII<sup>7</sup>—I ;

In a minor key :

———, ———, ———, IV<sup>7</sup>—V, V<sup>7</sup>—VI, VI<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ VII, ———.

(3.) *Successions by Thirds.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—III, II<sup>7</sup>—IV, III<sup>7</sup>—V, IV<sup>7</sup>—VI, V<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ VII, VI<sup>7</sup>—I,  $\circ$ VII<sup>7</sup>—II ;

In a minor key :

———,  $\circ$ II<sup>7</sup>—IV, ———, IV<sup>7</sup>—VI, V<sup>7</sup>— $\circ$ VII, VI<sup>7</sup>—I, ———.



(4.) *Successions by Fourths.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—IV, II<sup>7</sup>—V, III<sup>7</sup>—VI, IV<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, V<sup>7</sup>—I, VI<sup>7</sup>—II, <sup>o</sup>VII<sup>7</sup>—III ;

In a minor key :

——, <sup>o</sup>II<sup>7</sup>—V, ——, IV<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, V<sup>7</sup>—I, VI<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>II, ——.(5.) *Successions by Fifths.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—V, II<sup>7</sup>—VI, III<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, IV<sup>7</sup>—I, V<sup>7</sup>—II, VI<sup>7</sup>—III, <sup>o</sup>VII<sup>7</sup>—IV ;

In a minor key :

——, <sup>o</sup>II<sup>7</sup>—VI, ——, IV<sup>7</sup>—I, V<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>II, ——, ——.(6.) *Successions by Sixths.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—VI, II<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, III<sup>7</sup>—I, IV<sup>7</sup>—II, V<sup>7</sup>—III, VI<sup>7</sup>—IV, <sup>o</sup>VII<sup>7</sup>—V ;

In a minor key :

——, <sup>o</sup>II<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, ——, IV<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>II, ——, VI<sup>7</sup>—IV, ——.(7.) *Successions by Sevenths.*

In a major key :

I<sup>7</sup>—<sup>o</sup>VII, II<sup>7</sup>—I, III<sup>7</sup>—II, VI<sup>7</sup>—III, V<sup>7</sup>—IV, VI<sup>7</sup>—V, <sup>o</sup>VII<sup>7</sup>—VI ;

In a minor key :

——, <sup>o</sup>II<sup>7</sup>—I, ——, ——, V<sup>7</sup>—IV, VI<sup>7</sup>—V, ——.

We will still farther divide these different harmonic successions into two classes, according as the four-fold chord which is followed by a three-fold chord is

(1.) A *principal* four-fold chord, or

(2.) A *secondary* four-fold chord.

The former, *i. e.* those harmonic successions in which a *principal* four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord belonging to the same key, we will denominate *principal* cadences ; whereas, those in which a *secondary* four-fold chord is followed by such a three-fold chord, we will call *secondary* cadences.—Thus, the harmonic step in fig. 293, *i*,

(Fig. 293, *i.*)      (*k.*)      (*l.*)      (*m.*)      (*n.*)      (*o.*)      (*p.*)

V<sup>7</sup> I IV<sup>7</sup> <sup>o</sup>VII III<sup>7</sup> VI II<sup>7</sup> V I<sup>7</sup> IV <sup>o</sup>VII<sup>7</sup> III VI<sup>7</sup> II

is a *principal* cadence ; while those in fig. 293, *k, l, m, n, o, p*, are all *secondary* cadences.

## § 253.

In respect to this whole class of harmonic steps, it is very perceptible that every four-fold chord, whether principal or secondary, is most naturally followed by that of a three-fold chord which is situated a fourth higher, or a fifth lower, than the four-fold chord. In other words, after a four-fold chord, the ear nat

naturally expects a step of a fourth to the three-fold chord of the tone which is a fourth higher than the fundamental tone of the four-fold chord. All the cadences in No. 4 of the foregoing section, and those occurring in fig. 293, p. 472, are of this species.

Now, inasmuch as cadences of this species most perfectly answer the expectation of the ear, and therefore are the most natural, we will call them *natural* cadences.

But in case a principal or secondary four-fold chord is followed by any *other* three-fold chord, belonging to the same key, than the one which is a fourth higher, as, *e. g.* in fig. 294,

(Fig. 294, i) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.) (o.)

C: V7 VI a: V7 VI C: V7 IV a: V7 IV IV7 V IV7 V

even then indeed, according to our definition of cadences, the harmonic succession is always a cadence; not, however, the one which, as being the most natural, the ear had expected, but one, on the contrary, which is comparatively unnatural; and accordingly, since the ear finds its expectation deceived and disappointed by such a succession of harmonies, we apply the term *false* to all cadences of this species.

#### § 254.

According to these distinctions, there are, in all, four different sorts of cadences, namely:

- (1.) *Principal* cadences (as in fig. 293, i, p. 472, and in fig. 294, i, k, l, m, above); and of these, moreover, two varieties: namely, either
  - (a.) *Natural principal* cadences (as in fig. 293, i, p. 472), or
  - (b.) *False principal* cadences (as in fig. 294, i to m, above);
- (2.) *Secondary* cadences (as in fig. 293, k, and those which follow, p. 472, and in fig. 294, n, o, above); and two varieties again of these: namely, either,
  - (a.) *Natural Secondary* cadences, as in fig. 293, k, &c. p. 472), or
  - (b.) *False secondary* cadences (as in fig. 294, n, o, above).

We will now take a more particular view of all these different species of cadences, after having previously remarked, that the word *cadence* has a different meaning with some writers from that in which we apply it. With some, namely, it has a far more *restricted* signification, being applied only to those harmonic successions which we denominate natural principal cadences ( $V^7-I$ , or  $V^7-I$ ). Others, on the contrary, employ it in a more *extended* sense than even we ourselves, making it mean *every harmonic succession*.—This is especially the case in the more modern French writers; *e. g.* *Momigny, Berton, &c.* Others

again (e. g. *Koch*, in his *Manual of Composition*, §§ 102 and 179) understand by this term what we shall hereafter become acquainted with under the name of *perfect close*. And still others connect with the expression *cadence* about the same idea as ourselves (e. g. *Rousseau*, in his *Dictionary of Music*, &c.).

Still less do authors agree in respect to the use of the expressions *natural cadence*, *false cadence*, *evitaded* or *shunned cadence*, *interrupted cadence*, &c. —terms which, for the most part, each individual employs in a different way from others.

In order to avoid such a confusion of terms in *our own* theory at least, it is important to request readers, in the perusal of this book, most carefully to retain the ideas and meanings of technical terms which have been given in the foregoing paragraphs.

---

#### REMARK.

There is, generally speaking, always a serious difficulty in the use of technical terms which have already been used by others in a different sense, as is actually the case not only with the expressions *cadence*, *evitaded cadence*, *false cadence*, and the like, but with almost all the technical terms employed in music. It is always to be apprehended, in such a case, that each reader, according as he has hitherto been accustomed to attach the one or the other of the different significations in use to such a technical word, will continue still to understand by it the same thing as before, and hence that, of three or four different readers, each will get a different idea from the same technical term, and none, perhaps, will attach to it the real meaning intended by the author.

With this view of the matter, one would almost advise every scientific writer to form for himself an entirely new terminology, and to furnish himself with as many new technical terms as he has ideas of his own to express.

It is only in pursuance of a disposition to retain, as far as possible, every thing already extant, in all cases where it is at all admissible, and also to avoid, to the utmost extent, the appearance of a fondness for innovation, that I have introduced so few new technical terms as I have, and have used, as far as possible, every existing technical word in the sense which has heretofore been most usually attached to it.

---

#### (1.) *Principal Cadences.*

##### § 255.

A principal cadence, as we have already observed, is every succession of a three-fold chord to a *principal* four-fold chord, in the same key. The principal cadence is of two species: namely, *natural* principal cadence, and *false* principal cadence.

##### (a.) *Natural Principal Cadence.*

A *natural principal cadence* is that step in which the dominant or principal four-fold chord is followed by the tonic harmony (that is, the major three-fold chord in the major key, and the minor three-fold chord in the minor key); or, more briefly, it is the harmonic succession  $V^7—I$ , or  $V^7—I$ .

It has something in it that is peculiarly decisive, definite, and satisfactory to the ear. The ground of this fact may, perhaps, lie in the circumstance that this

succession consists of two of the most essential harmonies of the key (§ 123, p. 258), the first of which, moreover, is the least equivocal of the whole (§ 158, p. 303), while the last is the tonic itself.

It is the most satisfactory and determinate when the two harmonies of which it consists appear in their fundamental position,—particularly when the tonic note in the second chord lies uppermost also, as in fig. 295, *i*, *k*, *l*, *m* :

(Fig. 295, *i*.)                      (*k*.)                      (*l*.)                      (*m*.)

C: V7    I                      a: V7    I

It is less so when this is not the case, as in fig. 295, *n*—*q* :

(Fig. 295, *n*.)                      (*o*.)                      (*p*.)                      (*q*.)

These cadences lose still more of their determinateness, when the harmonies of which they consist, or even only one of these harmonies, appear in an *inverted* position, *e. g.* in such as those in fig. 296, *a*—*f*,

(Fig. 296, *a*.)                      (*b*.)                      (*c*.)                      (*d*.)                      (*e*.)                      (*f*.)

or when a ninth is added to the principal four-fold chord, as in fig. 296, *g*—*n* :

(Fig. 296, *g*.)                      (*h*.)                      (*i*.)                      (*k*.)                      (*l*.)                      (*m*.)                      (*n*.)

Indeed, the example in fig. 296, *m*, shows that a cadence in which the principal four-fold chord appears with a minor ninth in the fourth inversion (§ 87, p. 200), may almost be considered as sounding positively ill. And such a cadence in a major key, as, *e. g.* in fig. 296, *n*, would be still worse, for reasons already made known in § 80.

We may denominate the more positive and perfect cadences of the first-mentioned species *perfect* cadences, while we designate the less firm and decided cadences of the latter class by the term *imperfect*. (Compare also § 304.)

(b.) *False Principal Cadences.*

## § 256.

The above-mentioned class of principal cadences is the most natural of all ; it answers the most perfectly that expectation of the ear which is awakened by every principal four-fold chord.

A principal four-fold chord may also be followed by another three-fold chord than that of the tonic. But as such a fundamental succession is always less natural than the natural cadence (because the ear, after hearing the harmony  $V^7$ , always naturally expects the tonic harmony, and, accordingly, if another three-fold harmony appears in its stead, it finds itself disappointed in this expectation), all those harmonic steps in which a principal four-fold chord is followed by any other three-fold chord than that of the tonic itself, even though it belong to the same key, are called *false cadences*.

These progressions are often named also *false closes* and *interrupted cadences*. But we will avoid this last appellation, as being equivocal, since other music-teachers apply the same name again to an entirely different species of harmonic progression, which we shall recognise under the term *evitaded* or *avoided* cadences.

## § 257.

A false principal cadence is, accordingly, *that harmonic step in which a principal four-fold chord is followed by some other three-fold chord than the tonic, though belonging to the same key.* Thus,

In a major key :

$V^7 - VI,$	$V^7 - \text{°}VII,$	$V^7 - II,$	$V^7 - III,$	$V^7 - IV;$
$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{\cdot 2.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{3.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{5.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{6.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{\cdot 7.}$

In a minor key :

$V^7 - VI,$	$V^7 - \text{°}VII,$	$V^7 - \text{°}II,$	—	$V^7 - IV.$
$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{\cdot 2.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{3.}$	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{5.}$		$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{\cdot 7.}$

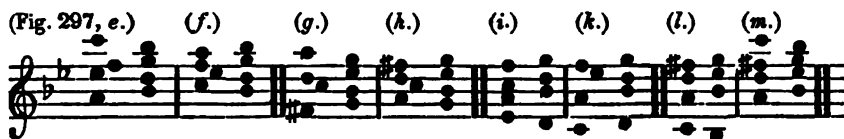
One less, again, in the minor key than in the major, because no harmony is situated on the third degree in a minor key.

The most usual species of false principal cadence is that which forms the step of a second. Thus, in a major key,  $V^7 - VI$ ; and in a minor key,  $V^7 - VI$ , fig. 297, *a-d* :

(Fig. 297, a.)                      (b.)                      (c.)                      (d.)

It occurs in this and similar forms very frequently ; more rarely and with less

happy effect in the transformed state of chords, *e. g.* in inversions, as in fig. 297, *e—m*,

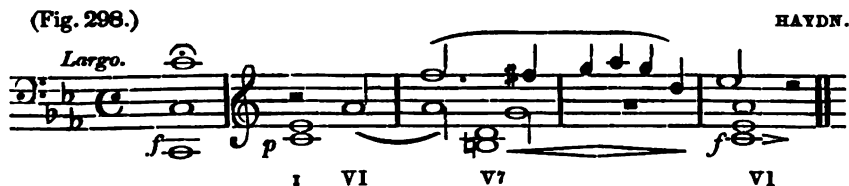


or with a ninth added to the principal four-fold chord, as in fig. 297, *n—v*.



Many of these examples sound less disagreeably, only for the reason that the ear may interpret them to itself in another manner than as false cadences: namely, either as digressive modulations, effected by the aid of the sixth-fourth position, as in fig. 297, *m*, or as mere transition chords, as in fig. 297, *r*.

Sometimes, however, such false cadences admit of being introduced with happy effect even in the inversions. A very effective example of this species is furnished by *Joseph Haydn*, immediately at the commencement of his overture to the *Creation* (fig. 298);



where both harmonies appear in the first inversion. Another example of such a false cadence, where the principal four-fold chord occurs in the second inversion, is exhibited in fig. 299—



and with equal felicity is the harmony VI in the first inversion twice introduced in the example, fig. 300.



gression would then be  $A:V^7$  to  $IV$ . Or we might regard the  $\text{B}^{\flat}$ -harmony of the last measure as  $I$  of the original and still unforgotten key  $D$ -major, (according to § 211, p. 358), and in this case the harmonic progression would be either  $\text{f}^{\sharp}V^7$  to  $D:I$ , or  $A:V^7$  to  $D:I$ .

Further examples of this species of false cadences are afforded by figures 302—304.

(Fig. 302, a.) (b.) (c.)

*Slow.*

I V7 VI

(Fig. 303, b.) (c.) (d.)

(e.) (f.)

(Fig. 304, a.) (b.)

V7 VI

### § 258.

The remaining possible cases of false cadences are far less frequent than those already mentioned; they are as follow:

In a major key:  $V^7-\text{°}VII$ ,  $V^7-II$ ,  $V^7-III$ ,  $V^7-IV$ ;—and

In a minor key:  $V^7-\text{°}VII$ ,  $V^7-\text{°}II$ , —,  $V^7-IV$ .

In the first place, as it respects  $V^7-\text{°}VII$ , whether in a major or in a minor key, we cannot properly speak of such an harmonic succession at all; for when the ear has once heard  $V^7$ , *e. g.*  $\text{C}^{\sharp 7}$ , it is sure to take the following diminished three-fold chord  $\text{°}B$  as the principal four-fold chord  $\text{C}^{\sharp 7}$  continued, and thus as  $V^7$ , in preference to regarding it as actually the diminished three-fold chord  $\text{°}B$ ,  $\text{°}VII$ .

What has been said of the harmonic succession  $V-\text{°}VII$  in § 246 (e), p. 460, applies here in a still stronger sense.





In fig. 308 also, we find this harmonic succession employed, indeed, with very striking effect.

(Fig. 308.)

HAYDN.



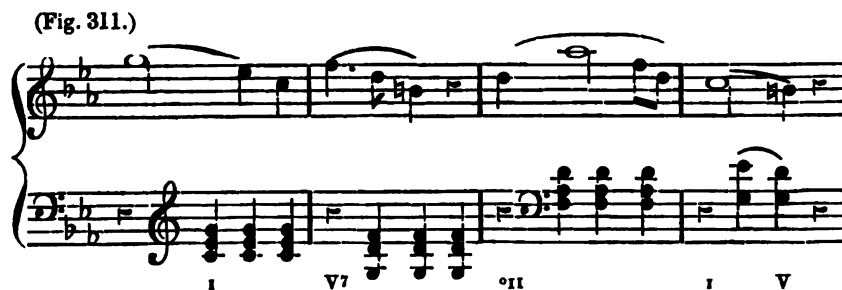
Farther on, we shall advert to the question, whether, in order to explain this last example, so as, first, to justify its succession of harmonies and its conduct of parts, and then to find it classical and of reputable merit, it really requires such artificial suppositions, fictions, and ellipses, as those which the author of an essay in No. 26 of the *Leipsic General Musical Journal*, for the year 1811, conceives himself obliged to furnish. To say the least, I find nothing in it which contradicts any *legitimate* rule, and of course nothing which should have in the first place given occasion for so elaborate an explanation and defence.

Examples of the false cadence  $V^7 - ^\circ II$  are found in fig. 309.

(Fig. 309.)



All the harmonic successions of this class, moreover, do not amount to much; for here too the ear naturally takes the diminished three-fold chord  $^\circ b$  as the harmony  $Q^7$  continued, though with the omission of the fundamental and third and with the addition of the minor ninth. This species of harmonic succession, however, may also perhaps sometimes be employed with good effect; as, *e. g.* in figs. 310 and 311.



## § 260.

The false cadence  $V^7-II$  always sounds rather foreign. One obvious reason for this is found in the fact, that this succession contains the three-fold chord of the  $III^{rd}$  degree—a chord quite uncommon in itself. Fig. 312.



In fig. 313,



the same harmony appears with a ninth added to the principal four-fold chord. But few of these successions of chords sound well, and these few only because the ear, as already observed, can construe them into something else. Not one whit better are the examples which we find laid down without hesitation in *Koch's Manual of Harmony* (*Handbuch der Harmonie*), § 187. Fig. 314.

(Fig. 314.)

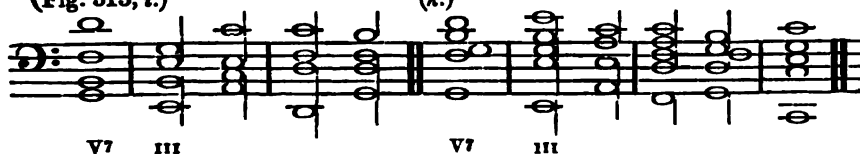
KOCH.



Other connections and circumstances, however, may be found in which the succession  $V^7 - III$ , though indeed not common, still is far from sounding disagreeably, as, e. g. fig. 315; especially if, by taking rather a slow movement, we give the ear time to adjust itself to the succession.—

(Fig. 315, i.)

(k.)



(Fig. 315, l.)

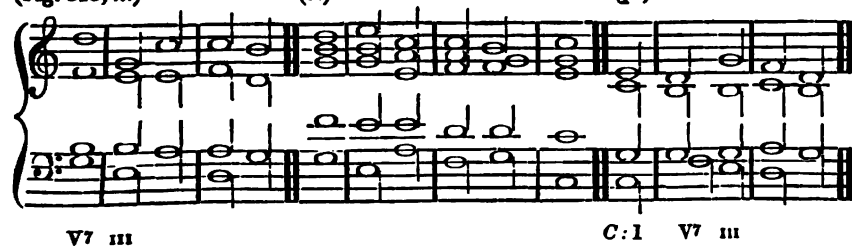
(m.)



(Fig. 315, n.)

(o.)

(p.)



We find this harmonic succession employed in a similar manner, with happy effect, in fig. 316.

(Fig. 316.)

*Andante.*

VOGLER'S SAMORI.

Ver - folgt vom Glü - cke, als

Kind von hier ver - bannt, als

I vi ii I V 7

iii vi ii V7 I

A similar example is found in fig. 317.

(Fig. 317.)

C. M. VON WEBER.

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

V7

ff 3

## § 261.

Examples of the cadence  $V^7-IV$ , or  $V^7-iv$ , in which, namely, a principal four-fold chord is followed by the three-fold chord of the fourth degree, are found in fig. 318; of  $V^7-IV$  in *a-m*, and of  $V^7-iv$  in *n-y*.

(Fig. 318, a.)

(b.)

(c.)

(d.)

(e.)

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

V7

ff 3

(f.)

(g.)

(h.)

(i.)

(k.)

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

Die Ra - che ge - lingt! Tri - umph, die Ra - che ge - lingt

V7

ff 3

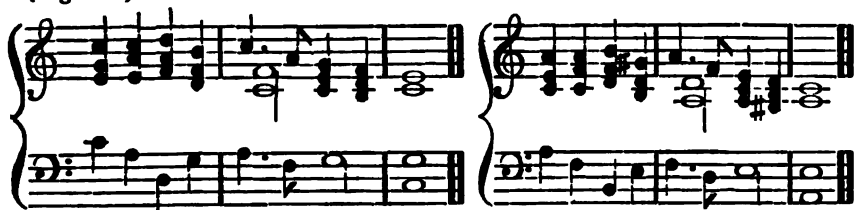


All these successions too are of doubtful merit, and it is only when they are employed with care and circumspection that they may occasionally perhaps be of good effect, as in figs. 319—321.

(Fig. 319.)



(Fig 320.)



(Fig. 321.)



The example already quoted in fig. 301, p. 478, may also, as remarked in the end of § 257, p. 478, be regarded as such a succession of harmonies.

(2.) *Secondary Cadences.*

## § 262.

We denominate that harmonic step a secondary cadence, in which a secondary four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord belonging to the same key.

Secondary cadences, like their prototype—the principal cadences, divide themselves into *natural* secondary cadences, and *false* secondary cadences.

(a.) *Natural Secondary Cadences.*

## § 263.

In like manner as every principal four-fold chord is most naturally followed by that three-fold chord which is situated three degrees higher (§ 253), so also every secondary four-fold chord is most naturally followed by the three-fold chord which is situated three degrees higher, and which belongs likewise to the same key.

A *natural* secondary cadence is accordingly that harmonic succession in which a secondary four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord, belonging to the same key and situated a fourth higher; or, in other words, in which a secondary four-fold chord is succeeded by the step of a fourth in the same key to the three-fold chord situated a fourth higher than itself. Such is the case in figs. 322—324.

(Fig. 322.)



(Fig. 323.)



(Fig. 324, a.)



(b.)



(c.)



(d.)



(e.)



(f.)



C: I IV<sup>7</sup> °v II III<sup>7</sup> VI II<sup>7</sup> V I<sup>7</sup> IV °v II<sup>7</sup> III VI<sup>7</sup> II

(Fig. 324, g.)



(Fig. 324, k.)



(Fig. 324, i.)



(Fig. 324, k.)

(l.)



(Fig. 324, m.)

(n.)



(Fig. 324, o.)



(Fig. 324, p.)

(q.)



(Fig. 324, r.)

(s.)





(Fig. 324, t.)

(u.)



(Fig. 324, v.)

(w.)

(x.)



(Fig. 324, y.)

(z.)

(zz.)

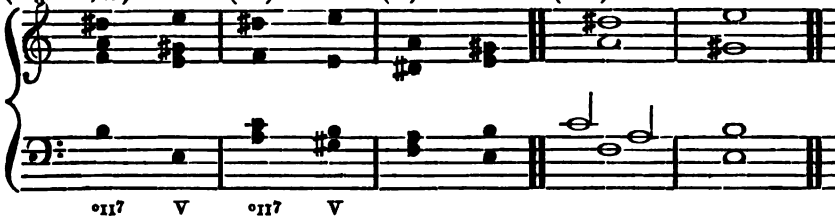


(Fig. 324, ii.)

(kk.)

(ll.)

(mm.)



(nn.)

(oo.)



The following table exhibits a synoptical view of all possible harmonic steps of this species :

In a major key :					
$I^7-IV,$	$II^7-V,$	$III^7-VI,$	$IV^7-^{\circ}VII,$	$VI^7-II,$	$^{\circ}VII^7-III;$
$\cdot 4$	$\cdot 4$	$\cdot 4$	$4\cdot$	$\cdot 4$	$\cdot 4$
In a minor key :					
———,	$^{\circ}II^7-V,$	———,	$IV^7-^{\circ}VII,$	$VI^7-^{\circ}II,$	———.
	$\cdot 4$		$4\cdot$	$4\cdot$	

(Thus again fewer in the minor key than in the major.)

#### § 264.

It is to be particularly remarked of the cadence  $^{\circ}II^7-V$ , that the four-fold chord with minor fifth contained in it, is, as we know, frequently transformed by the elevation of the third, and in such a case usually occurs also with a ninth ; as, *e. g.* in fig. 324, *ii—nn*, p. 488.

We may here take occasion to examine more minutely and fully what, at an earlier period, we could only allude to (§ 148, No. 7, p. 284) ; namely, that such an elevation of the third is the peculiar property of that four-fold chord which is situated on the second degree of a minor key. The proof of this lies in the fact that this species of transformation is so natural to that four-fold chord with minor fifth which occurs in the harmonic succession  $^{\circ}II^7-V$  (*e. g.* in the succession  $^{\circ}b^7-\mathfrak{E}$  in *a*-minor) ; but not to that which occurs in the succession  $^{\circ}VII^7-III$  (*e. g.* in the succession  $^{\circ}b^7-\mathfrak{E}$  in *C*-major) ; since the ear, after hearing the chord  $^{\circ}b^7$ , transformed by the elevation of the third, always expects, not the *minor* three-fold chord  $\mathfrak{E}$ , found in the previous key *C*-major, but rather very decidedly the *major* three-fold chord  $\mathfrak{E}$ , foreign to the previous key and peculiar to the key of *a*-minor (compare fig. 324, *nn* and *oo*, p. 488) ; a clear proof that the ear takes the harmony  $^{\circ}b^7$ , immediately upon hearing it with the elevated third, not as a three-fold chord of the seventh degree in a major key, but as *a*: $^{\circ}II^7$  (compare § 202) ; and hence that the elevation of its third is really a characteristic mark of *that* four-fold chord with minor fifth which belongs to the second degree of a minor key. (Compare figs. 123—140, pp. 208—236.)

The fact that harmonic combinations sometimes transiently occur in passages belonging to a major key which [harmonic combinations] appear like a chord of the above-mentioned species, while in fact they have arisen in entirely another way, namely, by lowering the fifth of the dominant chord of transition, has already been adverted to in § 94, p. 214.

#### § 265.

In like manner as the principal cadences are less perfect in the inversions, than they are in the fundamental position, so it is also with the secondary cadences. They are particularly imperfect when the four-fold chord appears in the second inversion, as in fig. 324, *g*, p. 486. They are far better in the first inversion, as in fig. 324, *h*, p. 487 ; or even in the third, as in fig. 324, *i*, p. 487.

Moreover, the three-fold chord which follows the four-fold chord appears better also in the fundamental position, than in an inversion, particularly the second inversion, as in fig. 324, *k*, *l*, p. 487.

We have only to observe in respect to the peculiarity of the cadence  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7-\text{V}$ , that when the first chord in it occurs with an elevated third, the position of the second inversion in such a case does not appear at all imperfect. (See § 91, at B. p. 211).

Many other examples of natural secondary cadences are to be found in figs. 146—153, pp. 237, 242—247.

(b.) *False Secondary Cadences.*

§ 266.

A *false secondary cadence* is (according to § 253) that harmonic step in which a secondary four-fold chord is followed by some other three-fold chord than that which is situated three degrees higher than the secondary four-fold chord. All possible cases of this species are presented by the following table:

In a major key:

$\text{I}^{\sharp}-\text{I}$ ,	$\text{I}^{\sharp}-\text{II}$ ,	$\text{I}^{\sharp}-\text{III}$ ,	$\text{I}^{\sharp}-\text{V}$ ,	$\text{I}^{\sharp}-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{I}^{\sharp}-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ;
$\text{II}^7-\text{II}$ ,	$\text{II}^7-\text{III}$ ,	$\text{II}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{II}^7-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{II}^7-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$\text{II}^7-\text{I}$ ;
$\text{III}^7-\text{III}$ ,	$\text{III}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{III}^7-\text{V}$ ,	$\text{III}^7-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$\text{III}^7-\text{I}$ ,	$\text{III}^7-\text{II}$ ;
$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{V}$ ,	$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{I}$ ,	$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{II}$ ,	$\text{IV}^{\sharp}-\text{III}$ ;
$\text{VI}^7-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{VI}^7-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$\text{VI}^7-\text{I}$ ,	$\text{VI}^7-\text{III}$ ,	$\text{VI}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{VI}^7-\text{V}$ ;
$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-\text{I}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-\text{II}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-\text{V}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{VII}^7-\text{VI}$ .
1	2	3	5	6	7

In a minor key:

$^{\circ}\text{II}^7-^{\circ}\text{II}$ ,	—	$^{\circ}\text{II}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{II}^7-\text{VI}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{II}^7-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$^{\circ}\text{II}^7-\text{I}$ ;
$\text{IV}^7-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{IV}^7-\text{V}$ ,	$\text{IV}^7-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{IV}^7-\text{I}$ ,	$\text{IV}^7-^{\circ}\text{II}$ ,	—
$\text{VI}^{\sharp}-\text{VI}$ ,	$\text{VI}^{\sharp}-^{\circ}\text{VII}$ ,	$\text{VI}^{\sharp}-\text{I}$ ,	—	$\text{VI}^{\sharp}-\text{IV}$ ,	$\text{VI}^{\sharp}-\text{V}$ .
1	2	3	5	6	7

§ 267.

All this collection of harmonic successions forms rather an unfruitful field, since it is but seldom that a cadence of this sort can be introduced with good effect. Proof of this fact is afforded even by those examples of such successions which are quoted in books of instruction; *e. g.* in *Koch*\*, figs. 325—327:

(Fig. 325.)

KOCH.

V7 VI IV<sup>♯</sup> V III<sup>7</sup> IV

\* In his *Handbuch der Harmonie*, § 187.

(Fig. 326.)



(Fig. 327.)

KOCH.



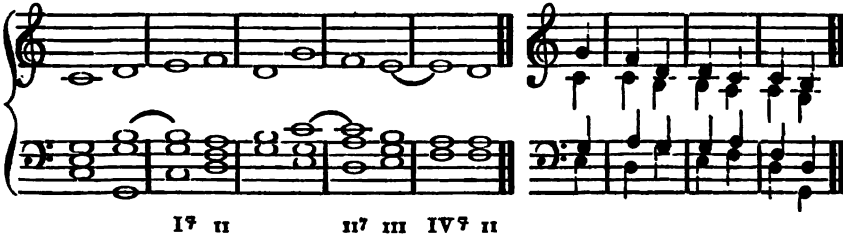
KOCH.



Such harmonic successions might better be used, if used at all, in such forms as are found in figs. 328—331:

(Fig. 328.)

(Fig. 329.)

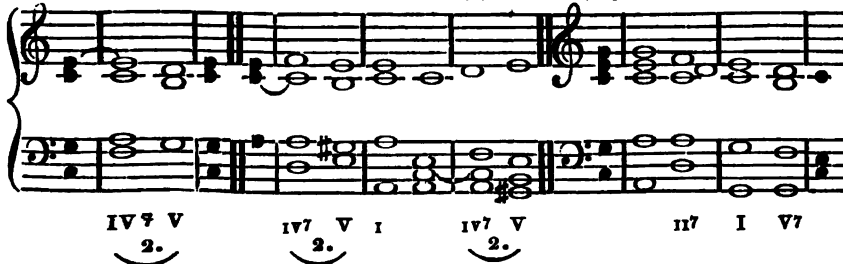


(Fig. 330, i.)

(k.)

(l.)

(Fig. 331.)



## § 268.

The harmonic succession  $\text{II}^7$ —I, or  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ —I when the harmony I or I occurs in it in the fourth-sixth position, merits particular consideration; for, to this succession under such circumstances applies what was said in § 250, at *b*, p. 468, in relation to the succession  $\text{II}$ —I or  $^{\circ}\text{II}$ —I; fig. 332.

(Fig. 332, i.)      (k.)      (l.)      (m.)

$\text{II}^7$  I  $\text{V}^7$        $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$  I  $\text{V}^7$

In such cases, moreover, the harmony  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$  is not unlikely to occur with an arbitrarily elevated third: fig. 333.

(Fig. 333, i.)      (k.)      (l.)

$^{\circ}\text{II}^7$  I V       $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$  I  $\text{V}^7$  I      C:I C: $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$  C:I  $\text{V}^7$

More examples are found in figs. 123—134, pp. 208—214.

## REMARK.

Our theorists do not consider themselves at liberty to regard such successions of chords as are mentioned in the foregoing section as being  $\text{II}^7$ —I, or  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ —I, but conceive themselves obliged to explain them—though truly in a very affected and far-fetched manner—as something else entirely foreign. Their reasons are as follow:

In the first place, they suppose that these successions of chords, if explained as  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ —I, would contain an under-second step of the fundamental harmony, which, by the way, is forbidden by the most approved authors. (Remark on § 242, p. 443.) In order to exonerate them from such a reproach, they have devised two different subterfuges. Apparently, say they, the harmony I or I, in such cases, follows the harmony  $\text{II}^7$  or  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ ; but these cases must be explained in such a manner, that (a.)  $\text{II}^7$  or  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ , may be considered as being really followed by V, this V being only—omitted;—or, (b.) so that the fourth-sixth chord may be regarded as being here only a chord of suspension, whose fundamental harmony is, accordingly, not I or I, but V or  $\text{V}^7$ .—I must say, that, even if I believed in that prohibition itself, still, the manner in which the succession of chords in question is defended against the reproach of transgressing it, would be very unsatisfactory to me. It appears to me, moreover, that I have already said enough in my previous remarks, as well in answer to the reproach itself, as in refutation of both the defences proposed, to save me the trouble of here going into a detailed exposure of the whole unnecessarily ingenious fiction.

In the second place, learned musical inquirers find in such a succession of chords a "*stationary seventh*," and are at great pains to combine this stationariness with the rules which they have already once invented in respect to *the progression* of the seventh\*. We shall speak of this "*stationary seventh*" in the doctrine of the conduct of parts. (Remark on §§ 320 and 392.) We will only say here, that, if in this case, as also in a thousand others which daily occur, the seventh does *not* move, it would have been better rather not to have made the rule that every seventh must move. Here, as well as in so many other cases, together with the unnecessary rules themselves, might have been spared also the unnecessary trouble of inventing miserable subterfuges and apologies for their so-called exceptions.

(D.) OF THOSE HARMONIC STEPS IN WHICH A FOUR-FOLD CHORD IS FOLLOWED BY ANOTHER FOUR-FOLD CHORD IN THE SAME KEY. (EVITATIONS OF CADENCES IN THE SAME KEY.)

§ 269.

Thus far we have become acquainted with three principal species of harmonic successions in the same key; namely, (A) those in which a three-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord, (B) those in which a three-fold chord is followed by a four-fold chord, and (C) those in which a four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord, all in the same key. But if (D) we cause a four-fold chord to be followed, *not* by any three-fold chord belonging to the same key, but either by another four-fold chord in the same key,—or by some harmony foreign to the key,—we make no cadence, we *avoid* making one, we *avoid* or *evitate* the cadence; and hence we are accustomed to denominate those harmonic successions in which a four-fold chord is followed by something else than a three-fold chord belonging to the same key, *evitations of cadences*, or *evitated*, *avoided*, cadences.

In the present connection, where we are treating only of harmonic successions *in one and the same key*, we will consider merely those evitations of cadences likewise which belong to the same key, leaving those which are connected with digressive modulations for another place. Accordingly, we shall here attend only to *those in which a four-fold chord is followed by another four-fold chord in the same key*.

Here, again, a distinction arises on the question, whether the four-fold chord comes after a *principal* four-fold chord, or after a *secondary* four-fold chord. In the first case we avoid a *principal* cadence, and in the second a *secondary* cadence. The evitation of a *principal* cadence by means of a four-fold chord following a principal four-fold chord and belonging to the same key, may be seen in fig. 334, i.

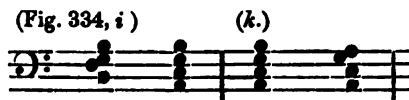


Fig. 334, k, on the contrary, exhibits an evitation of a *secondary* cadence by means of such a four-fold chord.

\* Leipzig allgem. mus. Zeitung, vol. xii, No. 58, and foll. p. 921.

## § 270.

The following table affords a synoptical view of the manner in which a principal or secondary four-fold chord may be followed by another four-fold chord in the same key, or, in other words, shows how a principal or secondary cadence can be avoided by a principal or secondary four-fold chord belonging to the same key, both in a major and in a minor key.

(1.) *Evitations of Principal Cadences in the same Key.*

In a major key:					
$\text{V}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 2.	$\text{V}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 3.	$\text{V}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 4.	$\text{V}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 5.	$\text{V}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 6.	$\text{V}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 7.
In a minor key:					
$\text{V}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 2.	————,	————,	$\text{V}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{II}^7$ , 5.	————,	$\text{V}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 7.

(2.) *Evitations of Secondary Cadences in the same Key.*

In a major key:					
$\text{I}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 2	$\text{I}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 3	$\text{I}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 4	$\text{I}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 5	$\text{I}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 6	$\text{I}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 7
$\text{II}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 2	$\text{II}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 3	$\text{II}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 4	$\text{II}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 5	$\text{II}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 6	$\text{II}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 7
$\text{III}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 2	$\text{III}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 3	$\text{III}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 4	$\text{III}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 5	$\text{III}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 6	$\text{III}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 7
$\text{IV}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 2	$\text{IV}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 3	$\text{IV}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 4	$\text{IV}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 5	$\text{IV}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 6	$\text{IV}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 7
$\text{VI}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{VII}^7$ , 2	$\text{VI}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 3	$\text{VI}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 4	$\text{VI}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 5	$\text{VI}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 6	$\text{VI}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 7
$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—I}^7$ , 2	$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—II}^7$ , 3	$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—III}^7$ , 4	$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 5	$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 6	$^\circ\text{VII}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 7
In a minor key:					
————, 2	$^\circ\text{II}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 3	$^\circ\text{II}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 4	$^\circ\text{II}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 5	————, 6	————, 7
$\text{IV}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 2	$\text{IV}^7\text{—VI}^7$ , 3	————, 4	————, 5	$\text{IV}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{II}^7$ , 6	————, 7
————, 2	————, 3	$\text{VI}^7\text{—}^\circ\text{II}^7$ , 4	————, 5	$\text{VI}^7\text{—IV}^7$ , 6	$\text{VI}^7\text{—V}^7$ , 7

## § 271.

To adduce examples of each of these numerous possible cases, and to speak of their respective merits severally, would lead us entirely too much into detail. Without attempting, therefore, to exhaust the subject, we must satisfy ourselves with the few following remarks.

In the first place, a great part of these harmonic successions are not adapted to use, because the laws of preparation cannot be preserved in them. Compare § 251, p. 470.

It may be remarked, in general, of the other harmonic successions of this species, that the most natural succession of one four-fold chord after another in

the same key, is that which forms the step of a *fourth*, i. e. when one four-fold chord is followed by another a fourth higher, as, e. g. in fig. 335.

(Fig. 335, i.)

(k.)



(l.)

(m.)



Compare figs. 338 and 339, below.

All the rest are more or less unusual and are seldom of good effect. Not, however, to be entirely without examples, and some too which are not really bad, see *second-steps* of this sort in figs. 336 and 337 below, —*fifth-steps* in figs. 340 and 341, p. 496, —*sixth-steps* in figs. 342 and 344, pp. 496 and 497, —*seventh-steps* in figs. 345 and 346, p. 497:

(Fig. 336, i.)

(k.)



(Fig. 337.)

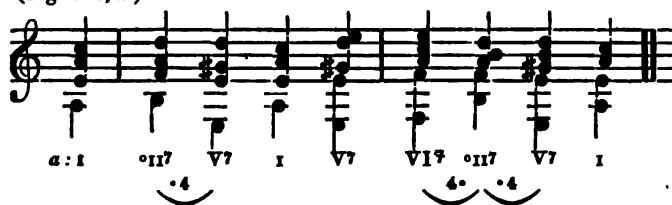


(Fig. 338, i.)





(Fig. 338, k.)



(Fig. 339.)



(Fig. 340.)

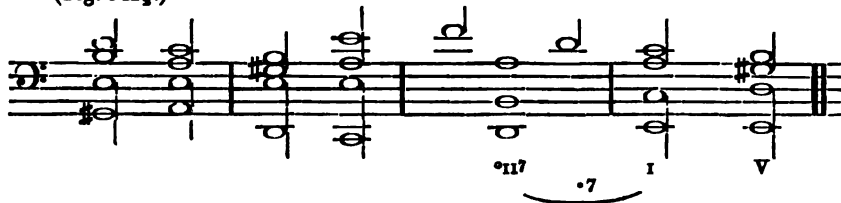


(Fig. 341.)

BEETHOVEN.



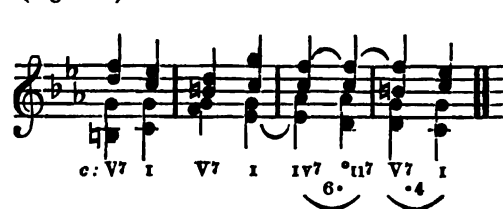
(Fig. 341½.)



(Fig. 342.)



(Fig. 343.)



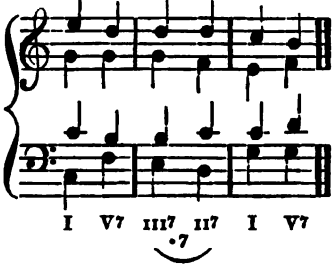
(Fig. 344.)



(Fig. 345.)



(Fig. 346.)



The *ch* of the fifth chord in fig. 343, p. 496, would perhaps admit of being explained also as a suspension or transition before the *d* of the following chord, as we shall see in the sequel.—The reason why the succession  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7\text{—V}^7$  in fig. 341, p. 496, is not repulsive, lies chiefly in the circumstance that a new phrase commences with  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ . The third and fourth measures are a repetition of the first and second. The second measure ends the phrase with the chord  $\text{V}^7$ , and the fifth measure commences the same phrase anew, only an octave higher. (§ 241, No. 7, p. 434.)

### Exercise.

Here, at the close of our treatment of the different harmonic progressions in the same key, I would recommend, as an exercise, to review §§ 243—271, and to transpose the note-examples quoted therein into several other keys. The beginner may also try to present them in other positions and inversions. And if, in such a case, this or that succession of chords does not sound right, let him conclude, that, though the cause may indeed lie in this position itself (§ 241), yet it may very often also be found in the fact that he has, in presenting these successions of chords, committed errors against the principles regulating the conduct of parts,—principles which he does not yet understand, and with which he is to become acquainted hereafter.

It will also afford the beginner an interesting occupation, to try the experiment himself of those harmonic successions of which we have given no examples; and for this purpose, a wide, and as yet unexhausted, field of labour, is pointed out, particularly by §§ 251, 252, and 270. The remarks just made above relative to the conduct of parts, apply here also.

## DIVISION III.

### DIGRESSIVE HARMONIC SUCCESSIONS.

#### § 272.

We have thus far considered those harmonic successions which consist of two harmonies belonging to one and the same key. We will now attend also to those in which one harmony is followed by another belonging to a different key from the preceding : *digressive* harmonic successions.

Since, to make a digression or digressive modulation, is nothing more nor less than to cause a combination of tones to be heard which the ear, for some reason, recognizes as belonging to another key than the preceding, and, as we have already (§§ 191—225, pp. 333—414) fully shown when and by what means a harmony appears as belonging to a new key, it follows that we have thus already treated a great and essential part of the doctrine of digressive harmonic successions beforehand.

---

(A.) AN ENUMERATION OF ALL THE POSSIBLE DIGRESSIVE HARMONIC SUCCESSIONS.

§ 273.

According to the definition given in §§ 183 and 229, pp. 324 and 419, a digressive modulation is

(1.) *An harmonic step or change of harmonies* whereby at the same time is effected

(2.) *A change of keys*—a step is taken into the realm of another key.

If we consider these digressive modulations,

(No. 2.) *Only in their property as a succession of keys or as a change of keys*, and thus merely inquire *whence* and *whither*, i. e. *from what key and into what key*, the digressive modulation is made? or, in other words, if we merely ask how many different successions of one key to another are conceivable, we find, as already estimated (in § 188\*, p. 330), that there may be *forty-six*.

But if we regard that digressive modulation in the aspect presented by

(No. 1), and inquire, not merely *whence* and *whither* the digression is made, but also *from which harmony of the previous key* and *to which harmony of the new key the harmonic step is made*, it will be readily seen, that in this respect each of the 46 different digressions enumerated in the place above referred to, can be made again in many essentially different ways by many essentially different combinations of harmonies, and that by this means there arises a far greater multiplicity of possible digressive modulations. We have already estimated their number in § 227, p. 417, and shown that it amounts to 6,616.

---

(B.) GENERAL REMARKS UPON THE MERITS OF DIGRESSIVE HARMONIC SUCCESSIONS.

§ 274.

It has already been remarked, in §§ 241 and 242, that each of the above-mentioned 6,616 cases is essentially different from all the rest; that each has, accordingly, its own peculiar merits and is subject to its own distinct and peculiar rules; so that what is true of the one is not necessarily true of the others; and hence, that this immense field cannot be exhausted by a few sweeping general rules, but would demand for this purpose an individual estimate of the merits of all these different cases, and that such a detail would necessarily be attended with an undue and immoderate copiousness. Who would undertake

fully to examine the question, "which of the 46 different digressive modulations enumerated in § 188\*, p. 331, are allowable? and in which of the 6,616 ways enumerated in the passage above referred to (§ 227, pp. 417 and 418) they are allowed, or not allowed, to be made?—in what cases, under what forms, in what positions, or other transformations of the one or the other chord, or of both, in which light or heavy part of the measure, and under what other favourable or unfavourable circumstances is it well, or ill, or perhaps forbidden, to make one or another of the 46 different digressive modulations in one or another of the 6,616 different ways?" Who would undertake to exhaust this field? Indeed, were we to be only as copious in respect to these 6,616 cases, as we have been in respect to the 272 fundamental successions in the same key (§§ 243—271), this even would lead us entirely too far into detail.

We are compelled, therefore, in this case, to satisfy ourselves with simply presenting the few things that can be said in a general way upon the merits of the different digressive fundamental steps, and furnishing some individual examples for illustration; and then with merely glancing over the whole wide field collectively, just for the purpose of spending a moment in considering a few of the more important species of digressive modulations.

---

#### § 275.

We must here again repeat, that, however diverse are the effects of the many different possible digressive modulations, we still dare not unconditionally reject any one of them as absolutely unfit for use, partly because there is scarcely any one which does not admit of being palliated and improved by the interposition of suitable softening means, and partly also because really harsh and rough transitions may often be appropriate and adapted to the particular expression intended, and indeed sometimes even quite necessary. When, *e.g.* in Beethoven's *Battle of Vittoria*, the storming march in *Ab*-major suddenly and without any intermediate harmony whatever turns into *A*-major, then in like manner immediately rushes into *Bb*-major, then directly into *B*-major, and at last still more impetuously into *Eb*-major\*, we have an entire series of transitions which, it is true, are the farthest possible from being agreeable, and indeed they are almost horrible; but yet, considering the place in which they occur, they constitute a most splendidly striking and impressive representation.—So also Haydn, in his description of *Chaos*, makes use of harmonic successions which, taken in musical compositions of a different species, would be as bad as they are here good. The same is true also of many other cases.

---

#### (C.) CLASSIFICATION OF THE DIFFERENT DIGRESSIVE MODULATIONS ACCORDING TO THE HARMONY BY WHICH THEY ARE EFFECTED.

#### § 276.

What has been said in the foregoing section is nearly all that admits of being said, in general, relative to the merits—the agreeableness or disagreeableness

---

\* See my review, in Nos. 145 and 146 of the *Jena Liter. Zeitung* for 1816.

of the different digressive harmonic successions. Thoroughly and individually to investigate all the conceivable digressive fundamental successions, would, as heretofore repeatedly observed, require an entirely too tedious detail.

In order, however, not to leave the subject wholly untreated, we will take a cursory survey of all the different digressive fundamental successions, according to the following divisions. We will, namely, inquire *by what harmony* the digression is effected,—whether by the leading chord, by the harmony of the first degree, or by that of the second degree, or by that of any other degree of the new key.

---

§ 277.

Most of all the digressions that occur are effected by the three-fold chord of the first degree, or by the four-fold chord or three-fold chord of the fifth degree, *i. e.* by I or I, or by V<sup>7</sup> or V.—More rarely, digressive modulations are effected by the three-fold or four-fold chord of the fourth or of the second degree, *i. e.* by IV or IV<sup>7</sup>, iv or iv<sup>7</sup>;—or by II,—II<sup>7</sup>, °II or °II<sup>7</sup>;—and still more rarely by all the rest.

We will first consider those digressions which are made by one of the most essential harmonies of the new key: namely, by I, I, V, V<sup>7</sup>, IV, or iv, in which, accordingly, the leading chord is one of the most essential harmonies of the new key; and afterwards those which are effected by secondary chords of the new key.

---

(1.) *Digressive Modulations by the Three-fold Chord of the first degree of the new Key,—by I or I.*

§ 278.

*The first species* of these digressive modulations are those which are effected by directly commencing a new phrase, section, or period by a new tonic three-fold chord. Several examples of such digressions have already been quoted (in § 205, pp. 345 and 346).

This species of digression is sometimes expressed also by the term *falling*. Thus, *e. g.* it is said of a piece of music that it *falls* into *Ab*; that the minuet is in *D*-major, but that, in the trio, it *falls* into *b*-minor, &c.

*A second species* of transitions by the new tonic harmony itself, consists of those which are effected by the aid of the fourth-sixth position. We have already observed (§ 241, No. 9, pp. 440 and 441), that transitions of this species are, for the most part, very smooth and often extremely agreeable.

It will be particularly recollected, from what was said at the end of § 241, that very frequently, after the dominant chord of transition, the previous tonic chord recurs in the fourth-sixth position.

*A third species* consists of those which are effected by the appearance of a new tonic harmony in *other* well-known positions (§ 207, in \*2, p. 350).

*Finally*, those cases also belong here in which a three-fold chord occurs, which, from the principle of inertia, impresses itself on the ear as a new I or I, even though in itself it is not foreign to the previous key.

(2.) *Digressions by the Harmony of the Fifth Degree of the new Key,—by  $V^7$ , or  $V$ .*

## § 279.

The digressive modulations which are made *by the harmony of the fifth degree* of the new key, by  $V$ , or  $V^7$ , especially the latter, are likewise very frequent, and indeed the most so of all.

(A.) The digressive modulations effected *by the principal four-fold chord* of the new key are as decidedly among the most unequivocal in their character, as this harmony is the most unequivocal of all in itself. (§ 158, p. 303). Fig. 347:

(Fig. 347.)



Not *every* digressive modulation, however, can be effected by the principal four-fold chord, taken by itself alone, because even this harmony is equivocal, partly (a.) in respect to the mode (as major or minor), and in part (b.) enharmonically; its transformations, in particular, (c.) are at one time subject to simple and (d.) at another time to enharmonic equivocality.

(a.) A digressive modulation from *C*-major to *E*-major, for instance, cannot be immediately effected by the chord  $\mathbf{3}^7$ ; for, though this harmony is indeed the dominant four-fold chord of *E*-major, it is also that of *e*-minor; and hence, if the chord  $\mathbf{3}^7$  is heard after *C*-major, it appears, according to the principle of inertia, not as  $V^7$  of *E*-major, but as  $V^7$  of *e*-minor. If, however, the chord  $\mathbf{C}$ , as I, immediately follows this  $\mathbf{3}^7$ , then indeed a new digression is actually made into *E*-major; but this was not the case on the mere introduction of the harmony  $\mathbf{3}^7$ , the modulation at first being made merely into *e*-minor. Fig. 348:

(Fig. 348.)



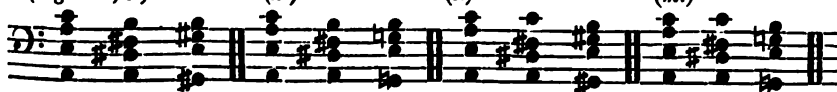
So, likewise, if we would pass from *a*-minor into *e*-minor, by means of the dominant of transition  $\mathbf{3}^7$ , still this chord, as we have already observed (§ 209, pp. 355 and 356), points rather to *E*-major than to *e*-minor, and that too even when a minor ninth is added to it. Compare fig. 349:

(Fig. 349, i.)

(k.)

(l.)

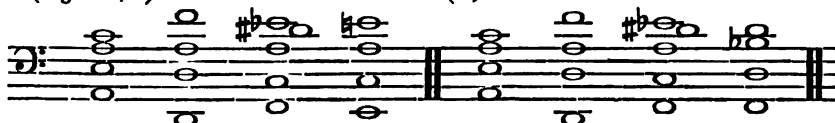
(m.)



(b.) If we would pass, say, from *a*-minor to *Bb*-major by  $\text{F}^7$ , the principal four-fold chord of the key *Bb*-major, still the ear will easily take this chord, not as  $\text{F}^7$ , but as  $^{\circ}\text{B}^7$ , as in examples fig. 350, *i* and *k* :

(Fig. 350, *i*.)

(k.)



If, however, the harmony  $\text{Bb}$  follows this chord, as in fig. 350, *k*, above, then indeed a real transition is made into *Bb*-major; but the foregoing chord would not, of itself, have transferred the ear into this key (compare fig. 204, pp. 351 and 352), unless perhaps by being several times repeated. (See § 214, at the end, p. 364.)

(c.) Or would we pass, say from *a*-minor to *C*-major by means of the principal four-fold chord  $\text{E}^7$  with a major ninth and the omission of the fundamental tone, yet the ear would, in most cases, far sooner take this chord for  $^{\circ}\text{B}^7$  and thus for  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ , of the previous key *a*-minor, than for  $\text{E}^7$ . If, however, the harmony  $\text{C}$ , as I, follows the chord  $[\text{b f a d}]$ , fig. 351, *i*,

(Fig. 351, *i*.)

(k.)

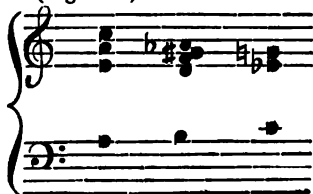


*a* : I    V<sup>7</sup>    I     $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$     C : I    *a* : I    V<sup>7</sup>    I     $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$     V

then, it is true, by the appearance of this chord, a digressive modulation is made into *C*-major; but this was not done by the foregoing chord, which appeared to the ear decidedly as *a* :  $^{\circ}\text{II}^7$ , and after which it was much more inclined to expect  $\text{C}$ , as in fig. 351, *k*, above.

(d.) So also, if we would pass, *e. g.* from *a*-minor into *c*-minor, by the principal four-fold  $\text{E}^7$  with minor ninth and omission of fundamental tone, the ear would understand such a chord as  $[\text{B d f ab}]$ , certainly not as  $\text{E}^7$ , but clearly as  $[\text{B d f g\sharp}]$ , and therefore would take it for— $\text{E}^7$ , as V<sup>7</sup>, not of *c*-minor, but of the previous key *a*-minor; and it would only be after the chord  $\text{c}$  should have followed this chord, that a digressive modulation would really be made into *c*-minor (a modulation, too, not of the most agreeable effect.) Fig. 352 :

(Fig. 352.)



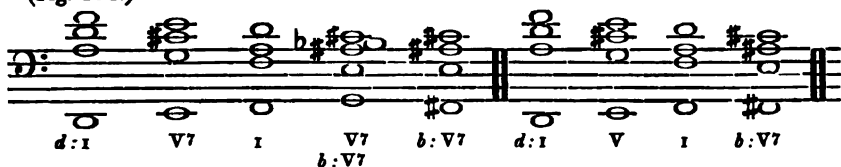
Thus it is seen that even the principal four-fold chord is not capable of unequivocally establishing every digressive modulation.

---

§ 280.

Digressive modulations, moreover, which are effected by the principal four-fold chord of the new key, when the latter is a key far remote from the foregoing, are attended also with the entire harshness of the remote digression, unless they are softened by other means. See, *e. g.* the digression from *d*-minor to *b*-minor, fig. 354.

(Fig. 354.)

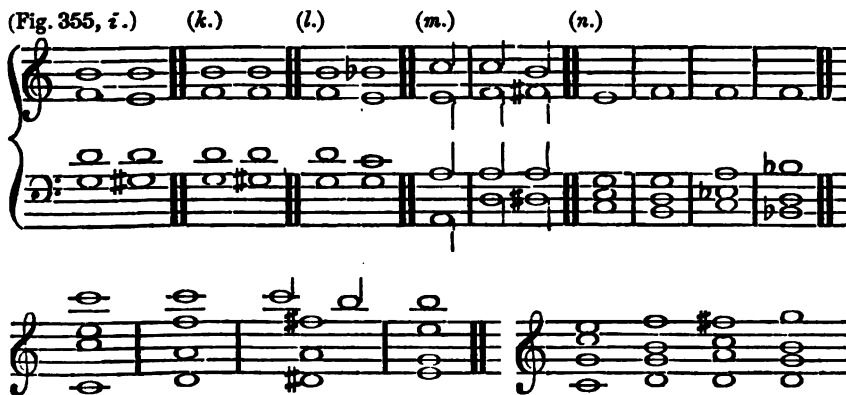


(Compare § 241, No. 8, towards the end.)

---

§ 281.

If the harmony preceding the principal four-fold chord be itself a four-fold chord, then the harmonic succession belongs to the class of digressive evitations of cadences (§ 263), *e. g.* Fig. 355:




---

REMARK.

Vogler\* explains the harmonic succession in fig. 355, *n*, above, as unallowable, partly because the digression skips over one degree (compare remark on § 189, p. 332), and partly because the *I*, instead of resolving itself, remains stationary. We have

---

\* In his *Tonsetzkunst*, p. 41, § 15, and p. 70, § 64.



remarked upon the former point in the place referred to, and the latter will come under discussion in the doctrine of resolution. (Compare remark on § 268, p. 492.)

Theorists usually explain the harmonic succession  $\text{G}^7 - \text{C}^7$  also (see the example, fig. 355, l, p. 503), not indeed as forbidden, but of so doubtful admissibility that they do not feel at liberty to let it pass as allowable, except it be excused by fictitious apologies under the name of "*an anticipation of a transient note!*" We shall resume this subject in the doctrine of resolution.

Entire series of these evitated cadences may be seen in fig. 356,—also in 357, where the principal four-fold chords all appear with a minor ninth.

(Fig. 356.)



(Fig. 357.)



Successions of this latter species were favourite modulations with our *Gluck*, who, whenever he had anything of special import to express, scarcely thought of using any other artificial means for his purpose than these series of diminished seventh chords. Almost every page of his operas affords proof of this fact.

### § 282.

The different effects of digressive modulations made by the principal four-fold chord, depend, in general, very much upon the question, what harmony immediately precedes the leading chord. Thus, *e. g.* the digression from *g*-minor to *d*-minor by the harmony  $\text{A}$  or  $\text{A}^7$  is not, in itself, remote; but when the chord  $\text{A}$  or  $\text{A}^7$  comes directly after the harmony of the sixth degree of the key *g*-minor, this digression assumes an air of harshness and almost of wildness. I have designedly employed the harshness of such a combination in fig. 358,

From my Op. 21.

(Fig. 358.) (2.) (3.) (4.) (5.)

der Sturm, erd rühmend, wälzt sich her, und birgt sein Blick - ge - schmetter.

*d* : I      *g* : VI      *d* : V<sup>7</sup>      VI      *a* : V

where a digressive modulation is made in this way, from *g*-minor, by  $\text{B}^{\flat}$  into *d*-minor, and then from *d*, by the three-fold chord  $\text{B}^{\flat}$ , into *a*.

## § 283.

(*B*.) But even the mere *three-fold chord of the fifth degree* of the new key, though in itself it is far more equivocal than the principal four-fold chord, may still, through the operation of the principle of inertia, very often alone serve as a leading chord; *e. g.* in all digressive modulations from a major key into its relatives of the *ascending line*: as *C*:*I*—*G*:*V*, fig. 359, *i*.



(A digressive modulation from a *minor* key into its nearest relatives in the ascending line, is more equivocal,—*e. g.* from *a*-minor, by means of the chord  $\text{B}^{\flat}$ , into *e*-minor,—for the reason mentioned at the end of (*a*), in § 279, p. 501, fig. 359, *k*, *l*, above). The same is true of digressive modulations from a minor key into its nearest relatives in the *descending line*: *e. g.* *a*:*i*—*d*:*V*; fig. 359, *m*, above;—from a major key into the minor keys of its lateral relatives on the right side: *e. g.* *C*:*I*—*a*:*V*, in fig. 359, *n*;—from a minor key into its nearest relatives of the major key on the left side: *e. g.* *a*:*i*—*C*:*V*, in fig. 359, *o*.

A whole series of digressive modulations merely by the dominant three-fold chord of the new key, is found in fig. 360:



The digression *g*:*V*—*F*:*V*, in fig. 361, is particularly beautiful:

(Fig. 361.)

MOZART.

*pp*    *mf*    *mf*    *p*

*g*:*IV*?    *V*    *F*:*V*    *I*    *II*

## § 284.

These species of digressive modulations also frequently appear as evitaded cadences. Thus, the transition from *E*-major into *g* $\sharp$ -minor and *G* $\sharp$ -major, in fig. 362, arises from nothing more than an evitaded of a secondary cadence (*E*: II<sup>7</sup>—*g* $\sharp$ : V), effected by a three-fold chord foreign to the key:

From my 3rd Mass.

(Fig. 362.)

*E*: I VI II<sup>7</sup> *g* $\sharp$ : V *G* $\sharp$ : I IV II I V<sup>7</sup>

(3.) *Digressive Modulations by the Three-fold Chord of the fourth degree of the new Key—by IV, or IV.*

## § 285.

Those digressive modulations which are made by the three-fold chord of the fourth degree of the new key are less frequent than the preceding. Fig. 363:

(Fig. 363, i.)

(k.)

*C*: I V<sup>7</sup> I *F*: IV I V<sup>7</sup> I *a*: I V<sup>7</sup> I *d*: IV I V<sup>7</sup> I

But they are, not unfrequently, of the finest effect. Thus, the captivating passage from the *sestetto* of the second act in Mozart's *Don Giovanni*, fig. 364,

(Fig. 364.)

MOZART.

*E* $\flat$ : I *A* $\flat$ : IV

che im - pen - sa - ta, no - vi - - - ta!

is nothing more nor less than a digressive modulation from  $E\flat$  into  $A\flat$  by the three-fold harmony of the fourth degree of the latter key.

In like manner, a digressive modulation is made from  $C$ -major into  $F$ -major by means of the major three-fold chord  $\text{F}\flat$ , as the harmony of the fourth degree of  $F$ -major, in the scene of *Donna Anna* in the second act, in the *Allegretto* in  $F$ -major, in the fourth and fifth measures.

So also in fig. 365,

(Fig. 365.) SCHWENKE.

$E\flat: I$   $VI$   $e: V7$   $I$   $A\flat: IV$   $D\flat: IV$   $G\flat: I$   $V$   $I$

two digressive modulations immediately follow each other by the three-fold chord of the fourth degree.

The similar digression from  $C$ -major to  $F$ -major by  $F: IV$ , in fig. 366,

(Fig. 366.)

$C: I$   $V$   $F: IV$   $I$   $C: V7$   $I$

is worthy of remark, because the chord preceding the digression is that of the fifth degree of the previous key ( $C\sharp$ ); by which arrangement, the digressive modulation becomes far more striking to the ear.

Several examples of digressive modulations by means of the three-fold chord of the fourth degree are found in figs. 223 and 236, *m*, pp. 370 and 419.

#### § 286.

It will be perceived, farther, that these digressive modulations by  $IV$  or  $iv$  are made more frequently into the relative keys of the *descending line*.

These digressive modulations are, moreover, least striking in cases where

the modulation returns into the original key after a half-digression upwards, fig. 367, *i* and *k*:

(Fig. 367, *i*)

(*k.*)

$C:I \quad G:V7 \quad I \quad C:IV \quad I \quad c:I \quad g:V7 \quad G:I \quad c:IV \quad I$

The reason is, that the ear is not disinclined to take the three-fold chord  $\text{C}\sharp$  in both examples directly again as  $C:V$  or  $c:V$ , so that the immediately following  $\text{F}\sharp$  or  $\text{f}$  does not appear as a digression, but merely as the harmonic succession  $V-IV$ , or  $V-iv$ .—The passage quoted in the preceding section from the air of *Donna Anna* is also of this species.

(4.) *Digressive Modulations which are made by one of the Secondary Harmonies of the new Key.*

§ 287.

This field, from the very nature of the case, is far more barren than the preceding, partly because in general the secondary harmonies of a key are more rarely used than its most essential ones, and partly also because these last, as belonging most immediately and appropriately to their key, can most definitely characterize it.

Still, however, digressive modulations by secondary harmonies of the new key are not only possible, but many of them are even rather common, as we shall soon see.

Digressive modulations are made by the three-fold chord of the second degree, by  $II$  or  $^\circ II$ . Fig. 368:

(Fig. 368, *i*)

(*k.*)

$C:I \quad V7 \quad I \quad F:II \quad I \quad V7 \quad I$

$a:V7 \quad I \quad d:^\circ II \quad I \quad V7 \quad I$

So also fig. 369 is to be regarded as a digressive modulation from  $E\flat$ -major

(Fig. 369.)

J. HAYDN.

Lass dein Lei - den und dein Ster - ben nicht an

$Eb: I$   $V7$   $Ab: II$   $f: V7$

into  $Ab$ -major by means of the harmony  $Ab: II$ ; (though it is true, indeed, that on hearing this passage several times the ear becomes inclined to take the harmony  $b\flat$  directly as  $IV$  of the key  $f$ -minor—a key which becomes confirmed by the following chord. Regarded in this point of view, the passage would be a digressive modulation from  $Eb$ -major to  $f$ -minor by means of the harmony  $IV$ ).—Possibly the chord in question may also, if we choose, be explained as a mere apparent chord, as we shall see in the doctrine of transitions.

Also the digressive modulation from  $eb$ -minor to  $c$ -minor, found in the 24th and following measures of fig. 235, p. 411, may be regarded as a digressive modulation by means of the harmony  $\circ$  as  $\circ II$  of  $c$ -minor, if we assume that, on repeatedly hearing it, the ear, on the appearance of  $\circ$ , already in conception hears the following  $c$  beforehand. (§ 214 and what follows.)

An example of a digressive modulation *by means of the minor four-fold chord of the second degree in a major key*, is found in fig. 370, *i*.

(Fig. 370, *i*.)

MOZART.

$eb: I$   $VI$   $Cb: II7$   $V7$   $ab: V7$

Here the digression from  $eb$ -minor to  $Cb$ -major is made by the harmony  $b\flat^7$  as  $II^7$  of  $Cb$ -major;—and so also in fig. 370, *k*,

(Fig. 370, *k*.)

MOZART.

$ab: I$   $VI$   $Fb: II7$   $V7$   $db: V7$

the transition from  $ab$ -minor or  $g\sharp$ -minor to  $Fb$ -major or  $E$ -major by the minor four-fold chord  $g\flat^7$  or  $f\sharp^7$ , as a harmony of the second degree of  $Fb$ -major or

*E*-major. (Mozart has here also, as we see, for the convenience of the violinist, written  $\bar{b} \ \bar{e} \ \bar{a}$  and  $a$ , instead of  $\bar{c}b \ \bar{f}b \ \bar{bbb}$  and  $bbb$ .)

A digressive modulation *by the four-fold chord of the second degree in a minor key* is found in fig. 371 :

(Fig. 371.)

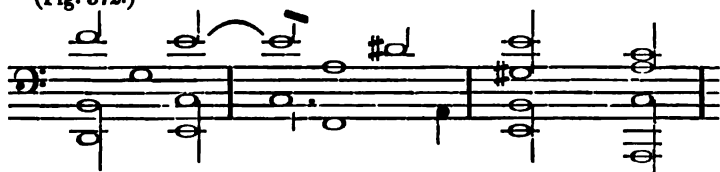
BEETHOVEN.



We have a similar example in fig. 341, p. 496, where the principal cadence, which is expected after the harmony  $\bar{3}b^7$  is avoided in the fifth measure by the appearance of the harmony  $^oII^7$ , as  $^oII^7$  of *f*-minor.

Digressive modulations by this same harmony  $^oII^7$  with an accidentally elevated third, we have already seen in large numbers. See, *e. g.* fig. 372, below. (Compare also § 194, fig. 183, p. 377—§ 202,  $^*bb$ , fig. 193, p. 344—§ 208,  $bb$ , fig. 205, *m*, p. 354—§ 215, fig. 218, p. 366.)

(Fig. 372.)



The harmony of the sixth degree of the new key may also occur as a leading chord, *e. g.* fig. 373, *i* :

(Fig. 373, *i*.)

It frequently happens, in this species of digressive modulation, that, immediately after the new VI, the former tonic harmony again appears in the fourth-sixth position, as in fig. 373, *k* :

(Fig. 373, *k*.)

(Fig. 373, I.)

RINK'S ORGAN SCHOOL.

bb: iv    V    7    VI    eb: VI    bb: i    V7    I

It sounds rather more harshly when the return of the modulation into the former key is effected, not by means of this harmony, but perhaps by  $V^7$ , so that the  $V^7$  of the returning key immediately follows the VI of the retiring key, as in the passage already referred to in fig. 358, p. 504, where the return of the modulation from *g*-minor to *d*-minor in the third measure is made directly by the succession *g*: VI—*d*:  $V^7$ .

Digressive modulations *by the harmony of the third degree* of the new key (by III or III<sup>7</sup>) are rare; and that too for the very good reason that this harmony itself seldom occurs.

For similar reasons, digressive modulations *by means of the major four-fold chord of the first degree* (I<sup>7</sup>) do not often occur;—equally seldom are digressions effected by the harmony of the *fourth degree* (by IV<sup>7</sup>); they occur in a minor key by means of iv<sup>7</sup>;—and perhaps the most unfrequent of all are made *by means of the harmony of the seventh degree* (°VII or °VII<sup>7</sup>).

These digressive modulations, however, are not in themselves absolutely inadmissible; and a careful and full investigation of all the possible cases involved in these classes very possibly might lead to many new applications of harmony that would be very effective.

### § 288.

I have now said all that I could say, without going too much into detail, in relation to digressive fundamental successions, and would recommend to the reader the same species of *exercise* that I recommended at the end of § 271, p. 497. The field *here* marked out is incomparably more rich and extended than was that in the former case, and thus affords still richer materials for farther investigations.



## CHAPTER VI.

## MODULATORY STRUCTURE OF A PIECE OF MUSIC TAKEN AS A WHOLE.

## DIVISION I.

## MUSICAL UNITY IN GENERAL.

## § 289.

BEFORE we leave the doctrine of modulation, we will make a few cursory remarks upon the manner in which a piece of music, taken as a whole, is usually constructed in reference to modulation.

The first and most general law here, is that of *the unity of the key*. Ordinarily, in every piece of music as a whole, one key prevails as the principal key, so that the piece runs chiefly in this key, and thus renders this key the prevailing one throughout. It is not intended by this, however, that we must not, in a single instance, digress from the key once assumed. We may, with perfect propriety, often pass into the accessory keys; but still, the key once assumed as the principal key must always be the predominant one,—the piece must be kept, *through most of its extent*, in this key, and, at least ordinarily, must begin and end in it.

The law of musical unity holds good, moreover, not only of every piece of music which of itself constitutes a whole, but also of several pieces which are so connected with each other that they all together properly constitute only one piece. Thus, *e.g.* even entire and long finales of operas may be treated as large connected wholes, as single, entire pieces of music. The first finale in Mozart's *Don Giovanni* is, as a whole, in *C*-major, notwithstanding the fact that, at one time, a minuet in *F*-major occurs in the middle of the piece, at another, other dances in *G*-major, again a terzett in *Bb*-major, and still again other pieces in *Eb*-major, in *C*-major, &c.

It is, therefore, no violation of the above rule, if, of several such individual pieces of music forming together one whole, the one or the other, considered alone by itself, ends in a different key from that in which it began. Thus, *e.g.* an air may begin with a *Largo* in *C*-major, which in the sequel passes into *a*-minor, and, without closing, immediately changes into an *Allegretto* in *a*-minor: this *Allegretto* itself, perhaps, digresses into *e*-minor, and, moreover, instead of closing in it, makes a transition perhaps into a *Presto* in *G*-major, which last then finally closes, not in *G*-major, but in *C*-major, and thus in the same key in which the air began.

Moreover, among several pieces, not indeed immediately connected with each other, but yet belonging together, it is proper to observe a unity of the key; *e.g.* in a symphony or a sonata, the first piece, say the first *Allegro*, and

the *Finale*, should be written in one and the same key, and the middle portions—*Adagio*, *Scherzo*, &c. should, in cases where they are not written in the same key, be written in the relatives of that key.—It is true, indeed, that writers are often not very exact about this matter; while, at the same time, we not unfrequently find, on this point, in the works of our ablest composers, a very great degree of unity, which can scarcely be attributable to accident. Could it well be a pure accident, *e. g.* that Mozart's *Zauberflöte* begins and closes in *E♭*-major?—his *Idomeneo* in *D*?—the *Entführung* in *C*?—that his *Don Juan* begins in *d*-minor and ends, not indeed in *d*-minor, but yet in *D*-major?—that, in *Masses*, which usually consist of five principal parts, distinct and separate from each other, either all these five parts almost always are written in one and the same key or in nearly related keys, and at least the first and last pieces in one and the same key?

There may be cases, moreover, in which it is perfectly proper *not* to observe this unity. Thus, *e. g.* in a scene of an opera which in the sequel is to pass into a character very different from that of its beginning, it is entirely proper to end the piece in a different key from that in which it began.

It is, particularly, not uncommon to change pieces of music which commence in a minor key into the major key, in the second half of them, and to continue them in the latter to their end. Thus (to adduce a well-known example) the first base air in Haydn's *Creation* ("Rolling in foaming billows") commences in *d*-minor, but is afterwards, at the words "*gently moving*," changed into *D*-major, and continues so to the end. In like manner, as observed above, Mozart's *Don Juan* terminates in a major key, though it commences in a minor key. Also the piece of music in fig. 234, p. 404, beginning in *f*♯-minor, ends in *F*♯-major.

The reverse of this case is less frequent; namely, that a piece of music beginning in a major key should finally end in a minor key.

Thus much in general upon unity of key in a piece taken as a whole. We will now consider more particularly, *with what harmonies and harmonic successions a piece of music usually begins, what transitions into other keys are usually made in the course of a piece, and with what harmonies and harmonic successions it is usual to close a piece.*

---

## DIVISION II.

### BEGINNING OF A PIECE OF MUSIC.

---

#### § 290.

It seems, as it were, to result from the very nature of the case, that a piece of music should commence *in the key which is to prevail as the principal key therein*, and that this key should be firmly impressed upon the ear before

transitions are made into accessory keys. Even if this is not absolutely necessary, it is at least the most natural and simple way, and therefore the most usual.

For a like reason, it is natural, proper, and common, to commence with *the tonic chord itself*, and that too in its *fundamental position*, without any transformation.

All this is the most natural and the most usual, but yet it is not always really necessary. On the contrary, deviations from what is usual may often be, not only faultless, but even of positively good effect.

### § 291.

(A.) I have said, it is usual to let the three-fold tonic harmony, with which a piece begins, appear in its *fundamental position*, and of course without transformation.

But we also find pieces *where the tonic harmony appears under some transformation in the commencement*.

(1.) We not unfrequently find the tonic chord inverted in the commencement of a piece, particularly often in recitatives; e. g. in fig. 374:



Such beginnings often occur also in mere two-part passages, say for two horns, as in the passage from Winter's *Opferfest*, fig. 375:



—also in the beginning of one of Haydn's symphonies, fig. 376:



and in the two-part commencement of a violin quartett of Mozart, in *Bb*-major, fig. 377:



Commencements in the *second* inversion are more rare than those in the first. In the overture to Vogler's *Castor and Pollux*, fig. 378,



the funeral march begins in *d*-minor, with the harmony *II* in the second inversion.

In a similar manner, in a triumphal march at the closing scene of the opera *Tancred*, I have made the full orchestra commence as in fig. 379:

(Fig. 379.)

*Allegro.*

The commencement of one of Joseph Haydn's violin quartetts in *b*-minor is also of this species: fig. 380:

(Fig. 380.)

*Allegro.*

HAYDN.

Musical authors were formerly so particular about the commencement of a piece with the four-sixth position of a chord, that we find it laid down as a rule in our books of instruction, that we *must* not only not begin a piece of music in this way, but not even a single section of it. The above-mentioned examples, however, show how unfounded is such a prohibition; and with what admirably fine effect also, a new period in the middle of a piece may commence with the tonic harmony in the second inversion, is obvious to every one, from the passage already referred to (§ 241, No. 9, fig. 253, p. 440), in Mozart's pianoforte quartett, where, after the pause, a new phrase commences with the new tonic chord *Bb* in the second inversion.

## § 292.

(2.) The fact that the tonic three-fold chord may occur in the beginning of

a piece *with the omission of an interval*, is shown by examples already quoted above, in figs. 375—378, and 380, pp. 514 and 515.

Beginnings of this kind are attended with the peculiarity, that the ear, hearing at first only two tones, remains for a time in doubt as to what harmony it is listening to. In fig. 375, p. 514, *e. g.* it can equally well take the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{b}$  either as the harmony of the minor three-fold chord  $\bar{g}\sharp$  with the omission of the fifth, or as the major three-fold chord  $\bar{C}\flat$ , in the first inversion with the omission of the fundamental tone, and consequently it cannot tell, especially on the first hearing, whether the commencement is one in *g*-minor or one in *E*-major. So also in fig. 376, p. 514, the tones *g* and  $\bar{e}\flat$  may be taken either as  $\bar{e}$  in the second inversion without the fundamental tone, or as  $\bar{C}\flat$  in the first inversion without the fundamental fifth. So likewise the commencement in fig. 377, p. 514, may be understood either as  $\bar{D}$  or as  $\bar{B}\flat$ , and that in fig. 378, p. 515, either as  $\bar{F}$  or as  $\bar{D}$ .

It is true, indeed, that after such a piece of music has several times been heard, its commencement ceases to be equivocal (§ 214), particularly in cases where one has already been accustomed to such beginnings in two parts, say for two horns, and hence knows pretty well, even on the first hearing of them, how they are to be understood. Upon the whole, however, commencements of this species do not fully possess the property of at once impressing the principal key of the piece upon the ear, and therefore are properly denominated *equivocal*.

An example where this equivocalness is especially perceptible, is afforded by the commencement of the above-mentioned violin quartett in *b*-minor, fig. 380, p. 515, which, even as far as into the second measure, seems rather to be in *D*-major, than in *b*-minor.

But we not unfrequently hear pieces of music commence with *the omission of even two intervals* of the tonic harmony: either with the tonic note alone, *e. g.* in fig. 235, p. 409, or fig. 298, p. 477; or only with the fifth of the tonic;—or even, though more rarely, only with the proper third of the tonic harmony.

In commencements of this species, the above-mentioned equivocalness is still greater; because the ear, on hearing a piece of music begin merely with, say the note *c*, does not know whether it is to regard this note as the fundamental tone of  $\bar{C}$ , or of  $\bar{c}$ , as the fifth of  $\bar{f}$  or of  $\bar{F}$ , or as the major third of  $\bar{A}\flat$ , or as the minor third of  $\bar{a}$ , &c.

The ear will, indeed, most simply and naturally understand such an individual tone as the tonic note; and if, *e. g.* a piece commences with the note *c* alone, the ear will assume beforehand that it is to run in the key of *c*, but whether in *C*-major or *c*-minor is still entirely uncertain.

On the other hand, this mode of beginning a piece of music affords also the advantage, that, after such a dry commencement, the following full harmony makes the more agreeable impression.

Beethoven's commencement of his symphony in *c*-minor is rather singular. He not only begins with the fifth alone, but continues for several measures, and one may say almost too long, to keep the ear in suspense as to the key to which the unaccompanied tones *g e b f d* belong. Fig. 381:

(Fig. 381.)

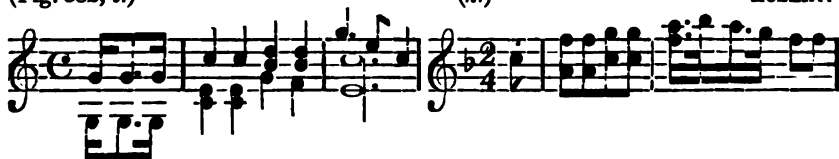


We must reckon it among the commencements with only a single tone of the tonic harmony, that a piece of music very commonly begins in the up-beat part of the measure with merely the tone of the fifth degree of the scale; as, *e. g.* in fig. 382, *i* and *k*.

(Fig. 382, *i*.)

(k.)

MOZART.



The above-mentioned beginning of Beethoven's symphony, fig. 381, is also of this species.

## § 293.

(3.) As the tonic chord, with which a piece of music ordinarily commences, may be used in an inverted position, and with the omission of one or two intervals, so a piece may also begin with a *broken* or *harpegiate* state of the chord.

This mode of commencing a piece affords also nearly the same advantage as that of beginning merely with a single note; namely, the following full harmony is rendered thereby the more satisfactory and agreeable to the ear; as, *e. g.* in the commencement of Mozart's beautiful quartett in *D*-major, fig. 383, *i*, &c.

(Fig. 383, *i*.)

MOZART.

(k.) MOZART'S "*Dies Iræ*."

## § 294.

(B.) We have thus far attended to cases in which a piece of music commences with the tonic harmony, though, indeed, in inverted positions.

We may, however, not only commence a piece *with the tonic harmony*, but *with some other chord belonging to the key*.

Even *commencements with the principal four-fold chord* are not very uncommon. Thus, *e. g.* one of J. Haydn's violin quartetts in *Bb*-major, though

it begins in the principal key,  $B\flat$ -major, still does not commence with the harmony  $B\flat$ , but with  $F^7$ , and thus, not with  $B\flat:I$ , but with  $B\flat V^7$ :—fig. 384:

(Fig. 384.)

*Allo. Mod.* HAYDN.

In like manner also, another of Haydn's quartets in  $G$ -major commences with the harmony  $G:V^7$ : fig. 385:

(Fig. 385.)

*Allo.* HAYDN.

and again another of them in  $D$ -major likewise with the dominant harmony of the major key: fig. 386:

(Fig. 386.)

*Allo.* HAYDN.

So also Mozart commences the first recitative of *Donna Anna*, in *Don Giovanni*, in  $c$ -minor, with the dominant harmony: fig. 387:

(Fig. 387.)

*Allo. assai.* MOZART.

C: V    V    I V    I V ~~~~~?

C: I

Beethoven likewise commences the finale of a violin trio, in a most agreeable manner, with  $V^7$ , and that too with the major added ninth, and the omission of the fundamental tone : fig. 388 :

(Fig. 388.) *Finale Allegro.*

BEETHOVEN.



In like manner, I have myself commenced a pianoforte sonata, in *C*-major, with the principal four-fold chord, having a major added ninth, the fundamental tone omitted, and in the second inversion : fig. 389 :

(Fig. 389.)

*Allegro.*

My Op. 15.



The commencement of the first finale of Cherubini's *Wasserträger* (Water-carrier) is of this species : fig. 390 :

(Fig. 390.)

*Allegro.*

CHERUBINI.



The composer has here secured the most splendid effect by causing the modulation, amidst this scene of universal excitement and expectation throughout a long crescendo of forty-four full measures, to hang almost exclusively upon this dominant chord, only occasionally and transiently touching upon the tonic three-fold chord, and that too in unsatisfactory and imperfect forms, and thus the longer keeping up the expectation and longing of the ear for the tonic chord (§ 253), and raising the excited tension of the auditor's feelings higher and higher, until at last, with the words, "*thanks to thee, kind Providence!*" a universal burst of emotion occurs, with the more power and effect, on the introduction of the full tonic chord  $\text{C}\text{E}\text{G}$ .—(It is a pity that this splendid idea should again appear immediately afterwards on a trivial occasion, and be misused and debased,—namely, when the maid determines not to go to the dance.)



Commencements *with a secondary harmony* are somewhat more unusual. But yet, Beethoven, inexhaustible in the peculiarities of genius, commences a pianoforte sonata in  $E\flat$ -major with the four-fold chord of the second degree of the scale : fig. 391 :

(Fig. 391.)

*Allegro.* BEETHOVEN.  
*cres.*

*p* *ri - - - - tar*

$E\flat:II$   $B\flat:V_7$

*dan - - - do. rf. a tempo.*

$E\flat:I$   $V_7$   $I$

So also, in my Requiem, the tenor air No. 3 commences with the harmony  $B\flat$  as II of  $A\flat$ -major, fig. 392 ; and a violin quartett in  $E\flat$ -major, with the three-fold harmony of the second degree of the scale, fig. 393 :

(Fig. 392.)

*Poco Adagio.* MY REQUIEM.

*SOLO.* *Semplice.* *Voce.*

*pp*

$A\flat:II$   $IV$   $I$   $V_7$   $I$

(Fig. 393.)

*Allegro.* MY QUARTETT.

*p*

$E\flat:II$   $V_7$   $I$   $B\flat:V_7$   $E\flat:I$   $V_7$

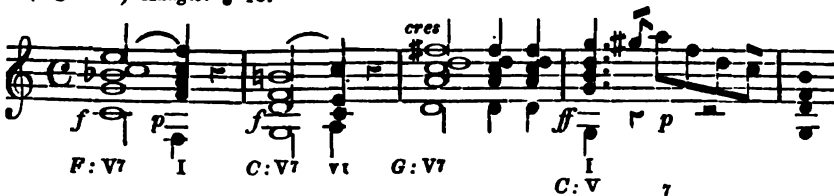
## § 295.

(C.) We have seen (from §§ 290—293) that pieces of music may begin with the tonic harmony, transformed, and that (§ 294) a piece may also commence even with some other harmony belonging to the key besides that of the tonic. But we may also, in like manner, commence a piece with a *harmony which is foreign to the principal key, and thus in another key than its principal one.*

An example of this is afforded by the well-known symphony of Beethoven in *C*-major, fig. 394:

(Fig. 394.) *Adagio.* ♩ 18."

BEETHOVEN.



Here the first harmony  $\text{C}^7$  is foreign to the key; and thus the symphony properly begins in *F*-major, though, indeed, it immediately runs into *C*-major, and from that point onward *C*-major is treated as the principal key.

We have another like instance in Cherubini's *Faniska*; namely, in the commencement of the beautiful terzett in *A*-major: fig. 395:

(Fig. 395.)

CHERUBINI.



This commencement really indicates *a*-minor, and does not pass fully into *A*-major until in the ninth measure.

In like manner, though less successfully, Beethoven begins the finale of his *sinfonia eroica* in *E♭*-major: fig. 396:

(Fig. 396.)

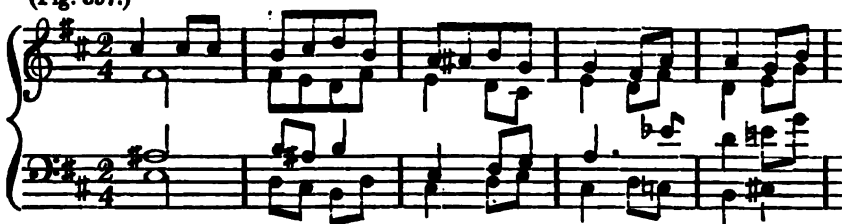
BEETHOVEN.



This commencement certainly does not excite the feeling of *E♭*-major (nor is it of very peculiarly happy effect).

So also, in my mass No. 3, I have commenced the "*Domine*" in *D*-major with the harmony *F*♯<sup>7</sup>, and thus apparently in *b*-minor, which, however, is soon supplanted by *D*-major, and is accordingly shown to have been only a secondary key: fig. 397:

(Fig. 397.)



In another mass, I have attempted to begin the "*Laudamus*" in *F*-major in the manner exhibited by fig. 398:

(Fig. 398.)

MY MASS, NO. 4.

*Adagio.*

*corni di bassetto.*

*dol.*

*g: V7 I F: I d: V7*

*I F: I IV I V7 I V7 I V*

and thus as if in *g*-minor; soon afterwards, however, the succession shows that this *g*-minor is not to be permanent, but that the principal key is to be *F*-major, and that *g*-minor merely opened the scene as a secondary key.

### DIVISION III.

#### MODULATION IN THE COURSE OF A PIECE.

##### § 296.

There are pieces of music, particularly very small and short pieces, in which no digressive modulation of any species occurs, from beginning to end. But

these, for the most part, are only very unassuming trifles and little songs; such, *e. g.* as "*Enjoy Life*" ("*Freut euch des Lebens*"),—"Bloom, dear little violet" ("*Blühe liebes Veilchen*"), &c. or hunting pieces for horns, and the like,—pieces whose whole modulatory change usually consists simply in the fact, that one period closes with the chord of the dominant, and the following with that of the tonic. Sometimes, indeed, there is still less variety than even this; as, *e. g.* in the second of the above-mentioned songs, in which all the periods uniformly end with the tonic harmony.

---

#### § 297.

But, with the exception of such cases, it is usual to introduce into every piece of music, especially those of the longer species, in addition to the principal key, half and whole digressive modulations into the accessory keys; and the larger and more extended the piece, the more it admits and even requires digressive modulations, and those too of the more remote and complete character.

In small pieces, namely, we usually do not introduce many digressions, scarcely any *entire* digression, preferring, in such cases, merely half-digressions, and these too, only into the nearly related keys; for the obvious reason, that such a short piece of music would be rendered, by so many transitions, especially into remote keys, altogether too diversified and heterogeneous in its character.

We, therefore, usually satisfy ourselves in such pieces with half-digressive modulations into the key of the dominant, from which we soon return again into the principal key.—Even the more important pieces of composition sometimes limit themselves to this most simple modulatory structure; as, *e. g.* Mozart's "*In diesen heiligen Hallen*" ("*In these sacred halls*").

Large and more elaborate compositions, on the contrary, admit and require more digressive modulations and more important ones, as is very obvious, for a reason, the opposite of that for which shorter pieces would not bear them; namely, because a long piece, if kept incessantly in one key, would be entirely too uniform and monotonous.

We very properly here, therefore, not only transiently introduce sundry digressive modulations, and, among others, those into the more remote keys, but even full and complete transitions, which for a time entirely erase the impression of the principal key (though the latter must, indeed, at last be brought back again).

---

#### § 298.

The most usual digressive modulations of this species are as follow:

In pieces composed in the major key, it is usual to make a full digression into the major key of the dominant, towards the middle of the piece. Thus, *e. g.* in a symphony or sonata in *C*-major, a digressive modulation is almost always formally made, in the first half, into *G*-major, and the first part usually

comes to a perfect close in this key. (To adduce an example which is at hand, a principal section in the fourth measure of fig. 228, p. 391, is closed in this manner.—The same occurs also in fig. 229, p. 392. Other like instances are found in measures 14–24 of fig. 230, p. 394. Then again in measures 12–20 of fig. 231, p. 397;—also in measures 4–8 of fig. 232, p. 399.)

Besides this digression into the dominant, there are also several others into more nearly or more remotely related keys, less usual, indeed, but yet not absolutely unusual or the less valuable; they are, namely, all the digressive modulations into the other most nearly related keys. Thus, *e. g.* in a piece of music in *C*-major, we at one time make a formal transition into *F*-major, or into *a*-minor, or *c*-minor.

Among the transitions which are not positively unusual, belong those into other keys whose tonic harmonies are to be found in the scale of the principal tonic; thus, *e. g.* transitions into *d*-minor or *e*-minor, in a piece in *C*-major, because the three-fold harmonies  $\mathbb{D}$  and  $\mathbb{E}$  are found in the scale of *C*-major.

More rarely, transitions are made into still other keys, *e. g.* into the major key of the minor third; thus in the key of *C*-major, for instance, into *E* $\flat$ -major, —or into *A* $\flat$ -major, in a piece in *F*-major (as in the example quoted in fig. 245, p. 434):—or into the major key of the major third; and thus, in a piece of music in *C*-major, for example, into *E*-major (as in Beethoven's symphony in *c*-minor, where whole passages in *C*-major occur, in the *andante* in *A* $\flat$ -major); —or into the major key of the minor sixth; and thus, *e. g.* into *A* $\flat$ -major, in a piece in *C*-major, &c.

All these and similar complete modulations are more rare than those before-mentioned; but they are not on this account positively unused, and much less disallowed.

---

#### § 299.

*In pieces of music written in the minor key*, likewise, the complete digression into the minor key of the dominant is very common; and, accordingly, in a piece of music in *a*-minor, for example, it is usual, towards the middle, to make a transition into *e*-minor, and indeed to terminate the first principal section of the piece with a full close in this key.—Meanwhile, however, this species of transition is not so universal as is that into the major key of the dominant in pieces in the major key; in part, perhaps, because the tonic harmony of *e*-minor, the minor three-fold chord  $\mathbb{E}$ , does not belong to the scale of *a*-minor (compare § 298); and hence we pretty frequently find pieces in the minor key in which a transition is made into the major key of the third, rather than into the minor key of the dominant; so that in a piece in *a*-minor, *e. g.* the principal digression is not into *e*-minor, but into *C*-major.

Next to this, the most usual complete digressions occurring in pieces of music in the minor key, are those into the major key of the sixth, and thus, *e. g.* into *F*-major, in a piece written in *a*-minor (compare the 20th measure of fig. 234, p. 405):—or those into the minor key of the sub-dominant, into *d*-minor, in *a*-minor,—or even those into the major key of the previous tonic

note: into *A*-major in *a*-minor (compare measure 37 of fig. 234, p. 407). It has already been observed, at the end of § 289, p. 524, that we not unfrequently, after a transition of this last species from a minor key into a major, continue the piece on to the end in the major key, and formally terminate it in this key (as is actually done in the piece just referred to).

It is less usual, in pieces written in the minor key, to meet with complete transitions into the major key of the dominant; as, *e. g.* into *E*-major, or of the minor second; as, *e. g.* into *Bb*-major; &c. But still, these transitions are neither disallowed nor entirely unused. On the contrary, these and other similar less usual transitions may sometimes be employed with perfectly good effect.

---

### § 300.

All that has been observed, from § 296 to the present place, may and should be regarded only in the light of general hint, and not as furnishing an unalterable and universal rule.

It is true, indeed, that our old theorists believed and taught differently on this point. They were not only very particular upon the questions, *into what accessory keys may we digress, in the course of a piece of music? how long may we continue in each?* &c. but we often find in their works even formal prescriptions on this point—regular labels, showing how many measures one may continue in this accessory key, how many in that, &c.\*

But such an exactness borders very closely upon pedantry. Art is free, ought to be free, and does not tolerate such an admeasurement of its limits by rod and chain. (Compare remark on § 301, p. 526.)

To a man of sense it is superfluous to say that he is not, without necessity, without object, and without a sufficient reason, always to be passing from key to key at random, that he is not to be incessantly skipping about, in every piece of music, into every possible key, even the remotest, like a frantic person, &c. All this, with sensible men, is self-evident.—But, that very wide, bold, and even harsh and frequent leaps into widely remote keys, may, when taken in the right place, be of striking and of very happy effect, has already been shown by examples quoted in § 275, p. 499. Every thing here depends upon the sentiment which we wish to express by the piece of music, upon the more or less simple or multifarious, calm, or restless and impassioned, character which we would give to our composition.

For this reason, the present consideration is less appropriate to the technics, than to the æsthetics, of the musical art. In this latter connection, we shall recur to the subject again.

---

\* *e. g.* in Kirnberger's *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, Th. I, p. 119 and foll.—in Rousseau's *Diction. de Musique*, Art. *Modulation*,—in Sulzer's *Theorie*, Art. *Ausweichung*, &c.

## § 301.

So much as this, however, may be said even here, in a technical point of view; namely, that, in order to produce great effects by digressive modulations, one must use them sparingly. Digressions are always the spicing of modulation\*; and a composer who, in a large or in a small musical production, digresses too often or too much, necessarily thereby blunts the ear of his hearer to the effect of the digression; and if, in this case, he would produce some particular effect by means of a digressive modulation—would express some marked and striking sentiment by a bold transition, means already spoiled by use would fail to be of any service to him, merely because the same thing has already been employed too much before; whereas, had he heretofore practised a more wise economy in the use of digressive modulations, it would have afforded him double the effect, even from its striking contrast to the previous simplicity of the modulation—[harmonic progression].

## REMARK.

Vogler is most pedantically strict relative to the question, into what keys transitions may be made. According to him, we may, in general, pass into no other keys, in a piece of music, than into those most nearly related to the principal key! In his treatise on composition (*Tonsetzkunst*), § 68, we read as follows: "Every piece, whether of vocal or of instrumental music, is named from a certain tone, and must, in order to preserve its unity, digress into no tone which is several degrees remote; consequently, a piece of music in *C*-major must neither pass into *D*-major nor into *B*♭-major; for, should a piece digress into these two tones, the minor keys *B* and *G* would be equally near, and of course all unity would be gone, and indeed it would no longer be true that the piece is in *C*, but merely that it begins and ends in *C*." He says again, in § 70: "It has sometimes been supposed that we may pass from the major to the minor key in the same piece of music; but if we reflect that even the signature makes a break of three degrees, and then consider the peculiar affinities of the other tone, we must conclude that we may either digress from *C*, e. g. into all other tones, or into none beyond the six above-named." Thus he here forbids, not only the immediate skip over a degree of relationship (see § 189, Remark, p. 332), but even every over-stepping of the circle of the closest relationship, even though it be but that of individual diatonic degrees! Indeed, we must not, in a piece in *c*-minor, e. g. pass at all into *C*-major, or the reverse.

After all that we have heretofore said on this subject,—after all that follows from Vogler's own beautiful compositions, the refutation of such an interdict would be superfluous.

## § 302.

The more frequently digressive modulations occur in a piece of music, the more chromatic changes must of course occur in it (§ XXV, pp. 39 and 40); and hence it is usual to say of a passage which digresses much, that *it is very chromatic*. This may do as a technical expression; only it is to be observed,

---

\* It will be observed, that the word "*modulation*" is here used in the sense of harmonic progression.—TR.

that a passage or piece of music may also be chromatic in wholly a different sense; namely, by its containing many chords which are in themselves chromatic (§§ 86 and 93). (Cases of this kind might be termed *harmonic chromatic*.) But, in the third place, a piece may be chromatic, by containing many chromatic transitions, of which we shall speak hereafter. (We call cases of this species *melodic chromatic*.)—In contradistinction from both these varieties, the one first-mentioned might be denominated *modulatory chromatic*.—Indeed, in a certain sense, we might call every piece of music which is in a transposed, chromatic key (§ 132), chromatic. (Compare remark on § XVII, p. 23.)

---

#### DIVISION IV.

##### ENDING OF A PIECE OF MUSIC.

---

##### (A.) AUTHENTIC ENDINGS.

##### § 303.

It results from the nature of the case that a piece of music should not only close with that harmony which has been the principal harmony of the whole, and thus with the tonic harmony, but also with such an harmonic step as is most satisfactory to the ear. This latter property is possessed to the greatest extent by the *principal natural cadence*; and for this reason it is usual to close most pieces of music with such a cadence in the principal key of the piece.

An ending of this species has received from antiquity the appellation of *authentic cadence*.

---

##### § 304.

For the reason stated in the commencement of the foregoing section, it is usual also to present the cadence with which a piece closes in the most perfect possible form (compare § 255, p. 474); namely, in the *fundamental position* of both harmonies: fig. 399:

(Fig. 399.)







and indeed the greater, the more elaborate and important the piece of music, the more perfectly and forcibly does this close become it.

Such a cadence, moreover, is often with propriety several times repeated, as in fig. 400, &c.



We are accustomed to denominate these full endings of a piece or principal part of a piece of music, *perfect* or *entire*, *complete closes*.

Not unfrequently, however, we satisfy ourselves with less perfect cadences in the close of a piece. Indeed, in many cases, such effectual, decided closes are impossible; as, *e. g.* in mere two-part pieces, say merely for two horns, where, as also at the commencement, one must necessarily content himself at one time with this and at another with that transformation of the one or the other harmony, at one time with omissions of intervals, and at another with inverted positions of chords: *e. g.* fig. 401:



We can scarcely close a piece, however, with *the second inversion* of the tonic chord: fig. 402:



We frequently find the close decorated with tones of every species foreign to the harmony, with transition-tones, apparent chords, and suspensions; *e. g.* fig. 403:

(Fig. 403.)



## § 305.

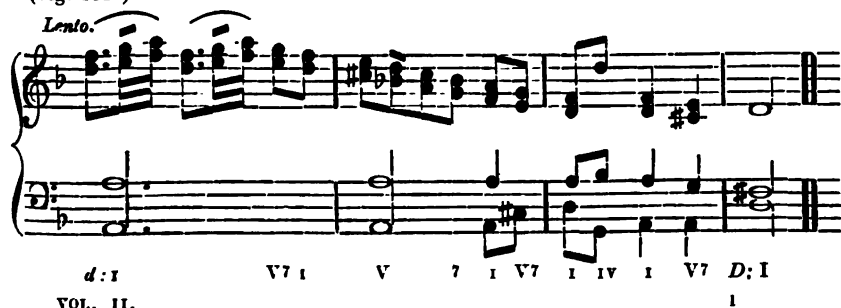
Another very peculiar variety of authentic cadence occurs not unfrequently in pieces in the minor key. That is to say, instead of ending the piece with the appropriate cadence  $V^7-I$ , it is closed with the cadence properly belonging to the major key, namely, with  $V^7-I$ ; and thus the piece in the minor key does not, as was suggested in § 299, p. 524, pass into the major key in its second half, but merely at its close employs the major three-fold chord instead of the minor: *e. g.* fig. 404, *i*, *k*:

(Fig. 404, *i*)

In the same way, John A. Hasse terminates the *Crucifixus* of his Mass in *d*-minor with the major three-fold chord  $D$ : fig. 405:

(Fig. 405.)

HASSE.



So also, in Mozart's *Don Juan*, the frightful words of the ghost in the church-yard are of a similar species: fig. 406, *i*, *k*:

(Fig. 406, *i*.)

MOZART.

*Adagio.*

Du hörst zu la-chen auf eh noch der Tag er-scheint.

$d:I \quad V7 \quad I \quad a:I \quad e:V \quad a:I \quad V7 \quad A:I$

(Fig. 406, *k*.)

MOZART.

*Adagio.*

Ver-weg-ner, du frevelst, lass die Todten hier ru-ben.

$C:V7 \quad I \quad e:I \quad V \quad d:V7 \quad g:IV \quad G:I \quad g:I \quad V \quad G:I$

In like manner, Sebastian Bach closes a choral in *a*-minor as in fig. 407:

(Fig. 407.)

SEB. BACH.

$a:V \quad I \quad VI \quad °II7 \quad V7 \quad A:I$

and so also one in *e*-minor (or at least one *beginning* in *e*-minor) with the major three-fold chord  $\mathbb{E}$ , as in fig. 408, *i*:

(Fig. 408, *i*.)

BACH.

$a:V \quad I \quad IV \quad d:V \quad D:I \quad e:V7 \quad E:I$

(k.)

VOGLER.

t R s T R R R s R  
I V I V I e: V E: I a: V

whereas Vogler closes the very same choral as in fig. 408, *k*, above.

## (B.) PLAGAL ENDINGS.

## § 306.

The mode of ending a piece of music already mentioned is the most usual, but still not the only one.

We may, namely, terminate a piece of music by the harmonic succession IV—I. Such an ending, as already observed in § 248 (*d*), p. 465, is usually termed a *plagal cadence*: fig. 409, *i*, *k*, *l*:

(Fig. 409, *i*.)

D: IV I I IV I

(Fig. 409, *k*.)

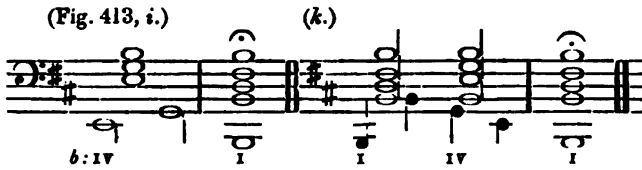
Dass wir zur Frei - heit er - wach - ten! A - - - men!

MY LYRE AND SWORD.

(Fig. 409, *l*.)

nimm auf mei-ne Seel in die Hän - de dein. MY LIEDER.





Instead of this (as also in the case of the authentic, § 305, p. 529), it is preferred rather to close with the major three-fold chord, in the place of the minor, and thus, in a manner, with a union of the major key and the minor, as in fig. 413, *l*,—



or by several times repeating this latter harmonic succession, as in fig. 413, *m*, above; or in such a form as is mentioned in § 306, p. 531 : fig. 413, *n*, *o*, *p*, *q*,



(Fig. 413, q.)

Chord progression:  $d: V^7$   $VI$   $^{\circ}II$   $I$   $V^7$   $I$   $g: V^7$   $d: IV$   $D: I$

The last number of the *dies iræ*, in Mozart's *Requiem*, in *d*-minor, ends in this way: fig. 414:

(Fig. 414.)

Chord progression:  $d: V^7$   $I$   $V^7$   $I$   $g: V^7$

Chord progression:  $d: IV$   $D: I$

In the same manner also he closes the chorus, in *d*-minor, where Don Juan is whipped to hell by the furies, in the major key. Fig. 415:

(Fig. 415.)

Chord progression:  $d: ^{\circ}III^7$   $V$   $7$   $D: I$

Don JUAN.  
 Don J. Ach! *bis.*  
 Dein harrt noch gröss - re Pein!

(Fig. 415 continued.)

$p$   
 $g: V7$        $G: I$        $g: I$        $V$        $I$        $V$  &c.  
 $d: IV$        $D: I$   $g: I$   $D: I$  &c.  
 $D: I$       „       $I$  &c.

*crs.*

## § 308.

We often find the plagal endings likewise decorated by *transition-tones*, *suspensions*, and *apparent chords*; as in figs. 416—426.

(Fig. 416.)

MOZART.

$C: I$        $IV$        $I$

(Fig. 417.)

MOZART.

$d: I$        $V7$        $D: I$        $G: V7$        $I$        $g: I$        $D: I$   
 $d: IV$

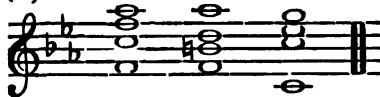


(Fig. 418, i.)

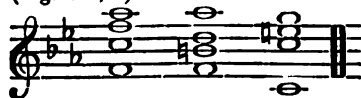
VOGLER.



(k.)



(Fig. 418, l.)



(Fig. 419.)

HAYDN.



(Fig. 420.)

*Lento.*

(Fig. 421.)



(Fig. 422.)

g:IV I IV I V I V 7 G:I V 7 I

V 7 I c:V7 I G:I g:IV G:I I

(Fig. 423.)

D:I G:V7 I D:I

(Fig. 424.)

D:I G:V7 I D:I

(Fig. 425.)

I IV Bb:V7 I V I F:I

(Fig. 426.) MY OP. 17.

und legt sich froh ins stil - le Grab. *rallent.*

*e: IV 11 V7 E: I IV I IV I*

In fig. 416, the tones *g* and *b*, in the second measure, and the tones *f* and  $\bar{d}$ , in the third, are merely transition-tones; so are also the tones *g* and *e* in fig. 417, and likewise the tones *b* and *d*, in fig. 418, *i*, *k*, *l*.

The harmonic combination [*f*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ] in fig. 418, *i*, might, indeed be explained also as  $\text{G}^7$ , and so might also the chord [*f*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ] in fig. 418, *k* and *l*, in which case the tone *f* would be the fundamental seventh,  $\bar{b}$  the fundamental third,  $\bar{d}$  the fundamental fifth, and  $\bar{a}$  or  $\bar{a}\flat$  the ninth, while the fundamental tone itself—*g*—would be omitted. But if *f* were the fundamental seventh, it could not (as we shall see in the doctrine of resolution), or at least not with propriety, be treated as it is here treated; and therefore the first-mentioned mode of explaining this succession of chords is preferable to the latter,—and consequently the combination [*f*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ] or [*f*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}\flat$ ] must continue to be explained as  $\text{F}$  or  $\text{f}$ , just as if the mere transition-tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{d}$  were not present at all. And thus Kirnberger\*, in the case of a similar passage—fig. 418, *m*, p. 536, explains the great sixth of the base tone, namely, the tone  $\bar{a}$ , and so also its major fourth  $\bar{f}\sharp$  ("the *subsemitonium modi* of the following tonic") as being merely transition-tones and as serving to render the close more pungent and effective. Vogler also† lays down the above-mentioned close—fig. 418, *i*, p. 536, as a model for a *plagal* cadence, and thus as IV—I, and consequently recognizes the combination [*f*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ] as the major three-fold chord  $\text{F}$ .

The examples in figs. 419—421, p. 536, are of a similar species (compare § 317, p. 549). So is also the ending of Joseph Haydn's *Salve Regina* in *g*-minor, fig. 422, p. 537. (The note  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , in the last measure but two, is a transition-tone.)

So also the harmonic combinations [*d*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{g}\sharp$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{e}\sharp$ ], [*d*  $\bar{g}\sharp$   $\bar{b}$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{f}\sharp$ ], and [*d*  $\bar{b}$   $\bar{g}\sharp$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{f}\sharp$ ], in the succession of chords in fig. 423, p. 537, with which I close an eight-part Fugue written for the Berlin Singing Academy, arise merely from the decorations of the tonic chord  $\text{D}$  by tones foreign to the harmony. In like manner, I have also decorated the plagal close of another hymn, *a: iv—A: I*, as in fig. 424, p. 537; as also the close of the "*Kyrie*" and "*Agnus Dei*" of my mass, No. 1. fig. 425, p. 537, and another song, as in fig. 426, above, &c.

\* In his *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, Th. I, in the Appendix, p. 249.

† In his *Choralsystem*, Tab. I.

## (C.) OTHER ENDINGS.

## § 309.

Besides the closes enumerated in §§ 303—308, we find, in the works of composers, particularly the composers of church music, and very especially the professors of the so-called Greek modes or keys, still many other endings, which sound even more peculiar than those already mentioned. In particular, we find pieces which, so far at least as we can comprehend, do not even close with a three-fold harmony on the tonic. Of these endings we will, at least, present a few examples.

Vogler, for instance, in his *Pastoral Mass* in *E*-major, closes the *Credo*, which is otherwise very definitely in *b*-minor, with a succession of harmonies, the last of which, at least so far as we can see, cannot be called a tonic harmony at all. Fig. 427:

(Fig. 427.) VOGLER.

A . . . . men, A - men, A . . . . men.

I V7 VI °117 V

The endings in figs. 428, 429, 430, 431, 432 *i* and *k*, and 433, are of a like species.

(Fig. 428, *i*) VOGLER. (k.)

(Fig. 429.) VOGLER. (Fig. 430.) VOGLER.

(Fig. 431.)

BACH.

(Fig. 432, i.)

BACH.



(Fig. 432, k.)

VOGLER.

(Fig. 432, l.)

BACH.



(Fig. 433, i.)

VOGLER.

(Fig. 433, k.)

V I IV d:V<sup>1</sup>D:I e:V E:I

We freely acknowledge that it would not be very easy for us to unravel the modulatory structure of all such closes in a satisfactory manner, particularly in this place, before we come to the doctrine of transitions and apparent chords. They may, therefore, stand here, meanwhile, merely, as it were, in an historical way, just to show that there are pieces of music with such endings.

Indeed, we might say, in a manner, that pieces of this description really end without a proper close.

### § 310.

But, in fact, it may sometimes, under particular circumstances, be entirely proper to end a piece of music, and that too, not merely one which passes immediately into a following piece (§ 289, p. 512), but even a distinct and independent piece, really without any proper close; particularly in cases where one has to express the idea of something abruptly broken off. Thus, *e. g.* in Mozart's *Nozze di Figaro*, Barberina's arietta in *f*-minor abruptly terminates in the commencement of the fourth act, when she is searching for the lost pin, and is suddenly interrupted by the intervention of Figaro; the ending here is

entirely without any proper close, like a speech broken off without its closing word or period : fig. 434, *i* :

(Fig. 434, *i*.)

MOZART.



So also the scene in Salieri's *Azur*, where Tarar Astasien is missed : fig. 434, *k* :

(Fig. 434, *k*.)*Larghetto.*

SALIERI.



and so also fig. 434, *l* :

(Fig. 434, *l*.)*cres.*

MY SONGS, OP. 23.



Such abrupt endings as these in fig. 434, *i* and *k*, above, are the less repulsive, because—at least according to the original construction, a recitative immediately succeeds; so that though the piece itself terminates, still the music goes on, and consequently the ear is not obliged to regard the modulation as ended. But the unsatisfactoriness of such endings becomes far more palpable in cases where, as is the fact at the present day in most theatres, the dry recitative is entirely omitted, and thus, in the passages referred to, the music actually ceases and the dialogue commences.—Still, however, these passages really make a rather repulsive impression, though by no means one that is positively undesirable; and it is the result of very limited views, that on many stages these pieces have been botched up with regular closes.

(D.) REMARKS UPON THE DIFFERENT EFFECTS AND MERITS OF THE  
DIFFERENT SPECIES OF ENDINGS.

## § 311.

Every one perceives that the endings presented in §§ 306—310 are always rather unnatural and foreign in their effect, or at least less satisfactory to the ear, than the most common of all closes; namely, the principal natural cadence. The technical cause of this fact lies in the circumstance, that this latter species of cadence, as we have already remarked (§ 255, p. 474,) is the most unequivocal and decisive of all harmonic successions, and therefore is the most satisfactory to the ear, since it contains a final confirmation of the principal key, and fully puts the feelings to rest. The plagal cadence, however, consisting, as it does, merely of two three-fold chords, is far less determinate and unequivocal. And finally, the other closes, instead of directly settling the ear, at the conclusion of the piece, upon the principal key, rather carry it away from the same; and indeed, sometimes, as if for the very purpose of throwing it into uncertainty, they even repeatedly and in rapid succession bound off from the principal key into some new one, and then again from this into some other, and in this way they present us with chords, one of which always belongs to the previous key and the other to the new key, and they often carry with them also a pretty variegated interchange of the major and the minor key, as is shown by the diversity of figures which have occasionally been set under the foregoing examples.—Indeed, it is impossible to say, *with absolute certainty*, of many of the endings above-mentioned, that the harmony with which they close is actually I or i, and not perhaps V;—or they even end with a harmony which *clearly is not I nor i*.

Our ear, however, has become accustomed to hear pieces end with closes of this kind, and though they are not in their own nature satisfactory to it, yet, through the force of custom, it acquiesces in them. (The least satisfactory closes are such as occur in fig. 427, &c. p. 539, &c.; but for this reason these endings are called *Greek or ancient cadences*; and if they do not always sound very finely, yet they appear very learned, especially to those who are profoundly unlearned.—We shall recur to this subject again.)

On the other hand, even the less satisfactory, the less definite and less natural, even the unusual, the rare and the singular, the extraordinary and sometimes even the positively strange, that which deviates from the ordinary, the, as it were, mystical character which such endings carry with them,—all this, I say, gives to these closes, at least to the better of them, a certain peculiar and often really imposing character, which may be employed on many occasions with great advantage, when one has something peculiar, something aside from and above what is ordinary, to express.

Such closes are particularly appropriate to church pieces (whence they have derived the name *church cadences*). In fact, most of the above examples are borrowed from church pieces.

It would, however, involve a pitiful partiality and limitedness of view, to suppose that such closes belong exclusively to *church music*: just as much so

as it would to maintain that this or that colour, *e. g.* red and blue, belong wholly to sacred pictures and not at all to profane. As if art had not the power to produce different effects with one and the same material!

There is no want of examples, moreover, where our best composers have employed these endings in other than church pieces. Thus, *e. g.* J. Haydn terminates his well-known variations upon the Emperor's March with such a close. So also Mozart, as we have seen in fig. 417, p. 335, ends a rather trifling finale of a violin quartett with a close of this species; and the same author lets *Don Juan* go to perdition with such a so-called church close: fig. 415, pp. 534, 535. And in like manner closes the air of the vengeance-breathing hunter in Weber's *Freischütz*.

The same partial and limited views have also given birth to the current and sweeping remark, that the endings of minor-key pieces in the major-key (§§ 305, 307, pp. 529, 532) have a *soft* and *soothing* character. It is indeed true that they often admit of being used for this purpose with good effect, as is shown by several of the above examples, among others: but surely no sensible man will, for this reason, be so one-sided in his views as to maintain that such closes in the major key once for all bear this and only this character, and are to be used only for this purpose. Here again applies the simile of the red and blue colours; and here also Mozart teaches us that the threats of the ghost in *Don Juan* can, with perfect propriety, be expressed by the so-called "soothing church cadences," yes, and even that the cry of murder by Don Juan tumbling into hell may form a cadence in the major key. A similar instance is found in the before-mentioned passage from the *Freischütz*, &c.

(E.) CHARACTERISTICS OF THE KEY OF A PIECE OF MUSIC.

§ 312.

On the occasion of the question proposed in § 190, many a reader perhaps recollects to have heard from his music-master, if not even to have read in celebrated books of instruction, that, in order to know in what key a piece of music is written, or, in other words, what is its principal tone or key-note, one has only to look at the signature,—and then at the last note, or at most at the last chord of the piece. Such an old woman's rule, it is true, is easy and short; but for this very reason it is also incorrect, fallacious, and inadequate, as are a thousand others like it.

It can only be said, in general, that *a piece of music, as a whole, is in this or that key, when this or that key is the predominant one in it.*—The question, by what means the ear is led, on hearing a piece of music, to recognize the piece as being in this or that particular key, we have thoroughly examined in §§ 192—224, pp. 333—375, and have found that the answer to this question is not to be dispatched by a mere single short sentence.



## REMARK.

It can scarcely be necessary to add a word in confirmation of what has been said in the foregoing section.

For, in the first place, as it respects the signature, it is well known that every key can be written with every signature, at pleasure, and even without any signature whatever. (§ 143, p. 281.) In the second place, the rule is still less capable of showing the key of each individual period, of each single passage in the middle of a piece, because digressive modulations are continually occurring in the course of a piece of music without any change of signature. (§§ 143, 144, p. 281.) And thirdly, according to the usual method of constructing the signature of the minor scale (§ 142, p. 280), the rule in question is doubly uncertain.

Equally fallacious is the method of ascertaining the key and scale from the *last note* or *last harmony* of a piece. For, in the first place, it is far from being true, that every piece of music ends with the tonic harmony. It not unfrequently happens, on the contrary, that a piece, even though it terminates with a regular close, and that too with a tonic harmony, still does not terminate with the harmony of that tonic which was the tonic of the piece, as a whole, but with some other; some pieces in the minor key, *e. g.* end with the *major* three-fold chord of the tonic—of all which, we have found examples above.—Secondly, as it respects the favourite maxim “*in fine videbitur cujus toni*”—*the key will be found at the end of the piece*, many pieces terminate wholly without any regular close; and in such cases it could not be ascertained at all, in what key the piece is,—and equally impossible would it be to determine the key of this or that section of a piece. Here again applies the humorous passage quoted from old J. B. Doni, in the remark on § 221, “*Or questa è una delle più strane cose del mondo, e proprio come dire, che, per discernere un Leone da un Cavallo, bisogna guardargli la coda; che se al povero animale sarà stata tagliata, non si potrà conoscere di qual specie sia. E se in una modulazione mancherà l'ultima nota, non si potrà discernere, in qual modo è composta:*” “*Now, this is one of the strangest things in the world\**; it really amounts to saying, that in order to distinguish a lion from a horse, it is necessary to look at his tail; and if, by any means, the poor animal should happen to have lost that, it would no longer be possible to recognize him, or to tell of what species he might be. So, if, in a modulation, the last note happens to be wanting, it will be impossible to tell in what key it is written.” But, thirdly, it is still less true, that the tonic note in the end of a piece of music is uniformly the highest, or that it is always exclusively found in the base.

A rule of this kind, *i. e.* one which is partially correct and applicable in many cases, might always do very well, provided it were given only as one that would apply in many cases, but not as being universally appropriate and fully adequate; because, in this case, it would really furnish no certain index, and thus, though it should confer no aid, it still would not deceive the learner, and therefore would at least do him no injury; but, given as a real and certain guide, it is not only unsuitable, but positively fallacious and deceptive. (Compare remark on § 99, p. 220.)

---

\* See p. 373, note †, for Mr. Warner's translation of this passage. The whole Italian quotation is here again inserted; but, in the German original, Weber now commences at the words “*che se al povero,*” &c.—ED.

## CHAPTER VII.

## RESOLUTION.

## § 313.

Many tones exhibit, in certain cases, a perceptible tendency to move in one particular way, and in no other. In other words, they have the peculiarity that a part which has once given such a tone cannot, under certain circumstances, from that point onward, proceed at pleasure gradually or by skips up or down, but must, or at least in order to the production of the best effect, proceed in one certain definite manner. As a preliminary example, by way of illustrating our meaning, it may be sufficient to observe, that, in the following passage, fig. 435, i,



the part which gives the tone  $\flat$  in the first measure tends, in the progression from the first to the second measure, to proceed a minor second upward to the tone  $\bar{c}$ , and not to move otherwise than so. The tone  $\flat$  ordinarily tends upward to  $\bar{c}$ . The tone  $\bar{f}$ , of the upper part, has a tendency downward to  $\bar{e}$ . So also, in the following measures, the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  inclines to move upward, and the tone  $\bar{d}$  to move downward.

A progression according to such a tendency is called *resolution*. The tone  $\bar{f}$ , in the above example, as we are accustomed to say, resolves itself into  $\bar{e}$ , the tone  $\flat$  into  $\bar{c}$ , the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  into  $\bar{a}$ , &c.

The tone into which an interval having this special tendency resolves itself, may be called the *tone of resolution*, or, briefly, *the resolution*.

So far as a tone manifests the above-mentioned tendency, it may be termed a *restricted tone or interval*.

The doctrine of the resolution of restricted intervals, or of limited progressions, is to be the subject of this chapter.

We will consider, in general,

(I.) The different ways in which a part may be carried from such a restricted interval to its tone of resolution, and the various forms in which the resolution of restricted tones may take place (§ 314)—and then,

(II.) Those harmonies which contain one or more of such restricted intervals. If we do not prosecute this examination to the fullest extent and in all its details, still we will attend to what is most worthy of remark. (§§ 315—343.)

## DIVISION I.

### THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE RESOLUTION OF HARMONIC INTERVALS.

#### § 314.

In the passage already quoted, fig. 435, *i*, p. 545, the principal seventh  $\bar{f}$ , as before observed, tends, in the fundamental progression  $V^7-I$ , to move downward to  $\bar{e}$ .

Now this movement of the part from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{e}$  may take place in different ways, and may thereby give birth to various forms of such resolutions; namely:

(A.) The part at one time moves from the restricted tone to the tone of resolution in a gliding, *legato* manner, as from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , in fig. 435, *i*, p. 545; and at another with an interrupted or *staccato* movement, as from  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{c}$  in the following measures of the same example.

(B.) Moreover, the two tones may also be *separated by rests*; as, for example, in fig. 435, *k*, *l*, *m*, p. 545.

(C.) An *intermediate tone* may also be first inserted between the two others. This may be done, for example, as in fig. 435, *n*, p. 545. The inserted tone may perhaps be regarded as another interval of the harmony, and then this form of resolution would become a species of broken progression of a part. (§ 21, p. 134.)

In like manner also, in fig. 436, *i*,

(Fig. 436, *i*.)

(*k*.)

(*l*.)



the principal seventh  $\bar{f}$  is not immediately followed by its resolution into  $\bar{e}$ , but the breaking part first makes a skip down to  $\bar{c}$ . A part which moves in this manner becomes, as we know from the doctrine of the broken progression of a part, virtually two, as in fig. 436, *k*, above. It is not to be denied, however, that the form in fig. 436, *l*, above, where  $\bar{f}$  is immediately followed by  $\bar{e}$ , always appears more smooth and flowing than that in fig. 436, *i*.

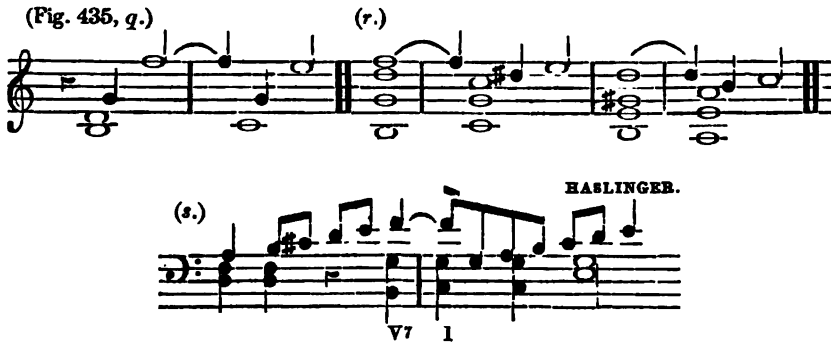
The inserted tone may also be one that is entirely foreign to the harmony perhaps a transition-tone, as in fig. 435, *o*,

(Fig. 435, *o*.)

(*p*.)



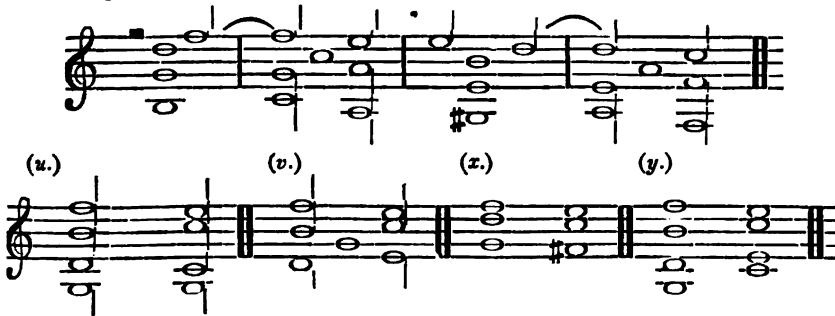
When the tone thus inserted is the same which was the seventh in the chord, as in fig. 435, *p*, it is usual to call this a *retardation* of the resolution, or a retarded resolution; because, on the introduction of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , the tone  $\bar{f}$  continues stationary for a time as an incidental tone before  $\bar{e}$ , and as a tone foreign to the harmony,—it waits to resolve itself into this  $\bar{e}$  subsequently. (We shall recur to this retarded resolution in § 424.) In fig. 435, *q*,



a retardation and the insertion of an harmonic tone both occur together; and in fig. 435, *r*, a retardation together with an inserted tone foreign to the harmony. Still other inserted tones are found in fig. 435, *s*, above.

In fig. 435, *t*,

(Fig. 435, *t*.)



the first half-note  $\bar{f}$ , as the principal seventh, should, at the moment that the tonic three-fold chord  $\mathbb{C}$  makes its appearance, resolve itself into  $\bar{e}$ ; but instead of this, the resolution is retarded until another harmony appears. (The more specific treatment of this entire subject forms a part of the doctrine of suspensions.) (§ 499, &c.)

(D.) A resolution occurs, moreover, at one time into one, and at another time into another interval, as reckoned from the base tone. For example, in fig. 435, *i*, p. 545, the tone of resolution, namely,  $\bar{e}$ , is *the third* of the base tone; in fig. 435, *u*, above, it is *the sixth* of the base tone; in fig. 435, *v*, above, it is *the octave* of the base tone; in fig. 435, *t*, above, it is *the fifth* of the base tone; in fig. 435, *x*, it is *the seventh* of the base tone; &c. &c. (Compare remark.)

(*E.*) The tone of resolution is likewise at one time a so-called consonant tone (§ 101, p. 228), as in all the above examples in fig. 435, *i—v*, pp. 545—547, and at another time, a dissonant tone, as in fig. 435, *x*, p. 547.

(*F.*) It is perceived, further, that, during the resolution, *the other parts* either *likewise move* or *remain stationary*. In fig. 435, *i*, p. 545, a middle part remains stationary during the resolution; in fig. 435, *u*, p. 547, the base does; in fig. 435, *y*, p. 547, all the parts move together. (Compare remark.)

(*G.*) The resolution occurs, finally, at one time on a heavy portion of the measure, and at another on a light;—a distinction which, as we shall soon see, is of special importance in the resolution of the secondary sevenths and of suspensions. (§§ 326½, 427, and 455.)

---

#### REMARK.

What is said under (*D*) and (*F*) will indeed appear to many as somewhat trivial, adventitious, wholly unessential, and hence as scarcely worthy of mention, and that too very properly. But one would be still more surprised to learn, that, in all our books of instruction, great importance is everywhere attached to the question, whether, for example, the seventh is resolved into the sixth, into the fifth, into the fourth, &c. (Compare remarks on §§ 99, 320, and 354.) As it respects the phantom called *exchange* of resolution, see the remark on § 320.

---

## DIVISION II.

### PROGRESSION OF THE INTERVALS OF THE FOUR-FOLD CHORDS.

---

#### (A.) OF THE PRINCIPAL FOUR-FOLD CHORD.

##### § 315.

Having taken the foregoing general survey of the resolution of harmonic tones, we will now proceed to inquire, what intervals of the different harmonies exhibit, in certain cases, a peculiar *tendency* of the above-mentioned species (§ 313); and what intervals do not, and in what cases they do not, exhibit this tendency, but move *freely*.

We will commence this examination of the different intervals with reference to the progression peculiar to *the intervals of the four-fold harmonies*: and first, the intervals of the *principal four-fold chord*.

We will consider the principal four-fold chord throughout on all points [with merely the exception of the case in which its fifth is arbitrarily lowered (§ 94, p. 214), which particular case we will hereafter consider in a separate appendix (§§ 334—338)].

Two particular intervals of the principal four-fold chord are, in certain cases, subjected to a definite resolution; namely, (1) its *seventh*, and (2) its *third*.

We will first attend to its *seventh*.

(1.) *Progression of the principal Seventh.*(a.) *Restricted Progression.*

## § 316.

*The seventh of the principal four-fold chord has a tendency to move either a minor or a major second downward in all those cases in which the principal four-fold chord is followed by another harmony in the same scale, and which contains the tone situated either a minor or major second below. In all such cases, the seventh tends, at the moment that the harmonic step is taken, to resolve itself into this tone.*

In the more specific treatment of this subject, we will examine in order all the different cases of harmonic progression in the same scale which can arise from the principal four-fold chord.

A principal four-fold chord may be followed, namely, by

((I.)) *Either the tonic harmony (natural principal cadence, § 254 (1), a, p. 473 ; § 255, p. 474) ; or*

((II.)) *Some other three-fold chord of the same key (false principal cadence, § 254 (1), b, p. 473 ; § 256, p. 476 ; § 264, p. 489) ; or*

((III.)) *Another four-fold chord in the same key (evitaded principal cadence, § 269, p. 493 ; § 270 (1), p. 494).*

## § 317.

((I.)) *In the Natural Cadence.*

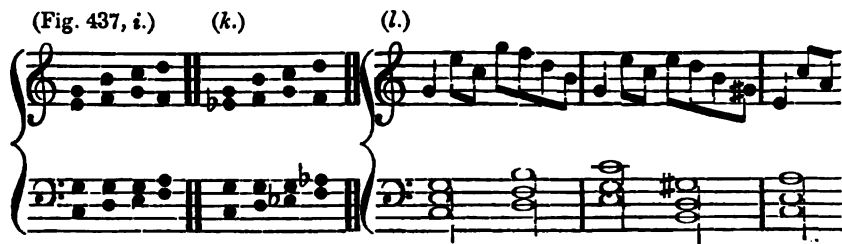
Accordingly, the first case in which a principal seventh tends to move one degree downward, is that in which a *natural cadence* is made after the principal four-fold chord. (§ 255, p. 474.)

((A.)) It is in conformity with this tendency that the seventh moves in the examples already mentioned in fig. 435, where we have seen this resolution occur under many different forms.

This resolution of the seventh, one degree downward in the natural principal cadence, is the most natural and smooth of all : accordingly, we will name it the *normal progression*.

((B.)) This progression of the seventh, however, is not the only admissible one. (For it is nowhere written, that, in art, merely the most simple and natural is universally and in all cases the best.) Our ear teaches us, on the contrary, as we are also taught indeed by the example of our greatest composers, that no evil is involved in this interval occasionally proceeding *upward* also, or even *by skips* ; and that too not only in middle parts, but also in the base or soprano.

Thus, for example, in fig. 437, *i* and *k*,



the tone  $\bar{f}$ , in the alto, moves upward to  $\bar{g}$ ,—in fig. 437, *l*, above, the tone *f*, of the tenor, moves up to *g*; in fig. 438,



the tone *g*, of the base, makes a skip upward to  $\bar{d}$ ; and in fig. 439,



the tone  $\bar{b}b$ , of the soprano, goes upward to  $\bar{c}$ . In fig. 440,

(Fig. 440.)      MOZART'S FIGARO.

*Andantino.*

i giu - ra - men - ti, di quel

Ob.

Fag.

Cor.

the tone  $\bar{f}$  of the oboë, moves, in like manner, up instead of down; in fig. 441,  
(Fig. 441.)

VOGLER.



the tone  $\bar{d}$  does the same; in fig. 442,

(Fig. 442.)

BEETHOVEN.



the tone  $\bar{d}\flat$ ;—in fig. 443,

(Fig. 443.)

MOZART'S COSI FAN TUTTI.



the tone  $\bar{f}$  passes upward into  $\bar{g}$ .

I have attempted a similar mode of resolution in fig. 444,  
(Fig. 444.)

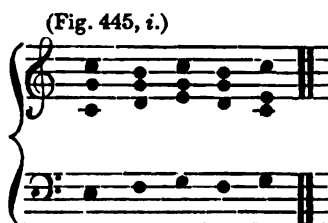
MY OP. 16.

*Wie glänzt die Son - ne, wie*

where the principal seventh  $\bar{d}$  moves upwards (unless, by the by, one chooses to regard the tones  $\bar{d}$  and  $\bar{b}$  as mere transition-tones.)

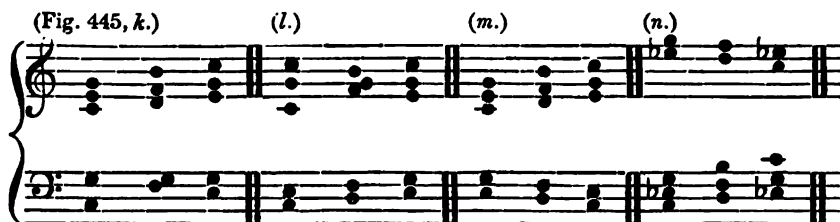


The gradual\* ascending progression of the seventh *f*, lying in the base, in fig. 445, *i*,



sounds less agreeably, and indeed one may say positively ill.

The ascending or skipping movement of the seventh is attended with the least liability to fault when it [the seventh] occurs doubled, as in fig. 445, *k*—*n*,



or even in fig. 441, p. 551. In this case, it is quite sufficient to carry the seventh gradually downward in one part. In the other, it may, without inconvenience, proceed otherwise. For, the natural progression of the former secures a sufficient degree of naturalness in the progression as a whole, and the normal movement which attends the *one* seventh satisfies, or at least pacifies, the ear.

Indeed the different progression of the seventh is even *necessary* in such cases, in order, as will appear farther on, to avoid faulty parallel progressions of octaves (§ 70, at the end, and § 547). On the contrary, such a movement of the seventh is especially to be avoided, when it would bring with it a forbidden parallelism of fifths, as we shall perceive hereafter (§ 529.) See fig. 445, *o*:



In general, a correct taste and a cultivated ear must here determine, in each individual case that occurs, whether such a conduct of the seventh is repulsive to the ear or not; and wherever this is not the case, such a progression of the seventh cannot rationally be forbidden on technical grounds.

\* The word "*gradual*," as here used, means "*by the successive steps or degrees of the scale, from some one tone of the scale to the next one above or below.*"—TR.

In the examples, fig. 419 and 420, p. 536, if we regard the chord before the last [c a  $\bar{e}b$   $\bar{f}\sharp$ ] or [c  $\bar{f}\sharp$  a  $\bar{e}b$ ] as the principal four-fold chord  $\bar{B}^7$  with the minor added ninth  $\bar{e}b$  and omitted fundamental tone D, the skip of the base from c (the fundamental seventh) to G is a progression of this seventh by skips. (Moreover, the chord in question can also be explained as a mere transition chord or apparent chord, by regarding the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  only as the tone of transition to  $\bar{g}$  of the following chord, and the a as a tone of transition to the following b. According to this view, the chord before the last depends upon no peculiar new fundamental harmony, but merely upon that of the foregoing chord, and thus the tone c should be regarded, not as the fundamental seventh, but as the fundamental tone, still continuing on as in the third chord from the end. Regarding the matter in this point of view, there would indeed be no seventh at all, and of course no irregular progression of a seventh.) In fig. 418, p. 536, the tone f moves in the same way, by skips, to c; and such progressions are found also in figs. 421 and 427, pp. 536 and 539. (Compare also figs. 308 and 398, pp. 481 and 522.)

### § 318.

#### ((II.)) *In False Cadences.*

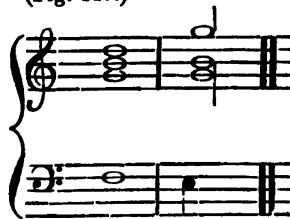
The second case in which the seventh of the principal four-fold chord tends to resolve itself into the next lower tone, is that of *false cadences* (§ 256, p. 476); namely, all those cases in which the tone of the next lower degree occurs in the three-fold chord following the four-fold chord. One case of this kind is the false cadence  $V^7$ —VI or  $V^7$ —VI, as in fig. 446:

(Fig. 446.)



Another is found in  $V^7$ —III, fig. 447:

(Fig. 447.)



(More examples may be found in figs. 297—304, pp. 476—479, and in figs. 312—317, pp. 482—484.)

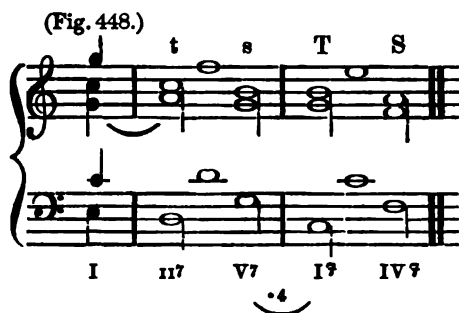
This tendency of the principal seventh is still stronger in such false cadences than it is in the *natural* cadence; for, it would not be easy to find examples in false cadences where the principal seventh could assume any other movement without offending the ear.

---

§ 319.

((III.)) *In the Evitations of Cadences in the same Scale.*

The third case in which the principal seventh requires to be carried gradually downward is that in which the principal four-fold chord is followed by another four-fold chord belonging to the same key, and containing the next lower tone (§ 269, p. 493). Accordingly, the principal seventh  $\bar{f}$  in fig. 448,



requires to be carried downward, as does also the tone *f*, in fig. 449:



I find no example where the principal seventh can be carried otherwise, in such harmonic progressions, without injuring the effect.

---

(b.) *Free Progression of the Principal Seventh.*

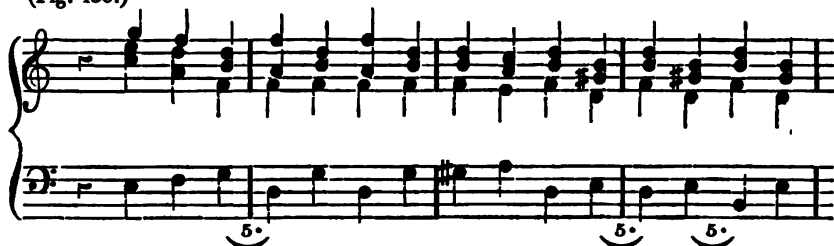
§ 320.

*It is only in the three cases mentioned in §§ 316—319, that the seventh of the principal four-fold chord exhibits a tendency to move gradually downward.*

((i.)) In the first place, then, it is self-evident that such a downward tendency of the seventh does not take place in all those cases where a harmony follows the four-fold chord which *does not contain* the next lower tone. A case

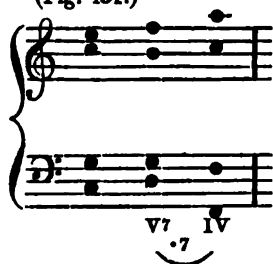
of this kind is found in those false principal cadences which involve the step of a fifth or a seventh (§ 257); as, for example, in  $V^7-II$ , or  $V^7-^{\circ}II$ . (Compare figs. 306—311, pp. 480—482); fig. 450:

(Fig. 450.)



and in  $V^7-IV$ , or  $V^7-IV$ , fig. 451:

(Fig. 451.)



and also in other similar evitations of cadences in the same scale; as, for example, in fig. 452:

(Fig. 452.)



((11.)) But, in general, the principal seventh does not exhibit any decided tendency downwards, when the principal four-fold chord is followed by *some harmony that is foreign to the scale*, and thus when the cadence is avoided by a digressive harmonic progression (§ 269), as in figs. 453—455:

(Fig. 453.)



C: V I  $V^7 a: V$  I

(Fig. 454.)



C: I  $V^7 F: V^7$  I

(Fig. 455.)



C:  $V^7 d: V^7$

(Compare also fig. 456.)



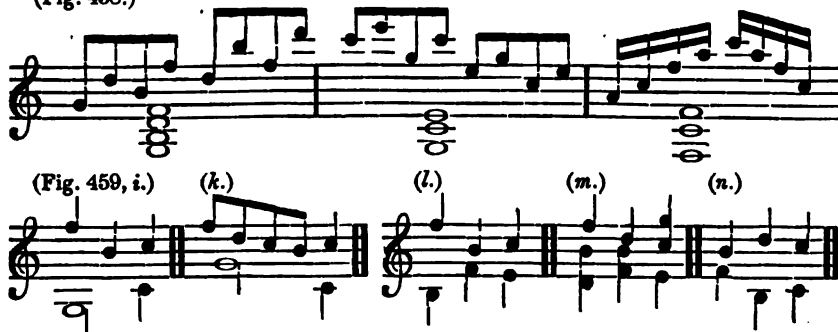
((III.)) Finally, as was observed at the commencement, the downward tendency of the principal seventh takes place *only at the moment that the harmonic step is taken*; and, consequently, so long as no harmonic step occurs, but the *principal four-fold chord still continues on, the progression is free*. For example, fig. 457:

(Fig. 457.)



(Compare also figs. 458 and 459.)

(Fig. 458.)



#### REMARK.

Having thus far exhibited the laws of the resolution of the seventh (§§ 313—320), as much as possible according to the experience and nature of our ear, and having referred them to simple fundamental principles, we will now for a moment consider the manner in which our theorists present this doctrine; and it will be seen that here again they have been in the utmost degree partial, inconsiderate, and hasty in the establishment of their theorems.

They observed, in many cases, that the seventh tends to proceed downward, and forthwith they came to the conclusion that they must at once deduce the rule from this fact and promulgate it as of universal application, that *every seventh must in every instance* (or, as Türk expresses himself, p. 213, “in every case according to the rule!”) *proceed one degree downwards!*

It is true, indeed, that cases must have occurred to them, and that too not unfrequently, in which the seventh proceeded otherwise without the slightest ill effect to the music; but, instead of allowing their eyes to be thereby opened to the inaccuracy of their abstraction, and to the propriety of recalling their rashly propagated and incorrect law, and of first inquiring, rather of the nature of our ear, in what cases such downward progression of the seventh is properly required, and then adjusting the law to these cases,—they preferred rather, perhaps from slothfulness or obstinacy, to let the once-established rule remain; and, even to this day, they have exhausted their ingenuity in the invention of subtle shifts, to explain cases running counter to their prohibition, though faultless in their own nature, and consequently condemnatory of the interdict, as entirely disconnected *exceptions* to the rule; and all this merely for the purpose of keeping still in honour the once-established prohibition! And, in like manner as those who created the interdict in question had not the courage to abandon it, so we, in pious deference to our venerated ancestors, still adhere to rules which they, if they had better considered the subject, would never have laid down.

But how very much the theory of composition is encumbered with uncertainty, confusion, and difficulty to beginners, by rules which are so incorrect as universal principles, and inapplicable in so many cases, it is easy to see.

Thus, for example, Kirnberger\*, and after him Türk†, could justify the progression of the seventh in such cases as those in fig. 460, *i—p*,

(Fig. 460, *i.*)                      (*k.*)                      (*l.*)                      (*m.*)

G: I V7 D: V7 I                      (*n.*)                      (*o.*)                      (*p.*)

The figure shows five musical examples labeled (i) through (p). Example (i) is in G major, showing a progression from G: I to V7, then D: V7, and finally I. Examples (k), (l), and (m) are in D major, showing various chord progressions with seventh chords. Examples (n) and (o) are in D major, showing resolutions of seventh chords. Example (p) is in G major, showing a resolution of a seventh chord.

only as exceptions to the rule—as omissions of resolution—as elliptic or catachretic resolutions. The tone  $\bar{c}$ , in fig. 460, *i*, above, must, says Türk, according to the rule, proceed one degree downward and resolve itself into  $\bar{b}$ . Instead of this, it is true, the next tone is  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ; but one has only to conceive to himself that the first chord is followed by the three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{E}$ , and that  $\bar{c}$  in this way moves down to  $\bar{b}$ , and then the rule would be exactly followed. Now this three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{E}$  and the resolution of  $\bar{c}$  into  $\bar{b}$  are only omitted, and the present case is, accordingly, a mere—*ellipsis*.

In a similar manner, Kirnberger† allows such cases as occur in fig. 461,

(Fig. 461.)

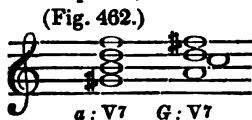
The figure shows a single musical example labeled (Fig. 461.) in G major, showing a chord progression with an omitted resolution.

only under the idea of an omitted chord of resolution.

\* In his *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I Th. 5 Abschn. p. 85, as also in his *Wahren Grunds. zum Gebr. der Harmonie*, § 19.

† *Generalb.* §§ 47 & 145.      ‡ *W. Grunds. zum G. d. Harm.* § 19.

So also Türrck, in the places above quoted, considers the passage in fig. 462 :

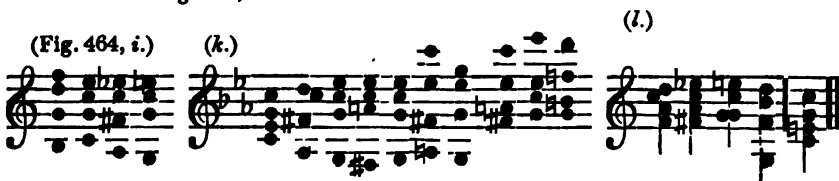


which he has discovered in Sebastian Bach, allowable only as a catachretic resolution, and to be justified only as an exception to the rule, as a licence "which the profoundest composers sometimes allow themselves!" while, in point of fact, the celebrated Bach does not, by this passage, in the slightest measure contravene the rule, if the latter be but correctly understood,—does not allow himself the smallest deviation from the true principle, and hence needs no justification, especially so miserable a one as is made in this case.

Türrck, moreover, knows how to justify the case, fig. 463, l.:



(which likewise commits an offence against his rule, but in which, as already remarked above, there is really no downward tendency of the seventh at all), only on the ground of the ingenious fiction, that the tone  $\bar{b}b$  is enharmonically exchanged for the tone  $\bar{a}\sharp$ . Also the case in fig. 464,



(in which, moreover, the tone  $\bar{e}b$  is not at all the seventh of the fundamental harmony, but either a transition tone or a ninth) he excuses only as an allowable licence or as an enharmonic exchange.

Equally without necessity is the passage in fig. 456, page 556, represented in the General Encyclopædia of Arts and Sciences\*, as an instance of an *exchange* (*Austauschung*) of resolution.†

In the same way, Marpurg‡ finds himself able to justify the skip of the upper part from the seventh  $\bar{f}$  down to  $\bar{b}$ , in fig. 459, i., page 556, only as a *concealed* resolution!

Moreover, Kirnberger§, and with him Türrck||, conceives himself under necessity of justifying such cases as those in fig. 459, k, l, m, page 556, which do not in the least contravene our rule, as particular *licences*, as allowable exceptions and *deviations* from the rule.

In the justification of so many cases which are counter to their rules, the gentlemen theorists discover an amount of casuistic subtlety which would obviously be capable of excusing, in similar ways, the grossest real faults, as they have succeeded so happily in exculpating mere imaginary ones.

\* In the *allgem. Encyclopädie d. Wiss. u. Künste*.

† See remark on § 314, and *Cäcilia* vol. xv. pp. 77—114.

‡ Generalbass, I. Th. 1 Abschn. IV Absatz, § 42, page 60.

§ Kunst des reinen Satzes, I. Th. 5 Abschn. page 83.

|| § 70.

But what answer would they give to a pupil whom they should charge with a really irregular resolution, in case he were to reply to them, that he wished for once to make an "ellipsis,"—a catachretic resolution, for the sake of becoming practiced in such catachreses and ellipses? Perhaps they may say to him in reply, that the principle does not here apply! In this case, he will further ask, pray, where does it then apply? and where does it not?

But why do all these difficulties exhibit themselves? Why this anxious daubing, botching, and plastering up of an edifice that cannot in its own nature be supported? Why these miserable casuistics? Why all these ingenious, troublesome, motley, fanciful, and forced justifications of pretended exceptions from a rule which, though claimed to be universal, is in fact only erroneously given out as such; while we can spare ourselves, together with the unnecessary rule, also the unnecessary trouble of laboriously seeking out unsatisfactory apologies for progressions, as exceptions to the rule, while those progressions are really faultless in themselves and need no justification whatever?

But still more! Theorists have not confined themselves simply to the task of making it requisite that the seventh of the fundamental tone should always move one degree downwards, but they have been inconsistent enough even to regard it as an exception to the rule, if any tone, accidentally situated on the seventh degree from the base tone, though not really the seventh of the fundamental harmony at all, does not resolve itself gradually downward! (Compare remark on § 99, p. 220.) This fact has been observable in several of the cases already quoted, but it is still more strikingly so in those that follow. Koch\*, for example, says, that, in fig. 465,

(Fig. 465.)



the seventh, that is the tone  $\bar{b}$ , which, as reckoned from the base tone, is indeed the seventh, though very far from being the seventh of the fundamental harmony, but an adventitious tone, having even a decided tendency upwards to its principal tone  $\bar{c}$ .—I say, this pretended seventh  $\bar{b}$  can be resolved also one degree upwards! Perhaps, however, as an exception and a licence!

Of the same species is the pitiful ingenuity with which our musical literati seek to apologize for the so-called *stationary seventh* (compare remark on § 268, p. 492), as in fig. 466, i:

(Fig. 466, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.) (o.)



\* Anleit. zur Comp. § 2.



They never seem exactly to understand how to make the stationariness of this seventh chime with the universal marching order which they have once suffered to pass upon all the sevenths, and by virtue of which these sevenths are all required to move so and so together. In my opinion, however, all this trouble is quite unnecessary. For the tone  $\bar{c}$ , here remaining stationary at every third quarter-note, is, for the admiration and astonishment of those learned gentlemen, not the seventh of the fundamental harmony, but the fundamental tone of the uninterruptedly continued harmony of  $\mathbb{C}$ , and is only by accident the seventh tone from the tone  $d$ , through which [ $d$ ] the base proceeds from  $c$  to  $e$  (while the tenor, instead of uninterruptedly retaining the tone  $\bar{c}$ , makes, in a like manner, a momentary transition to the tone  $\bar{f}$ , in order to return immediately again to the tone  $\bar{c}$ ). Regarding the matter in this point of view, there can be no occasion for any thing to be said as to the necessity for resolving the tone  $\bar{c}$ , at the third quarter, into  $\bar{b}$ . The examples in fig. 466,  $k-o$ , p. 559, also, admit of being explained in the same way, without having recourse to any ingenious fiction, and without rendering it necessary to seek out some solution that is peculiar, and to regard this pretended seventh as being catachretically resolved. (We shall recur to this subject of a stationary seventh again in § 392.)—As it respects the expression itself “stationary seventh,” it would apply much more appropriately rather to such cases as that in fig. 451, p. 555.

Equally without necessity, the gentlemen above referred to make a great ado also about the question, *into what interval* (that is, into what degree from the base tone) the seventh resolves itself. For, when we know that, in fig. 467,  $a-f$ ,



the fundamental seventh resolves itself into the fundamental third of the tonic harmony (§ 314,  $D$ , p. 547), in fig. 467,  $g$ , above, into the fifth of the harmony  $VI$ , and, in fig. 467,  $h$  and  $i$ , above, into the third of the harmony  $F:V7$ , &c.—we know something that is more substantial and definite, than when they tell us that, in fig. 467  $a$ , the seventh resolves itself into the third; in fig. 467  $b$ , the third into the third; in fig. 467  $e$ , the fifth into the third; in fig. 467  $f$ , the prime into the prime; in fig. 467  $g$ , the seventh into the fifth; in fig. 467  $h$ , the fifth of the fifth-sixth chord into the fourth of the second-fourth-sixth chord; &c. All the resolutions from fig. 467  $a$  to 467  $f$ , inclusive, are substantially alike, and differ only in the accidental, unimportant circumstance, that the base part remains stationary on the tone  $g$ , in fig. 467,  $d$ , while it moves upward or downward during the resolution of the seventh, in fig. 467,  $a, b, c, e, f$ . On the contrary, the seventh resolves itself, as well in fig. 467  $d$ , as in fig. 467  $i$ , into the sixth: and yet these two cases are *essentially* diverse; namely,  $C:V7-I$ , and  $C:V7-F:V7$ . (Compare also remarks on § 90, p. 220, and § 314, p. 548; and § 454.)

As it respects the commonly received dogma, that *the resolution of the seventh must take place on a light portion of the measure*, it is true just so far as it is also true that the preparation must be made on a light part of the measure, while the discord must be struck on a heavy part of the measure (§ 114, p. 244), in which case the resolution naturally occurs on a light portion of the measure. (§ 326½.)

(2.) *Progression of the Third of the Principal Four-fold Chord.*(a.) *Restricted Progression.*

§ 321.

((I.)) *In the Natural Cadence.*

There is still another interval in the principal four-fold chord, besides the seventh, which, in certain cases, requires a definite progression; namely, *the fundamental third*,—the subsemitone of the key.

This interval tends to move a minor second upwards when the principal seventh is followed by another harmony which belongs to the same scale, and which contains the tone of that next higher degree.

First, in the natural principal cadence. (§ 255, p. 474)

((A.)) In fig. 468, i,

(Fig. 468, i.)

(k.)



$\bar{b}$  moves into  $\bar{c}$ , thus a minor second upwards; and in like manner  $\bar{g}\sharp$  afterwards ascends to  $\bar{a}$ .

A similar progression attends the subsemitone in fig. 468 k, above, except that it is somewhat retarded; also in fig. 468 l,

(Fig. 468, l.)

(m.)



though interrupted by a transition tone; and also in fig. 468 m, though both retarded and interrupted.

But in fig. 469, i,

(Fig. 469, i.)

(k.)

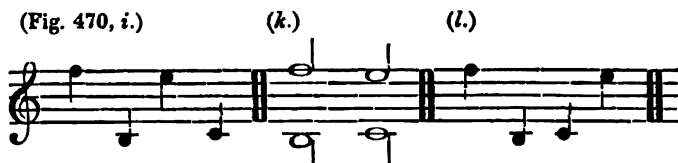
(l.)

(m.)



where the proper third of the principal four-fold chord decidedly moves downwards or upwards by skips, the progression gives but very little satisfaction to the ear.

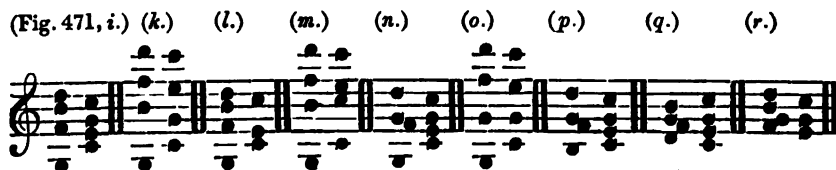
In the following passage, fig. 470, *i*, *k*, *l*,



the tone  $\bar{c}$  does not immediately follow the subsemitone  $b$ , but the breaking-part first makes a skip upwards to  $\bar{e}$ , though the broken under-part moves regularly, as in fig. 470 *k*, above. The progression in fig. 470 *l*, above, is always more smooth than it is in fig. 470 *i*, above (§ 27, p. 144, and § 471).

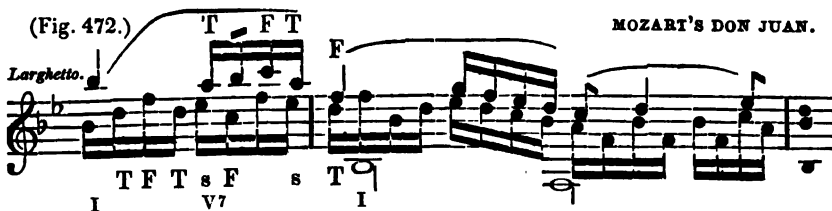
((*B.*)) But, however decided is the gradual ascent which forms the most natural progression to the subsemitone in the natural principal cadence, still it is not the only possible one.

In the first place, the third of the principal four-fold chord may, in the natural principal cadence, often very properly descend by skips into *the fifth of the following three-fold chord*, particularly when it [the third] lies in a middle part. For example, fig. 471 :



We frequently have occasion to avail ourselves of this freedom in the progression of the third, particularly in those cadences which are to form a full close, and where we must otherwise, if we have only four parts, be deprived of the fifth of the tonic chord, as in fig. 471 *l* and *m*, above, or of the third of the four-fold chord itself, as in fig. 471 *n* and *o*, above, or we should be compelled to put the four-fold chord in an inverted position, as in fig. 471 *p* and *q*, above, or the three-fold chord, as in fig. 471 *r*, above, &c.

But, moreover, the subsemitone is sometimes allowed to take this progression even in *the outer parts*. Thus, for example, Mozart, in fig. 472,



carries the tone  $\bar{a}$  of the upper part by a skip down to  $\bar{f}$ .—Fig. 473, on the next page, is of a similar character.

(Fig. 473.) *sf* BEETHOVEN'S SONATA.

The above-mentioned leap of a third may also, by the insertion of a transition tone, be changed and divided into two steps of a second each. Thus, for example, in fig. 474,

(Fig. 474, a.) (b.)

the tone  $\bar{b}$  moves down through  $\bar{a}$  to the fifth  $\bar{g}$  of the following harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ . The same interval moves in a similar manner in figs. 475—478:

(Fig. 475.) *Voce.* SPONTINI'S CORTEZ. *bis. F T F*

(Fig. 476.)

(Fig. 477.) C. M. VON WEBER.

(Fig. 478, a.) (b.)

(Compare fig. 234.)

This gradual downward progression sounds rather disagreeably in the *minor* key, as may be seen from fig. 479 :

(Fig. 479.)

The disagreeable effect in this case arises from the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , which is foreign to the scale of *a*-minor (§ 131, p. 262). Vogler\*, however, gives the passage in fig. 480, as a *model* of an ancient musical close.

(Fig. 480.) VOGLER.

(Compare fig. 407.)

Still other progressions of the *subsemitone* may be seen in the following examples ; namely, in fig. 481,

(Fig. 481.) VOGLER. TRICHORDIUM.

$b\flat : I$   $V7 I V7$   $I$   $VI C\flat : V7$   $A\flat : V7$   $I V7$

\* In his *Choralsystem*, Tab. IV.

from a to  $\flat$ , and then from g to eb; in fig. 482,

(Fig. 482.) *Andante.*

VOGLER'S MISSA PASTORALE.

in the second violin, from  $\bar{f}\sharp$  to  $\bar{b}$ ; in fig. 483,

(Fig. 483.)

CHEBUBINI'S MASS.

prop - - - ter mag - nam, prop - ter mag - - - nam

prop - ter, prop - - - ter mag - nam propter

C: I d: V7 G: V7 e: V7 C: I G: V C: V d: V

from  $\bar{b}$  to  $\bar{g}$ ; in fig. 484,

(Fig. 484.)

MY OP. 31.

Dank-ler wird's im Hal - ne;

Dank-ler wird's im Hal - ne; dämmern-der am Bach, mit Se -

(Fig. 484 continued.)



even in the base, from  $g\sharp$  to  $e$ .

Each of the usual anomalous progressions of the subsemitone involves the least liability to fault *when the subsemitone occurs doubled*, and one of the two takes the natural movement; in which case, for reasons already mentioned (in § 317, ((B)) p. 549), such different progression is not only more safe, but even absolutely *necessary*, as in fig. 484 above.

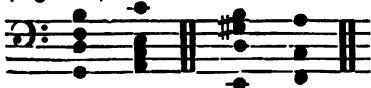
In fig. 482, p. 565, moreover, it might also be taken into account, that the anomalous progression of the tone  $f\sharp$ , of the second violin, in the second measure, is compensated by the movement of the alto part,—and so also the downward movement of the soprano part in the following measure, by the progression of the tone  $f\sharp$  in the first violin—at any rate, by the fact that the alto part here ascends above the soprano, by which means the soprano, in a manner, ceases to be an outer part.

### § 322.

#### ((II.)) *In False Cadences.*

((A.)) In like manner as the third of the principal four-fold chord tends to ascend in the *natural cadence*, so it tends to take this course also in all those false cadences (§ 256, p. 476) where the principal four-fold chord is followed by a three-fold chord which contains the tone of the next higher degree; accordingly, in the false cadence  $V^7-v_1$  or  $VI$ , fig. 485, below, and in  $V^7-IV$  or  $V^7-iv$ , fig. 486:

(Fig. 485.)



(Fig. 486.)



A *retardation* of such a progression in the false cadence  $V^7-v_1$  or  $VI$ , may be found in fig. 487, *i*, *k*, *l*:

(Fig. 487, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)



In fig. 487, *m*,

(Fig. 487, *m*.)

(*n*.)

(*o*.)

(*p*.)



an interpolated transition-tone is found between the subsemitone and the resolution ; in *n*, both a retardation and an inserted accessory tone ; in *o*, a two-fold retardation ; namely, both that of the progression of the subsemitone and that of the note of suspension itself—that is to say, the form is as in *o*, instead of being as in *p*.

Similar examples of the false cadence  $V^7-IV$ , or  $V^7-IV$ , the reader can form for himself.

((*B*.) The inclination of the third of the principal four-fold chord to move one degree upwards at the moment this false cadence is taking place, is so strong, that it is difficult to find examples where any other progression would be of good effect.

One way, however, in which this interval admits of being carried downwards, is shown by fig. 488,

(Fig. 488, *a*.)

(*b*.)

(*c*.)

*Slow.*



where, in the false cadence  $V^7-VI$ , the third  $\bar{c}\sharp$  of the principal four-fold chord  $\bar{A}^7$  descends to  $b\flat$  through the transition-tone  $\bar{c}$ . (Compare § 257, p. 476, and fig. 302, p. 479.)

Other examples, whose faultlessness I will not vouch for, one may find and examine for himself in figs. 489 and 490 :

(Fig. 489, *a*.)

(*b*.)

(Fig. 490.)



One may also compare with the present section all the examples in figs. 297—321, pp. 476—485.



## § 323.

*((III.)) In the Evitations of Cadences in the same Scale.*

((A.)) Moreover, when a principal four-fold chord is followed by another four-fold chord in the same scale and thus a principal cadence is *avoided*, the third of the principal four-fold chord tends to go up a minor second, in case the tone of this degree is contained in the following harmony. This is the case in the harmonic successions  $V^7 - \text{vi}^7$  or  $V^7 - \text{VI}^7$ ,  $V^7 - \text{II}^7$  or  $\text{oII}^7$ ,—and  $V^7 - \text{IV}^7$  or  $\text{iv}^7$ ; for example, in figs. 491 and 492:

(Fig. 491, i.)                      (k.)                      (Fig. 492.)

$V^7 \quad \text{vi}^7 \quad \text{II} \quad V^7$                        $V^7 \quad \text{oII}^7$

(As it respects the succession  $V^7 - \text{I}^7$ , see what follows in *B.*)

((B.)) The third of the principal four-fold chord cannot easily proceed otherwise, in such an evitation of a cadence, than one degree upwards; except in the harmonic succession  $V^7 - \text{I}^7$ , that is, when the principal four-fold chord in major keys is followed by the major four-fold chord on the key-note, as in fig. 493, from the third to the fourth measures:

(Fig. 493.)

$\text{I} \quad \text{IV}^7 \quad \text{oVII}^7 \quad \text{III}^7 \quad \text{vi}^7 \quad \text{II}^7 \quad V^7 \quad \text{I}^7 \quad \text{IV}^7$

when, namely, it is preferred to let the  $\text{f}$  continue on, in order that it may serve as a preparation of the major seventh of the following chord;—so also in fig. 494, in the second part (not in the base):

(Fig. 494.)

$\text{I} \quad \text{II}^7 \quad V^7 \quad \text{I}^7 \quad \text{IV}^7 \quad \text{oVII}^7 \quad \text{III}^7 \quad \text{vi}^7 \quad \text{oII}^7 \quad V^7 \quad \text{I}^7 \quad V^7 \quad \text{I}^7$

in fig. 495, from the first to the second measure, &c.

(Fig. 495.)

HAYDN'S MASS, NO. 1.

IV I II<sup>7</sup> V<sup>7</sup> I<sup>9</sup> IV<sup>9</sup> °V<sup>11</sup><sup>7</sup> g: V<sup>7</sup> g: °II<sup>7</sup> V<sup>7</sup>

(b.) *Free Progression of the Third of the Principal Four-fold Chord.*

§ 324.

The tendency of the subsemitone to proceed one degree upwards does not take place in any other cases than the three that have already been mentioned. It moves, rather, so far as other circumstances do not stand in the way, either gradually, or by skips either upwards or downwards, at pleasure.

(I.) First, then, in those harmonic successions, where the tone of this degree is not contained in the second chord; consequently (A) in all those false cadences where the principal four-fold chord is followed by the three-fold chord of the second degree of the same scale, or of the third, or even of the seventh; namely, in the false cadences V<sup>7</sup>—II or °II, V<sup>7</sup>—III, and V<sup>7</sup>—°VII (figs. 305—317, pp. 480—484).

or

(B) In similar evitations of cadences in the same scale, namely, in V<sup>7</sup>—III<sup>7</sup>, and V<sup>7</sup>—°VII<sup>7</sup>, fig. 496,

(Fig. 496.)

V<sup>7</sup> III<sup>7</sup>

as also (C) in various digressive harmonic successions where the third cannot

in the nature of the case have a gradual progression; as, for example, in fig. 497. (Compare § 494.)

(Fig. 497.)

J. HAYDN.

*Lass dein Lei - den und dein Ster - ben nicht an*

*Eb: I      V7      Ab: II      f: V7      f: IV*

where the tone  $\bar{d}$  cannot possibly be resolved by a gradual movement, and where it accordingly has full liberty to move by skips to  $\bar{f}$ . In like manner, the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , in the third measure of fig. 498,

(Fig. 498.)

SPONTINI'S VESTALIN.

*pp*

moves downwards to  $\bar{f}$ .—The cases in figs. 499 and 500 are of a similar description.

(Fig. 499.)

(Fig. 500, i.)

(k.)

(l.)

*C: V7 d: V7      d: I      V7 F: V7 I      d: I      V7 F: V7 I*

(II.) But, in general, the subsemitone does not exhibit a decided tendency to move one degree upwards, where the principal four-fold chord is followed by any harmony that is *foreign to the scale*, and where, accordingly, the principal cadence is avoided by a digressive harmonic succession. Thus, for example, in fig. 501, i,

(Fig. 501, i.)

(k.)

*C: V G: V7 C: V7 I      V7 F: V7 I*

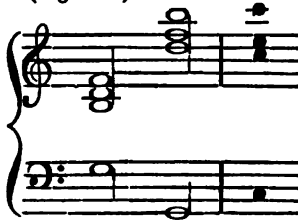
the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  of the upper part proceeds, at the second harmonic step, without hesitation, to  $\bar{f}$ , instead of resolving itself into  $\bar{g}$ , and subsequently the tone  $b$  goes in like manner to  $bb$ .—Precisely the same free progressions of this interval are found also in fig. 501, *l* and *m* :



namely, the tone  $B$  goes down to  $A$ , and  $b$  down to  $a$ .—Indeed, in many cases, as, for example, in fig. 501, *i*, p. 570, it would sound positively ill to carry the subsemitones  $\bar{f}\sharp$  and  $b$  one degree upwards, as in fig. 501 *k*, p. 570; because, in that case, another part must carry the seventh of the following harmony by a *skip*, which, as we shall learn when we come to the subject of *cross relation* (*Querstand*), would not be of good effect. (§ 490.)

(III.) Finally, the fundamental third of the principal four-fold chord is free so long as no harmonic step is taken; but the principal four-fold chord continues on unchanged; for example, figs. 502, 503, and 504 :

(Fig. 502.)



(Fig. 503.)



(Fig. 504.)



## REMARK.

The musical literati are not agreed, moreover, in respect to the above-mentioned instances of free progression. Not that they have been in the habit of explaining all

those and other like progressions as incorrect and disagreeable to the ear; no! they only find them *to contravene their rules*; and, in order to be able to justify them without marring the integrity of their rules, they again exhaust their ingenuity in subtle evasions and apologies.

Hear, for example, how Kirnberger\*, Türck†, and Koch‡, fancy themselves obliged to explain such cases as are found in fig. 505, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 505, *i*.) (k.)

C: I a: V7 d: V7 G: V7 C: V7 F: V7 a: V7 d: V7 G: V7 C: V7

(in which, moreover, they have discovered a still farther irregularity; namely, the unprepared introduction of the principal seventh! [See remark on § 107, p. 240.]) We must, they say, imagine fig. 505, *k*, not to be as it is, but otherwise; namely, as it is in fig. 505, *l*:

(Fig. 505, *l*.)

a: V d: V G: V C: V

Such a *passage*, continue they, would not be contrary to our rules: the tones marked with an oblique stroke would be only *transition-tones*.—Now we have only to conceive, they add, that the transition-tone in question always introduces itself half a measure sooner than is the case here (thus again as in fig. 505, *k*). This earlier introduction of the transition-tone, we denominate again “an anticipation of a transition-tone;” we say, “the transition-tone stands here instead of the principal:”—this anticipation and this putting of the transition-tone in the place of the principal, we allow as “a licence;”—and now the example can pass, for it has now a learned name, it is called “an *Anticipation of a transition-tone*,”—“the *transition-tone instead of the principal*,”—“a *licence*!” Mark it now, ye novices! we may substitute the transition-tone for the principal, and this is called a *licence*.—Now do you know it? And *what* do you know?—

Besides, if this *one case* of a downward progression of the subsemitone rendered it necessary to be at so much pains for an apology, what a huge labour must it be to furnish a similar justification for all the *innumerable other cases* of natural or false cadences or

\* *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I Bd. 5 Abschn. page 89 & foll.

† *Generalb.* § 45. ‡ *Anleit. zur Comp.* I Bd. Remark to § 132, and *Handbuch*, § 188.

evitations of cadences in which we should find the interval in question so frequently proceeding *otherwise* than by one degree upwards, or even *not at all*, and of which those gentlemen, in framing their rules, have obviously never dreamed! What a mass of learned lore might have been elicited upon all those cases of harmonic progression! What a prize of new catachretic progressions and *non-progressions*, licences, and the like! and, in respect to the latter, what a fine opportunity again to invent a new technical term: a stationary subsemitone, as a counterpart to the stationary seventh, &c. &c.

But the confusion becomes twice confounded, when one takes the law laid down by theorists in the manner in which they express it; namely, according to the wretched thorough-bass figures.

Here it is, as expressed in the approved books of instruction: "Every note which has a false (minor, § XXXVI, p. 47,) fifth over it, must move a (minor) second higher while the false fifth resolves itself one degree downwards.—Every note which bears a superfluous (major) fourth must go down one degree, while the superfluous fourth goes one degree upwards;" or, briefly, "the minor (diminished, as it is called) fifth resolves itself downwards, whereas the major (superfluous, as it is called) fourth resolves itself upwards."

Now this rule, like many others of the same stamp, does indeed apply in *many* cases; but it proves false not only in numberless others (namely, not only in all the cases of §§ 321 ((B)) and 322 ((B)), also § 323 at the end, and in all the cases of § 324;—but, in addition to these, in such cases also as are found in figs. 506 and 507:

(Fig. 506.)

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16

I °IX I V7 VI °II I V7 I °II7 I V7 I °II I V7

I °II I V7 I °II V7 I °II7 V7 I °II V7

(Fig. 507, i.)

(k.)

I V VI III IV I V IV c: V 7 VI

and many others which are likewise comprehended under the rule, as it is above expressed, and in which, as in fig. 506, p. 573, the tone B several times moves upwards by skips, while the tone f moves in like manner downwards, and as also in fig. 507, *z*, p. 573, the major (or so-called superfluous) fourth (the tone  $\bar{d}$ ) *descends*, while the base-tone *remains stationary*; also in fig. 507 *k*, p. 573, the minor (so-called diminished) fifth,  $\bar{a}b$ , *remains stationary*, while the base-tone, instead of ascending, makes a progression *downwards*.

Finally, the *still more incorrect*, though common expression, "all superfluous intervals resolve themselves upwards, while all diminished intervals resolve themselves downwards," is really worthy of no critical examination at all. This rule, in order to be, in reference to the interval here in question, namely, the third of the principal four-fold chord, even as true as the one mentioned in the foregoing paragraph, must at least be constructed as follows:

"The upper end of all the so-called superfluous intervals resolves itself upwards, while the lower end resolves itself downwards,—whereas the upper end of all diminished intervals resolves itself downwards, while the lower end resolves itself upwards;" or briefly: "The two ends of superfluous intervals tend to move away from each other in their resolution, whereas the two ends of diminished intervals tend to approach each other;"—or, "the former tend to diverge, whereas the latter tend to converge." This rule, even if, in its universal application, it were as false as the one mentioned in the preceding period, *still would not, at least, be so incorrect*. (Compare moreover the remark on § 341, and the remark on § 99.)

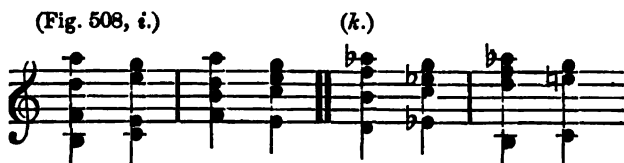
### (3.) *Progression of the Independent Ninth.*

#### § 325.

##### (a.) *Restricted Progression.*

Having thus far considered the progression of the seventh and the third of the principal four-fold chord, we will now turn our attention to the progression of the ninth, which is independently added to this harmony.

The independent ninth, whether major or minor, tends, at the time of making the next harmonic step, to proceed one degree downwards, whenever the tone of this next lower degree is contained in the following harmony. Thus, for example, in fig. 508, *i*,



the tone  $\bar{a}$  very perceptibly tends to go down to  $\bar{g}$ ,—and so also in fig. 508, *k*, above, the tone  $\bar{a}b$  tends downwards to  $\bar{g}$ .

The same species of progression, only retarded, are found in fig. 509:

(Fig. 509.)



An instance, however, in which such a minor ninth, at the moment of making the cadence, does not proceed gradually, but arbitrarily by skips, may be seen in fig. 510:

(Fig. 510.) T F R

HAYDN'S SINFONIA.



Added ninths are not likely to occur in false cadences (§ 257, p. 476.) Such a case might perhaps occur in the false cadence  $V^7-VI$ , or  $V^7-VI$ ; but here the tone of the next lower degree is not contained in the second harmony. (§ 326.)

## § 326.

(b.) *Free Progression.*

The movement of the independent ninth is *free*.

(I.) In cases where the tone of resolution\* does not occur in the following harmony. For example, in fig. 511:

(Fig. 511.)



In the sixth measure of fig. 512 also,

(Fig. 512.)

Vl.

Ob.

SPONTINI'S VESTALE.

Vl.



\* The tone of resolution is the tone into which some previous discordant tone resolves itself.—TR.



(Fig. 512 continued.)

(e.) *Ob.* (f.) *VI. pp* (g.) *Ob.*  
 (h.) (i.) (k.)

the ninth, (bb) of the harmony  $\text{E}^7$  proceeds upwards to  $\text{b}$  as the fifth of the following harmony  $\text{C}^7$ .—In fig. 513,

(Fig. 513.)

CHERUBINI'S MASS.

mag - - - - nam glo - - ri - am, glo - ri - am tu - - am  
 mag - nam propter mag - nam glo - - ri - am tu - - am

G:V C:V7 d:V7 C:V7 G:V C:V7 I a:V7 I C:II I V7 I

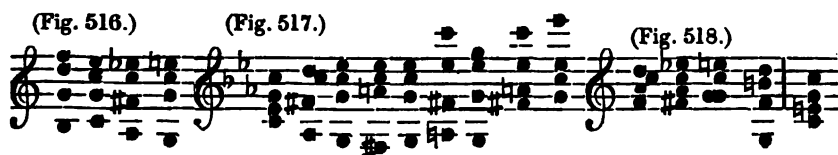
at the commencement of the second measure, the tone  $\bar{a}$  is a major ninth of the harmony  $\text{E}^7$ ; in the digressive harmonic step which is made from the first to the second eighth-note, this tone  $\bar{a}$  does not move at all, but remains stationary as a proper fifth of the three-fold harmony of  $\text{D}$ . A similar freedom of the ninth is found in figs. 514 and 515:

(Fig. 514.)

(Fig. 515.)

a:V7 G:V7

If, in such cases as those occurring at the third chord of fig. 516, and at the fourth, sixth, and eighth of fig. 517, and also at the second chord of fig. 518,



we regard the tones  $e$  and  $e\flat$  as ninths of a  $\Delta^7$ -harmony, we shall find these ninths, on the appearance of the tonic fourth-sixth chord, at one time to ascend and at another to remain stationary.

((II.)) The movement of the independent ninth is also free so long as the principal four-fold chord still continues on [without resolving itself into some other chord]. Accordingly, in fig. 519, the tone  $\bar{f}$  may, without hesitation, skip down to  $g\sharp$ .

(Fig. 519.)



So likewise, in the second measure of fig. 520,

(Fig. 520.)

NEP. HUMMEL'S MASS, NO. 1.

SOPR.  
ALTO.  
TEN.  
BASS.

*pp*

*sus - ci - pe, sus - ci - pe*

Oboè.

VLNI.

*pp*

VIOLE.

*pp*

BASS.

VOL. II.

M

(Fig. 520 continued.)

de - pre - ca - ti - o - nem nos - - tram

The musical score consists of five staves. The top staff is a vocal line with lyrics. The second staff is a piano accompaniment. The third and fourth staves are piano accompaniment. The fifth staff is a piano accompaniment. Dynamics include *cres.* and *p*.

the tone  $\bar{c}b$  of the soprano part skips, without hesitation, during the continuance of the principal four-fold chord  $\bar{3}b^7$  down to  $\bar{d}$  (meanwhile, however, the tone  $\bar{c}b$  of the accompaniment—a tone which continues stationary to the end of the measure—must, at the moment of the harmonic step being taken, move down to  $bb$ .)

So likewise, in fig. 521, *i*,

(Fig. 521, *i*.)

(k.)

*D: V7 b: V7 I*

The musical score consists of two staves. The top staff is a vocal line. The bottom staff is a piano accompaniment. The key signature is D major. The time signature is 4/4. The bottom staff has a chord progression: *D: V7 b: V7 I*.

the ninth  $\bar{g}$  moves freely, during the continuance of the harmony, into  $\bar{e}$ ,—and in fig. 521, *k* above, the ninth  $\bar{c}$  has a free progression upwards to  $\sharp f$  during the continuance of the first measure.

The ninths also which occur in figs. 103, p. 193, and 105—109, pp. 193 and 194, have a similar free progression.

#### REMARK.

After the review which we have taken of the cases mentioned in the foregoing sections, the reasons will be quite apparent, why we consider the free addition of a ninth

as a peculiar transformation, and such added ninth not (as many others have done) as a note of transition—and also why we regard these transformations as exclusively appropriate to only two harmonies. (Compare Remark on § 88, p. 206.)

In the *first place*, it is very easily perceived that the view of those theorists is incorrect, who regard all such ninths as transition-tones or suspensions. Were the above-mentioned ninths suspensions, they could move no otherwise than gradually to the next principal tone, lying either one degree above or below, but not by skips to a remote interval.—Nor could they proceed chromatically upwards or downwards, or remain unresolved, &c. An interval which has thus a free movement cannot be reckoned in the class of those tones whose presence is no where justifiable, except in case of their immediate connexion with, and resolution into, a principal tone situated on the very next degree—not in the class of those tones which can exist only as fore-notes to an immediately proximate principal one, in which class they would make but an ill figure, deviating as they do from all the laws of progression appropriate to such tones. In order to explain the ninths of the foregoing examples as suspensions, and to justify their entire deviation from the laws pertaining to the resolution of suspensions, one must again call in to his aid all those equivocal evasions and technical phrases about elliptic and catachretic resolutions, licenses, &c.!

Now, under all these circumstances, it certainly was well to adopt, as we have done, the most simple and natural way on this point, and to recognize such ninths as being independently added to the harmony, and thus, in a manner, as holding the attitude of harmonic tones.

But, *secondly*, it will also be readily seen, that such an addition of a ninth can take place only in the case of the principal four-fold chord, and in such harmonies as are mentioned in § 89, &c., but not in the case of other harmonies, when it is considered that every ninth of the fundamental tone of any other harmony can actually never move otherwise than according to those laws which we recognize as the laws of progression for transition-tones. This fact shows, with sufficient clearness, that ninths of the latter description belong by all means to the class of those mere incidental tones from which they differ in no material point, and that it would be very incorrect to speak of the independent ninths of other harmonies, since the reason for which our independent ninths must be recognized as something else than a transition-tone, does not apply to the ninth tone of any other harmony whatever.

---

(B.) PROGRESSION OF THE INTERVALS OF THE SECONDARY FOUR-FOLD CHORDS.

§ 326½.

It may here be remarked in general, in respect to the doctrine of the resolution of the secondary four-fold chords, that such resolution usually occurs on the lighter portion of the measure, on a part of the measure which is lighter than that on which the dissonant harmony was struck, since, as shown above in §§ 114—117, pp. 244—252, we are inclined to concede the heavier portion of the measure to the striking of the discords. (Compare remark on § 320, at the end.)

After this general preliminary, we will proceed to examine the various ways in which, in certain cases, one and another interval of the secondary four-fold chords tends to proceed.

(1.) *Progression of the Secondary Sevenths.*

## § 327.

(a.) *Restricted Progression.*

The secondary sevenths, like the *principal* seventh, have a tendency, in many cases, to proceed one degree downwards; and that too, not as in the case of the former, merely in harmonic progressions in the same scale, but generally, *whenever the secondary four-fold chord is followed by any harmony which contains the tone of the next degree below the seventh of the former.*

In order fully to examine the cases in which this downward tendency of the sevenths in question takes place, or the reverse, we will first conceive to ourselves, in general, what harmonies may follow a secondary four-fold chord.

Every secondary four-fold chord may be followed by

((I.)) The three-fold chord situated a fourth higher and belonging to the same scale (*natural secondary cadence*, § 254, 2, *a*, p. 473; § 263, p. 486); or by

((II.)) Some other three-fold chord belonging to the same scale (*false secondary cadence*, § 254, 2, *b*, p. 473; § 266, p. 490); or by

((III.)) Another four-fold chord belonging to the same same scale (*an evasion of a secondary cadence in the same scale*, § 269, p. 493; § 270, 2, p. 494); or by

((IV.)) Some harmony belonging to another key (*an evasion of a secondary cadence by means of a digressive modulation*, § 269, p. 493).

We will now proceed, in the order above proposed, to examine the cases in which the above-mentioned tendency of the secondary sevenths takes place (with the exception, however, of the harmony °11<sup>7</sup> with an elevated third: this will be expressly treated in § 334).

((I.)) In the *natural* secondary cadence, the secondary seventh, according to this tendency, proceeds one degree downward, as in fig. 522:

(Fig. 522.)



((II.)) Also in the *false* secondary cadences the secondary sevenths rather incline to move downwards, where the tone situated one degree below occurs in the second harmony. This is the case in the second and sixth harmonic successions in each line of the table in § 266, p. 490, *i. e.* in all those which consist

of the step of a *second* or *sixth* of the fundamental harmony. For examples of the *former* species, see fig. 523 :

(Fig. 523.)



examples of the *second* species are found in fig. 524 :

(Fig. 524.)



((III.)) Moreover, in *evitations of cadences in the same key*, the secondary seventh exhibits a tendency to the next lower tone, wherever the latter is contained in the following harmony. Such is the case in the first, third, and fifth successions of each line in the second table under § 270, p. 494; *i. e.* in all those which consist of the step of a *second*, *fourth*, or *sixth* of the fundamental harmony.

Instances of the progression of the fundamental harmony by steps of a *second* may be seen in fig. 525 :

(Fig. 525.)



Examples of progressions by steps of a *fourth* may be found in fig. 526 :

(Fig. 526.)



—Meanwhile, however, such examples as those in figs. 527 and 528,

(Fig. 527.)

HAYDN'S QUARTETT.

F                      R                      R                      R

(Fig. 528.)

show also that deviations from this mode of resolution are not of ill effect.

Instances of progressions by steps of a *sixth* are to be seen in fig. 529 :

(Fig. 529.)

((IV.)) Finally, the gradual downward tendency exhibits itself *whenever the secondary four-fold chord is succeeded by a harmony which belongs to another key, and which contains the next lower tone*; for example, in fig. 530 :

(Fig. 530.)

§ 328.

(b.) *Free Progression.*

*In all other cases but those above-mentioned, the progression of the secondary sevenths is free* ; and here it is obvious that

((I.)) The secondary sevenths cannot be resolved into the next lower degree in all those harmonic successions in which the second harmony *does not contain the tone of this degree* ; consequently,

((A.)) In none of those false secondary cadences which involve a progression of the fundamental harmony by the step of a *third*, a *fifth*, or a *seventh*;

((B.)) In none of *those evitations of cadences in the same key* which involve a progression of the fundamental harmony by the step of a *third* or a *fifth*; and likewise

((C.)) Not in many *digressive harmonic successions*.

((II.)) The secondary seventh is free *so long as no harmonic step is taken*. Consequently, in fig. 531, third measure,

(Fig. 531.) HAYDN'S CREATION.

the won-ders of his work

F: V7 VI IV7 °V117 d: V

the upper part makes a skip from the major seventh  $\bar{a}$  of the harmony  $\bar{3}\bar{b}^7$  down to  $\bar{f}$ ; and the secondary seventh, in fig. 532,

(Fig. 532.)

moves, with equal freedom, during the stationary continuance of the secondary four-fold chord.—In like manner, also, in fig. 533, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 533, *i*.) VOGLER'S MASS.

V7 VI IV D: V7 I7 IV7 °V117 b: V7



(Fig. 533, *k.*)

VOGLER.

OBOE.

VLNI.

VLA.

VOCL.

et res - ur - rex - it ter - ti - a di - e secundum scrip - tu - ras et as -

*f* *p* *p*

G: I IV 7 °VII 7 III 7 VI 7 II 7 V 7

the secondary seventh of the upper part moves about with entire freedom during the stationary continuance of the four-fold chord. The free conduct of the seventh in this last case, however, is here indeed rendered the more justifiable by the gradual downward progression of the same in the vocal part, and still more by the fact that the two last eighth-notes of the measure in the upper instrumental part may be regarded as intermediately inserted harmonic notes. (§ 314, at *C*, p. 546.)

(2.) *Progression of the THIRD of the Secondary Four-fold Chords.*

§ 329.

The *third* of the secondary four-fold chords is, upon the whole, less restricted by the laws of progression than that of the principal four-fold chord.

The third of a secondary four-fold chord moves, namely,

((1.)) In *natural* secondary cadences—at one time gradually upward, as in fig. 534,

(Fig. 534.)

KOCH.

KOCH.

and at another otherwise, as in fig. 535,

(Fig. 535.)

BEETHOVEN'S SONATA.

Figured bass notation for the bass staff in Fig. 535:

D: II V7 I IV<sup>7</sup> °vII III<sup>7</sup> VI II<sup>7</sup> G: II V7 I

where, from the second measure to the third, the third  $\flat$  of the harmony  $\text{G}^{\flat 7}$  skips upwards to the third  $\bar{e}$  of the following harmony,—and so also in the following cadences; or, as in fig. 536,

(Fig. 536.)

HAYDN'S MASS, NO. 2.

Figured bass notation for the lower staff in Fig. 536:

G: IV °vII<sup>7</sup> III VI<sup>7</sup> II V7

Lyrics: dona nobis pacem

Dynamic markings: R f, R F, t, F

where, in the part of the first violin, the third of the secondary four-fold chord moves downward by a skip. Similar free progressions are shown also by fig. 537:

(Fig. 537.)

(Fig. 537 continued.)

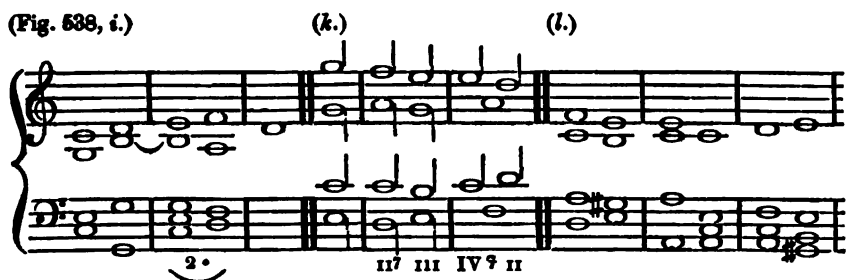


## § 330.

((II.)) As it respects the progression of the third in the *false* secondary cadences, we will again examine the different possible cases severally.

The false secondary cadences result, as we know, from the progression of the fundamental by the step of a second, a third, a fifth, a sixth, or a seventh. (§ 266, p. 490.)

((A.)) In steps of a *second*, the third moves at one time gradually upward, as in fig. 538, *i*,

(Fig. 538, *i*.)

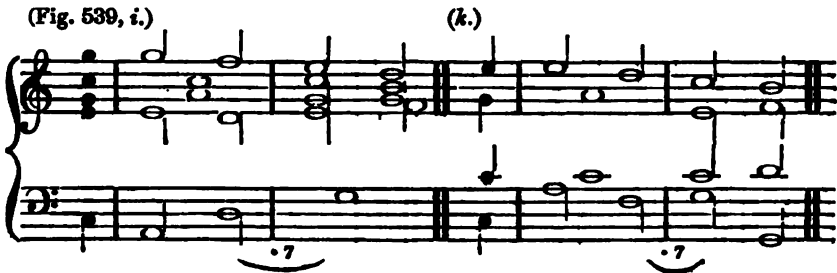
and at another, otherwise; as, for example, in fig. 538, *k* and *l*, above.

((B.)) In steps of a *third*, the gradual ascent of the third is impossible, because the tone of the next higher degree is *not contained* in the second harmony.

((C.)) The same is true of steps of a *fifth*, and

((D.)) So also of steps of a *sixth*.

((E.)) In steps of a *seventh*, the third at one time moves gradually downward, as in fig. 539, *i*,



and at another upward, as in fig. 539, *k*, above.

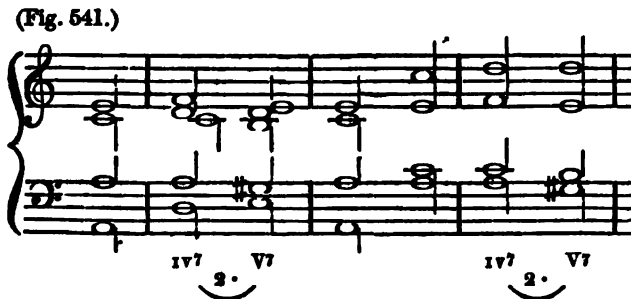
### § 331.

((III.)) In *evitations of cadences in the same scale*, the third moves at one time gradually upward, as from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{b}$  in the upper part of fig. 540,



and at another time otherwise; as, for example,

((A.)) In progressions of the fundamental harmony, by the step of a *second*, fig. 541,



where, in the upper part, the minor third  $\bar{f}$  of the harmony  $\bar{D}^7$ , in the evitation  $iv^7-V^7$ , proceeds upwards;

((B.)) In progressions by the step of a *third*, the gradually ascending resolution is impossible.

((C.)) Also in those evitations of cadences in the same scale which are made by the progression of the fundamental harmony by *fourths*, it is usual

often for the third of the secondary four-fold chord to move freely. For example, in fig. 542, *i*,

(Fig. 542, *i*.)

(k.)



the third of each secondary four-fold chord remains stationary as a preparation of the following seventh. Such is also the case in fig. 542, *k*, above.

((D.)) Progressions by skips of a *fifth*, as evitations of secondary cadences, are not likely to occur.

((E.)) In progressions by steps of a *sixth*, the gradual upward progression of the third is again impossible. See, for example, fig. 543,

(Fig. 543.)



where, in the middle part, the third *a* of the chord  $\text{F}^7$  in the harmonic succession  $\text{IV}^7 - \text{II}^7$  remains stationary.—See also fig. 544:

(Fig. 544.)



((F.)) Progressions of the fundamental harmony by steps of a *seventh* also are not likely to occur as evitations of secondary cadences. If we regard fig. 545, *i*,

(Fig. 545, *i*.)

(k.)



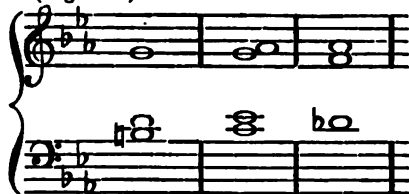
as an example of such an harmonic succession, we find in it a case where the proper third of the third chord moves downward. The same is true also of fig. 545, *k*, p. 588.

---

§ 332.

((IV.)) Moreover, in *digressive* fundamental successions, the third of the secondary four-fold chords will not readily be found to proceed otherwise than gradually upwards; as, for example, fig. 546,

(Fig. 546.)



except in case the tone of resolution is *not* contained in the second harmony, as in fig. 547,

(Fig. 547.)



where the third of the secondary four-fold chord of the second degree of the major key does not proceed upwards one degree in the following harmonic step, but remains stationary on the same degree, with a mere chromatic elevation.

---

(3.) *Progression of the FIFTH of the Secondary Four-fold Chords.*

§ 333.

The *fifth* of the secondary four-fold chords, in general, exhibits no particular tendency to be resolved in any one direction rather than another; except that, in those four-fold chords which have the *minor* fifth (namely, in those of the seventh degree in major and of the second degree in minor), this minor fifth for the most part inclines to move downward in the progression of the harmony; as, for example, in fig. 548, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 548, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)



and that too, even if it were to descend by a *skip*, as in fig. 548, *l*, p. 589 (and also fig. 508, p. 574). This fifth very seldom tends *upward*; in fig. 549, however,



an example of this kind may be found in the progression of the tenor from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{d}$ ,—an example which is not likely otherwise to occur.

### (C.) APPENDIX.

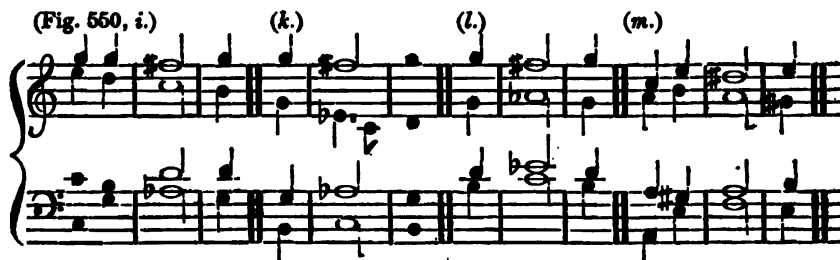
*Progression of the Intervals of the Principal Four-fold Chord with lowered Fifth, or of the Four-fold Chord with Minor Fifth and elevated Third.*

#### § 334.

Thus far we have left unnoticed the progression of the intervals of those chords which we have (in §§ 89—96, pp. 208—219) regarded as springing from a four-fold chord with lowered fifth or from a four-fold chord with minor fifth and arbitrarily elevated third, in order that we might make them a distinct subject of consideration afterwards. To this subject we will now turn our attention.

It is first of all to be remarked, in general, of the intervals of these chords, that almost entirely the same laws of progression apply to them *as to those of the principal four-fold chord*, as will appear from the following considerations.

(1.) When the harmony in question is followed by a natural cadence, as in fig. 550, *i*,



then

(a.) *The seventh*, precisely like a principal seventh, exhibits a tendency to move one degree downwards. Hence,

((A.)) The seventh, in fig. 550, p. 590, is found, according to this tendency, every where to descend. This resolution is found retarded in fig. 551, *i*:

(Fig. 551, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)



interrupted by a note foreign to the harmony in fig. 551, *k*, above;—both retarded and interrupted in fig. 551, *l*, above.

((B.)) *Deviations* from this normal progression are most free from liability to error in middle parts,—especially when the seventh occurs doubled, as in fig. 550, *k* and *m*, p. 590, fig. 551, *m*, above, and fig. 552:

(Fig. 552.)



—In fig. 553, the skip of the base from *b* to *f*♯ is rather odd in its effect.

(Fig. 553.)



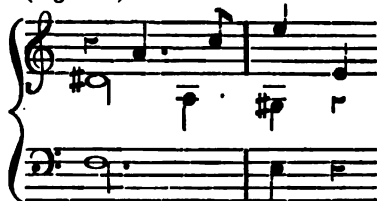
(b.) *The third* moves, in the natural cadence, as already observed in the principal four-fold chords, not easily otherwise than to the fundamental tone of the second harmony, as the above examples every where show.

(c.) *The fifth* has the peculiarity of inclining to move downward one degree in the harmonic step now under consideration, as, for example, in all the cases of fig. 550, p. 590, and fig. 551, above; and it sounds rather odd to hear this interval, in the alto of the above-mentioned fig. 553, proceed a superfluous second upward.

(d.) When a *ninth* is added to the chord in question, it has also a tendency to move gradually downward, as in all the examples quoted above; though even here, sometimes *another* progression takes place; as, for example, in fig. 554,



(Fig. 554.)



where the ninth  $\bar{c}$  does not proceed gradually downward, but makes a skip upward to  $\bar{e}$ .

## § 335.

(2.) When the harmony in question is followed by a *four-fold chord* situated a *fourth* above, we hear

(a.) *The seventh*, at one time, proceed one degree downward, as in fig. 555, *i-l*,

(Fig. 555, i.)                      (k.)                      (l.)                      (m.)

and at another upward, as in the alto of fig. 555, *m*, above, and in the tenor of fig. 555, *i*, above.

(b.) *The third*, in these cases, most conveniently moves down to the tone of the same degree chromatically lowered, inasmuch as this tone occurs in the next following chord. The progression in this case, like the similar one already mentioned in § 324 (II), is designed to avoid a cross relation (§ 490). Examples are found in fig. 555, above.

(c.) *The fundamental fifth* proceeds most naturally one degree downward, as in fig. 555, *i*, above; unless it should remain stationary as a minor ninth of the following harmony, as in fig. 555, *k*, above, where the tone *ab*, in the

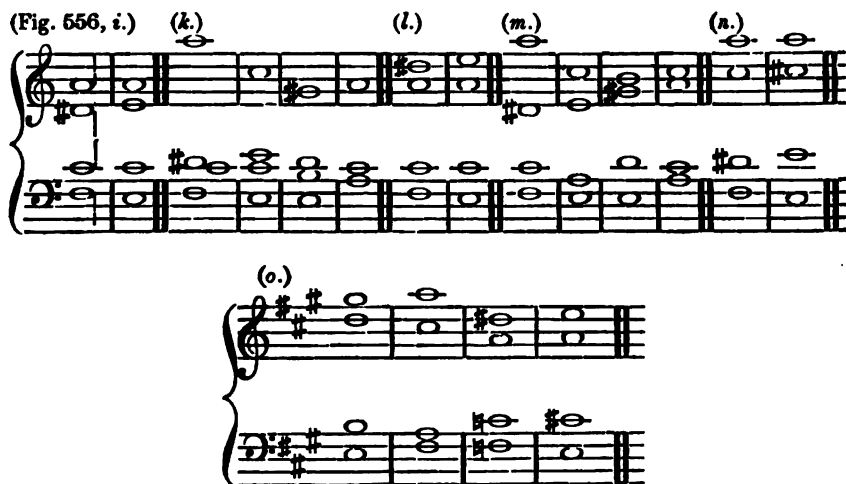
base part, continues stationary from the second chord to the third,—as does also the tone  $\bar{a}b$  in the alto part in fig. 555, *l*, p. 592, and so likewise in the tenor part in fig. 555, *m*, p. 592.

(*d.*) *The ninth*, on the contrary, resolves itself at one time gradually downward, as in fig. 555, *l*, p. 592, the tone  $e\flat$  in the base goes down to  $d$ , and in fig. 555, *k*, p. 592, the tone  $e\flat$  in the tenor resolves itself into  $\bar{d}$ ;—and at another it takes a different progression, as in fig. 555, *m*, p. 592, where the base makes a skip from  $e\flat$  to  $B$ .

---

§ 336.

(3.) In such cases as occur in fig. 556,



where, namely, after the chord in question, the step of a seventh is made either to the previous or to a new tonic harmony,

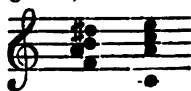
(*a.*) *The seventh* cannot indeed go one degree downward, because such tone of resolution does not occur in the following chord:

(*b.*) *The third*, on the contrary, tends here also to move one degree upward, as is every where the case in fig. 556, above;

(*c.*) *The fifth*, in all these examples, exhibits a downward tendency.

Kirnberger brings forward an instance of a deviation from this rule in fig. 557;

(Fig. 557.) KIRNBERGER.



but one will scarcely find in this example very much to please the ear. Such a

progression as occurs in fig. 558,

(Fig. 558.)



might rather perhaps be justifiable, on the ground of the pause which takes place between the two harmonies. (§ 241, No. 7, p. 434.)

(d.) *The ninth* moves freely in all these cases, at one time remaining stationary, and at another skipping either up or down, as in fig. 556, *c-m*, p. 593.

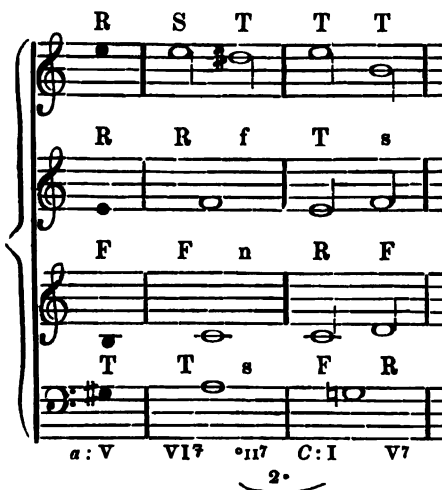
It is only in such cases as occur in fig. 556, *n* and *o*, p. 593—cases in which the next following chord contains the tone of the same degree, chromatically elevated—that the ninth cannot well move otherwise than into this tone situated a minor second above. (§ 490.)

### § 337.

(4.) Also in other digressive harmonic progressions

(a.) *The seventh* tends to resolve itself gradually downward whenever such tone of resolution is to be found in the following chord, as, for example, in figs. 559 and 560:

(Fig. 559.)



(Fig. 560.)



(b.) *The third* here also retains its tendency to proceed a minor second upward, as in figs. 559 and 560 above; unless this tone of resolution should be wanting in the following chord.

In fig. 561, *i*, *k*, for example,

(Fig. 561, *i*.)

(*k*.)

a:V VI7 °117 c:°117 1 V7 a:V VI7 °117 c:°117 C:I V7

• 3 • 3

(*l*.)

a:V VI7 °117 c:°117 Db:I V7

• 3

in the fundamental progression from the third measure to the fourth, the upper part clearly cannot proceed from the tone  $\bar{d}\sharp$  to  $\bar{e}$ , because no *e* occurs in the second harmony. And it would be equally impossible also, in the progression from the fourth to the fifth measures of fig. 561, *l*, above, for the alto to ascend from  $\bar{f}\sharp$  to  $\bar{g}$ .—So also in fig. 562, &c.:

(Fig. 562.)

a:V VI7 °117 c:°117 Db:I V7

• 3

(c.) *The fifth*, on the contrary, does not always, in such successions of chords, necessarily proceed a minor second downward, but also sometimes upward, as it does in the base in fig. 563 :

(Fig. 563.)

or as it uniformly does in the second part in fig. 561, page 595.

(d.) *The ninth*, in such cases, for the most part continues stationary ; as in figs. 559 and 561, pp. 594 and 595, and fig. 563 above.

The progression of the ninth is free in all cases where the following harmony does not contain the tone of the next lower degree.

### § 338.

(5.) But in general, *so long as no harmonic step is made*, the movement of all the before-mentioned intervals is *free*, as may be seen,

(a.) In the case of *the seventh*, in fig. 564 :

(Fig. 564.)

(b.) In that of *the third*, in fig. 565,—

(Fig. 565.)

(c.) In that of *the fifth*, in fig. 465, above :

(d.) In that of *the ninth*, in fig. 566 :

(Fig. 566.)



### DIVISION III.

### PROGRESSION OF THE INTERVALS OF THREE-FOLD CHORDS.

**§ 339.**

The progression of the intervals of three-fold chords is almost universally free. I have been able to discover only a few cases in which these intervals manifest a perceptible tendency to move in one certain direction. The cases of this kind, most worthy of remark, are as follow :

The third of the dominant three-fold chord has nearly the same tendency as that of the principal four-fold chord, to proceed one degree upward in the harmonic step V—I or V—i, as may be seen by comparing fig. 567, *i*, with fig. 567, *k*:

(Fig. 567, i.)

(k.)

(1.)



It is, however, sometimes practicable, especially in middle parts, to carry this third by a skip three degrees downward; as in fig. 567, *l*, above, and in the soprano part of fig. 568;

(Fig. 568.)

*Andante.*  
*Violini.*

**VOGLER.**



and also with the insertion of an intermediate note, as in figs. 569 and 570 :

(Fig. 569.)

FUX.

(Fig. 570.)

C. P. E. BACH, CHORAL.



Still other progressions of the subsemitone by skips may sometimes also be adopted with good effect. Thus, for example, in fig. 571,

(Fig. 571.)

BEETHOVEN'S SONATA.



the tone  $\bar{a}^{\sharp}$  skips upward to  $\bar{d}$ ;—so in fig. 572,

(Fig. 572.)

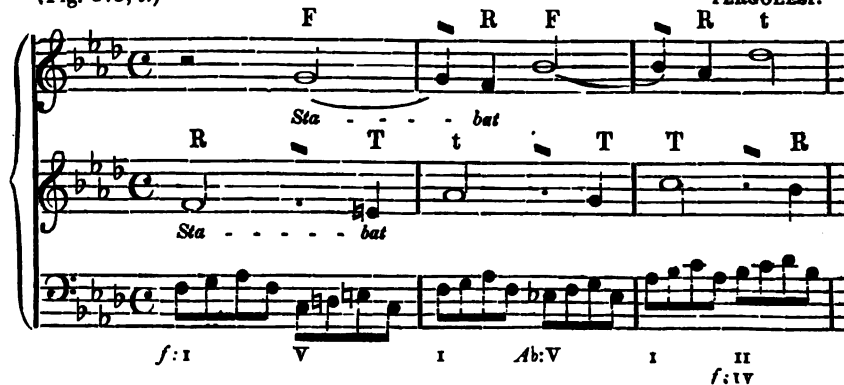
MOZART'S FIGARO.



the tone  $b$  skips up to  $e$ ,—and in fig. 573,  $i$ ,

(Fig. 573,  $i$ .)

PERGOLESI.



in passing from the first to the second measure, the tone  $\bar{e}$  makes a skip upward to  $\bar{a}b$ , and subsequently the tone  $\bar{g}$  goes up to  $\bar{c}$ .

An example less worthy of imitation, perhaps, occurs also in fig. 573, *k*,

(Fig. 573, *k*.) PERGOLESI'S STABAT MATER.



where, in the second vocal part, the tone  $\bar{e}$  skips down to  $\bar{a}b$ .

### § 340.

In like manner as the third of the dominant three-fold chord, as above-mentioned, most naturally tends, at the moment that the fundamental harmony accomplishes the step of a fourth  $V-I$  or  $V-I$ , to move one degree upward, so also a similar tendency of the third of the tonic harmony takes place also in the step of a fourth  $I-IV$  or  $I-IV$ ; namely, a tendency either to move one degree upward, as in fig. 574, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 574, *i*.) (*k*.) (*l*.) (*m*.) (*n*.) (*o*.) (*p*.) (*q*.)



or at least to move upward by a skip, as in fig. 574, *l* and *m*, above;—but not downward, as in fig. 574, *n-q*, above. This last progression is, for the most part, admissible only in middle parts, or, if it occurs in a principal part, it always has something queer and unusual in its effect. Fig. 575\*,

(Fig. 575, *i*.)

MY "LYRE AND SWORD."



\* The three examples of this fig. 575 were omitted by Mr. Warner, perhaps inadvertently.—ED.



(Fig. 575, k.)

*poco adagio.*

Muth! Muth! Was ich so treu im Her - zen

tra - ge, das muss ja dort doch e - wig

I IV I

(Fig. 575, l.)

*dol.*

*dol.*

Du seg - ne mich, mein Va - ter! nach - ge - sun - gen, das war dein

*dol.*

## § 341.

This little is nearly all of any considerable importance which I found myself able to say in relation to the definite tendency of the intervals of three-fold chords. A great number of individual remarks might indeed be passed upon the progression of this or that interval, of this or that harmony, in this or that case. But these are all too specific, and the infinite multiplicity of them would either fill a thick and tedious volume, or if, in pursuance of the common method, we were to take them in the gross and embody them in a few general principles, the latter would be as false and deceptive as are so many other general rules of the same stamp, whose incorrectness we have had occasion to become acquainted with in the course of our previous inquiries.

## REMARK.

Thus, for example, the circumstance that, in the progression of the fundamental harmony by the step of a fourth, the third of the three-fold chord of the fifth or of the first degree inclines to ascend one degree (§§ 339 and 340, pp. 597 and 599) has induced a theorist at once to lay it down as a rule, that wherever a three-fold chord goes up a fourth or down a fifth to another three-fold chord, its third must be treated in the same manner as the leading note of the principal four-fold chord, i. e. must be made to ascend one degree. See A. F. C. Kollmann's *Practical Guide to Thorough-Bass*, Chap. 8, § 3: "When the fundamental concord ascends four or five degrees to another fundamental concord, its third must be treated as a leading note in the chord of the seventh;"—a position which is refuted by the very first glance at the examples heretofore quoted. (Figs. 567, 568—573, 574, *l—q*, pp. 597—599.)

Of a similar character is the rather commonly received doctrine that the fifth of a diminished three-fold chord must always be resolved one degree downward; the very opposite of which so plainly appears from the examples in fig. 576:

(Fig. 576, *i.*)(Fig. 576, *k.*)

KIRNBERGER.

and in fig. 506. (Compare the remark on § 324, p. 571.)

After all, I pass over a host of other like rules current among music-teachers, because I am already too weary of refuting obvious false doctrines, over which a conquest is but too easily won, and which would long since have been out of vogue, if, instead of for ever implicitly re-echoing them, musicians had only remembered to institute the inquiry, whether that which had been taught was true? an inquiry which, it would seem, the readers of such theorists hitherto have never allowed themselves to propose.—(Compare remark on § 99, p. 220.)

## DIVISION IV.

## PROGRESSION OF TRANSITION-TONES.

## § 342.

The progression of transition-tones rests upon the general principle, that every such tone, as a secondary tone to its principal, tends to resolve itself into the latter.

The more specific development of this principle will form a part of the following eighth chapter.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## TRANSITION-TONES.

## DIVISION I.

## THEIR NATURE.

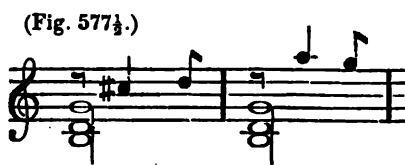
## (A.) IN GENERAL.

## § 343.

IN treating of the transformation of harmonies (§ 96), we spoke in general terms of the doctrine of transitions, without, however, exhausting the subject; since it would have been necessary to suppose a previous acquaintance with too much of the doctrine of keys, of fundamental progressions and of modulation, and even of the progression and resolution of harmonic intervals. But now, having gone over all these matters, we can, without difficulty, treat the subject of transitions, both in a general point of view and in reference to their particular progressions.

*The doctrine of transitions* rests, as we have already remarked in the place above-mentioned, on the following general principles.

*A part, immediately before giving an harmonic tone, may first give a tone which is a major or a minor degree higher or lower, even though it be a tone foreign to the harmony.* In fig. 577,



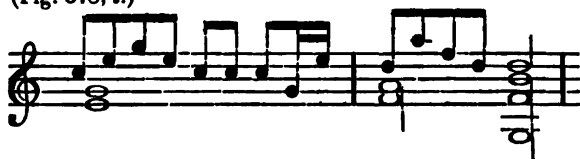
the upper part, before giving the fundamental fifth  $\bar{d}$ , gives the  $\bar{c}\sharp$  immediately preceding it, which does not belong to the fundamental harmony  $\bar{C}$ ; so too, in the next measure, the tone  $\bar{a}$ , a tone foreign to the harmony, is prefixed to the fundamental tone  $\bar{g}$ . The part, as it were, goes through the foreign tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  to the harmonic tone  $\bar{d}$ , and, similarly, through  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{g}$ . Accordingly, such a foreign tone, through which a part proceeds to another tone, is called by the general term *transition-tone*, *transition*, or *transition-note*; and sometimes also *foreign-note*, on account of its being struck before the principal tone. It is, therefore, in its own nature, an unessential tone, a tone not necessarily belonging to the harmony, is no harmonic interval, but is a mere accidental melodic ornament.

It is simply a piece of melodic embroidery, not belonging to the fundamental harmony, a mere subordinate tone to the one to which it is prefixed, which latter is, therefore, properly termed, in contradistinction to it, the *principal tone*, *principal note*, or *essential note*. In short, a transition is nothing more nor less than a tone foreign to the harmony, interwoven into the texture of a part, a tone whose existence has reference only to the following one. That it is always a *dissonant tone*, scarcely needs to be remarked. (Compare §§ 96—99, pp. 218—225. See also § 383.)

Before going farther into the doctrine of transitions, we will first improve our acquaintance with them by means of some additional examples.

In Fig. 578, *k*,

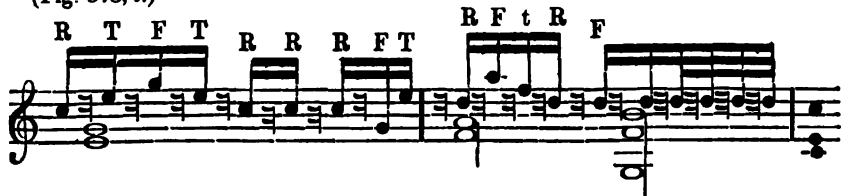
(Fig. 578, *i*.)



(Fig. 578, *k*.)



(Fig. 578, *l*.)



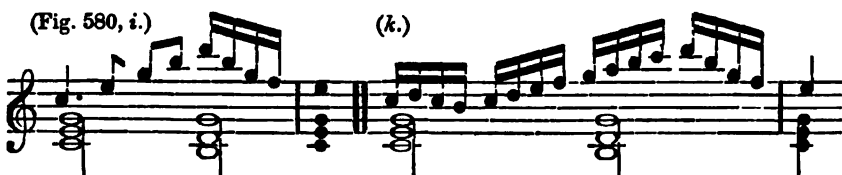
the second tone  $\bar{d}$  of the upper part evidently does not belong to the harmony  $\text{C}$ . Hence it does not constitute an harmonic interval, and its existence can be explained and justified only by regarding it as a transition to the following harmonic tone  $\bar{e}$ . In like manner, the  $\bar{f}$  between  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{g}$  is to be explained and justified only as being an accessory tone to the following  $\bar{g}$ ; and in a similar manner are to be explained all the remaining tones in this example which are marked by diagonal strokes, all being only secondary tones, mere ornaments foreign to the harmony, and incidental garnishings of the principal

tones that come after them. Thus the entire phrase *k* is nothing but a dressing up of the phrase *i* (which consists solely of tones belonging to the harmony), and is produced by a melodic embellishment of the upper part. If we suppose these notes to be absent, there will remain only the dry skeleton *l*.

Such, too, is the case with the phrase in fig. 579, *i*,



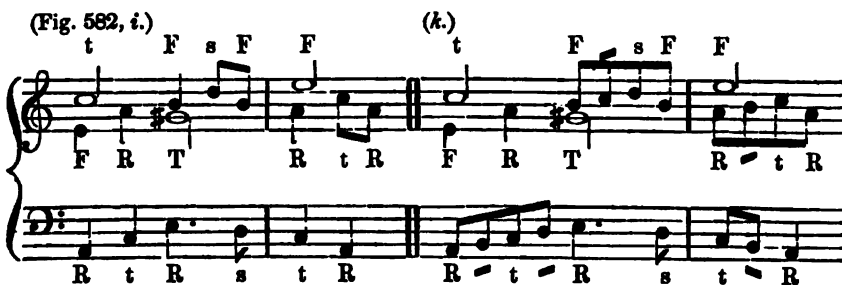
consisting solely of harmonic notes, and which in *k* is interwoven with transitions in the upper part. A similar relation exists between the phrases in fig. 580, *i* and *k*,



and also between those in fig. 581, *i* and *k*,



where transitions appear in the bass part. In like manner, fig. 582, *i*,



consists of harmonic notes, while in *k* transitions are interwoven through all the three parts. So, too, fig. 583, *k*, p. 605, is a mere embellishment of the phrase in fig. 583, *i*:



(Fig. 583, *k*.)

which consists exclusively of harmonic tones. This, on being deprived of its transient ornaments, appears again as a bare skeleton, as in fig. 583, *l*:

(Fig. 583, *l*.)

Very similar to the example just adduced, is fig. 584, *k*:

(Fig. 584, *i*.)

MOZART.

(k.)

(l.)

*Ov. Così fan tutti.**Introd. Andante.*

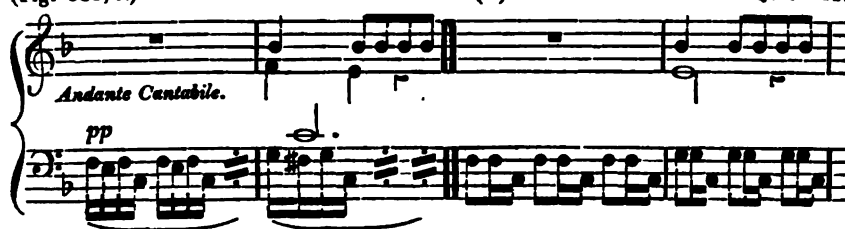
as is shown by a similar dissection of it in fig. 584, *i* and *l*, above.

Fig. 585, *i*, *k*, is of a similar kind:

(Fig. 585, *i*.)

(k.)

MOZART'S VIOLIN QUARTET.



## (B.) TRANSITIONS OF A SUBORDINATE BANK.

## § 344.

In like manner as an essential tone of a harmony may be preceded by a transition-tone, so also may every transition-tone itself be preceded by another and subordinate transition-tone.

This last will then appear as a transition to a transition, a *transition of the second grade*, a note subordinate to a subordinate note; which latter is

consequently to be regarded in relation to the former as a principal note, that is to say, as a *principal note of the second rank*: *e. g.* in fig. 586,

(Fig. 586.)



the tones  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{b}$  are foreign to the fundamental harmony  $\mathcal{C}$ , and their presence can be justified only by considering the  $\bar{b}$  as a transition to  $\bar{c}$ , and the  $\bar{a}$  again as a transition to the transition  $\bar{b}$ . Consequently  $\bar{b}$  is here a transition of the first grade and subordinate to  $\bar{c}$ ; while  $\bar{a}$  is subordinate to the subordinate note  $\bar{b}$ , and is thus a transition of the second grade. Thus,  $\bar{b}$ , although in reality and in relation to  $\bar{c}$  a subordinate note, is a principal note in relation to the subordinate note of the second grade  $\bar{a}$ , or, in other words, is a principal note of the second rank. In like manner, the tone  $a$ , in the second measure of the same example, appears as a transition to  $g$ , and  $b$  again as a transition to the transition-tone  $a$ .

It will readily be perceived, that, whenever the distance between two intervals separated by a fourth, *e. g.* from the fifth of a three-fold chord upward to its key-note, or from the latter downward to the former, is to be filled out with intermediate notes, *two* such transition tones will be required, the first of which will always be a transition of the second rank.

Such transitions of an inferior rank occur also in other cases; as, *e. g.* in fig. 587.

(Fig. 587.)

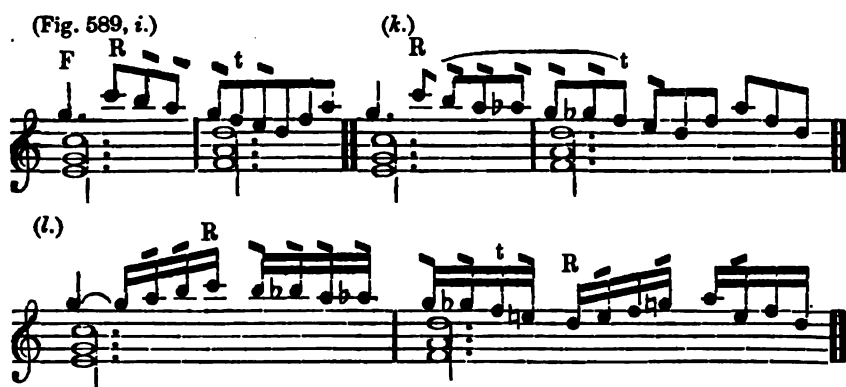


the tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{a}$  (viz.  $\bar{a}$  as transition to the following harmonic tone  $b$ , and the first  $\bar{b}$  as a transition to the transition tone  $\bar{a}$ ); and so also in fig. 588,

(Fig. 588.)



the tones  $\bar{f}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$ —the latter as a subordinate tone to  $\bar{d}$ , and  $\bar{f}\sharp$  as subordinate to the tone  $\bar{e}$ . In fig. 589,  $\bar{e}$ ,



there is a transition of even a *third* grade; namely, the  $\bar{\bar{g}}$  of the second measure as a transition to the harmonic tone  $\bar{\bar{f}}$ —the  $\bar{a}$  as a transition of the second grade to  $\bar{g}$ —and the  $\bar{b}$  as a transition of the *third* grade to the transition of the second grade  $\bar{a}$ .

## DIVISION II.

### DIFFERENT WAYS IN WHICH TRANSITION-TONES MAY OCCUR.

#### § 345.

Having exhibited in the preceding section the nature of transition in general, and of transitions of the first, second, and even still subordinate grades in particular, we will now investigate and distinguish more precisely the several ways, how, and circumstances in which, transitions may occur; and will likewise endeavour to ascertain how far transitions, under such and such circumstances, will sound better or worse, pleasing or unpleasing to the ear.

#### (A.) TRANSITIONS TO INTERVALS OF THE PRESENT OR OF THE FOLLOWING HARMONY.

#### § 346.

A transition-tone is a transition to an interval of the present harmony, or to one of the following harmony; or, in other words, the principal note to which the transition-tone relates is either an interval of the harmony during the continuance of which it is heard as a subordinate tone, or it is an interval of the harmony which follows. In fig. 590, i,





the first tone  $\bar{d}$  is a transition to  $\bar{c}$ , that is, to the fundamental tone of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , during whose continuance the  $\bar{d}$  makes its appearance. In like manner, all the remaining transitions of this example are transitions to intervals of that harmony during which they make their appearance; thus the tone  $\bar{f}$  is a transition to  $\bar{e}$ , which latter is a fundamental third of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , during which the  $\bar{f}$  is heard as a transition, &c. In fig. 591,

(Fig. 591, i.)



(k.)



on the contrary, the tone  $\bar{b}$  is a subordinate tone to  $\bar{a}$ , which latter is an interval, not of the present harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , but of the following harmony  $\mathbb{F}$ ; and so too in the second measure, the tone  $\bar{e}$  forms a transition to the fundamental tone  $\bar{d}$  of the next following chord  $\mathbb{B}$ .

So likewise, in fig. 592,

(Fig. 592.)



the tone  $\bar{b}$  constitutes a transition to the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the following chord  $\mathbb{F}$ ;  $\bar{c}\sharp$  is a transition to  $\bar{d}$ , the third of the following harmony  $\mathbb{B}$ ; and  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , the fifth of the following harmony  $\mathbb{E}$ .

#### § 347.

*The difference between the two species of transition is as follows. Transitions to intervals of the present harmony have place where otherwise their principal tones should stand, as will appear on a comparison of i and k of the preceding fig. 590, p. 607. They, accordingly, represent for a moment their principal tone, they perform for a while its office, and may, therefore, properly be termed *representative tones*, *representative intervals* (or, rather, not *intervals*, but *representatives* of intervals); or, as transitions are always dissonances (§§ 101 and 343), they may likewise be called *representative dissonances*,—although we shall presently find that usage has restricted this appellation to a *particular species* of such transitions (§ 430, No. 1). A transition, however, to an interval of the following harmony could not, in like manner, be called a representative tone. Thus it would not be proper to say that  $\bar{b}$ , in fig. 591, above,*

supplies the place of its principal tone  $\bar{a}$ ; for, where the transient  $\bar{b}$  stands, its principal tone  $\bar{a}$  would by no means have a place, since it does not belong to the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$  at all. The tone  $\bar{b}$ , therefore, cannot be here regarded as representing  $\bar{a}$ , and consequently cannot be called a representative tone,—neither can  $\bar{e}$  be called a representative of the tone  $\bar{d}$ .

---

§ 348.

The division of passing notes into transitions to intervals of the present and of the following harmony, may be applied also to *transitions of an inferior grade*. In the preceding fig. 586, p. 606, the transitions  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{b}$  of the first and second rank both relate to the harmonic tone  $\bar{c}$ , which is an interval of the same harmony during the continuance of which the transitions are heard; and this applies to the tone  $b$  and  $a$  of the second measure also. On the contrary, in fig. 587, p. 606, the transition-tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{a}$  relate to the tone  $\bar{b}$  of the following measure, and, hence, to an interval of the following harmony  $\mathbb{D}^7$ . So, too, in the preceding fig. 589, *i*, p. 607, the transitions  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{a}$  ultimately relate to the tone  $\bar{f}$ , which constitutes a part only of the following harmony  $\mathbb{D}$ ; and the same remark applies to the tones  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{ab}$ , in *k*. Accordingly, in *k*, the last three eighth-notes of the first measure are transitions to the fundamental third  $\bar{f}$  of the following harmony  $\mathbb{D}$ , while the first two of the following measure are transitions to an interval of that harmony during whose continuance they appear. That is to say, they all relate, as has several times been observed, to the single harmonic note  $\bar{f}$ , to which they mediate or immediately incline. Consequently, they are all immediate or mediate transitions to this tone  $\bar{f}$ , which is an harmonic interval of the harmony  $\mathbb{D}$  that appears in the second measure. But only the tones  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{gb}$  sound during the harmony  $\mathbb{D}$ , and therefore these only are grace-notes to an interval of the harmony during which they are produced; while, on the contrary,  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{ab}$  sound during the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , to which the tone  $\bar{f}$  does not belong at all, but forms a part of the following harmony  $\mathbb{D}$ . In fig. 589, *l*, p. 607,  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{bb}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{ab}$  constitute a transition to the following harmony. (Compare § 449).

---

§ 349.

We may remark, in passing, that an interval whose place is occupied for a while by a representative tone, is *not to be considered as omitted* during this time (§ 71); and consequently, *e. g.* in fig. 593,

(Fig. 593.)



where, during the entire first half of the second measure, the third of the tonic harmony is not heard, but only its representative tone  $\bar{d}_\sharp$ , there is nothing contradictory to the rule of *omission* stated in § 73.

---

(B.) SHORT AND LONG TRANSITIONS.

§ 350.

Transitions are sometimes of short, and at other times of long duration; or, in other words, the principal note either appears directly after the subordinate note, or it remains longer absent.

In the examples already cited, we have seen, for the most part, brief transitions, consisting of sixteenth or eighth-notes. The transitions of the first, second, and third measures of fig. 583, *k*, p. 605, are, however, of longer duration; and those of the fifth and sixth measures are longer still, as also those in fig. 584, *k*, p. 605.

---

§ 351.

A transition is, of course, more sensible and more striking, the *longer it lasts*; that is to say, the longer the principal tone to which it relates remains absent; while transitions which would otherwise be disagreeably conspicuous are prevented from offending the ear by the shortness of their continuance. Thus, for instance, Mozart, in the quintet of the second act of the Zauberflöte, wrote, *without hesitation*, the transitions in fig. 594,



which are perfectly similar to the much more harshly sounding ones in fig. 595, but which, from being passed over so quickly, in the former case, produce there by no means a disagreeable effect.



## (C.) LIGHT AND HEAVY TRANSITIONS.

## § 352.

A second and not unimportant distinction between transitions, depends on whether the subordinate note appears on a heavier division of the measure than the principal note, or on a lighter one.

In fig. 578, *k*, p. 603, in the first measure, all the transitions are intrinsically lighter than the harmonic notes, while in the second measure the contrary is the case. In the foregoing fig. 584, *k*, p. 605, the transient  $\bar{c}$  is heavier than the following *b*, &c.

Many teachers consider the term transition-note as properly applicable to such only as occur on lighter parts of the measure than their principal notes; those which fall on heavier parts they call *changing-notes*. Others prefer to call those of the former kind *regular*, and those of the latter *irregular transition-notes*; although in what the irregularity consists, I confess I do not understand. There are others, again, who understand, by regular and irregular transitions, something quite different.\*

In consequence of such variations in their use, all these technical terms are ambiguous, and consequently of no use to us, except the single term *changing-note*. For, as no one understands by this expression any thing else than a transition note which appears on a heavier part of the measure than the principal note, there can be no objection to our employing the name *changing-note* for the designation of such a tone. We might, moreover, with equal propriety call such a tone a *heavy transition*, and those transition-notes, on the contrary, which fall on the light parts of the measure, *light transitions*, *light grace-notes*, *light transition-notes*.

---

 § 353.

The dividing of transitions into light and heavy is not quite sufficient for the designation of all possible cases of transition, considered in this point of view; for, in fact, transitions occur, concerning which we cannot say with certainty whether they should be considered as *changing-notes* or *light transitions*. This is the case, for instance, in three-fold time, where, as is known, *two* light parts follow one after the other (§ LXVI); so that in fig. 577, p. 602, for example, one cannot say positively whether the tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  should be called lighter or heavier than the following  $\bar{d}$ .

This is also the case when the transition-note forms a syncopation, and, although beginning on a light part of the measure, is continued into the following heavy part; as, for example, in fig. 577½, p. 602. Here the transitions  $\bar{c}\sharp$  and  $\bar{a}$  cannot with certainty be called either *changing-notes* or *light transitions*.

---

\* e. g. Koch, in his *Anleitung zur Composition*.

So, too, in fig. 596, *i*,



in the two upper parts, the intermediate notes  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{d}$  in the second measure are doubtless light transitions; and, with equal certainty, those in the third measure are heavier than their principal notes  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{e}$ , and are consequently changing-notes. In the fourth measure, however, they are, so to speak, both light and heavy. So, again, in the fifth measure, the intermediate notes  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{c}$  are doubtless light transitions, while those in the seventh measure are equivocal—as also are those in the eighth measure. Moreover, if such transitions be broken up into separate notes or separated by rests, &c., as in fig. 596, *k*, above (compare § 38), it becomes still less certain whether they are to be regarded as light transitions or as preparatory changing-notes.

---

§ 354.

It lies in the nature of the case, that heavy transitions should sound somewhat more harshly than light ones, inasmuch as they are more strongly accented, falling as they do, upon the heavier part of the measure, and robbing the principal note of its accentuation, and consequently they sound more boldly, as it were, than others which are passed over more lightly. Hence, *e. g.* in fig. 597,



the two transition-notes  $\bar{b}$  in the first measure do not sound near so harshly as those in the second, inasmuch as the former are merely light transition-notes, while the latter appear in the character of heavy transitions.

---

(D.) TRANSITIONS IN SEVERAL PARTS AT ONCE.

§ 355.

That transitions occur now in the upper part, now in the base, and again in the middle parts, may have been remarked from the examples already adduced,

as also that they not unfrequently occur in several parts at once. Thus, for instance, in fig. 596, p. 612, and in fig. 598,

(Fig. 598.)



transitions appear in two parts, and in fig. 599,

(Fig. 599.)



in four parts at once. (Compare § 464.)

### § 356.

Accordingly, it may happen, that *to one and the same tone, two secondary notes* may be prefixed at the same time, viz. one from above and one from below it; or vice versa, that the *tone of one and the same degree* may occur as *secondary tone to two principal notes* at the same time; viz. as a secondary tone from below to the next tone standing above it, or as a secondary tone from above to the next lower note.

Fig. 600 may serve as a specimen of the first-mentioned instance:

(Fig. 600.)



Here the upper part goes through the tone  $\bar{d}$ , which is foreign to the harmony, to  $\bar{c}$ ; while, in the second part, the same  $\bar{c}$  is preceded by the secondary tone  $\bar{b}$ . So, too, in the second measure, the principal note  $\bar{d}$  is preceded by secondary tones both from above and below. The same is the case in fig. 599, p. 613.

Again, as a specimen of the second case above-mentioned, we see that in fig. 601, in the third measure, the transition tone  $\bar{c}$  is prefixed to the tone  $\bar{d}$ , and the secondary tone  $\bar{c}$ , to  $\bar{b}$ . Here, as it were, one and the same tone ( $\bar{c}$  or  $\bar{c}$ ) serves as a transition to two different principal tones (to  $\bar{d}$  and to  $\bar{b}$ ).

(Fig. 601.)



In such cases, a tone of one and the same degree may appear in a twofold form, produced by chromatic alteration, as an introduction to two principal tones; as, *e. g.* in fig. 585, *i.*, p. 605, the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  occurs as a secondary tone to  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{f}\sharp$  at the same time as secondary tone to  $\bar{g}$ . (Compare § 384, and what follows.)

---

§ 357.

When two parts, interwoven with transition-notes, have a parallel movement (§ 45), this may take place in two different ways: namely, either so that the principal notes occur in both parts at the same time, as in figs. 602, 603, &c.

(Fig. 602.)



(Fig. 603.)



or else, so that while one part gives a principal note, the other has a secondary note, and vice versa, as is the case in fig. 604:



Here, at the third quarter-note, the upper part has the key-note of the fundamental harmony  $\text{C}$ , while the second part has a transition to the fifth. At the next quarter-note, however, the upper part has a secondary tone. (and that too of the second class), and the second part has the fundamental fifth. At the fifth quarter-note, which follows, both parts again have transition-tones together (unless, indeed, we choose to consider them as essential intervals of a transient  $\text{F}$ -harmony).

---

§ 358.

It is certainly more harsh when several parts at the same time are interwoven with transitions, than when such is the case with one part only; but, that transitions may appear in several parts together without producing a disagreeable effect, is proved by several of the examples given above, as, for instance, that of fig. 599, p. 613. (Compare § 501.)

---

(E.) TRANSITIONS IN BROKEN PROGRESSIONS.

§ 359.

Not unfrequently, too, we find transitions in broken progressions. These may consist either of common breakings, as in fig. 605,

(Fig. 605.)



or of part-breakings (§ 24), so that one breaking part may represent several broken ones, in whose melody transitions are interwoven, as in fig. 606, i,

(Fig. 606, i.)



in which the upper part represents two broken upper parts, as in *k*, in the



melody of which several transition-tones are interwoven. In like manner, fig. 607, *k*,

(Fig. 607, *i*.)

(*k*.)



represents two broken parts proceeding by transitions, as in *i*. Also fig. 608, *i*,

(Fig. 608, *i*.)



may be regarded as a breaking up of three parts, as in fig. 608, *k*,

(Fig. 608, *k*.)



by conceiving to ourselves three parts appearing one after the other, each of which, before sounding the harmonic tone, prefaces it by a transition. The same is true also of fig. 609:

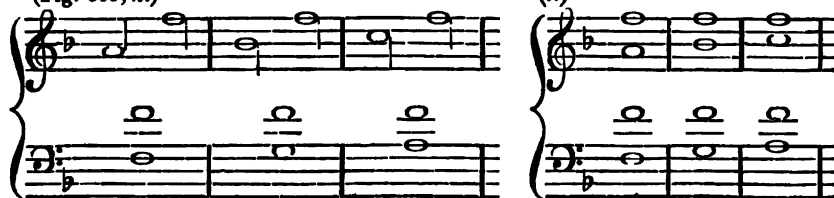
(Fig. 609, *i*.)

KIRNBERGER.



(Fig. 609, *k*.)

(*l*.)



In fig. 610, *k*,

(Fig. 610, *i*.)

(*k*.)



the two broken lower parts of fig. 610, *i*, are interwoven and bound together by means of transition-notes.

(F.) THE PRINCIPAL TONE SOUNDING AT THE SAME TIME WITH ITS  
SECONDARY TONE.

§ 360.

We have seen already, in the preceding examples of transitions to intervals of the present harmony, that not unfrequently a secondary note is prefixed to an interval of a harmony while this same interval is heard *at the same time in another part*; e. g. in fig. 611, *i*,

(Fig. 611, *i*.)



(Fig. 611, *k*.)



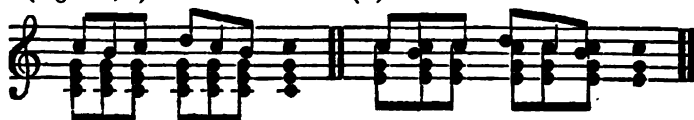
(Fig. 611, *l*.)



in the upper part, the transition tone  $\bar{a}$  is put before the fundamental tone  $\bar{g}$ , while the fundamental tone  $\bar{g}$  is sounded in the second part. In like manner, the following  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is accompanied by  $\bar{g}$ ,  $\bar{e}\flat$  by  $\bar{d}$ ,  $\bar{c}\sharp$  by  $\bar{d}$ , &c. The same occurs in fig. 612:

(Fig. 612, *i*.)

(*k*.)





So, too, in fig. 613,

(Fig. 613.)

MOZART'S VIOLIN QUARTETT.



in the third measure,  $\bar{a}$  appears in the upper part as secondary tone to  $\bar{g}$ , while  $\bar{g}$  itself sounds in the third part.

Again, in the same measure,  $a$  is taken in this third part as secondary tone to  $b$ , while  $B$  itself is sounding in the base; and during the farther continuance of this base tone  $B$ , the second part, and then again the third, give the tone  $\bar{a}$  as a secondary tone to  $\bar{b}$ . Compare the same in measures 7 and 8. (Compare § 466 *bis*.)

In the above example, 611, *i*, p. 617, the  $\bar{g}$ , occurring without a preceding secondary note, lies in a lower octave than the transient  $\bar{a}$ ; so, too, the transient  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is higher than the simultaneously sounding  $\bar{g}$ . The same is the case in fig. 612, *i*, p. 617.

An harmonic interval may however be struck in the same octave with the secondary tone which it accompanies, as is seen in figs. 611, *k*, and 612, *k*, p. 617.

#### § 361.

It always sounds more harshly when the principal tone is heard simultaneously with the secondary tone, than when this is not the case. Thus, for

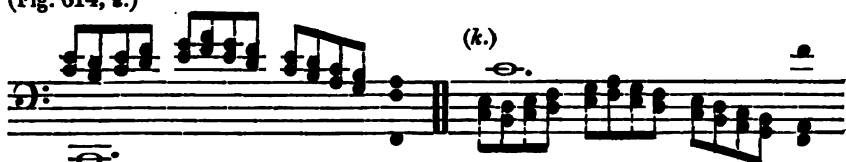
instance, the foregoing fig. 611, *i* and *k*, and fig. 612, *i* and *k*, will be found to sound altogether more harshly than fig. 611, *l*, and fig. 612, *l*, *n*, where such a simultaneous sounding of the principal tone with its secondary tone is avoided by leaving out the former.

But especially does such a sounding of transitions at the same time with the principal tone produce a harsh effect, when the principal tone is heard in *the very same octave* with them, so that it sounds not only *simultaneously* with the secondary tone, but also *close to it*.

The simultaneous sounding, however, of the principal tone with its secondary tone produces the least degree of harshness, when the former is the *fundamental tone* of the harmony; as, *e. g.* in the first measure of 611, *i*, p. 617. The effect produced by the concurrence of a secondary tone with *another* interval, is less agreeable; as, *e. g.* with the fundamental fifth, as in the second measure; while with the third, as in the third measure, it is still more offensive.

Thus, too, in fig. 614, *i*,

(Fig. 614, *i*.)



the transition-tones *b* and *d* do not sound harshly in conjunction with the fundamental *C* in the base; but let the latter note be replaced by the fundamental third *E* in the base as in *ii*,

(Fig 614, *ii*.)



and it will at once be felt how much more harshly the extraneous tones *d* and *f* sound in conjunction with this *E*. A like difference in effect will be found to be produced in fig. 614, *kk*,

(Fig. 614, *kk*.)



by putting *e* in the upper part in the place of *c*.

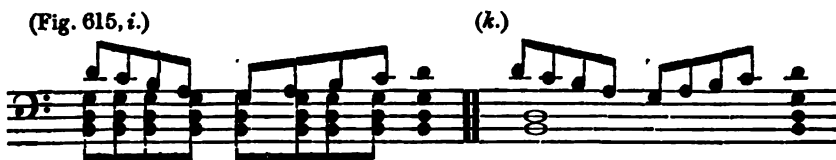
This may also be the reason why the before-mentioned transitions in the example fig. 613, in the fourth and eighth measures, are not pleasing to the ear. (Compare § 466 *bis*.)

Furthermore, such a concurrence of a secondary with its principal tone sounds somewhat more harshly in so-called *semitonic* transitions (§ 366), than in those of a whole tone [major second]. It will readily be felt that, in fig. 611, *i*, p. 617,  $\bar{f}\sharp$  sounds more harshly in conjunction with  $\bar{g}$ , than does  $\bar{a}$ —that in the second measure  $\bar{e}\flat$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$  are harsher with  $\bar{d}$ , and that in the third,  $\bar{a}$  is harsher with  $b\flat$  than is  $\bar{c}$ .

(G.) TRANSITION-TONES STRUCK SIMULTANEOUSLY WITH HARMONIC-TONES.

§ 362.

We find, moreover, on examining the different kinds of transitions, that in some instances *the transient tone is struck at the same time with others belonging to the harmony*, while in other instances this is not the case. In fig. 615, *i*,



the intervals of the fundamental harmony are struck at the same time with the transitions  $\bar{c}$  and  $a$ , while in *k* it is not so.

A like simultaneous striking of the harmonic notes with a secondary note will be found in fig. 611, *i*, and fig. 612, *i*, p. 617.

So, too, in the second measure of fig. 613, p. 618, the tone  $\bar{a}$  is struck in the upper part and  $c$  in the base, at the same time with  $g$ , which [ $g$ ] appears like a transition to  $f\sharp$ ; and again in the third measure, where the two transition-tones  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$  sound together (§ 358), the transition-tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  is struck simultaneously with the harmonic tones  $B$  and  $g$  of the lower parts. This is again the case in measures 6 and 7. (Compare § 466 *bis*.)

§ 363.

Every transition sounds altogether more harshly when struck at the same time with harmonic notes. Hence, *e. g.* the transitions in fig. 612, *k* and *l*, pp. 617 and 618, sound far more harshly than those in *m* and *n*; and those in fig. 613 are also rather harsh. (Compare § 466 *bis*.)

Such increased harshness becomes doubly perceptible when *that very interval* to which the transition relates is struck at the same time with it, so that both principal and secondary tone are not only *heard simultaneously*, but are also *struck simultaneously*; as, *e. g.* in fig. 611, *i*, *k*, and fig. 612, *i*, *k*, p. 617; and also in fig. 616, *k-o*,

(Fig. 616, i.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)

(n.)

(o.)



(but not so in i, where  $\bar{f}$  occurs as a secondary tone, not to  $\bar{g}$ , but to  $\bar{e}$ , which  $\bar{e}$  is not heard at the same time with it).

It is from this cause, that in fig. 617, i,

(Fig. 617, i.)

*Allo. con brio.*

BEETHOVEN.



the second and third measures, as they here stand, sound more smoothly and softly than if the middle parts were written, say, as in fig. 617, k :

(Fig. 617, k.)



In this latter case, the seventh eighth-note of the second measure— $\bar{f}\bar{n}$ , in the upper part, which forms a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , concurs in such a manner with the harmonic tone  $\bar{g}$  in the middle part, that they are both struck at precisely the

same time; which sounds much more harshly than as it stands in  $\mathfrak{t}$ , where this  $\overline{\mathfrak{f}}\mathfrak{t}$  does indeed concur with an harmonic tone, namely, the  $\mathfrak{bb}$  of the middle part, but not with the  $\mathfrak{g}$  itself. So too in  $\mathfrak{k}$ , in the following measure,  $\overline{\mathfrak{ab}}$ , as secondary tone to  $\overline{\mathfrak{g}}$ , is struck at the same time with  $\overline{\mathfrak{g}}$ , which again is avoided in  $\mathfrak{t}$ .

And hence we have a further reason why, in the third and fourth measures of fig. 613, p. 618, the secondary notes to  $\mathfrak{b}$  and  $\mathfrak{f}$  sound so harshly in conjunction with the  $\mathfrak{B}$  in the base, which is each time struck anew (compare § 466 *bis*); and why fig. 612,  $\mathfrak{t}$ , p. 617, sounds more harshly than in  $\mathfrak{m}$ , where the principal note  $\mathfrak{e}$  is not struck each time.

### DIVISION III.

#### WHAT TONES MAY BE STRUCK AS SECONDARY TONES BEFORE A PRINCIPAL TONE.

##### § 364.

Although we have seen, from what precedes, that a principal tone may be preceded at one time by this and at another time by that secondary tone, yet no one will imagine that any tone taken at pleasure may be struck before a principal tone. Indeed, the fundamental principle stated in § 343, points out restrictions which we will now endeavour to investigate and to define as clearly as possible.

#### (A.) TRANSITIONS FROM BELOW AND FROM ABOVE.

##### § 365.

With respect to the *direction* in which a part proceeds from a secondary to a principal note, transitions are either transitions *from below* or *from above*; that is to say, the secondary tone may be either a lower or a higher tone than the principal one. (§ 343.)

#### (B.) TRANSITIONS BY MINOR SECONDS AND BY MAJOR SECONDS.

##### § 366.

As it respects the magnitude of the interval through which a part proceeds in passing from a secondary tone to a principal one, transitions are either those of a minor or those of major second, or, in other words, *the secondary tone sometimes stands at the distance of a minor degree from its principal tone, and at other times at that of a major degree.* (§ 343.) Transitions of the former

species are called *minor second transitions*, while those of the latter species are denominated *major second transitions*. (Compare §§ XXXVI and XXXVIII.)

But a transition which should be *still farther from its principal tone than a minor or major degree*, would no longer appear to the ear to be used as a secondary tone; it could no longer be called a tone lying *next* to the principal tone (§ 343), but would be at too great a distance to enter into a close connection with it. If, for example, in fig. 618, *i*,

(Fig. 618, *i*.)

we should put the tone  $\bar{a}$  in the place of the minor second transition  $\bar{b}$ , the former tone being a minor third from the principal tone  $\bar{c}$ —and should substitute the tone  $\bar{e}$  for the following fore-note  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , as in *k*—the ear would infallibly be offended by transitions of such a character.

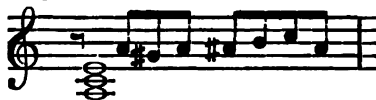
(C.) TRANSITIONS BELONGING TO THE SAME SCALE, AND TRANSITIONS FOREIGN TO THE SCALE.

§ 367.

A farther distinction between transitions is grounded on *the relation of the transient note to the scale* of the key within whose province it appears. Transition-tones, as must have been perceived from the preceding examples, *sometimes belong to the scale and sometimes are foreign to it*; or, in other words, the tone which forms a transition to a principal tone is sometimes used as it stands in the key on which the harmony is founded; as, *e. g.* in figs. 614, 615, 616, &c.—and sometimes otherwise; viz. chromatically raised or lowered, as is the case with the tones  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{a}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{d}\sharp$ , in fig. 608, *i*, p. 616. Fore-notes of this kind may properly be termed *chromatic fore-notes*, and their chromatic alteration may be called an *accidental elevation or depression*. (Compare § 144.)

The chromatically altered fore-notes mentioned above were all transitions of the first rank. But we find also, among *transitions foreign to the scale*, those of a *subordinate rank*. In fig. 619,

(Fig. 619.)

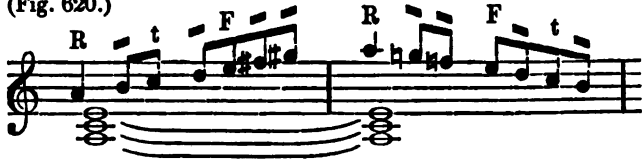


$\bar{b}$  is a transition to  $\bar{c}$ , and this  $\bar{b}$  is preceded by the foreign tone  $\bar{a}\sharp$ , as a transition of the second rank.



So, too, in fig. 620,

(Fig. 620.)



$\bar{g}\sharp$  serves as a transition of the first rank to the harmonic tone  $\bar{a}$ , while  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , which precedes  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , is a foreign transition of the second rank, to  $\bar{g}\sharp$ ; and again in the second measure of the same example,  $\bar{g}\flat$ , foreign to the scale, is a transition of the second rank to the following  $\bar{f}$ . In fig. 621,

(Fig. 621.)



the tone  $\bar{g}\flat$ , which is foreign to the scale, constitutes a transition of the *third* class.

#### § 368.

A transition-tone may also be first sounded as it stands in the scale, and afterwards be brought, by chromatic alteration, nearer to the principal note; thus, *e. g.*, in fig. 622,

(Fig. 622.)



the tone  $\bar{d}$  which serves as a transition to  $\bar{e}$ , is converted into  $\bar{d}\sharp$  immediately before  $\bar{e}$ ; so that, between the two harmonic notes  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{e}$ , we have *two* intermediate notes, instead of *one*.

The same occurs in fig. 623,

(Fig. 623.)



HAYDN.

where the tone  $\bar{f}$  on the fifth line, which is a fore-note to the third,  $\bar{g}$ , of the harmony  $\text{Eb}$ , appears first in its natural form, and is then elevated so as to approach still nearer to its principal tone  $\bar{g}$ .

This is also the case in fig. 624,

(Fig. 624.)



in the second measure of which,  $\bar{e}$ , a secondary tone to the essential fifth  $\bar{d}$  of the harmony  $\text{Eb}$ , is brought still nearer to this latter by being changed into  $\bar{eb}$ . In like manner  $\bar{a}$ , in the fourth measure, which is a transition to the fifth,  $\bar{g}$ , becomes converted into  $\bar{ab}$ , in order, before passing into its principal note  $\bar{g}$ , to approximate nearer to it.

§ 369.

Thus, too, in fig. 625, i,

(Fig. 625, i.)



(Fig. 625, k.)



in the first measure, the foreign tones  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{d}$ ,  $\bar{d}\sharp$ , standing between  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{e}$ , may be explained and justified as follows:  $\bar{d}$  is a transition to  $\bar{e}$ , but before passing into the principal note  $\bar{e}$ , it is brought, by chromatic elevation, nearer to the latter; while  $\bar{c}\sharp$  is a foreign transition, of the second order, to the transient  $\bar{d}$ . In the second measure of the same example, the transition-tone  $a$  is brought, by chromatic elevation, nearer to the harmonic tone  $b$ ; while  $g\sharp$  is a transition of the second class, viz. a transition to the transition  $a$ .

In fig. 626,

(Fig. 626.)



in the second measure, three tones foreign to the harmony are struck between

$\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{b}$ ; since  $\bar{a}$ , which occurs as a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , is first brought nearer its principal tone, by being chromatically depressed into  $\bar{a}b$ , while  $\bar{b}b$  is a chromatically depressed transition, of the second grade, to the transient note  $\bar{a}$ .

In fig. 627,

(Fig. 627.)



in the first measure, between the harmonic tones G and c, *four* transient notes are heard, viz. G#, A, A#, B. These may be explained by regarding A and B as transitions of the second and first rank, and by considering G# as a transition of the third rank to A, and A# as a chromatic approximation of the transient A to the transition-tone B of the first rank. Then again the following c is an harmonic tone, c# is a transition of the second class to the transition of the first class d; which last, before going into the harmonic degree e, is chromatically approximated to it as d#. The next following f is a transition of the first order to the following g, but is changed before passing into its principal note, into f#. In the following measure, G# is a transition of the second, and A of first rank, which last, before passing over, is converted into A#; B is an harmonic tone, and c a transition to d, which, however, is previously changed into c#. After d, the essential fifth, follows d# as a fore-note of the second class to the introductory note of the second rank e; f is the seventh of the fundamental harmony, and f# a fore-note to the following fundamental tone g.

In such and similar ways, a still greater number of foreign tones may be introduced in immediate and uninterrupted succession. Thus, *e. g.* in fig. 628,

(Fig. 628.)



the series of tones  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{b}b$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{a}b$ ,  $\bar{g}$ ,  $\bar{g}b$ , are all transient; namely,  $\bar{g}$  is a transition of the first rank to the harmonic tone  $\bar{f}$ , to which it is approximated, before passing over, by being changed into  $\bar{g}b$ ;  $\bar{a}$  is a transition of the second rank to  $\bar{g}$ , to which likewise it is approximated as  $\bar{a}b$ ;  $\bar{b}$  is a transition of the third order to the fore-note of the second order  $\bar{a}$ , to which it is first approximated by being altered into  $\bar{b}b$ .

In such wise, long ranges of tones may be formed, each of which is only a minor degree higher or lower than the other: these may, accordingly, be termed *chromatic series of tones*.

Many, indeed, call such series of tones *chromatic scales*. (Compare § 127 and Remark on § XVII.) There is certainly no objection to this, provided we give no higher import to the term *scale*, than that of a series of tones, each of which is *somewhat* higher than the preceding, as the rounds of a ladder go on rising higher and higher one above the other. But when we attribute to the term *scale* (scale of the key) that precise signification, according to which it denotes *the totality of the constituent parts of the essential harmonies of a key*, it must be evidently very improper to give the name of *scale* to such series of tones, consisting of but few harmonic tones, and many that are foreign both to the harmony and to the scale!—and when these gentlemen, moreover, try to make out of such accidentally produced series of tones what they call a “*genus of sounds*,” I am free to confess I understand not what they mean in talking of such high and hidden things as *chromatic genera and mixtures of the chromatic and diatonic*, and what is more, of *diatonic-chromatic and enharmonic genera of sounds*, and even *chromatic-enharmonic scales*, and such like mysteries, which are entirely beyond my comprehension. But I can comfort my dear readers with the assurance that it is of no sort of consequence if you also should, peradventure, not be able to understand it—and that we ought, as Jean Paul has it, “to pay no more attention to such high-flown quirks and quiddities than—none at all.”

Let us rather—instead of trying, with these learned gentlemen, to distinguish ourselves by catching after high-sounding names and phrases, with which, as we see, they cannot themselves connect any sound and clear idea—proceed on our way, searching out the truth as far as we are able.

---

### § 370.

On turning our attention to all the various transitions which are foreign to the scale, we perceive that their chromatic elevation or depression serves in all cases *to bring the secondary tone nearer to its principal* than it would otherwise be according to the scale. Such is the case, *e. g.* in figs. 605, 606, 607, 608, 611, 617, 618, 624, &c.

Every where, as we see, it is only an *approximation* of the secondary tone to its principal; or, in other words, the chromatic alteration of the secondary tone every where takes place only for the purpose of bringing it nearer to its principal tone; and every where those tones only are used as transitions, which are found already existing in the scale, or are brought *nearer* to the principal tone by *chromatic alteration*.

But while an exception is made in favour of those transition-tones which are *drawn nearer* to the principal tone, it would be entirely contrary to rule to remove a transition note by a chromatic sign *still farther from the principal note* than the place it would occupy according to the scale.

If, for instance, we were to change the transient  $\bar{f}$ , occurring in fig. 629, *i*,  
(Fig. 629, *i*) (k.) (l.)



into  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , as in *k*, it would sound very unnatural; since, by such elevation, the transition-tone would not be drawn nearer to the harmonic note than it would be according to the scale of *C*-major, but would be removed farther from it. Such an  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , therefore, employed as a transition to  $\bar{e}$  in *C*-major, could not be justified.—But the same  $\bar{f}\sharp$  would sound very well, if used as a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , as in fig. 629, *l*, above; because the tone  $\bar{f}$  is brought *nearer* to the tone  $\bar{g}$ , by being chromatically elevated into  $\bar{f}\sharp$ . Or let any one listen to the effect produced in fig. 630,

(Fig. 630.)

*Vivace.*

VOGLER'S *Dies Iræ*.

in the second measure, by the use of  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , as a transition, instead of  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , and he will require no farther proof of the correctness of what we have advanced.

A single exception, produced as it were by necessity, in which the ear tolerates a secondary note which is *farther* from its principal note than it would be according to the scale in which it occurs, will be mentioned in the sequel (§ 376 and what follows).

#### (1.) *Arbitrary, or necessary, Chromatic Approximation of the Secondary to the Principal Tone.*

#### § 371.

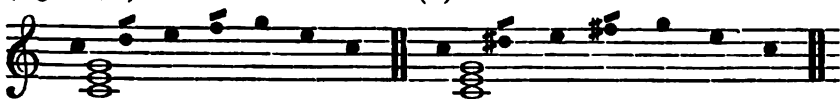
On looking over the above examples of transitions foreign to the harmony, which are brought, by chromatic alteration, nearer to their principal tone, the question naturally arises, when are such chromatic approximations of the secondary note to the principal tone proper?

Such chromatic approximations are either *arbitrary* or *necessary*.

We will first consider such approximations as are *arbitrary*. In fig. 631, i,

(Fig. 631, i.)

(k.)



instead of the transitions  $\bar{d}$  and  $\bar{f}$ , we might employ at pleasure  $\bar{d}\sharp$  and  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , as in *k*; and in fig. 632,

(Fig. 632.)

HAYDN.



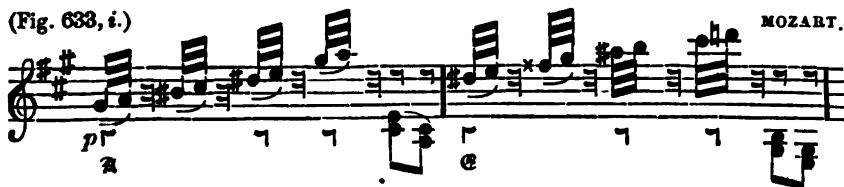
we might employ  $\bar{f}\flat$  and  $\bar{d}\flat$  instead of  $\bar{f}\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}\sharp$ . Here then the elevations are arbitrary.

In respect to such arbitrary approximation of transition-tones, we can only say, in general, that transitions *from below* are subjected to it much oftener than those *from above*. This will at once be evident from the fact, that, among many of the examples adduced, the chromatically approximated secondary tones have been almost always transitions from below, while, on the contrary, but very few have been (as in figs. 624, 626, 628) from above.

Should we, *e. g.* in fig. 633, i,

(Fig. 633, i.)

MOZART.



employ, instead of the minor second transitions  $\bar{b}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{d}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{f}\times$ ,  $\bar{a}\sharp$ , the minor second transitions from above which are found in fig. 633, *k*,

(Fig. 633, *k*.)



we should experience the infelicitous effect resulting therefrom very strikingly.

---

§ 372.

Although the chromatic approximation is *arbitrary* in the examples given above, there are yet many cases in which it is more or less *necessary*.

Thus it will be felt at once, that if, in the preceding fig. 633, *i*, instead of the transitions  $\bar{b}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{d}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{f}\times$ , and  $\bar{a}\sharp$ , which are foreign to the scale, we were to employ the appropriate tones of the scale  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{d}$ ,  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{a}$ , as in fig. 633, *l*,

(Fig. 633, *l*.)



the agreeable flow of the part would be materially injured thereby. So, too, in fig. 634,

(Fig. 634.)

HAYDN'S CREATION.



the appropriate notes of the scale  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{d}$ , and  $\bar{e}$ , if used instead of the foreign transitions which are there introduced, would produce a much less agreeable effect.

---

§ 373.

An actual necessity of *bringing a transition-tone nearer to its principal note* than it would be according to the given scale, arises very often from the

principle already laid down, that a secondary tone must not stand farther from its principal tone than at most a major degree. Or, in other words, it often happens, in consequence of the rule just mentioned, that a tone, as it stands in the scale, cannot be used as a fore-note of transition; but must, in order to serve as a transition to a principal note, be drawn by chromatic transposition nearer the latter than it would be according to the scale; because, should we take it as it stands in the scale, it would be *more than a major degree* from the principal tone, and consequently, being too far off, could not be employed as a transition to it. (§§ 343 and 366.)

The same holds good in respect to the *minor scale*. In this scale, the interval from the sixth step to the seventh is a so-called superfluous degree. Now if one of these tones should be used as a transition to the other, say, *e. g.* the tone *f* should be taken as a transition to *g♯*, or *g♯* as a transition to *f*, in the minor key of *a*, such a transition-note would stand at the distance of a superfluous degree from its principal-note.

But such a transition would be contrary to the principle laid down at the commencement of the doctrine of transitions, and more particularly treated in § 366. Hence, neither can *f♭* serve as a transition to *g♯*, nor *g♯* as a transition to *f*. Should, therefore, one of the tones of such a degree be used as a transition to the other, it must necessarily be drawn nearer to this latter; so that *f*, in order to serve as a transition to *g♯* must be changed into *f♯*—and, on the other hand, *g♯* must be changed into *g♭*, to serve as a transition-note to *f*. Or, in other words, if *g♯* be a principal note, and there is to be appended to it a transition-tone from below, the appropriate tone *f*, of the scale of *a*-minor, cannot be taken for such a transition; but, on the contrary, *f♯* must be necessarily employed instead of *f*; and for a like reason, if *f♭* be the principal note, not *g♯* but *g♭* must be employed as a fore-note of transition to it from above.

We will explain this more fully by means of some examples.

---

§ 374.

(a.) If a transition from below is to be prefixed to the seventh tone of the minor scale, *e. g.* to the tone *g♯* of *a*-minor, we cannot use, for this purpose, the appropriate *f* of the *a*-minor scale, but only the nearer *f♯*: consequently the *f♯* which occurs twice in fig. 635, is a *necessarily* elevated tone.

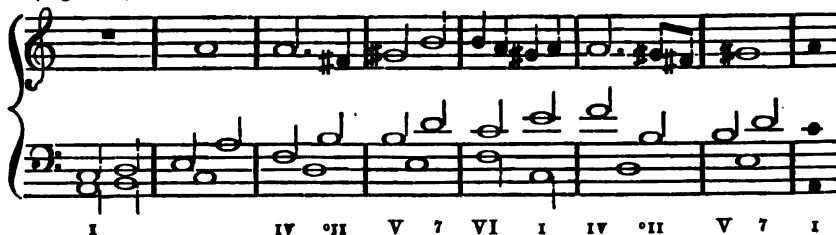
(Fig. 635.)





Fig. 636 is of the same species.

(Fig. 636.)



If, in the third measure of this example, a transition from below is to be placed before the following tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , the  $\bar{f}\natural$  appropriate to the harmony and scale of the third measure would be inadmissible; but we must use instead of it the nearer tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ . On the same principle,  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is employed in the sixth measure instead of  $\bar{f}$ ; as is also  $\bar{b}\natural$  instead of  $\bar{b}\flat$ , in fig. 637 :

(Fig. 637.)



It results from the same cause, that, in fig. 638,

(Fig. 638.)

CALDARA.

at the end of the first measure, we hear in the middle part the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  as an introduction to  $\bar{a}\sharp$  of the following measure. For, although the tone  $\bar{g}$ , and not  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , belongs to the scale of  $b$ -minor, yet the tone  $\bar{g}$  would not answer as an introduction to  $\bar{a}\sharp$ , from which last tone it stands at the distance of a superfluous second.

It was for the same reason that, in my Mass, No. II, in carrying out the theme of the fugue in the minor key (fig. 639, in the second and fourth measures),

(Fig. 639.)

in ter - ra pax

glo - ri - a, glo - ri - a in ex - cel - sis

I °II V7 I °II V7

I was obliged to employ  $\bar{g}\sharp$  instead of  $\bar{g}$  as an introductory fore-note to the following  $\bar{a}\sharp$ .

In the preceding examples, harmonic tones only and transitions of the *first* rank have been found; but the following examples show that the same holds good also with respect to *principal and secondary notes of a subordinate rank*.

In fig. 640,

(Fig. 640.)

R t F R

the harmony  $\bar{a}$  constitutes the basis of the passage, as the *tonic* harmony of *a*-minor. The tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , therefore, is nothing else than an appropriate transition-tone of the scale to the following tone  $\bar{a}$  (we already know, from § 370, that the foreign note  $\bar{g}\flat$  cannot serve as secondary tone to the principal note  $\bar{a}$ ), while  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is a secondary tone of the second rank to the before-mentioned  $\bar{g}\sharp$ . Now it is true, that the proper tone of the scale of *a*-minor is not  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , but  $\bar{f}$ ; but, according to the principles laid down above, the appropriate tone  $\bar{f}$  of the scale cannot serve as a transition to  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , so that it is here *necessary* to change  $\bar{f}$  into  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , and thus bring it nearer to the principal note of the second rank,  $\bar{g}\sharp$ .

### § 375.

(b.) But if a transition-tone from above is to be prefixed to the tone of the sixth degree of the minor scale, e. g. to the tone  $\bar{f}$  in *a*-minor, we must employ, for the purpose, not the appropriate  $\bar{g}\sharp$  of the scale, but the nearer  $\bar{g}\flat$ ; and hence, in fig. 641,



$\bar{g}\sharp$ , instead of  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , twice appears as secondary tone to the third  $\bar{F}$  of the subdominant harmony. So, too, for a like reason, in fig. 642,



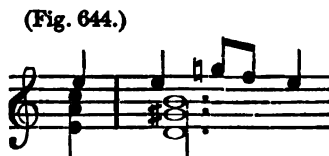
the tone  $\bar{g}$  only, instead of  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , can be employed before the fifth of the diminished three-fold chord of the second degree in the minor key, namely, the tone  $\bar{f}$ .

So, again, in fig. 643,



the tone  $\bar{f}$  is a transition of the first grade to the harmonic tone  $\bar{e}$  (for, according to § 370, it would not do here to use  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in place of the  $\bar{f}$  which is appropriate to the scale), while the  $\bar{g}$  preceding  $\bar{f}$  is a transition of the second rank to the secondary note  $\bar{f}$  belonging to the scale. Now it is true that  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , instead of  $\bar{g}$ , is the appropriate note of the scale of *a*-minor; but yet, in order that it may serve as an introductory fore-note to  $\bar{f}$ ,  $\bar{g}\sharp$  must be changed into  $\bar{g}\flat$ , because  $\bar{g}\sharp$  is too far removed from  $\bar{f}$  to be attached to it in the character of a transition.

In fig. 644,



in the harmony *a*:  $V^7$ , the tone  $\bar{f}$  is a transition to the fundamental tone  $\bar{e}$ ; while a secondary tone of the second rank from above is prefixed to this secondary tone  $\bar{f}$ . But the harmonic tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , which stands at the distance of a superfluous second from  $\bar{f}$ , could not serve for this purpose; and consequently  $\bar{g}\flat$  must be used instead of it (so that  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{g}\flat$  sound at the same time— $\bar{g}\sharp$  as an harmonic interval, and  $\bar{g}\flat$  as a transition). Of the same kind is fig. 645;

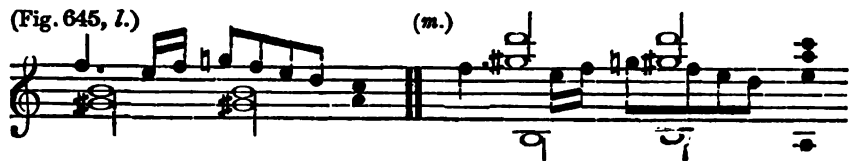
(Fig. 645, i.)

(k.)



(Fig. 645, l.)

(m.)

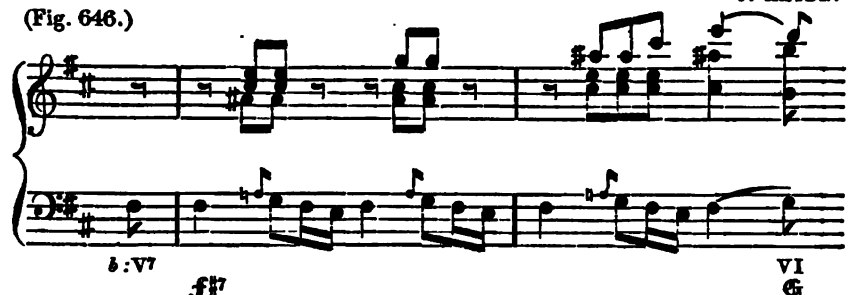


as also fig. 646,

(Compare fig. 683.)

(Fig. 646.)

J. HAYDN.



where, during the continuance of the harmony  $\text{F}\sharp^7$ , a  $\text{b}\flat$  appears as a transition to g. So, too, in fig. 647,

(Fig. 647.)

DON JUAN.

*Allegro assai.*

in the third measure,  $\bar{f}$  is employed as a transition to  $\bar{c}\flat$ , while  $\text{F}\sharp$  is heard in the base; and again in the seventh measure, in the upper part,  $\bar{g}$  is used as a transition to  $\bar{f}$ , while  $\text{G}\sharp$  lies in the base. So, again, in the fourth measure of fig. 648,

(Fig. 648.)

BEETHOVEN'S MOUNT OF OLIVES.



the transition tone  $\bar{d}\sharp$  occurs in the upper part, while  $d\sharp$  sounds in the base as the essential third of the harmony  $\mathfrak{B}$ . The same is found in fig. 649 :

(Fig. 649.)

(Compare fig. 692.)



A similar necessity arises in fig. 650 :

(Fig. 650.)

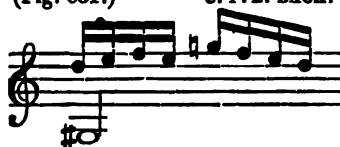


Here, in prefixing to the tone  $\bar{c}$  (the ninth of the fundamental tone), a transition from above, the  $\bar{d}\sharp$  belonging to the chord could not be used, since it is too far from the principal note  $\bar{c}$ :  $\bar{d}\sharp$  must, therefore, be brought nearer to its principal note  $\bar{c}$ , and, consequently, must be changed into  $\bar{d}\flat$ ; so that  $\bar{d}\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}\flat$  are here also heard at the same time. (We shall have more to say on this subject in the sequel.)

We now see how naturally such a concurrence of chromatically different tones may be explained from the principles which have already been developed; how *necessary*, therefore, and perfectly according to fundamental principles it was that, *e. g.* in fig. 651,

(Fig. 651.)

C. P. E. BACH.



*Bach* should employ  $\bar{g}\sharp$  in the upper part, and not  $\bar{g}\natural$ , as an introduction to  $\bar{f}$ ; and how little occasion there is to apologize for *Bach*, by calling it a "small error," a "*trifling fault which is not to affect our judgment of a great man like Bach or Mozart*," as was done in a very erudite article in the Leipzig General Musical Journal\*. Sorry indeed would I be for Mozart and Bach, if they needed *such evasions*!

## (2.) Remote Transitions.

### § 376.

We have hitherto adhered to the principle that the ear not only *tolerates*, but in many cases even *demand*s, the chromatic approximation of a secondary tone to its principal: but that it would *not* endure a secondary tone standing *farther* from its principal than the place it occupies according to the scale.

There is, however, a paramount necessity, as was mentioned at the end of § 370, of avoiding still more disagreeable inconveniences; and then the force of habit enables us to acquiesce in certain deviations from this rule. This is chiefly the case:

### § 377.

(a.) Where the observance of the rule would give rise to a *step consisting of a superfluous second*, which, as it usually has a halting appearance, it is desirable to avoid. (See a more particular consideration of this point in Ch. X, § 478.)

This again takes place in the *minor key*, and that too on account of the remoteness of the tone of the sixth from that of the seventh degree of the minor scale, which we have frequently had occasion to mention.

((I.)) If, for instance, in fig. 652, i,

(Fig. 652, i.)



the upper part, after giving the harmonic tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , should descend to the following harmonic tone  $\bar{e}$ , by means of an intermediate note, such intermediate note would naturally be the appropriate  $\bar{f}$  of the scale. But then the melodic step from the appropriate  $\bar{g}\sharp$  of the scale to  $\bar{f}$  would be a superfluous second;

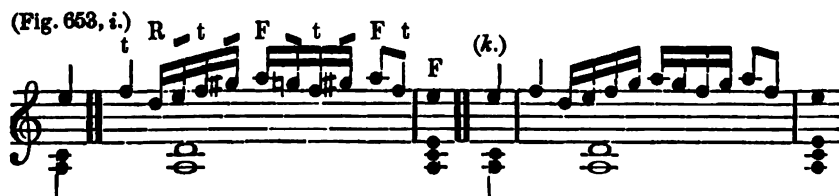
\* Allg. Musik. Zeitung, vol. 1, p. 510.

and this would be still more opposed to an easy flow of the part, from the fact that such an intermediate  $\bar{f}\sharp$  between  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$  would be placed very unsymmetrically, not half-way between the two notes, but three times as far from  $\bar{g}\sharp$  as from  $\bar{e}$ . A part moving in such a manner would seem to descend by a kind of hitching, halting movement, as it were, from  $\bar{g}\sharp$  to  $\bar{f}$ ; and, in order to avoid this want of a smooth and easy transition, it is, all things considered, better to place  $\bar{f}\sharp$  instead of  $\bar{f}\natural$  between the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$ , as in fig. 652, *k*,

(Fig. 652, *k*.)

even though this transition-tone  $\bar{f}$  stands at a greater distance from its principal note  $\bar{e}$  than appropriately belongs between these two degrees of the scale. In like manner, and on the same principle,  $\bar{f}\sharp$  again occurs several times instead of  $\bar{f}$  as a transition-tone to  $\bar{e}$ .

((II.)) On the contrary, in fig. 653, *i*,

(Fig. 653, *i*.)

the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  would be the appropriate transition of the scale to the following harmonic tone  $\bar{a}$  but, in order to avoid the step, consisting of a superfluous second from the preceding harmonic tone  $\bar{f}$  to the intermediate tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , and bring this latter nearer to the middle between the two harmonic tones, it is considered better to use  $\bar{g}\natural$  in such a case than the appropriate  $\bar{g}\sharp$  of the scale, as in fig. 653, *k*, above, even though this  $\bar{g}$  does not stand so near its principal note as the appropriate  $\bar{g}\sharp$  would.

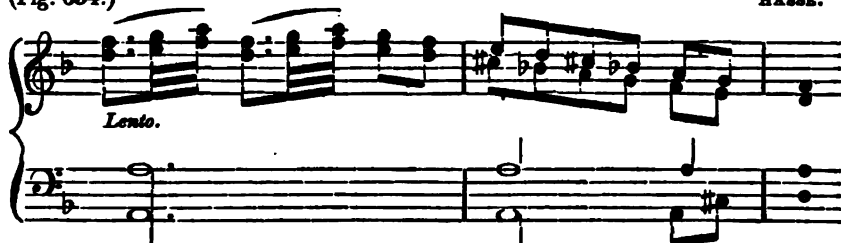
It will readily be perceived that the exceptions just mentioned are nothing else than mere shifts in cases where, of two evils, we must choose the least; namely, that of giving to a part a step consisting of a superfluous second, or of employing a transition-tone that does not stand so near its principal note as it would by its proper position in the scale.

Hence, the necessity of permitting a transition-tone thus removed from its principal note can arise only when the superfluous melodic progression would produce an unpleasant effect; which, as we observed in the place cited above, is

not in every instance the case; and if it be not so, then the transition-tones are properly allowed to remain as they stand in the scale. Thus we see, in fig. 654,

(Fig. 654.)

HASSE.



that first the alto and then the upper part descend from the harmonic note  $\bar{c}\sharp$  to  $\bar{b}b$ . We also meet with the same sort of progression in fig. 655, second measure, in the second violin part, from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{g}b$ .

(Fig. 655.)

DON JUAN.

## § 378.

(b.) In consequence of the frequency with which transitions, standing farther from their principal tone than they properly ought, are employed on the principles laid down (§ 377), our ear has now become so completely accustomed to these transitions, which, though strictly contrary to rule, still are permitted for the sake of avoiding a greater inconvenience, that it receives them without much reluctance, even in cases where they are not necessary, but seem in fact to be *arbitrarily* employed. Thus, for example, in fig. 656,

(Fig. 656.)



it is allowable to employ the descending transition  $\bar{g}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , although contrary to the rule stated in § 375. So, too, in fig. 657,

(Fig. 657.)

MOZART.

*Donna Anna.*

Dies Blut— die-se Wunde— die-ses Antlitz

*fp*

C: V1 f: V      d: V1 g: V      e: V1 a: V

the fore-notes  $\bar{d}\flat$ ,  $\bar{e}\flat$ , and  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , may be said to be *arbitrarily* remote. (Compare also what is said on this example in § 380.)

Of a similar kind are the tones  $\bar{b}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ , in the first measure of fig. 658 :

(Fig. 658.)

VOGLER'S REQUIEM.

*Andante.*

*p*      *f* *p*

*f*

(although, indeed, it might be assumed that the dominant harmony  $\text{G}$  here forms the basis; in which case  $\bar{b}$  could be no longer a transition-tone, but the appropriate third, and  $\bar{a}$  might be justified according to § 377 ((I.)), namely, as serving to avoid the step of the superfluous second  $\bar{b}-\bar{a}\flat$ .)

### § 379.

It having been observed, that, in several of the cases above cited (namely, in §§ 373 and 375), in passages ascending through the sixth and seventh degrees of *a*-minor, the tones  $f\sharp$  and  $g\sharp$  are employed in ascending, and the tones  $f\flat$  and  $g\flat$ , in descending, as secondary transition-tones of the first or second grade—this single observation was assumed by former teachers of composition, not only for the entirely erroneous assertion (refuted by §§ 377 and 378, and the accompanying figs. 652, *k*, 653, *k*, 656, &c.) that *we always ascend through  $f\sharp$  and  $g\sharp$ , and descend through  $f\flat$  and  $g\flat$* ; but also for the singular doctrine that *the minor scale itself* is consequently mutable, and that  $f\sharp$  and  $g\sharp$  in ascending, and  $f$  and  $g$  in descending, are the appropriate

tones of the scale. Compare the remarks on § 131, the entire contents of which will now be intelligible to every reader, as also §§ 211 and 379, and the remark on § 99.

### (3.) *Transition-tones employed as Leading-notes.*

#### § 380.

We have seen, in the course of our investigations from § 367, onwards, that, in conducting a part by means of transitions, regard must constantly be had to the fundamental harmony, as well as to the predominating key and scale in which it is written, and that this or that tone may very properly be used as a transition to a given tone in one scale but not in another; that, for instance,  $f\sharp$  may be employed in  $G$ -major as a transition to  $e$ , since  $f\sharp$  belongs to the scale of  $G$ -major; but that the same tone cannot be employed in  $C$ -major as a transition to  $e$ , because it is farther from the principal note  $e$  than is  $f\flat$  the appropriate note of the scale of  $C$ -major.

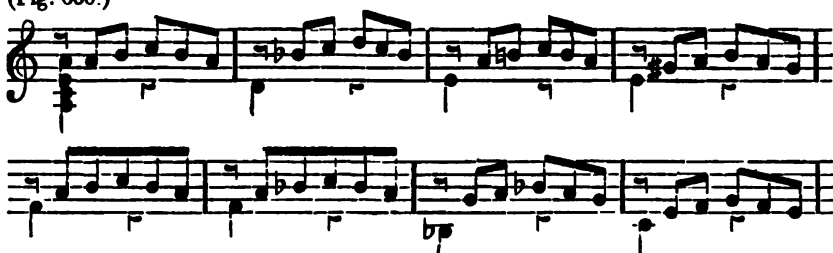
And, on this very account, *transition-tones may sometimes be used as proper signs of a change in the modulation*, i. e. as *leading-tones* (as already mentioned in § 187). Thus, when in a passage which was hitherto in  $C$ -major, as in fig. 659, for example,

(Fig. 659.)



the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  appears as a transition to  $\bar{e}$ , such transition—which is possible in  $G$ -major, but not in  $C$ -major—informs the ear that the harmony in which it occurs is no longer that of the previous scale of  $C$ , but belongs to the key of  $G$ -major. We have already stated this fact (in §§ 157, 203, 228); and now what was there said will be perfectly understood; namely, that in the preceding example after  $\mathbb{C}$  as the tonic harmony of  $C$ -major immediately follows  $\mathbb{C}$  as the subdominant harmony of  $G$ -major; because the  $\mathbb{C}$ -chord in the latter half of the second measure is characterized by means of the  $\bar{f}\sharp$  used as a descending transition-tone to  $\bar{e}$ , as unequivocally belonging to the new key. The case would be otherwise were  $\bar{f}\sharp$  used in passing upwards to  $\bar{g}$ , because a transient  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , thus approximated to its principal note  $\bar{g}$ , might certainly occur in  $C$ -major.

Again, also, in fig. 660,  
(Fig. 660.)



the  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony appears first as the three-fold chord of the sixth degree of  $a$ -minor, and immediately afterwards as the tonic harmony of  $F$ -major: that is to say, in the fifth measure as  $a$ : VI, but in the sixth as  $F$ : I, by reason of the tone  $\flat b$  employed as a transition to  $c$ , which could not be a transition to  $\bar{c}$  in the key of  $a$ -minor.

In this manner also the equivocalness which, *e. g.* arises from the similarity of the chords [ $c\ e\ g\ \flat b$ ] and [ $c\ e\ g\ a\sharp$ ], is often removed by means of transitions. In the following example, fig. 661,

(Fig. 661, *i.*)

(*k.*)



in *i.*, the ear would much sooner take the chord of the second measure for  $F$ :  $V^7$  than for  $e$ :  $^{\circ}II^7$  (§ 194); but  $f\sharp$  serving as a transition to  $e$ , which could not possibly thus occur in  $F$ -major, at once characterizes the chord as unquestionably an appropriate superfluous sixth chord of the key of  $e$ -minor;—as, on the contrary, in *k.*, the  $\bar{f}$  used as a transition to  $\bar{g}$  stamps the chord as the principal four-fold chord  $\mathcal{F}^7$ .

An interesting passage (from the first duet in Mozart's *Don Juan*) appears in fig. 662:

(Fig. 662.) *Ottavio.* MOZART'S DON JUAN.

Sen - ti cor mio deh

*Vlni.*

*Viole e Bassi.*

(Fig. 662 continued.)

Here the ear takes the harmony at the beginning of the third measure as certainly no other than that of  $\mathfrak{A}^7$  with a minor ninth, the fundamental tone being omitted, that is, as  $d:V^7$  (§ 194). The fact, that here the very first note of the second violin is written as  $\bar{d}\flat$  and not as  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , determines nothing. (§ 224.) But although the ear at the beginning of the before-mentioned measure takes it as certainly  $\mathfrak{A}^7$ , yet the transitions which immediately appear compel us soon to come to another decision. The second eighth-note  $\bar{b}\flat$  could indeed be considered as a minor ninth, and the next one again as  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , and consequently as the third of the fundamental harmony  $\mathfrak{A}^7$ , and the seventh degree of  $d$ -minor; but the following tones could not appear as transitions, as they do here in the key of  $d$ -minor; but would have to descend from  $\bar{c}\sharp$  onward, through  $\bar{b}$  or through  $\bar{b}\flat$  (§ 377) to the fundamental tone  $\bar{a}$ . But none of this takes place; on the contrary, the tones proceed nearly as they would in  $f$ -minor (so that  $\bar{d}\flat$  appears as the minor ninth of  $\mathfrak{C}^7$ ,  $\bar{c}$  as the fundamental tone,  $\bar{b}\flat$  as the seventh,  $\bar{a}\flat$  as a transition to the fundamental fifth  $\bar{g}$ , and the following  $\bar{f}$  as a transition to the third  $\bar{e}$ ). And hence, the ear is imperatively compelled to prefer this last explanation, and consequently to assume here the existence of the chord  $\mathfrak{C}^7$ , and not that of  $\mathfrak{A}^7$ —a sudden transporting of the ear from  $a$ -minor or  $d$ -minor into  $f$ -minor, which would certainly have a somewhat harsh effect, were it not that the equivocalness, at least in appearance, of the chord [ $g\ e\ \bar{b}\flat\ \bar{c}\sharp$  or  $\bar{d}\flat$ ] again conceals its harshness (§ 241, 8); after which, moreover, the piece proceeds immediately again in  $F$ -major, which key is near enough related to  $a$ -minor and  $d$ -minor. (The fact that the  $\mathfrak{C}$ -harmony of the fourth measure is again the dominant harmony of the *major* key of  $F$ , is indicated by the  $\bar{a}\sharp$  used as a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , and which may therefore be here termed a leading-note.)

It might also be said that, in fig. 657, p. 640, the fore-note  $\bar{d}$  at the beginning of the third measure causes the  $\mathfrak{C}$ -chord, which at first appeared as the chord

*f*: V, to assume the character of the dominant chord of *F*-major; and that similar effects are produced by the ensuing fore-notes  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{i}\sharp$ .

So, too, in the last measure of the example in fig. 301, p. 478 (compare § 257), the  $\mathbb{B}$ -chord, which is there designated as the VI of *f* $\sharp$ -minor, becomes at once characterized as the recurring tonic harmony of the principal key of *D*-major, which was relinquished shortly before, if we insert  $\bar{g}\natural$  as a transition to  $\bar{a}$ , as follows in *i*,

(i.) *Poco Adagio.*

(k.)

or as a transition from above (§ 371) to  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , as in *k*.

And, likewise, in the second measure of fig. 398, p. 522, § 295, the transitions  $\bar{i}, \bar{e}$  indicate that the third part of the measure is not properly based on *g*:1, but that here the *g*-harmony re-appears as the harmony of the second degree of *F*-major; for in *g*-minor we could not descend from  $\bar{g}$  through these transitions,  $\bar{i}, \bar{e}$ , to  $\bar{d}$ , but in *F*-major we can. Consequently, the *g*-harmony, although, at the first glance, it would seem to be tonic, is in reality a secondary harmony of the principal key *F*-major, and ought, therefore, strictly speaking, to be indicated as such. Thus we have here again one and the same chord appearing first as *g*:1, and immediately after as *F*:II.

#### (4.) *Additional Examples to elucidate §§ 367—380.*

##### § 381.

Having now endeavoured, from § 367 to this place, to ascertain how and in what cases transitions both belonging to and foreign to the harmony are to be employed, it may not be uninteresting to put the results of our investigation to the test in some more extended examples. I select for this purpose the passages in fig. 663, 664, and 665, from Mozart's *Don Juan*, because transitions of both kinds occur here under very different relations.

(Fig. 663.)

## DON JUAN—OVERTURE.

Fig. 663. DON JUAN—OVERTURE.

Chord symbols:  $d:I$ ,  $g:VI^7$ ,  $a:V^7$ ,  $iv^7$ ,  $VI$ ,  $g:V^7$ ,  $I$ .

(Fig. 664.)

## DON JUAN. (ACT II.)

Fig. 664. DON JUAN. (ACT II.)

Vocal lyrics: *Par - la ascoltan - do ti sto Par - lo, a - -*

Piano lyrics: *scol - - - ta più*

Chord symbols:  $I$ ,  $VI$ ,  $ii^7$ ,  $V$ ,  $iv$ ,  $d:I$ ,  $g:V^7$ ,  $VI^7$ ,  $a:V^7$ .

(Fig. 664 continued.)

tem - - - po non ho. Par - la

*g: V7* *I* *a: V7*

(Fig. 665.)

DON JUAN, (ACT II.)

Al - - - tre cu - - - re pã

*a: I* *Bb: I* *C: V7*

gra - - - ti di que - - - ste

*I* *d: V7* *I*

(Fig. 665 continued.)

5 6

al - - - tra bra - - - ma qua

7 8

gu - mi - gui - do

Bb: I V7

G: I V

In order to facilitate the understanding of the harmonic successions in these examples, I will append to them the following remarks. In fig. 663, we see the tone *d* continuing through four measures—and the same is the case in fig. 664. So, too, in fig. 665, the tone *a* continues uninterruptedly for four measures. This gives rise, in many places, to concurrences of tones whose explication would now be very difficult (*e. g.* in fig. 665, measures 2 and 3). This difficulty, however, may be obviated by the fact, that these tones may, for the present, be considered as *having no existence*, and, consequently, need not be taken into account; as will be found more fully explained in §§ 462 and 464.

(A.) ON FIG. 663.

In the first measure, the ascending tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$  are explained by § 374; and the descending  $\bar{c}$  and  $b\flat$  by § 375.

In the next measure, the harmony  $\text{Eb}$  (or  $\text{Eb}^\flat$ ?) appears, according to the principle of inertia, as the  $\text{VI}^\flat$  of *g*-minor. The transition-tone  $\bar{f}$  leading to  $\bar{g}$ ,



and foreign to the scale of *g*-minor, is explained by § 377, ((II)); since  $\bar{f}$  is here used instead of  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , in order to avoid the ascending step of a superfluous second.—In the second half of the measure, where the modulation changes into *a*-minor, for the same reason, the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , instead of the tone  $\bar{f}$  which belongs to the scale, stands between  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$ , in order to avoid the descent from  $\bar{g}\sharp$  to  $\bar{f}$ , (§ 377, ((I.)) ).

So again, in the third measure, the tone  $\bar{g}$ , foreign to the scale of *a*-minor, is used, so as to prevent the necessity of skipping from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{g}\sharp$ .—In the second half of the same measure, for the same reason,  $\bar{d}$  is preceded, not by  $\bar{c}\flat$ , but by  $\bar{e}$ , because it would be a superfluous second from  $\bar{f}\sharp$  down to  $\bar{c}\flat$ .

In the fourth measure, the transition-tones  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , and so also  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{c}\flat$  are to be explained in like manner as the similar ones in the first measure.

(B.) ON FIG. 664.

In the second measure, the transition-tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$  are to be explained in the same manner as in the beginning of fig. 663.—In the second half of the same measure, the key changes to *g*-minor, the transitions  $\bar{f}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$  are justified by § 377, ((I)).

In the third measure, the  $\bar{f}$ , foreign to the scale of *g*-minor, which precedes  $\bar{g}$ , is explained by § 377, ((II)); since, otherwise, there would be a skip of a superfluous second from  $\bar{c}\flat$  to  $\bar{f}\sharp$ .—In the second half of the same measure, for the like reason,  $\bar{f}\sharp$  precedes  $\bar{e}$ , after  $\bar{g}\sharp$ ; § 377, ((I)).

(C.) ON FIG. 665.

In the first measure, the transitions  $\bar{f}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{g}$ ,  $\bar{f}$ , are to be explained in the manner above-mentioned. The chord [*d f a bb*], occurring in the second measure, may be regarded as  $\text{Bb}^7$ , or else as the major four-fold chord of the sixth degree of the scale of *d*-minor, which is most nearly related to that of *a*-minor (just as, in the second measure of fig. 663, the chord of  $\text{Eb}^7$  appeared as the  $\text{VI}^7$  of *g*-minor; although the fourth sixteenth-note  $\bar{c}\flat$  would not occur as a transition to  $\bar{f}$  in *d*-minor (§ 370), but only perhaps in *Bb*-major. Thus, by means of this transition,  $\bar{c}\flat$ , the chord [*d f a bb*] is here characterized as the  $\text{I}^7$  of *Bb*-major. The transition  $\bar{c}\flat$  thus appears here as a leading note.

In the second half of the same measure, the harmony  $\text{Eb}^7$  occurs. In consequence of the immediately preceding key of *Bb*, this harmony would appear to be the dominant chord of *c*-minor, but it strikes the ear rather as the dominant chord of *C*-major, partly because this last-mentioned scale is

nearer than *c*-minor to the still unforgotten *a*-minor of the preceding measure—and partly because it is designated as such by the transition-tone  $\bar{e}$  before  $\bar{d}$ , which in *c*-minor could not possibly occur. (§ 370.)

In the third measure, in the second half of which *d*-minor occurs, Mozart chose rather to write  $\bar{c}\sharp \bar{b}_b$ , than  $\bar{c}\sharp \bar{b}$ , (§ 377, ((II))); and thus he here preferred to make a leap of a superfluous second from the harmonic tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  to the secondary tone  $\bar{b}_b$ , belonging to the scale, rather than proceed by a major second to the transition-tone  $\bar{b}\sharp$ , which is too distant from the principal tone  $\bar{a}$ .

In the fourth measure, the transitions  $\bar{b} \bar{c}\sharp$  and  $\bar{c} \bar{b}_b$  are easily explained; so, too, those in the fifth and sixth measures need no particular elucidation.

In the seventh measure, where *a*-minor occurs, the transitions  $\bar{f}\sharp \bar{g}\sharp$  in the first half are to be explained by § 374, and the transitions  $\bar{g}\sharp \bar{f}\sharp$  in the second half by § 378.

In the eighth measure, the tones  $\bar{f}\sharp \bar{g}\sharp$  are to be explained by § 374—and the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp \bar{f}\sharp$  by § 377.

On a particularly remarkable passage, even in respect to transitions, from one of Mozart's violin quartetts, see § 466 *bis*.

#### (D.) TRANSITIONS ON HARMONIC DEGREES.

##### § 382.

If we consider the different transitions *in relation to their connection with the fundamental harmony*, we find that tones of transition sometimes occur on such degrees as belong to intervals of the fundamental harmony, and at other times (and that, too, much the most frequently) on *other* degrees. I repeat, that by far the greatest part of transition-tones occur on *such degrees of the staff as do not represent any of the tones belonging to the fundamental harmony*. (In fig. 666, for example,

(Fig. 666.)



common case; but it is far from being the only one. For, *the tone of a degree that forms an interval belonging to the fundamental harmony may also occur as a transition-tone*; and this

1. Either as it stands in the harmony itself, or else
2. In a chromatically altered form, and thus foreign to the scale.

---

§ 383.

(1.) It frequently happens that a tone, *which, considered in itself, is actually contained in the fundamental harmony*, may yet, in consequence of the connexion in which it stands, and the manner in which it appears, present itself to the ear only *as a secondary tone*: e. g. in fig. 667,



the ear, in two successive instances, perceives transition-tones, in the upper part, before the harmonic-tones  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{g}$ . Now, when this is followed, in the third quarter of the measure, in the same upper part, by another form of notes very similar to the two preceding, in which  $\bar{b}b$  precedes  $\bar{a}b$ , in the same manner as  $\bar{g}$  before preceded  $\bar{f}$ , and  $\bar{a}b$  preceded  $\bar{g}$ , it is no wonder that such  $\bar{b}b$  should likewise present itself to the ear as a mere transition-tone, although, in itself considered, the tone  $\bar{b}b$  is contained in the fundamental harmony  $\bar{a}b^7$ , which occurs in this place.

For a similar reason, in fig. 668,



the ear will take the tone  $\bar{e}b$ , in the second half of the first measure, for a mere secondary note to the following  $\bar{d}b$ , although the tone  $\bar{e}b$ , taken by itself, is the fundamental tone of the harmony.

In fig. 669,





## § 384.

(2.) Moreover, a tone, which otherwise, according to the *degree* on which it stands, would be an interval pertaining to the harmony, may be *chromatically raised or lowered*, so as to form a mere transition; or, in other words, those tones also may occur as transitions by means of chromatic approximation, which, without such accidental elevation or depression, would form component parts of the harmony. Thus, for instance, during the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , the tone  $c\sharp$  may nevertheless appear as a transition-tone, though standing on the same degree as the fundamental tone of the chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ : as, for example, in fig. 673:

(Fig. 673.)



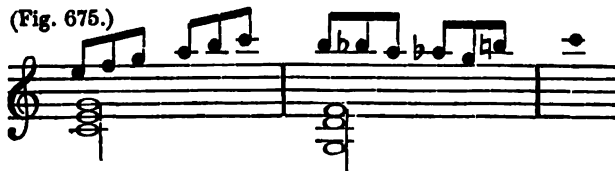
In the second measure of this same example, in the harmony of  $\mathbb{G}^7$ , we have the transition  $G\sharp$  in the base. So, too, in fig. 674,

(Fig. 674.)



in the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , whose appropriate fifth is  $g\sharp$ , we hear the chromatically elevated tone of this degree as a transition-tone, namely  $\bar{g}\sharp$ .—In fig. 675 also,

(Fig. 675.)



the transition-tone  $\bar{b}b$  is heard in the harmony  $\mathbb{G}^7$ :

In fig. 676, likewise,

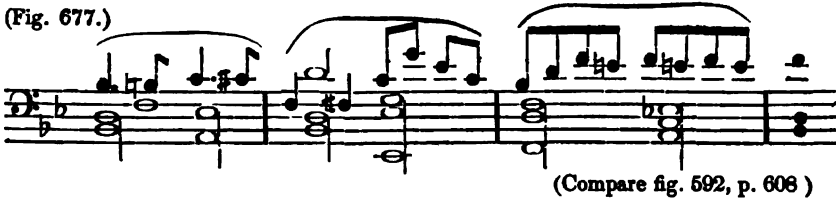
(Fig. 676.)



we have the transition  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the harmony  $\mathbb{B}^7$ , whose fifth is the tone of the same degree as that on which the transition  $\bar{f}\sharp$  stands.

In fig. 677,

(Fig. 677.)



(Compare fig. 592, p. 606 )

the foreign and arbitrarily elevated tone  $b\sharp$  appears as a fore-note to the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the following chord, while the appropriate  $b\flat$  of the scale, which is not elevated, is an harmonic tone. So, too, the tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  in the second half of the measure, belongs to the harmony  $\mathbb{F}^7$ , while  $\bar{c}\sharp$  occurs as a transition to  $\bar{d}$ .— And, again, in the following measure, in the harmony  $\mathbb{B}\flat$ , to which  $f\sharp$  belongs as an harmonic interval, we have the transition  $f\sharp$ ; and, in the second half of the third measure,  $\bar{e}$  is employed in the upper part as a transition, while  $e\flat$  belongs to the harmony and forms its fundamental seventh.

Fig. 678,  $i$  and  $k$ , is of the same species :

(Fig. 678,  $i$ .)

( $k$ .)



In fig. 679,

(Fig. 679,  $i$ .)

( $k$ .)



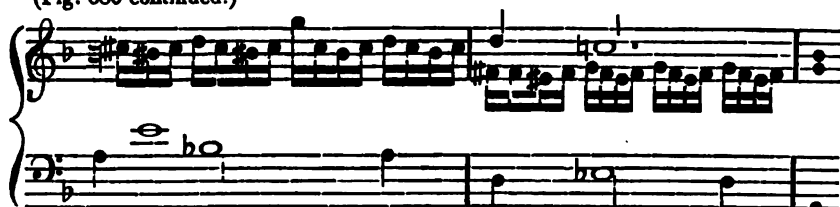
the harmony of the second measure may properly be explained as that of  $\mathbb{B}^7$  with an added ninth,  $\bar{e}$ , which latter is preceded by  $\bar{f}\sharp$  as a secondary tone, while  $f\sharp$  is the fundamental third of the harmony  $\mathbb{B}^7$ .

Again, in fig. 680,

(Fig. 680.)



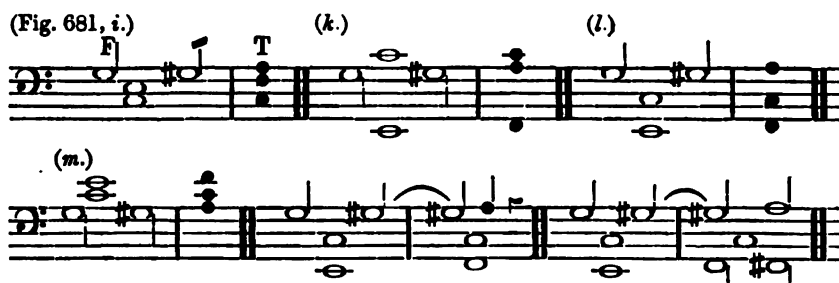
(Fig. 680 continued.)



the tone  $\bar{b}b$ , which is a minor ninth of the fundamental harmony, is in a manner to be regarded as a principal tone; yet  $\bar{b}\sharp$  appears in the upper part as a transition to  $\bar{c}\sharp$ .

In fig. 681,

(Fig. 681, i.)



the tone  $g\sharp$  (which appears in *i* as a superfluous fifth from the base note, in *k* and *l* as its major third, and in *m* as the base note itself) is the elevated tone of the same degree that forms the fifth of the fundamental harmony.

In like manner, in fig. 682,

(Fig. 682.)



the tone  $\bar{a}b$  is the depressed tone of the same degree that forms the third of the major harmony  $\mathfrak{F}$ .

In like manner, the transition-tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  appears in the third measure of fig. 636, p. 632, whose fundamental harmony involves the tone  $f\sharp$ ;  $\bar{b}$ , in fig. 637, p. 632;  $g\sharp$ , in fig. 638, p. 632;  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , in fig. 639, p. 633;  $\bar{g}\flat$ , in fig. 644, p. 634. In like manner, in fig. 645, p. 635, where, in the fundamental harmony  $\mathfrak{E}^7$ , the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  is an harmonic interval, the tone  $\bar{g}\flat$  appears as a transition; and so, too, in fig. 646, p. 635, in the harmony  $\mathfrak{F}\sharp^7$ , to which  $a\sharp$  belongs, the transition-note  $a\flat$  appears—as also in fig. 647, p. 635, we have  $\bar{f}$  and then  $\bar{g}$ .

In fig. 648, p. 636, in the harmony  $\mathfrak{B}^7$ , which occurs as  $V^7$  of *e*-minor, the transition  $\bar{d}\flat$  occurs on the same degree as that of the third of the harmony  $\mathfrak{B}^7$ , namely  $d\sharp$ .

Figs. 649, 650 and 651, p. 636, are of the same description.

We discern, moreover, in the above-mentioned examples, a second class of cases in which tones of one and the same degree, but chromatically different, may sound at the same time. (Compare § 356.) For example, in fig. 673, p. 652, we have at the same time  $c$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , and then  $G\sharp$  and  $g$ :—in fig. 674, p. 652,  $g$  and  $\bar{g}\sharp$ —in fig. 677, p. 653,  $Bb$  and  $b$ —in fig. 679, p. 653,  $f\sharp$  and  $f$ —in fig. 680, p. 653,  $bb$  and  $b\sharp$ , &c.

---

§ 385.

It may be laid down as a general principle, that, in such a simultaneous sounding of two chromatically different tones belonging to one and the same degree, there is always a certain harshness, which is greater or less according to circumstances.

Thus, for instance, it is always more harsh when the chromatically different tones are near together, than when they stand farther from one another. Compare fig. 683,  $i$  with  $k$  and  $l$ .

(Fig. 683,  $i$ .)



(Compare fig. 645, p. 635.)

(This we shall find to be an interesting point, when we come to the doctrine of what is called double counterpoint.) Compare also §§ 360 and 361.

---

§ 386.

Secondly, the harshness of such simultaneous groups becomes always the more sensible in proportion to the length of their duration; and, consequently, it is often well, in order to avoid such a long simultaneous sounding, to leave out the natural interval, and thus, instead of fig. 684  $i$ ,

(Fig. 684,  $i$ .)  
*Lento.*

( $k$ .)

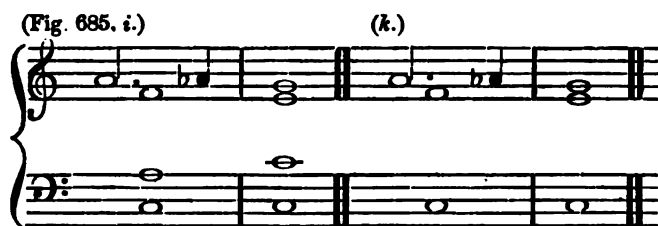
( $l$ .)

( $m$ .)





to write rather as in *k*;—and instead of 685 *i*, to write as in *k*.

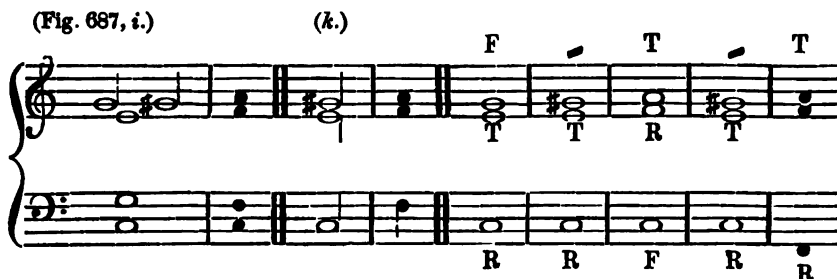


When this is the case, such a chromatic transition-tone may be of even as long a duration as the harmony in which it sounds; as, *e. g.* in fig. 684, *l* and *m*, p. 655, where the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  as a minor second transition to  $\bar{a}$  of the following harmony  $\mathcal{F}$ , sounds through the entire duration of the harmony  $\mathcal{C}$ , so that in this  $\mathcal{C}$ -harmony the tone  $g\sharp$  appears throughout instead of the fundamental fifth  $g$ .

And likewise, in fig. 686,



(Compare fig. 701.)



we may take the second chord as the three-fold chord of  $\mathcal{C}$  with the fifth omitted, and in which  $\bar{g}\sharp$  is struck as a transition to the following  $\bar{a}$ , while the proper fifth  $g\sharp$  is left out;—so, too, we may take the second chord of the following measure for the chord of  $\mathcal{F}$ .

### § 387.

I must take occasion here to remark incidentally, that many teachers of composition conceive themselves under necessity of assuming, for the explanation of such harmonic combinations as those in figs. 684, 686, and 687, above,

a particular harmony, to which they give the name of "superfluous three-fold chord."—But as every such simultaneous group in every possible case may be explained according to the laws of transitions, inasmuch as every thing applies to the superfluous fifth occurring in such chords that holds good concerning all other approximated transitions; it follows, that, both from these and many other considerations, we have no occasion to increase the number of our seven fundamental harmonies by the addition of an eighth; and nobody knows with how many more of the same species, for which we can discover no place in the scale of the major key, though it is in this scale that such compounds occur most frequently. (Compare remark on § 51).—Even the inventors and champions of the so-called superfluous three-fold harmony, in such a passage as the one in fig. 684 *i*, p. 655, or in fig. 687 *i*, p. 656, would certainly explain the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  as no other than a transition, though a harsh one. But when the same tone appears as it does in *k*, where, through the omission of the proper fifth,  $g\sharp$ , the harshness of the transition  $\bar{g}\sharp$  is obviated, and the transition is thus rendered more faultless and less objectionable than in *i*—why may it not just as well, and indeed much more appropriately, be explained as a transition? and why should it be necessary, for the explanation of such a passage, to invent a new fundamental harmony, consisting of the tones  $[c\ e\ g\sharp]$ , that is to say, of a fundamental tone, major third, and superfluous fifth?—or why, for the explanation of the compound  $[A\ e\flat\ c\sharp]$  in fig. 677, p. 653, must we invent a fundamental harmony composed of a fundamental tone, major third, and minor fifth (the so-called diminished major three-fold chord)?—&c.

We see, in general, from the examples above cited, that, by means of such transitions, sometimes very curious intervals arise between tones sounding together. Thus, for instance, in fig. 673, p. 652, we have the tones *c* and  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , which together form an interval of a *superfluous prime or octave*—so, too, in fig. 674, p. 652, *g* and  $\bar{g}\sharp$ .—In the second measure of fig. 673, p. 652, in fig. 679, p. 653, and in fig. 683, *i*, p. 655, *diminished octaves* occur in the same way. —In fig. 680, pp. 653 and 654, a *doubly superfluous octave* appears between *bb* and  $\bar{b}\sharp$ —and in fig. 678, *k*, p. 653, a *diminished sixth* occurs between  $A\sharp$  and  $\bar{f}$ , &c.

Now, if we were always to regard simultaneous groups of this sort as actual harmonies, they would often produce harmonies of a very strange description; *e. g.* in fig. 684, p. 655, a harmony consisting of the tones  $[c\ g\ e\ g\sharp]$ , or at least  $[c\ e\ g\sharp]$ ; in fig. 678, *k*, p. 653, of the tones  $[A\sharp\ c\sharp\ f]$ , &c.—all of them mere combinations of tones, which, were we to regard their constituent parts as consisting altogether of real harmonic intervals, would correspond to none of the fundamental harmonies enumerated in § 50, and for the establishment of which a sufficient number of new fundamental harmonies could scarcely be invented.

## DIVISION IV.

## EQUIVOCALNESS.

## (A.) CONSIDERATION OF THE EQUIVOCALNESS ARISING FROM TRANSITIONS IN GENERAL.

## § 388.

In the course of the preceding observations we had several occasions to remark, how often an harmonic combination may appear equivocal from the fact that we may take one or more of its constituent parts either as belonging to the harmony or as a transition.

From the point of view which this new kind of equivocalness lays open to us, it will be perceived that a multitude of harmonic combinations, which hitherto could be regarded only as actual chords, have now become doubtful and equivocal, and we thus find ourselves cast upon a new sea of uncertainties.

The question, therefore, properly arises, whether there are no limits to this equivocalness; and if so, what are they? and how are we to regard such equivocal combinations in any cases that may occur?

## (B.) LIMITS OF EQUIVOCALNESS.—CHOICE AND SIMPLIFICATION OF THE MODES OF EXPLANATION.

## § 389.

An answer to the above question is furnished by what we have already found several times to hold good in similar cases; namely, that every such harmonic combination presents itself to the ear as being that which the most *convenient, easy, simple, and suitable manner of explanation would make it*. If it can be explained more simply and naturally as a combination of real harmonic intervals, let it be considered as such; but if it be more appropriate and convenient, all things considered, to adopt the other mode of explanation, then this is naturally to be preferred. Both modes of explanation will seldom present equal claims.—If, however, such should be the case, the combination is really equivocal. In fig. 688, for example, it might be doubtful whether (Fig. 688.)



the harmonic combination [e g  $\bar{c}$  b], in the fourth quarter of the first measure, is to be considered as a major four-fold chord  $\text{C}^7$ —or whether the tone  $\bar{b}$  is

to be regarded as a mere transition-tone, in which latter case the three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$  would form the basis of the whole first measure. This latter explanation is evidently not only the more simple of the two, but the former would have the effect of presupposing the introduction of a major four-fold chord with an unprepared major seventh in the weak part of the measure, all of which, as is well known, is contrary to its nature. The above-mentioned combination, therefore, is in this case to be taken as a simple three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ , and the tone  $\bar{b}$  as a mere transition.

Such a combination, which, according to the tones composing it, has precisely the appearance of a chord consisting of harmonic tones exclusively, but which, in consequence of the connexion in which it appears (*i. e.* according to the principles laid down in the beginning of this section), is not received by the ear as such a chord, and which, therefore, *seems* to be a chord consisting of harmonic tones, but only seems so without being so in effect—*i. e.* without in reality impressing itself as such upon the ear—such a chord, I say, we will name *an apparent chord*. (Compare §§ 98 and 407.)

But, on the other hand, we could object, if one were to assume that, in fig. 689,

(Fig. 689.)



in the second half of the first measure, all the tones of the upper part are merely transition-tones, and, consequently, the harmony no other than  $\mathbb{C}$ ; for the tone  $\bar{b}$  might certainly be a transition to the immediately recurring  $\bar{c}$ ;  $\bar{f}$  an intermediate note from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , as also the  $\bar{d}$  between  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{c}$ ; while  $g$  and  $G$  belong, at any rate, as well to the harmony of  $\mathbb{C}$  as to that of  $\mathbb{C}\sharp$ . Still, it will readily be felt that this mode of exposition is at least not more natural than if we regard the combination  $[G \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{b}]$  as that which it primarily represents itself to be; namely, as  $\mathbb{C}\sharp^7$ , and the harmonic progression as the very usual one  $I-V^7-I$ .

Easy as we have found it in the two preceding examples to make a choice between two modes of explanation, there are yet many other cases in which a decision is not possible: *e.g.* in fig. 690, *i*, *k*, *l*,



we may with perfect propriety regard the  $\bar{f}$  in the second measure as a secondary tone to the principal tone  $\bar{e}$ , according to which explanation the harmony of the second measure would remain  $\mathbb{C}^7$  throughout, and the whole harmonic progression

$$F:I | V^7.$$

But we might just as properly view this combination  $[\bar{g} \bar{b} \bar{f}]$  as what, in itself considered, it first of all appears to be, namely, as  $\mathbb{G}^7$  with an omitted fundamental fifth, in which case the harmonic progression would again be a very natural and common one; namely,

$$F:I | II^7 V^7 |$$

No sufficient reason can be discovered for assigning to one mode of explanation a decisive preference over the other. (For, why could we not have the same fundamental harmony in *i*, *k*, and *l*, as in *m*, *n*, or as in *o*?)

(Fig. 690, *m*.)

(*n*.)



(*o*.)



The above-mentioned combination is therefore *really equivocal*.

### § 390.

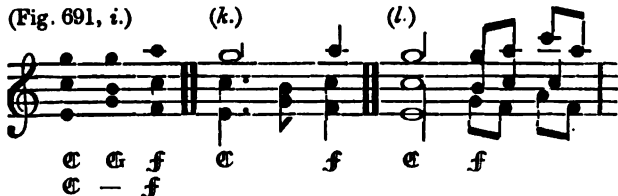
It is especially worthy of notice that, in many cases, we have *the choice* whether we will consider such combinations as transitions to intervals of the *following*, or of *the present* harmony.

In fig. 691, for example,

(Fig. 691, *i*.)

(*k*.)

(*l*.)

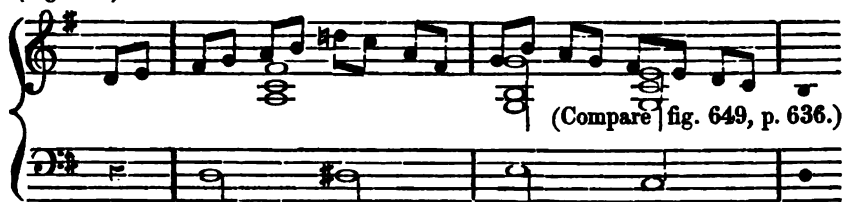


we may, if we will, regard the combination  $[\bar{g} \bar{b} \bar{g}]$  as a mere apparent chord, if we assume that the  $\bar{g}$  is only a transition to  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{b}$  a transition to  $\bar{c}$ , and  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{f}$ . In this point of view, the passage would consist of only two harmonies:  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{F}$ .—We may then assume, in particular, that the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony continues on to the third chord, and that during this  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony the tones  $\bar{g}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ , and  $\bar{g}$  are tran-

sitions to the intervals  $\bar{f}$ ,  $\bar{c}$ , and  $\bar{a}$  of the following  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony, as is indicated in *k*.—Or else we may assume that the  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony commences at the combination  $[\bar{g} \ \bar{b} \ \bar{g}]$ , as is indicated in *l*, where, consequently, the transition tones  $\bar{g}$ ,  $\bar{b}$ , and  $\bar{g}$  relate to intervals of the  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony, during which they sound as transitions.

In fig. 692,

(Fig. 692.)



we have the choice either to regard  $\bar{d}$  of the upper part as a necessarily approximated (§ 375) transition to  $\bar{c}$ —or else to assume that the  $\mathcal{D}^7$ -harmony continues throughout the whole measure, and that the  $d\sharp$  in the base, which, without chromatic elevation, would form an harmonic interval of this harmony, is merely an arbitrarily approximated secondary tone to *e* of the following  $\mathcal{E}$ -harmony. (A similar equivocalness will be observed on inspecting the example in fig. 648, p. 636.)

### § 391.

It will at once be perceived, however, (and this is the most important point involved in these observations) that the *explanation of many an harmonic combination becomes facilitated and simplified* by the fact, that one or more of its tones may, as mere transitions, be left altogether out of the account.

We have already on several occasions directed attention to this truth. A few additional proofs are subjoined.

In fig. 693,



if we regard the tone  $\bar{e}$  as simply a transition-tone, the fundamental harmonies of the first two measures are  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}^7$ ;—but, should we prefer to regard  $\bar{e}$  as belonging to the harmony, it would stamp the combination of the fourth quarter of the measure as the much less common harmony of  $\mathcal{F}^7$ , from which there would result the still more uncommon harmonic progression,

$F:I-I^7-I$ , or  $F:I-I^7-Bb:V^7$ ,

and, moreover, the preparation of the major seventh would be wanting.—It is, therefore, very evident, that the former explanation is by far the most natural, and the one to be preferred.

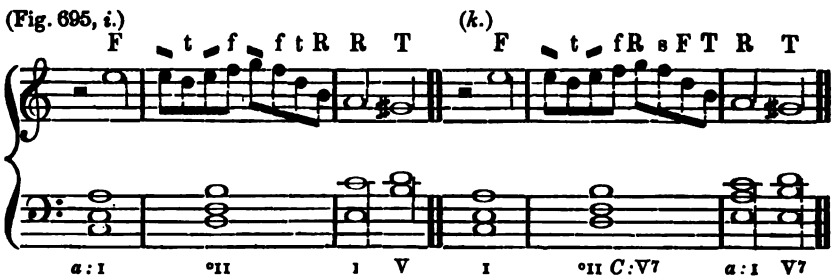
For a like reason, in the first measure of fig. 694, the last quarter-note  $\bar{e}$  (Fig. 694.)



of the middle part will be regarded, not as an unprepared major seventh of the harmony  $\text{F}^7$ , which is itself of rare occurrence, but much rather as a secondary note of the following harmonic tone  $\bar{d}$ .—Again, the last quarter-note  $\bar{f}$  of the following measure, which occurs in a connection similar to that of the preceding  $\bar{e}$ , will for the same cause present itself to the ear as simply a transition-tone, although it might otherwise, with perfect propriety, be regarded as the seventh of the frequently occurring principal four-fold harmony.

In fig. 695,

(Fig. 695, i.)

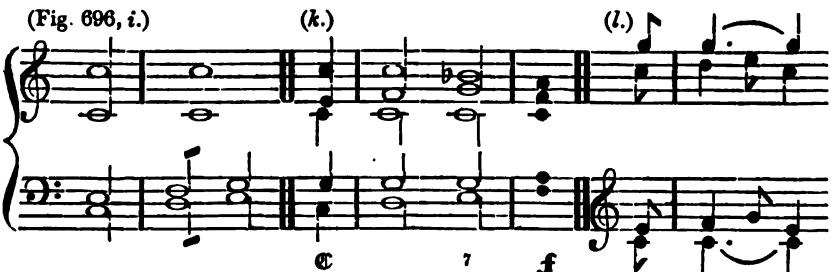


in the second measure, instead of considering the  $\bar{g}$  as foreign to the harmony, we might regard it as forming a component part thereof, and thus explain the harmony of the second half of the second measure as that of  $C:V^7$ ;—but the former mode of explanation is more simple, and therefore to be preferred.

### § 392.

In the following example, fig. 696, in  $i$ ,

(Fig. 696, i.)



the mode of explanation indicated by the diagonal strokes is simpler and much more natural than if we were to consider these tones as forming a part of

the harmony. In the former case, we need, for the explanation of the whole phrase, only a single fundamental harmony; in the latter, we should have to assume three, namely,

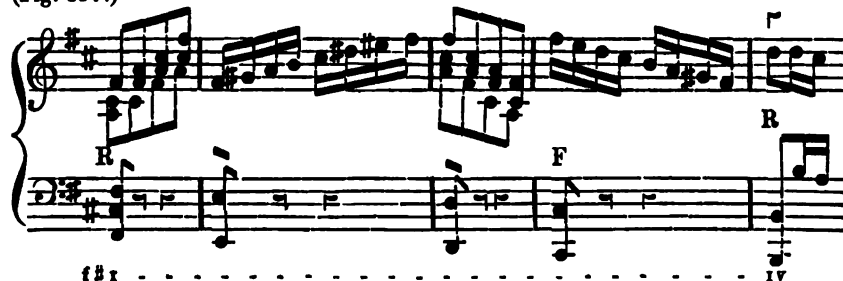
$$C: I - 11^7 - I.$$

Moreover, this last progression,  $11^7 - I$ , at least in this form, would be rather unusual; accordingly, it is far better to consider the chord  $[d f \bar{c} \bar{c}]$  as a mere apparent chord—as likewise in  $k$  the chord  $[d g \bar{c} \bar{f} \bar{c}]$ —and in  $l$  the combination  $[\bar{c} \bar{f} \bar{d} \bar{g}]$ .

Our teachers of composition are wont to explain such cases as the above fig. 696 (or figs. 609 and 616, pp. 616 and 621) in another and very troublesome way, inasmuch as they fancied themselves bound to regard such a combination as a proper chord, to which they give the name of the chord of the *stationary seventh*, about which stationary quality they contrive to say an immense deal that is both excessively learned and hard to be understood\*, and in which the favourite elliptical and catachrestical harmonic progressions play a great part. We must allow, that, for our simple explanation, no great learning is required, inasmuch as we see in the passages cited nothing more than very common transition-tones, of which, consequently, we cannot contrive to say any thing very particular. (Compare remark on § 99 and on § 320.)

In fig. 697,

(Fig. 697.)



the harmony of the second measure, in itself considered, might certainly be regarded as  $f\sharp^7$ , and that of the third measure as  $\text{IV}^7$ ; but the ear will much rather take the base tones E and D for mere transitions between  $F\sharp$  of the first and  $C\sharp$  of the fourth measure, and accordingly  $f\sharp$  as the fundamental harmony of the whole four measures (as has already been done by Kirnberger, from whom I borrow this example†). But were we to adopt the first mode of explanation, not only would there appear a strange and unusual harmonic progression:

$$f\sharp \quad f\sharp^7 \quad \text{IV}^7 \quad f\sharp,$$

but the striking of the unprepared secondary seventh could not well be justified.—(Furthermore, I will not deny that the composer has here given us too many transitions at once.)

\* See e. g. the *Leipzig allg. musikal. Zeitung*, for 1810, Nos. 58 and 59.

† In his *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, 1 Bd. 4 Abschn. Anm. p. 51.



## § 393.

In fig. 698,  
(Fig. 698.)



we may, if we please, consider the harmony  $\mathcal{F}$  to lie at the basis of the harmonic combination at the second quarter-note, and that the  $\mathcal{C}$ -harmony returns at the following eighth-note, the  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony again at the next, then again the chord of  $\mathcal{C}$ —and, in the same manner, change the fundamental harmony at each of the following sixteenth-notes; and so also in the following measure, where the harmonies  $\mathcal{C}^7$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  several times alternate with each other. But since we may very properly assume that the tone  $\bar{a}$  of the first measure is throughout only a transition to the following  $\bar{g}$ , and  $\bar{f}$ , in like manner, a transition to  $\bar{e}$ —and so, in the next measure, that the tones  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{c}$  are transitions to the adjacent notes, this explanation is already much more simple, and hence is indisputably to be preferred, at least for combinations which thus rapidly alternate with each other.

So, too, in fig. 699,  
(Fig. 699, i.)



at the first quarter-note of the first measure, the tones  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{f}$  may be regarded either as the third and fundamental tones of the harmony  $\mathcal{F}$ , or as mere secondary notes to  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{e}$ ; the second half of the measure may likewise be differently explained, &c. Here, too, the explanation indicated by the top row of numerals is simpler and more natural than the other; because, if we regard all the quarter-notes as transitions, the phrase will be seen to be, after all, nothing more than a garnishing of the very common one in *k*.

In fig. 700, again,

(Fig. 700, i.)



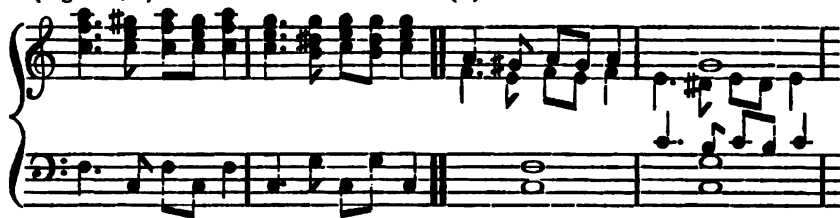
(Fig. 700, *k*.)

we are at liberty to take a new fundamental harmony for each quarter, eighth, or sixteenth-note; and also to decide *which tones* we will regard as harmonic, and which as mere transitions.

Likewise, in fig. 701, *i*,

(Fig. 701, *i*.)

(k.)



(Compare fig. 686, p. 656.)

we may either explain the second chord of the first measure in the same manner as was done in § 386—or we may still more simply regard it as a continuation of the harmony  $\mathbb{F}$  (only in the second inversion), if we take both the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{e}$  as transitions. For, why should not the same harmony lie at the foundation here as in *k*?

Also, in fig. 702,

(Fig. 702.)

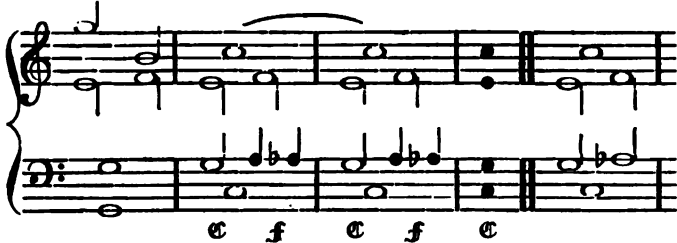


at the beginning of the second measure, we may explain the combination of the first quarter from the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , if we regard  $b$  and  $\bar{g}$  as harmonic,  $\bar{d}\sharp$  as an extraneous secondary tone to the  $\bar{e}$  of the following chord, and the first  $\bar{e}$  as a secondary tone of the second rank. But we may also assume that the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony, at the end of the first measure, continues through the first quarter of the second measure, that  $b$  is a transition to the following  $\bar{c}$ , as also  $\bar{d}\sharp$  to  $\bar{e}$ ;—which explanation is, after all, the simpler of the two.

## § 394.

If, in fig. 703, *i*,(Fig. 703, *i*.)

(k.)



the tone *ab*, which occurs in the harmony *f*, may be taken as a mere transition-tone (§ 384, fig. 682, p. 654), it may also be regarded as continuing through the whole harmony *f* (§ 386), as in *k*, where, accordingly, we have *ab* throughout, instead of *a*, the proper tone of the major three-fold chord of *f*. It will readily be seen how much simpler the explanation of fig. *i* and *k* is, according to this method, than if we should each time take the combination [c *ab* *f* c] for the minor three-fold harmony *f*, which is foreign to the scale of *C*-major.

By this view of the matter, the explanation of the cadences in fig. 416, p. 535, and fig. 422, p. 537, is very much simplified.

## § 395.

If, in such examples as those in fig. 704,

(Fig. 704.)



we regard all the tones as harmonic, the passage will consist of the four following harmonies:

*C*: I °vii vi V; or say I V<sup>7</sup> vi V.

But we may also take the second and third tones of the upper part as transitions of the second and first order, the *f* of the middle part as a transition to the following *e*, and the *d* of the lower part as a transition to *c*; in which case, the first three combinations appear as depending throughout on the harmony *C*: I, which would make the whole harmonic progression as follows:

*C*: I V.

Or, again, we may regard the third combination as an harmonic one: this would produce the following harmonies:

*C*: I vi V,

and so on. Thus, we see in how many ways such progressions of thirds and

sixths may be viewed and explained; and that, in every such succession of chords, considerable freedom is allowed in selecting that mode of explanation which may be the most natural in the given circumstances.

§ 396.

In the annexed figure, the combination  $[g \bar{c}\sharp \bar{e} \bar{a}\sharp]$  perfectly resembles the chord of  $\mathcal{F}\sharp^7$  with the fundamental tone omitted and an added minor ninth (or, considering it according to the keys of the piano-forte, it might be construed as  $\mathcal{A}^7$ ,  $\mathcal{C}^7$ , or  $\mathcal{B}\sharp^7$ , with the same omission and addition. § 85).



The ear, however, does not receive it as such; because it is evidently much simpler to regard the tones  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{a}\sharp$  of the three upper parts as mere transitions; for, then the whole measure appears to rest on the principal four-fold chord  $\mathcal{C}^7$ , while, otherwise, we should have to assume three fundamental harmonies for this measure; namely, first  $\mathcal{C}^7$ , then  $\mathcal{F}\sharp^7$  (or  $\mathcal{A}^7$ , or  $\mathcal{C}^7$ , or  $\mathcal{B}\sharp^7$ ) with a minor ninth, and then again  $\mathcal{C}^7$ —which would give, for this measure, the following far less simple harmonic succession:

	$C:\mathcal{V}^7$	— $b:\mathcal{V}^7$ —	$C:\mathcal{V}^7$ ,
or	— —	$d:\mathcal{V}^7$	— —,
or	— —	$F:\mathcal{V}^7$	— —.
or perhaps	— —	$A\flat:\mathcal{V}^7$	— —.

Fig. 705 is of the same description.

(Fig. 705.)

MY "TE DEUM."

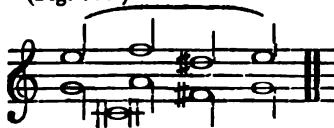


Here, the second chord may be considered as  $\mathcal{C}^7$ ; but we can also assume that the fundamental harmony of the first part of the measure remains the same at the second quarter-note, and that  $\bar{b}\sharp$  appears only as a transition-tone to the  $\bar{c}$  of the following harmony, as does also  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{e}\flat$ , and  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{e}$ . So, too, the combination at the fourth quarter-note might very well, taken as  $[g\flat \bar{c}\flat \bar{e}\flat \bar{a}]$ ,

be regarded as the harmony of  $^{\circ}f^7$  with an elevated third—or as a transferring dominant harmony  $\mathcal{F}^7$  with a depressed fifth, or taken as  $[gb \bar{c}b \bar{c}b \bar{bbb}]$  or  $[f\sharp \flat \bar{d}\sharp \bar{a}]$  as the harmony  $\mathcal{C}b^7$  or  $\mathcal{B}^7$ ; or else we may assume that the  $\mathcal{C}b$ -harmony of the third quarter-note continues, that  $\bar{a}$  is merely an approximated preparatory tone to the following  $\bar{bb}$ , that  $\bar{c}b$  bears the same relation to  $\bar{bb}$ , and  $f\sharp$  to  $g$ . And, in fact, it is much simpler thus to explain this fourth chord as a mere apparent chord, than as the harmony  $^{\circ}f^7$  or  $\mathcal{F}^7$ , or as the any thing but simply related harmony  $\mathcal{C}b^7$  or  $\mathcal{B}^7$ .

Again, in fig. 706,

(Fig. 706.)



we are at liberty to regard the tones  $f\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}\sharp$  as harmonic, and the combination as that of  $\mathcal{B}^7$  with a minor ninth; but it is much simpler to explain the tones  $f\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}\sharp$  as mere transitions.

In fig. 707,

(Fig. 707.)

MY "REQUIEM."

*Andante.*

we may either consider the combination  $[Gb \bar{bb} \bar{c}\sharp \bar{e}]$  as a proper harmony; namely, as  $\mathcal{C}b^7$   $[Gb \bar{bb} \bar{d}b \bar{fb}]$  or  $\mathcal{F}\sharp^7$   $[F\sharp a\sharp \bar{c}\sharp \bar{e}]$ , or as  $^{\circ}f^7$  with an elevated third  $[Gb \bar{bb} \bar{d}b \bar{e}]$ , and so on; or we may assume that the whole combination is an apparent chord; namely, that the harmony of  $\mathcal{B}b$  lies at its foundation, that the tone  $\bar{e}$  is only a secondary tone to the fundamental fifth  $\bar{f}$  which actually appears in the following measure, that  $\bar{c}\sharp$  is a fore-note to the third  $\bar{d}$ , and  $G\flat$  a fore-note from above to the fundamental fifth  $F$  in the base. Here too, as we see, the explanation that takes it for an apparent chord is clearly the simplest. (Compare fig. 705, p. 667.)

## § 397.

In fig. 708, *i*,(Fig. 708, *i*.)

HAYDN'S SYMPHONY.

(Fig. 708, *k*.)

HAYDN'S SYMPHONY.



the combination  $[c \bar{f}\sharp]$  may be considered as  $\sharp^7$ , or we may regard  $f\sharp$  as merely an approximated transition to  $\bar{g}$ . In the former case, it would be a temporary digressive modulation; in the latter, not. The latter is far more simple. In *k*, the combination  $[c \bar{d}\sharp \bar{f}\sharp]$  might also be regarded as resting on the harmony  $\sharp^7$ , were we not, with much greater simplicity, to assume that  $\bar{d}\sharp$  and  $\bar{f}\sharp$  are mere minor second transitions to  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{g}$ , and consequently not harmonic intervals.

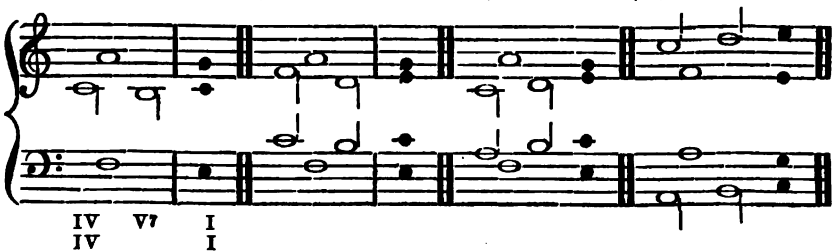
## § 398.

In like manner, instead of assuming, in fig. 709, *i*,(Fig. 709, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)



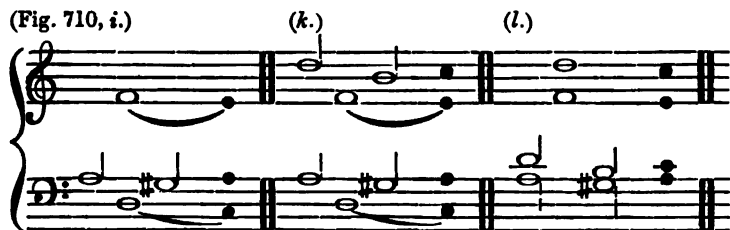
(Fig. 709 continued.)



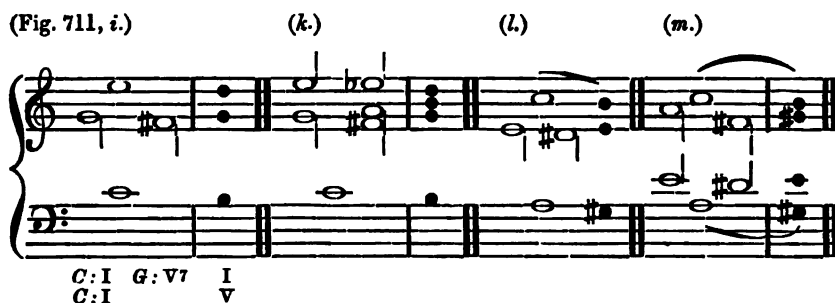
on the appearance of the tone  $b$ , that a  $\mathbb{C}^7$ -harmony occurs here with a major ninth and an omitted fundamental tone—the case may be much more simply explained by taking the tone  $b$  as a mere transition to the following  $\bar{c}$ ; in which case the harmonic progression would be merely  $IV-I$ , instead of  $IV-V^7-I$ .

In a similar manner, we may explain the tones  $b$  and  $d$  from  $k$  to  $o$ —and even the tones  $b$ ,  $\bar{d}$ , and  $\bar{a}b$  in  $p$  and  $q$ .

In this way, too, the explanation of fig. 710,  $i$ ,  $k$ , and  $l$ , may be materially simplified.

(Fig. 710,  $i$ .)

Thus, too, in fig. 711,  $i$  and  $k$ ,

(Fig. 711,  $i$ .)

$C:I \quad G:V^7 \quad I$   
 $C:I \quad \quad V$

we may suppose that, in the second half of the measure, the fundamental four-fold chord  $\mathbb{B}^7$  appears with a ninth and an omitted fundamental tone, as a transferring dominant and leading chord to  $G$ -major; but we may also very properly assume that the whole of the first measure rests on the three-fold harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , and that  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the middle part is a mere transition. This is indisputably more simple; since, regarded in this point of view, the whole of the first measure is founded on a single harmony, that of  $C:I$ . But if we were to consider  $\bar{f}\sharp$  as a constituent part of the harmony, we should not only

require two different harmonies for the explanation of this measure, but the progression would also involve a transient digressive modulation, namely :

$C:I \quad G:V^7 \quad I \quad (\S 211.)$   
 $C:V.$

Fig. 711, *l* and *m*, admit of the same explanation.

Indeed, in such cases as in fig. 712,

(Fig. 712, *i.*)                      (*k.*)                      (*l.*)                      (*m.*)

(*n.*)                      (*o.*)                      (*p.*)

the explanation of such tones as transitions has yet another ground of preference. Were we to assume, for instance, in fig. 712, *i*, that the four-fold chord  $\text{C}^7$  lies at the foundation of the combination [f b d̄ a], the base tone f would appear as the fundamental seventh; and, regarded in this point of view, the skip of the base from this f down to c, at the moment of the cadence, would not exactly correspond to the progression of a fundamental seventh. (§ 317 ((*B.*)))

So, too, in fig. 713,

(Fig. 713.)

J. S. BACH.

*Sarabande.*

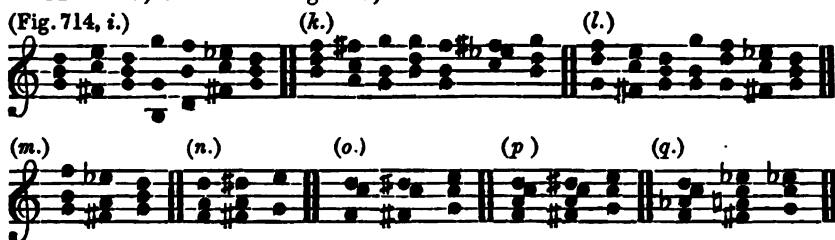
$E:I \quad c\sharp:V^7 \quad I \quad E:IV \quad V^7 \quad I \quad V \quad 7$

at the last quarter-note of the third measure, the combination [e a♯ c♯ ē g♯] may be most properly explained as an apparent chord, in which, while the  $\text{C}$ -harmony continues, the tones a♯ and c♯ are merely transient, while the base-note e remains a fundamental tone.—(From what precedes, moreover, the examples in figs. 418—421, p. 536, admit of still an additional defence and explanation; see §§ 308 and 317.)



## § 399.

Moreover, in cases like fig. 714,



it is not necessary to consider the combinations  $[\bar{f}\sharp \bar{c} \bar{e}]$ ,  $[\bar{f}\sharp \bar{c} \bar{e}b]$ ,  $[\bar{c} \bar{e}b \bar{f}\sharp]$ , &c. as leading principal four-fold chords of the digressive modulatory dominants; on the contrary, it is much simpler, in *i*, to take the  $\bar{e}$  of the second chord as a mere secondary note to the following  $\bar{d}$ , and, in like manner,  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{f}\sharp$  as secondary notes to  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{g}$ ; so that the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony still forms the basis of all the first three chords. The same may be said of the sixth chord of the same passage;—likewise of the second and sixth, at *k*, &c.

## § 400.

In most of the preceding cases, we are, furthermore, at liberty (as intimated in § 391) to regard the transition-tones here pointed out as transitions either to intervals of the *present* or of the following harmony. For, *e. g.* in fig. 715, *i*,



we may assume that the second chord rests on the preceding harmony of  $\mathbb{F}$ ; so that the tone  $\bar{b}$  will be a transition to the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the following three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ , as is indicated in *k*;—but we may also assume that the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony already forms the basis of the combination  $[\bar{f} \bar{b} \bar{a}]$ ; in which case all the transitions relate to intervals of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , during which they make their appearance as transitions, namely,  $\bar{a}$  to the fifth  $\bar{g}$ — $\bar{b}$  to the fundamental tone  $\bar{c}$ —and  $\bar{f}$  to the fundamental third  $\bar{e}$ ; as is shown in *l*.

Thus, too, we may assume, in fig. 716, *i*,



that the second chord still rests on the foregoing harmony  $\mathbb{D}^7$ ; so that, in the second harmonic combination,  $\bar{d}\sharp$  will be a transition to the  $\bar{e}$  of the following three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ , and  $f\sharp$  to  $g$ , while the tones  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{c}$  remain as before, the fifth and seventh of the harmony of  $\mathbb{D}^7$ , as is indicated at *k*;—but we may also assume, as indeed it seems most appropriate to do, that the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony is introduced already at the combination  $[f\sharp \bar{c} \bar{a} \bar{d}\sharp]$ , that  $\bar{d}\sharp$  is a substitute for the fundamental tone  $\bar{e}$ ;  $\bar{a}$  for the fundamental fifth  $\bar{g}$ ,  $f\sharp$  for  $g$ , and that  $\bar{c}$  is already the fundamental tone, as is indicated at *l*.

## § 401.

In fig. 717, *i*,

(Fig. 717, *i*.)

(*k*.)



the combination  $[\bar{d} \bar{a} \bar{b} \bar{c} \bar{f}]$  may properly be so explained, that, during the harmony of  $\mathbb{D}^7$ , which lasts through a whole measure, the tone  $\bar{a}b$  as a transition to  $\bar{g}$  of the following harmony, occurs on the harmonic degree  $\bar{a}$ ;—accordingly, there is not the least necessity for regarding the combination in the second half of the measure as a four-fold chord with a minor fifth. In *k*, the tones  $\bar{a}b$  and  $\bar{c}$  are, in like manner, transition-tones.

Though, in fig. 718, *i*,

(Fig. 718, *i*.) (*k*.) (*l*.) (*m*.) (*n*.) (*o*.) (*p*.)



we see the harmonies  $\mathbb{F}$  and  $\mathbb{C}$  succeed each other without transition-tones, still we may, instead of this, introduce, during the  $\mathbb{F}$ -harmony, the tone  $\bar{a}b$  as a transition to  $\bar{g}$  of the following harmony, as in *k*—or the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  as a transition to  $\bar{g}$ , as in *l*—or both together, as in *m*—or we may let these transitions remain during the entire continuance of the  $\mathbb{F}$ -harmony (§ 386), as in *n* or *o*; and thus, merely by means of transitions on the harmonic degrees, combinations are produced, which are precisely similar to those adduced in § 89, &c. fig. 123, *o*, *p*, *q*, p. 208.—(Compare figs. 705 and 707, pp. 667 and 668.)

And when, again, the tone  $\bar{e}b$  as a minor second approximated transition from above to the fundamental fifth of the following harmony, is added to the chord in question, besides the before-mentioned transitions on harmonic

degrees, as in fig. 718, *p*, p. 673, we see chords arise which are particularly similar to those in [§ 89 and] § 91 fig. 123, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, p. 208, and figs. 128 and 129, pp. 210 and 211.

The examples in fig. 719, *i—p*,



are of the same species as those in fig. 718.

#### § 402.

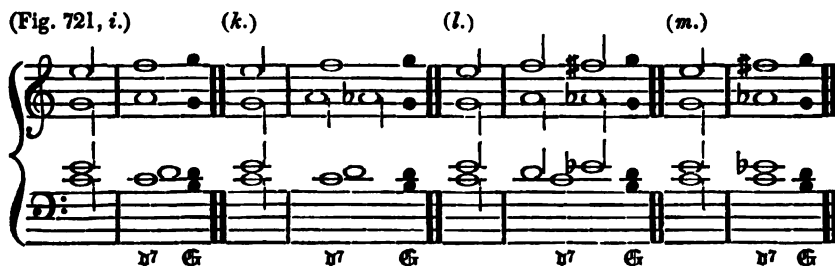
So, too, instead of letting the harmonies  $\text{F}^\sharp-\text{C}$  succeed each other so simply as they do in fig. 720, *i*,



we may introduce, during the first harmony, the tone  $\text{ab}$  as a chromatic transition on the harmonic degree  $\text{a}$ , as in *k*.—Or, in like manner, we may introduce  $\text{f}^\sharp$  as a transition before  $\text{g}$ , and, at the same time  $\text{d}^\sharp$  before  $\text{e}$ , as in *l*;—and, if we give all these transitions the duration of the whole measure, as in *m*, we again have results similar to those in the preceding section.

#### § 403.

In like manner, instead of letting the harmonies  $\text{D}^7-\text{G}$  succeed each other, so simply as in fig. 721, *i*,



we may introduce  $\text{ab}$  as a transition, as in *k*—and may also, at the same time, introduce  $\text{f}^\sharp$  before  $\text{g}$ , and  $\text{eb}$  before  $\text{d}$ , as in *l*;—and we may allow such combinations to continue through the whole duration of the  $\text{D}^7$ -harmony, as in *m*.

It will be clearly seen that in this way, again, results are produced like those of the two preceding sections. The example in the minor key which occurs in fig. 722, *i-m*.



is of the same character as the preceding one in the major key.

---

§ 404.

In the foregoing paragraphs, we have seen how harmonic combinations of the kind in question can be explained by transition-tones chromatically approximated to intervals of the following harmony. In many cases, however, they may be explained even in a *still simpler* manner, by transitions to intervals of the *present* harmony: for, in fig. 723, *i*, for example,



we may very properly assume that the  $\mathbb{C}\flat$ -harmony forms the basis throughout, and that, during the same, the upper part gives, in passing, the tone  $\overline{f\sharp}$  as a returning transition (§ 414) to the fundamental tone  $\overline{g}$ , while the middle part gives  $\overline{c}$  as a similar transition to the fundamental third  $\overline{b}$ , and the base in like manner the transition  $\overline{a\flat}$ . In like manner, we may regard the passage in *k* as resting entirely on the harmony  $\mathbb{C}\flat$ , and those in *l* and *m* on the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ .

---

§ 405.

Fig. 724, *i*, also,



may, in like manner, be regarded as based throughout on the harmony  $\mathbb{A}$ ; so, too, the similar passage in *k*, or rather in *l*, may be viewed as resting entirely on the major three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ —in which case the notation  $[\overline{a\flat} \overline{c} \overline{d\sharp} \overline{f\sharp}]$  is more accurate than  $[\overline{a\flat} \overline{c} \overline{e\flat} \overline{f\sharp}]$ . (Compare, moreover, § 95.)

So, again, in fig. 725,

(Fig. 725.)



(Compare fig. 127.)

in the second measure, the  $f\sharp$  in the base part may be regarded either as the fundamental tone, or as a mere transition to the fundamental seventh,  $e$ . And still more! what is to hinder us from assuming that the fundamental harmony is  $e$  throughout the entire duration of the second measure, that  $a\sharp$  is only a transition to the following  $b$ ,  $c$  to the following  $b$ , and  $f\sharp$  to the following fundamental tone  $e$ ?

#### § 406.

The preceding views will perhaps suggest to some the idea, that if the chords in question may be explained in this way as mere transitions, it was *unnecessary* to assume in §§ 89 to 95 a species of transformation under the names of the elevation of the third and the depression of the fifth. But such is by no means the case. For, the explanation of such combinations as transitions is not applicable in *all cases*: e. g. it is not so in fig. 726:

(Fig. 726.)



Here the tone  $d\sharp$  cannot be regarded as a transition-tone, for as such it must annex itself to a following principal note, only a major or minor degree higher or lower than itself; but no such note here follows  $d\sharp$ , and consequently it cannot be a transition, but must constitute an harmonic interval, and that either the fundamental third of the harmony  $\sharp\sharp^7$ —or an arbitrarily elevated fundamental third of the four-fold chord  $^o\sharp^7$  with a minor fifth. (Compare remark on § 95.)

#### (C.) SOFTENING EFFECT OF EQUIVOCALNESS.

#### § 407.

After the many observations we have made on the softening effect of different kinds of equivocalness, it may well be supposed beforehand that the kind of equivocalness here treated will also exhibit within its sphere a similar effect. For, it is perceived, as a matter of fact, that many a combination of tones which

we might otherwise expect would be repulsive to the ear, produces a much more agreeable effect than it otherwise might do; because, if we regard it as consisting exclusively of harmonic tones, it represents a chord that does not sound harshly in itself; or, in other words, because it forms an apparent chord (§§ 98 and 389), which, viewed as a real chord, does not belong to the class of harsh-sounding chords.

Thus, *e.g.* in the annexed passage (in which, during the  $\text{C}\sharp^7$ -harmony which lies throughout at the foundation of the whole measure, the tone  $\bar{\text{a}}\sharp$ ,



foreign to this harmony, occupies for a while the place of the harmonic tone  $\bar{\text{b}}$ , while  $\bar{\text{e}}$  occupies the place of the seventh,  $\bar{\text{f}}$ , and  $\bar{\text{c}}\sharp$  that of the fifth,  $\bar{\text{d}}$ , the simultaneous sounding of *three* tones not pertaining to the harmony is still not disagreeable to the ear, chiefly because this combination of tones forms an apparent chord (§ 396), namely,  $[\text{g } \bar{\text{c}}\sharp \bar{\text{e}} \bar{\text{a}}\sharp]$ , apparently the chord  $\text{F}\sharp^7$  (with a ninth placed in the base and the fundamental tone omitted), which in itself is any thing but inharmonious (§ 87); on which account, these transitions do not sound in the least degree harsh, even though we repeat the harmonic tone  $\text{g}$  together with the tones foreign to the harmony, which otherwise is wont to produce a more harsh effect (§ 363).

The same may be said of the apparent chord  $[\text{Gb } \text{bb } \bar{\text{c}}\sharp \bar{\text{e}}]$  in fig. 727, (Fig. 727.)

MY "REQUIEM."

*Andante.*

It may even be maintained, of fig. 728,

(Fig. 728.)

MY "TE DEUM."

that the combination  $[f\sharp \bar{c} \bar{b} \bar{a}]$ , which looks strange enough to the eye, is received by the ear without the slightest antipathy, only because, regarded as  $[f\sharp \bar{b} \bar{d}\sharp \bar{a}]$  or  $[g\bar{b} \bar{c} \bar{b} \bar{b}b]$ , it would be a very common fundamental four-fold chord,  $\text{B}\flat^7$  or  $\text{C}\flat^7$ .

§ 408.

In fig. 729, on the contrary,  
(Fig. 729.)



the entire second measure seems very harsh, because we cannot suppose a chord in either of the combinations  $[b \bar{a} \bar{c}]$  or  $[c \bar{g} \bar{b}]$  that occur therein; for, if we choose to regard the former as a  $\text{B}\flat^7$ -harmony with a minor ninth and the fundamental tone retained, and the latter as a major four-fold chord of  $\text{C}\flat^7$ , nothing would be gained thereby, inasmuch as both these harmonies, as we have long since observed, would sound harshly in themselves.

In fig. 730,  
(Fig. 730.)



it is more natural to assume, that, in the combination  $[a\sharp \bar{e} \bar{g} \bar{c}]$ ,  $\bar{c}$  is only a secondary tone to  $\bar{b}$  of the following chord of  $\text{E}$ , just as  $a\sharp$  is only a secondary tone to the following tone  $b$ —than to regard the combination as  $\text{C}\flat^7$  with an elevated third; because, according to this last explanation, the elevated third  $a\sharp$  of the harmony would stand below its proper fifth  $\bar{c}$ , a position which, in such a chord, is both unusual and unnatural (§ 91, *B*). Still, although the combination in question may very properly be thus regarded as a mere apparent chord (§ 98), still, as such, it is always of rather indifferent effect; because, if we were to consider it as a real chord, it would be a very harsh-sounding chord in itself.

Moreover, in the frequently cited fig. 613, p. 618, the ear, at the beginning of the third measure, cannot perceive even an apparent chord in the combination  $[B \bar{g} \bar{c}\sharp \bar{a}]$ , so that this chord also sounds, to say the least, not very pleasantly.

## DIVISION V.

TRANSITION-TONES CONSIDERED IN THEIR RELATIONS TO THE  
PRECEDING NOTE.

## § 409.

Hitherto we have every where regarded transition-tones only with reference to the *following* principal note, as though a secondary note stood in no relation whatever to any thing but the following principal tone.

We shall find, however, that a good deal depends on the *position of the transition-note with respect to the tone immediately preceding it*, although the relation be only an *inferior* or *secondary* one.

It is now time to investigate this relation and to investigate it attentively, since very extensive applications result therefrom.

If we examine into the relation which a secondary note bears to the one that immediately precedes it, and ascertain the position of such preceding note, as compared with that of the transition-tone, and particularly if we inquire what intervals the two form with each other, we find that this relation is of very different kinds. Many transition-tones stand in no relationship whatever to any preceding tone, many in a distant one, others in a nearer, and others again are one and the same with the preceding.

We will investigate them in the order here suggested.

## (A.) COMMENCING TRANSITION-TONES.

## § 410.

We find, among the transition-tones already treated, some which, properly speaking, *are not preceded by another tone*, and which, accordingly *do not stand in any connexion with a preceding tone*; namely, where a part *makes its first commencement with a transition-note*; as, e. g. in fig. 731,

(Fig. 731.)



where the transition-tone  $d\sharp$  is the first tone sounded by the upper part. Transition-tones of this sort may be termed *initial* or *commencing transitions*.

As, in such a case, there is of course no secondary connexion with a preceding note, so, on that very account, the relation which the transition-tone bears *solely* and *exclusively* to the following note is so much the more intimate.

This particularly intimate and exclusive relation is consequently also a principal cause why the *chromatic approximation of transition-tones to their*



*principal note* is especially appropriate to such transitions; inasmuch as such an approximation of the secondary tone promotes its close adherence to the principal tone. We have thus an explanation of the fact, that, in the passage just cited, in fig. 731, the chromatically approximated fore-note  $\bar{d}\sharp$  is much more natural and appropriate than would be the tone  $\bar{d}$  belonging to the scale.

---

§ 411.

Those transition-tones with which a part re-commences or continues on, after a longer or a shorter rest, or after a pause, though not indeed exactly like those transition-tones with which a part at first makes its commencement, still are in the most essential points quite similar. Such, for example, are the tones  $\bar{b}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{d}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{d}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{f}\times$ ,  $\bar{a}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , in fig. 732 :

(Fig. 732.)



Each of these tones, if not the first of an entire series, still is a tone with which a heretofore unbroken series re-commences.

---

(B.) TRANSITIONS OCCURRING BY SKIPS.

§ 412.

Other transitions, again, although not the first of a series, still hold a connexion with the preceding tone, only *by skips*. Of this kind are the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{a}\sharp$ , and  $\bar{f}\times$ , in fig. 733 :

(Fig. 733.)



and the tones  $\bar{a}\sharp$  and  $\bar{b}\sharp$ — $\bar{d}\sharp$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , in fig. 734 :

(Fig. 734.)



(The explanation of the tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  which occurs in the second measure, as well of the  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the fourth measure, may be seen in § 446.) We may distinguish this sort of fore-notes by the name *skipping fore-notes* or *skipping transitions*.

The chromatic approximation of transition-tones to their principal note is particularly appropriate to those occurring by skips, in like manner and for the same reason as in the case of initial transitions; since here also, an uninterrupted connexion with what precedes is not aimed at, but only a close annexation of the transition-tone to its principal note.

In fact, many secondary notes occurring by skips would sound far from agreeable, were we to take them without such approximation, and in the form belonging to the scale. Let an attempt be made, for instance, to substitute  $\bar{a}$  for  $\bar{a}\sharp$  and  $\bar{b}$  for  $\bar{b}\sharp$  in the above-cited fig. 734. (Compare § 372).

(C.) TRANSITIONS OCCURRING BY SINGLE DEGREES.

§ 413.

Other transitions *do not occur by skips*, but are connected with the preceding tone at the distance of only one degree. These transitions, which do not proceed by skips, are of two different kinds.

(1.) *Intermediate Notes.*

We observe, namely, that some precisely *fill up the space between one principal note and another*; so that the part, instead of proceeding by a skip from one of these tones to the other, strikes, in passing, the tone of the degree that lies between them; as is done, *e. g.* in fig. 735, i,



by the degrees of the scale (*diatonically*); and, in fig. 736,



by small degrees (*chromatically*, § XVII, Remark). Transitions of this kind may be called, if you please, as they have already been, *intermediate notes*.

As transitions of this kind are connected with the preceding tone at the distance of a single degree, and hence are more closely united and related to the same, whereby they serve to form an uninterrupted series of notes, without

any skip or omission of intermediate notes; it is, as a general rule, more natural for such intermediate transition-tones to appear as they stand in the scale, and not chromatically approximated; although these also, in certain cases, readily yield and adapt themselves to chromatic approximation.

This depends chiefly on whether the composer actually regards the secondary note as a connecting note between two tones, and uses it as a proper intermediate tone, —or whether he intends it rather as a secondary tone having relation merely to its following principal note. If, for example, he designs to produce, in *A*-major, an uninterrupted series of tones between the notes  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ,  $\bar{e}$  of the harmony of  $\mathbb{A}$ ,—and in such a manner that each secondary tone shall not only have a connection with its principal, but that every note of the series from  $\bar{a}$  up to  $\bar{e}$  shall be as closely connected with its preceding as with its following note—then the intermediate notes  $\bar{b}\natural$  and  $\bar{d}\natural$  belonging to the scale will be better adapted to this end than the foreign transitions  $\bar{b}\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}\sharp$ . Compare the above fig. 735 *i* with *k*. For, from the very fact that such foreign approximated transitions are quite intimately and as it were exclusively united to their principal note, they are separated so much the more from the preceding note, and the series of tones from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , as represented in *k*, does not constitute an uninterrupted chain. The case in fig. 735 *k*, however, or in fig. 732, p. 680, is different from that in fig. 735 *i*. Here, the intention of the composer was not so much an unbroken series, not a so-called *run* from  $\bar{a}$  up to  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{a}$ ; but he wished only to strike the intervals of the chord of  $\mathbb{A}$  in succession from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{a}$ , and to annex to each of these intervals a secondary note having reference to it alone; and, for this purpose, a secondary note adhering as closely and as intimately as possible to its principal, was the best adapted, and preferable to the tones  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{d}$  belonging to the scale.

#### § 414.

#### (2.) *Returning Secondary Tones.*

Another species of transition-tones, moving by single degrees, but not immediately, occurs when a part proceeds from a principal to an immediately adjacent secondary note, and from this immediately *returns to the preceding principal note*; as, e. g. in fig. 737,

(Fig. 737.)



the two tones  $\bar{b}$  in the first measure, and the two tones  $\bar{d}$  in the second, as also the tones  $\bar{d}$  and  $\bar{b}$  in the third; which are all neither transitions occurring by skips, nor intermediate notes, but are secondary notes proceeding from and returning to one and the same principal note.

Transitions of this sort resemble the intermediate notes mentioned in the preceding section, in the fact that they have also a connection with another note preceding them at the distance of one degree; but they differ from them in the circumstance that transitions of the species now under consideration do not stand midway between the preceding and the following note; on the contrary, the note which precedes and that which follows the secondary tone are one and the same; the transition stands, as regards its pitch, not between both, but beside both, and, proceeding from a given note, returns to it again.

In order to have a specific name for transitions of this kind, we may call them *returning transitions*; since these transitions consist in the fact that the part removes for a while from the principal tone, but immediately after returns to the same.

It will naturally be observed here, in passing, that a *shake*, among other cases, as well as the so-called *mordent*, is nothing more than a repeated interchange of a principal note with such a continually-returning heavy or light secondary note.

---

(D.) PREPARED TRANSITIONS.

§ 415.

There are again other transitions which occur neither by skips nor by single degrees, which are neither more than one degree nor just one major or minor degree from the preceding note, but which are one and the same with the preceding tone (that forms a constituent part of the harmony: *e. g.* in fig. 738,



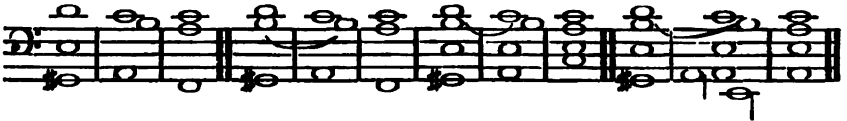
at the beginning of the second measure, the tone  $\bar{c}$  is foreign to the harmony; but the harmonic note immediately preceding this foreign tone  $\bar{c}$  was likewise  $\bar{c}$ . So, too, at the end of the second measure, the tone  $\bar{f}$  is an harmonic tone; but immediately afterwards, at the beginning of the following measure, this same  $\bar{f}$  appears as a foreign, secondary tone to  $\bar{e}$ .

In such cases, therefore, the tone foreign to the harmony, immediately before being used as a secondary tone, is heard as an harmonic interval, and the ear has thus become, so to speak, *prepared* for it, by having already heard it immediately before as an harmonic tone. (Compare § 104.)

It will readily be perceived, that transitions of this kind have a yet closer relation to the tone preceding them, than those of any kind hitherto mentioned; and a reason is found in this very close relation why transitions of this kind sound much more smoothly to the ear than others. For, in consequence of the tone having been heard immediately before as an harmonic interval, the ear has

already become accustomed to this tone [under agreeable circumstances], and is, as it were, *prepared* for it; and thus the natural harshness which it would otherwise have, by being continued on into a less agreeable combination of tones, is materially mitigated. And hence it occurs that secondary tones which would otherwise sound very harshly, seem less offensive to the ear when the latter has already been prepared for them. Compare fig. 739 *i*,

(Fig. 739, *i*.) (k.)



where the tone *b*, foreign to the harmony, occurs unprepared, with *k*, where it occurs after preparation; also the tone  $\bar{g}$ , in fig. 740 *i*, with the same tone in *k*.

(Fig. 740, *i*.) (k.)



Likewise, in fig. 741 *i*,

(Fig. 741, *i*.) F T (k.)



(Fig. 741, *i*.) (m.)



in the second measure, the tone  $\bar{g}$ , which is foreign to the harmony, appears quite strangely and unexpectedly, and is even disagreeable to the ear; this harshness, however, is softened when the same tone occurs prepared, as in *k*, where the tone  $\bar{g}$ , which is foreign to the harmony in the second measure, and hence is dissonant, has already occurred in the preceding measure as an harmonic tone, namely, as fundamental note to the harmony  $\text{C}\sharp$ .

#### § 416.

Secondary tones of the kind here treated may be termed (and that too essentially in accordance with the ordinary use of language) *prepared transitions*.

But as this whole manner of introducing secondary tones as *prepared* is so exceedingly fruitful in its applications, scientific language has assigned to it a peculiar designation. Namely, it is customary to designate such prepared transition-tones by the peculiar term *suspensions* or *retardations*.\* We will treat this part of the doctrine of transitions somewhat more in detail.

## DIVISION VI.

### SUSPENSIONS.

#### (A.) GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

##### (1.) *Idea of Suspension and Preparation.*

###### § 417.

According to what has been said in §§ 415 and 416, a *suspension* is nothing else than a *prepared transition*, or, in other words, a *tone prefixed to an harmonic interval and foreign to the harmony, which [tone] has already been heard as an harmonic interval during the preceding harmony.*

It is not customary, however, to apply the term *suspension* to every prepared transition-tone, but only to those of a *somewhat long duration*. Thus, e. g. in fig. 738, p. 683 (compare § 415), the tone  $\bar{c}$  may properly be called a suspension; but this name will hardly be applied to the short  $\bar{f}$  of the following measure, that note being simply termed a transition or changing note.

##### (2.) *Manner in which the Preparation of Suspensions is effected.*

###### § 418.

We have already (in § 108 and what follows) seen, in general, how the preparation of a tone is effected, and we can here refer to what was said in that connection; for the preparation of suspensions is accomplished in the same manner as that of harmonic tones; namely, when it is to be perfect: (a.) in the same pitch; (b.) in the same part; (c.) connected by a tie; (d.) continued sufficiently long; (e) by an harmonic interval; and (f.) on a light part of the measure; all of which is exactly adhered to in fig. 742, i.:

(Fig. 742, i.)



(Fig. 742, k.)



\* Only one word—*Vorhalte*—occurs here in the original. (Compare § 421.) Ed.

## § 419.

(a.) The preparatory note must have been situated in *the same pitch or octave* in which the dissonant note occurs, as in the above fig. 741 *k*, p. 684, and 742 *i*, p. 685. A preparation in which this is not the case, can only be called a very imperfect preparation; as, *e. g.* in fig. 742 *k*, p. 685, where the dissonant  $\bar{\bar{c}}$  is prepared, not in the same situation, not in the *thrice*-marked, but in the *twice*-marked octave; and where, consequently, the note that has preceded is not the self-same  $\bar{\bar{c}}$  which is afterwards heard as a transition, but another,  $\bar{c}$ .

---

## § 420.

(b.) The preparation is effected, as from the nature of suspension it evidently must be, *by the same part*; or, in other words, the preparatory note must have stood in the same part which is to give the dissonance on the introduction of the following harmony. A preparation in which the preparatory note is given by another part, as, *e. g.* in fig. 742 *m*, p. 685, where, before  $\bar{c}$  is heard in the middle part as a tone foreign to the harmony, the very same  $\bar{c}$  is heard already in the upper part, but yet not in that part by which it is afterwards given as a tone foreign to the harmony—such a preparation, we say, would certainly be at least less perfect than that in *i*.

---

## § 421.

(c.) A preparation exhibits its mitigating effect in its full extent only when the dissonant tone is not struck anew at the instant when it becomes dissonant, that is to say, at the moment when the harmony occurs to which it is foreign (§ 362),—but, on the contrary, is only *continued*, or, as it is usually expressed, is *tied* to the preparatory tone, as in the preceding fig. 742 *i*, p. 685.

A tone foreign to the harmony, and introduced in such a way, appears to be as it were *only retarded* and continued, while the other tones have vanished and already given place to the following harmonic combination; like a straggling soldier who still remains, while the corps of tones to which he belonged have marched off, and the field is already occupied by another force. Such tied suspensions are also called, on account of their appearing in the way above-mentioned as a kind of lingering remnant of a preceding combination, *retardations* (this retarding, however, is not to be confounded with the *ritardando* of rhythmical movement). The term *suspension* (*Vorhalt*) itself seems also to have been intended as nearly synonymous with *retardation* (*Aufhalt*); since the suspension is properly rather a *holding back* than a *holding before*. Suspensions executed in this tied manner are also frequently termed *binds* or *ligatures* (*concatenazioni*). Compare § 111 and § 227.

## § 422.

To what a degree this *binding mitigates the harshness of a note foreign to the harmony*, may easily be observed, by performing, *e. g.* the passage in fig. 740 *k*, p. 684, as if the two ties were not there, and, hence, by striking the  $\bar{g}q$  twice; by which means this tone foreign to the harmony sounds much more harshly in conjunction with the tone  $G\sharp$ , than when performed as tied to the preceding  $\bar{g}$  which appears as the fifth of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ .—Similar will be the result of a similar treatment of the preceding examples in fig. 739 *k*, p. 684, and 742 *i*, p. 685, &c.

But that even an untied preparation softens considerably the harshness of a tone foreign to the harmony, is evident from the fact that, in fig. 740 *k*, p. 684, even if the ties are omitted, the passage sounds much less harshly than in *i*, where the  $\bar{g}q$  appears entirely without preparation.

## § 423.

(*d.*) *Preparation*, in order to produce its full effect, *must also be of sufficient continuance*, the preparatory tone must have *already lasted sufficiently long*.—And hence it is generally assumed that the preparation should be just as long as the dissonance; as, *e. g.* is the case in the foregoing fig. 741 *k*, p. 684.

The fact, moreover, that even very short preparatory tones mitigate the harshness attendant on striking a tone foreign to the harmony, is proved by fig. 741 *l*, p. 684 (as well as by other examples), where the tone  $\bar{g}$  of the upper part in the second measure, although prepared only by a brief sixteenth-note, still does not give such a harshness to the harmony as it would if even this short preparation were absent, as is the case in fig. 741 *i* or *m*, p. 684.

## § 424.

(*e.*) *The preparatory note*, moreover, is always an interval of the foregoing harmony, as it evidently must be, both from the nature of the case and from the definition of a suspension as given above in § 417, and thus is *always a genuine harmonic note*. A tone which is foreign to the harmony, and which has not been previously heard as an harmonic tone, would not be prepared at all, and, consequently, would not be a suspension.

This harmonic preparatory tone may, moreover, at one time be a so-called consonance, and at another a dissonance (and accordingly in this latter case a fundamental seventh). In fig. 743,

(Fig. 743.)



the note of preparation in the first measure, namely *a*, is the fundamental tone



of the harmony  $\mathfrak{A}$ ; in the following measure, the fifth of the harmony  $\mathfrak{C}$  is the preparatory tone of the suspension which occurs in the next measure still; in the third measure, the third of the harmony  $\mathfrak{A}$ , namely  $\bar{c}$ , serves as a preparation of the suspension occurring in the fourth measure:—thus, all these suspensions are prepared by consonances.—In fig. 744, on the contrary,



the preparatory tone  $\bar{f}$  is the fundamental seventh of the principal four-fold chord  $\mathfrak{C}^7$ , and accordingly a dissonance.

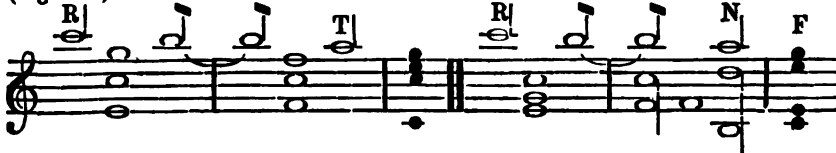
In the last case, where the preparatory tone  $\bar{f}$  is *an interval having a tendency to a particular progression* (§ 313), namely, to descend, on the introduction of the harmony  $\mathfrak{C}$ , to the tone  $\bar{e}$ , while at the same time this progression is temporarily delayed, the suspension appears as *a retardation of the resolution of the seventh*. (Compare § 314, C.)

It is perceived, that inasmuch as the ear, on hearing the seventh,  $\bar{f}$ , in the first measure of the example quoted, naturally expects the descent of this tone to  $\bar{e}$ , while this expectation fails of being satisfied on the introduction of the harmony  $\mathfrak{C}$ , such satisfactory resolution being still deferred,—I say, it is perceived, that such a postponement of the expected progression, increasing as it does the intensity of the desire for the anticipated result, ultimately enhances the satisfaction which is felt on its arrival.

#### § 425.

Though, according to what has already been said, a suspension can properly appear only as prepared by a genuinely harmonic tone, still we may in a manner, though indeed in a qualified sense, regard that also as a tone of suspension which appears as a secondary tone to an interval of a harmony, and has already been heard likewise as a secondary tone during the existence of the foregoing harmony; as, for example, in fig. 745,

(Fig. 745.)



where we may regard the transition-tone  $\bar{b}$ , in the first measure, as being, in a qualified sense, a preparation of the tone  $\bar{b}$  in the second measure; and, accordingly, the tone  $\bar{b}$ , in the second measure, would be, in a qualified sense, a tone of suspension.

So, likewise, in the first measure of fig. 746,

(Fig. 746.)



the tone  $g\sharp$ , which is foreign to the harmony, occurs as a preparation of the  $g\sharp$  which constitutes a suspension in the second measure.

In the third measure of fig. 747 also,

(Fig. 747.)



we may consider the second half of the syncopated tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  as being, in an improper sense, a suspension, and the first half of the syncopation as being, in the same way, a preparation.—Fig. 748 also,

(Fig. 748.)



admits of being explained in the same manner.

In all cases, however, tones of this kind, which are foreign to the harmony, and whose tones of preparation were themselves also foreign to the harmony, are only prepared in a *limited and improper sense*, and, therefore, can *only in an improper sense be called suspensions*, since the predicate *suspension* properly applies only to those transition-tones which are prepared by *genuine harmonic tones*.

#### § 426

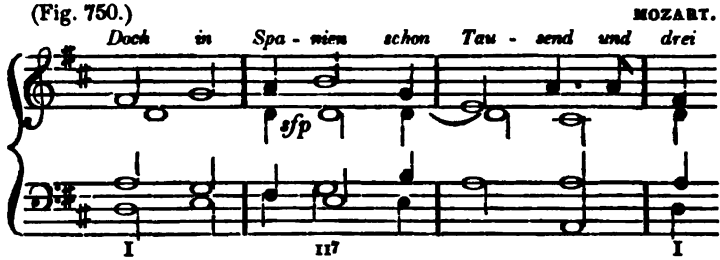
Our theorists have seen fit to lay down the strange principle, that dissonances (suspensions) must *have previously existed* "as consonances."

Now examples are of constant occurrence which show *the absolute falseness* of this common and universally accredited rule. One example of this kind is found in fig. 744, p. 688. No one has thought of deeming this passage faulty. The same is true also of the second and third measures of figs. 749 and 750,

(Fig. 749.)



(Fig. 750.)



and also of the following example, in which the suspension  $\bar{f}$  is prepared by the fundamental seventh of the harmony  $g^7$ .



(Compare remark on § 107.)

But, not satisfied with the above-mentioned palpable error, the musical literati go still farther, and determine even *not to recognize all consonances* as fit for the preparation of such a dissonance. Koch\*, for example, teaches thus: "The preparation of every dissonance can be effected by means of all the consonances (*except the fourth*)." But what would this learned author say to the extremely common passage found in fig. 751,

(Fig. 751.)



a passage never disapproved even by himself, nor by any other theorist, nor by anybody else of sound musical ears? and yet, in this passage, the tone  $\bar{c}$ , which is foreign to the harmony  $\mathcal{E}$ , is prepared by the tone  $\bar{c}$ , as the fourth of the base tone  $g$ !

I cannot imagine what could have suggested to this writer so strange an idea!

It is perceived here again, how strikingly the rules fabricated by theorists contradict what is indisputably recognised in practice, and how, notwithstanding this, one theorist repeats the rule after another, and, thoughtlessly, still continues to write: "every preparation must be made by a consonance!"—(Compare remark on § 99.)

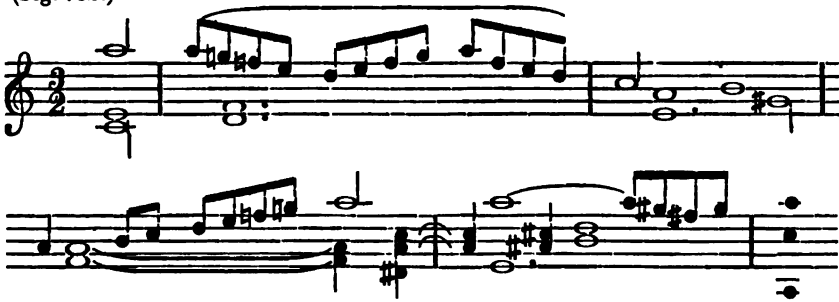
\* In his *Handbuch der Harmonie*, p. 221.

## § 427.

(*f*.) The preparation of a tone foreign to the harmony is, like that of the seventh (§ 114), always most satisfactory when it is effected on a *lighter part of the measure* than that on which the tone is struck as one foreign to the harmony, so that the latter takes place on a *more heavy part of the measure*, and thus, so far as it occurs under the *tye* (§ 421), it appears as a syncopation (§ XCVIII), as has already been observed in the examples above quoted.

The reverse is far less usual, though not entirely without example. See, for instance, fig. 752:

(Fig. 752.)



Moreover, in fig. 753, *i* and *k*,

(Fig. 753, *i*.)

VOGLER'S TRICHORD.

(k.)



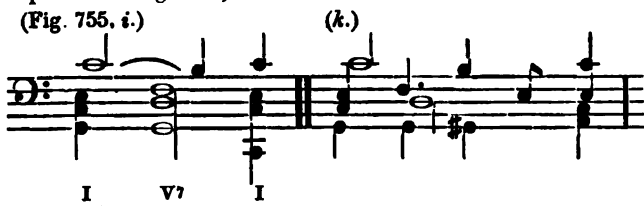
the second half of the half-note  $\bar{b}$  is a suspension of  $\bar{a}$ ; and both the second part of the measure, on which the tone  $\bar{b}$  occurs as a suspension, and the third, on which the principal tone  $\bar{a}$  appears, are alike unaccented parts of the measure (§ LXVI). Fig. 754 is of a similar character (as is also the 13th measure of fig. 233, p. 402).

(Fig. 754, *i*.)

(k.)



The suspension in fig. 755,  
(Fig. 755, i.)



being the second half of the tone  $\bar{c}$ , is decidedly lighter than its following principal tone  $b$ : and so also in fig. 756,  
(Fig. 756, i.)



the suspension (namely, the second half of the half-note  $\bar{c}$ ) is lighter than the following harmonic principal tone  $\bar{b}$ .

#### § 428.

The reason why tones of suspension usually occur on the more heavy parts of the measure is very unsatisfactorily given by some teachers, and not at all by others. It seems to me that the answer to such a question most easily suggests itself, if we reverse the proposition and state the matter thus: Why are only those inharmonic tones usually prepared which occur on the heavy part of the measure (accented transition-tones)? For the very good reason that these heavy transition-tones fall more harshly upon the ear than those that are light (as we have already observed in § 354), and consequently stand most in need of the softening effect of preparation. Hence, it is natural that preparation should oftener be requisite in the case of such tones, and, accordingly, be more characteristic of them than it is of unaccented transition-tones. Hence, our ear becomes more accustomed to hear *heavy* [accented] transition-tones prepared, and less accustomed to hear *light* [unaccented] ones prepared; so that the occurrence of a prepared *light* transition-tone, of a suspension on a *light* part of the measure, would ordinarily impress it as something quite unusual.

Still an additional reason why suspensions which are struck on a light part of the measure appear rather strange to the ear, may lie in the following circumstance. Since the moment at which a prepared transition-tone [suspension] enters its relation as a tone foreign to the harmony is always the moment at which a new harmony appears, as, for example, in figs. 752—756, p. 691 and above, it follows that the appearance of a new harmony is always connected with the introduction of a suspended note on a light part of the measure.

Now, if the same harmony still continues on in the following light part of the measure where the suspension resolves itself, as is the case in figs. 752, 753 *i*, and 754 *i*, p. 691, so that this harmony which is introduced on a light part of the measure continues longer than the foregoing heavy part of the measure; or if the harmony, whose introduction on a light part of the measure is accompanied by the striking of the dissonance, continues on in the following heavy part of the measure, as in figs. 755 *i*, and 756 *i*, p. 692, so that an harmonic step is made on a light part of the measure, while none is made on the following heavy part; the result is, that, in such a distribution of harmonic steps, a kind of rhythmical inversion takes place in the first case (§ XCIV and what follows), while a syncopation occurs in the second case (§ XVI and what follows). All this may contribute to render suspensions of such a class somewhat more strange and unusual in their effect than are those which occur on a heavy part of the measure. This conjecture, moreover, is somewhat strengthened by the fact, that, in figs. 753 *k*, 754 *k*, 755 *k*, and 756 *k*, where harmonic steps are equally distributed to all the different parts of the measure, the suspensions, even where they occur on the light parts of the measure, appear less foreign and unnatural than they do in figs. 753 *i*, 754 *i*, 755 *i*, and 756 *i*.

---

§ 429.

Theorists have, moreover, laid it down as a rule, that a preparation must always occur *on a light part of the measure*; that the note which serves as a preparation must always stand on a lighter portion of the measure than does the suspension itself! This rule again is drawn from the partially true observation, that suspensions are usually accented notes, or, in other words, that transition-tones are most frequently prepared when they occur on the rhythmically heavy portions of the measure. But that such a rule is not universally true, is clearly shown by many of the before-mentioned examples.

In fig. 757, also,

(Fig. 757.)



the preparatory tone  $\bar{c}$  occurs on the heaviest portion of the measure—a portion of the measure which is more heavy than the second half of it on which the tone  $\bar{c}$  occurs as a suspension; and hence, according to the rule, as usually stated by authors, this preparation would be faulty. (Compare remark on § 99.)

---

(B.) DIFFERENT WAYS IN WHICH SUSPENSIONS MAY OCCUR.

§ 430.

After having defined the nature of a suspension, it is scarcely necessary to say anything farther as to *what suspensions may be prefixed to an harmonic*

*interval*; or as to the *equivocalness* which arises from the prefixing of suspension-tones, or as to the different *ways in which suspensions may occur*, &c. For, inasmuch as suspensions are nothing else than prepared *transition-tones*, it follows that every thing which has been said of transition-tones in general is for the most part true of suspensions in particular, and may easily be applied to them. Hence, there is but little left for us to say in particular of suspensions.

In presenting the little we have to say on this subject, we will adopt the same order that was observed in our treatment of transition-tones in general (from § 345 to § 409).

If we inquire into the different ways in which suspension-tones may be introduced, as we did in relation to transition-tones generally (§ 346, &c.), we shall find, in the first place, that

(1.) The tone of suspension can properly in all cases be only a secondary tone to an interval of that harmony during whose continuance it occurs as a suspension, and, hence, always a substituted tone (§ 347), a substituted interval, a substituted dissonance. It is not unusual to regard these latter designations as exclusively applicable to *suspensions* (see the place above referred to); and, according to this usage of language, the expressions *suspension* and *substituted interval* or *substituted dissonance* are entirely synonymous.

It may conveniently be observed here, that many music-teachers call suspension-tones *accidental dissonances*, because they are, as it were, accidental substitutes for an harmonic interval, and hence are *not essential* to the fundamental harmony, by way of contradistinction from the proper sevenths, which they term *essential dissonances*. (See § 101, at the end.)

Notwithstanding the fact, however, that suspensions are always secondary tones to the present harmony, *still a part may dwell upon the tone of suspension quite up to the time of the following harmony*. This subject will be more particularly treated in the following Division VII, No. 4.

#### § 431.

(2.) Tones of suspension, like transition-tones generally (§ 350,) *are, at one time, of a longer, and, at another time, of a shorter duration*.

It has already been observed (in § 417) that very short suspensions are not usually to be considered as worthy of the name.

#### § 432.

(3.) It has already been remarked (in § 427) that suspension-tones, like transition-tones in general, are at one time of greater rhythmical weight than the principal tone, and at another time of less, though this latter case is less frequent than the other; and, accordingly, by far the greatest part of suspension-tones are *heavier than the principal tones* to which they relate, and thus, so to speak, are prepared changing notes. (Compare § 352.)

## § 433.

(4.) It is self-evident that tones of suspension, no less than other transition-tones, may occur *either in outer parts or in middle parts* (compare § 433), or even that they may occur in *several parts at once* (§ 355). In figs. 758 and 759, *i*, even *three* parts have suspensions at the same time.

(Fig. 758.)

(Fig. 759, *i*.)

(k.)



Fig. 759, *k*, affords an example in which two suspensions are at the same time prefixed to one and the same tone; namely, the tone  $\bar{d}$  is prefixed to the tone  $\bar{c}$  as a suspension from above, and the tone  $\flat b$  is prefixed to the same as a suspension from below.

An example in which the tone of one and the same degree of the staff occurs as a suspension to two different principal tones is furnished by fig. 760, where  $\bar{c}$  occurs as a suspension to  $\bar{d}$ , while at the same time  $\bar{c}$  occurs as a suspension to  $b$ .

(Fig. 760.)

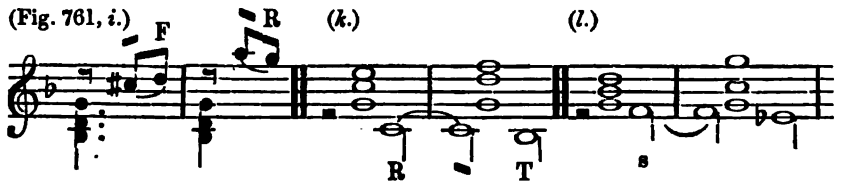
§ 433 *we*.

It is worthy of remark, further, that suspensions *in the base part* seldom occur otherwise, and rarely sound well otherwise, than as they occur in



fig. 761, *k* and *l*; namely, in such a manner that the base note which serves as a suspension is a suspension from above to the following fundamental third.

(Fig. 761, *i*.)



It much less frequently occurs that the base contains a suspension to any other fundamental interval; as, for instance, in the following example :



or as in fig. 661, p. 642, and fig. 674, p. 652.

*Suspensions from below* in the base part are of still more rare occurrence, though in other parts we have found this to occur many times without the slightest inconvenience.

#### § 434.

(5.) The manner in which suspensions may occur in *harpegiate progressions* is shown by fig. 762 :

(Fig. 762.)

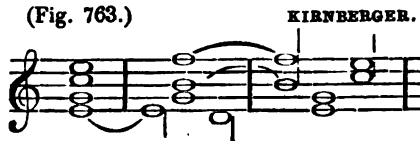


(Compare also § 359.)

#### § 435.

(6.) The fact, that a suspension is sometimes prefixed to an harmonic interval in one part, while the same interval is sounding in another part (compare § 360), is shown by the above examples in figs. 758, 759, 760, 763, 764, &c. &c. pp. 695 and below.

(Fig. 763.)



KIRNBERGER.

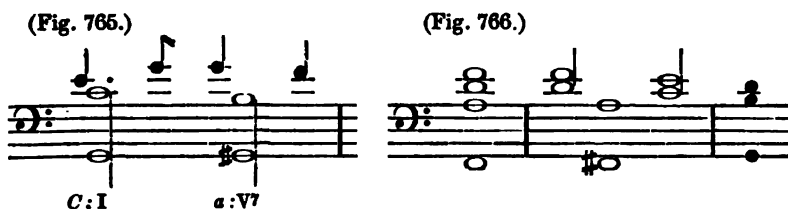


All that was remarked in §§ 360 and 361 applies to cases of this description.

---

§ 436.

(7.) Suspensions struck simultaneously with the occurrence of the harmony in which they appear as suspensions, that is to say, suspension-tones which are not connected by a tie to the previous preparatory note, but are struck anew coincidentally with the introduction of the new harmony, are always to be regarded as less perfect suspensions. (Compare §§ 362, 363, and 421.) See, for example, figs. 765, 766, &c.




---

(C.) WHAT TONES MAY BE EMPLOYED AS SUSPENSIONS TO AN HARMONIC INTERVAL.

§ 437.

(1.) As it regards the *direction* in which a part moves from the tone of suspension to the principal tone, suspensions may be, as we have already (§ 365) remarked in general of transition-tones, either *suspensions from below* or *from above*. In itself considered, it is as correct to prefix a suspension to an harmonic tone *from below* as *from above*; but most suspensions from above produce a better effect than those from below, and the former are also far more common than the latter; as is the case, for instance, in the examples already referred to, by far the greatest part of the suspensions in these being suspensions from above and only a very few suspensions from below. There are not a few instances, however, of the latter species. For example, the tone

$\bar{c}$  in fig. 760, p. 695, the tone  $\bar{b}$  in fig. 763, p. 696, the tone  $\bar{e}$  twice in fig. 767, as also in fig. 768:

(Fig. 767.)



(Fig. 768.)




---

§ 438.

(2.) Since, as we have already seen in § 366, transition-tones may be, in respect to the magnitude of the step which a part makes from the secondary tone to the principal, either those of a *minor second* or those of a *major second*, it follows that this same distinction is applicable also to *suspensions*, and, accordingly, that a tone of suspension never stands farther than a major second from its principal tone. (Compare § 366.)

---

§ 439.

(3.) Suspension-tones may at one time *belong to the given scale*, and at another time *be foreign to it*. (§ 367.)

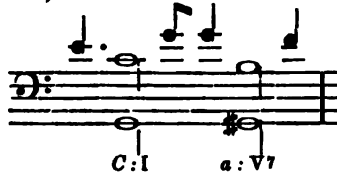
The latter occurs, however, only in two cases. Namely, inasmuch as the preparatory tone is ordinarily a genuine harmonic interval (§ 424), and thus belongs to the given scale, while the tone of suspension coincides with the tone of preparation, it follows that this latter is never foreign to the scale, except when, on striking the suspension, a new key is introduced whose scale does not contain the said tone. For example, in fig. 769,

(Fig. 769.)



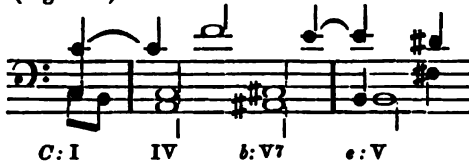
the tone  $\bar{f}$ , which constitutes a transition to the tone  $\bar{e}$ , is foreign to the new scale of  $G$ -major. So also, in fig. 770,

(Fig. 770.)



the tone  $\bar{g}$ , which occurs as an element of the tonic three-fold harmony of  $C$ , appears immediately afterwards as a transition to a harmony of the new key of  $a$ -minor, to which the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$  is foreign.—The second half of the syncopated tone  $\bar{f}$ , in fig. 771, is of the same description :

(Fig. 771.)



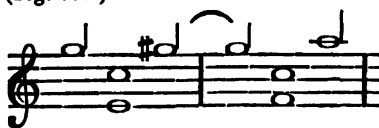
as is also the eighth-note  $\bar{a}$  in the second half of the second measure of fig. 772.

(Fig. 772.)



A second case in which suspensions foreign to the scale may occur, is found in those improper suspensions which are prepared, not by a genuine harmonic interval, but by a tone foreign to the harmony (§ 425), and, indeed, by a tone that is foreign to the scale. In this case, the tone which had already been foreign to the scale as a tone of preparation still continues to be so as a tone of suspension. Thus, for example, the tone  $\bar{g}\sharp$ , in the second measure of fig. 773, is a suspension foreign to the scale :

(Fig. 773.)



## § 440.

(4.) In like manner as we have found transition-tones to occur on harmonic degrees (§§ 382—388), so may *suspensions occur also on harmonic degrees*. In other words, as we have seen that sometimes a tone which, in itself considered, is indeed contained in the fundamental harmony of the passage, but which, from the manner and the connection in which it occurs, seems to present itself rather as a mere secondary tone, merely in the light of a transition-tone, so the same thing takes place also in *tied* transition-tones (suspensions). In the following passage, fig. 774,

(Fig. 774.)



where the ear is accustomed, for some length of time, to regard every first quarter-note of the measure in the upper part as a suspension to the following tone, it will naturally regard the tone  $\bar{f}$ , which is the first quarter-note in the last measure but one, rather as a suspension to the tone  $\bar{e}b$ , than as the fundamental tone of the harmony  $\mathcal{F}^7$ ; and, in fact, this tone  $\bar{f}$ , standing as it does in this connection, occurs less in its property as an harmonic interval, than in its capacity as a substitute, as a suspension before the tone  $\bar{e}b$ —the proper seventh of the fundamental harmony.—The tone  $\bar{d}$  of the third measure of fig. 775 is of a similar character.

(Fig. 775.)



In like manner, the tone  $e$  at the third quarter of fig. 776,

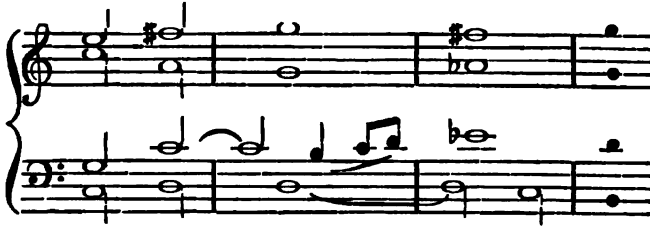
(Fig. 776.)



stands rather in the capacity of substitute for the following  $d$  than as a proper fundamental tone; to say the least, the ear is inclined to regard this  $e$  as a mere suspension, for the particular reason that otherwise the harmonic combination of this third quarter would exhibit itself as the harmony of  $\mathcal{C}^b$  with a minor ninth and retained fundamental tone, and consequently would be rather rough and harsh (§ 78); whereas this harshness disappears if we regard this tone  $e$  as a mere secondary tone, and not as a component element of the

harmony. For a like reason, the tone *d*, in the third measure of fig. 777, seems to present itself rather as a mere suspension of the fundamental seventh *c* than as a fundamental tone.

(Fig. 777.)



The same may be observed of the tone *c* in the third measure of fig. 778:

(Fig. 778.)



It may be seen, moreover, from the before-mentioned figs. 765 and 766, p. 697, that also in the case of suspensions *the tone of one and the same degree may occur under two chromatically different forms.* (Compare § 356 and § 385, at the end.)

## (D.) EQUIVOCALNESS.

## § 441.

The same *equivocalness* pertains to suspension-tones that we have already observed in relation to transition-tones in general (§ 388, &c.), and its application in the former case is sufficiently obvious.

In the following passage, for example,

(Fig. 779.)

D:I II I 117 °V11 b:1 V7 I °11 I V7 VI  
b:°11 V I V7 I °11 V7 I V7

one must necessarily be in doubt whether to regard the first chord of the second measure as the harmony of  $\bar{b}$  in the second inversion, and the tones  $\bar{c}\sharp$  and  $\bar{c}\sharp$  as suspensions, or to consider this combination as  $\mathcal{F}\sharp$  (or even as  $f\sharp$ ).—Equally equivocal is the first half of the fourth measure.—Farther, if we assume the tones  $\bar{d}$  and  $b$  in the second half of the same fourth measure to be suspensions, the harmony here must be that of  $\mathcal{F}\sharp$ , but otherwise it would be that of  $\bar{b}$ .—A similar equivocalness appears in the following measure.

Instead of giving further examples, I will refer the reader to figs. 774—778, pp. 700 and 701.

## DIVISION VII.

### RESOLUTION OF TRANSITION-TONES.

#### (A.) GENERAL PRINCIPLE.

##### § 442.

Thus far we have endeavoured to show how a part may combine transition-tones with its texture. It now remains to consider how a part, after having assumed such a tone (whether a transition-tone, a changing-note, or a suspension), is to proceed from that point onward; or, as it is usually termed, how a part must in such a case *resolve* itself. (Compare § 342.)

The answer to this question is, in general, very easily given; for, it is evident from the whole nature of tones foreign to the harmony, that every such tone, which can exist only as a secondary tone to a following principal one, and whose being can be justified only on the ground of its transition into this principal tone (§ 343)—it is evident, I say, that such a secondary tone *must be resolved into its principal tone*. In fig. 761 *i*, p. 696, the tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  is a secondary tone to  $\bar{d}$ , and accordingly the part which gives this tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$  must next proceed to  $\bar{d}$ . In fig. 761, *k*, the tone  $\bar{c}$  is a secondary tone to  $b$ , and hence immediately resolves itself into  $b$ .—And since a secondary tone is always either a major or a minor second higher or lower than the principal tone, it follows that the resolution of a transition-tone always consists in the simple fact, that *the part which gives such a tone proceeds immediately afterwards either a major or a minor second, upwards or downwards, to the principal tone of this secondary one*.

This law, arising as it does from the very nature of the case, requires neither proof nor elucidation; and the only point of this subject upon which it is necessary to make any farther remarks, is *the various ways* in which this transition of a secondary tone to its principal *takes place*.

## (B.) DIFFERENT FORMS OF RESOLUTION.

## § 443.

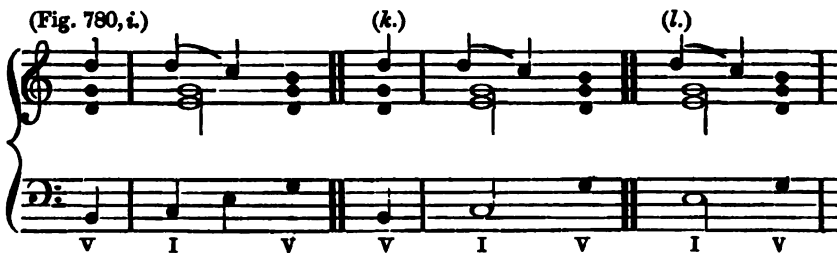
Since a *secondary tone* is only an appendage to a principal one, since its entire existence refers to the latter, and is admissible only on the ground of its dependence upon the same (§ 343), it follows that a part, after assuming such a tone, must *immediately* proceed to the principal tone.

Our ear, however, permits some variations in this matter, to which we will now turn our attention. (Compare § 314.)

(1.) *The secondary tone slurred to the principal tone, or detached from it.*

## § 444.

In the first place, it would best accord to the intimate connection between a *secondary tone* and its *principal one*, that the two should be connected by a *slur*, as is usually the case with the preparation and the striking of a discord. (§ 421.) An instance of this kind occurs, for example, in fig. 780 i, k, l.



Not unfrequently, however, the tones are unconnected, as in fig. 781 ;



or as in fig. 782,



where every transition-tone is twice struck, and in such a manner too, that it appears at one time as a light transition-tone, and then again as a heavy transition-tone ;—or even every note, taken by itself, is broken up into still smaller notes,



as in fig. 783 :

(Fig. 783.)



(Compare §§ 37 and 38.)

(2.) *The secondary tone separated from the principal tone by rests.*

§ 445.

We sometimes find the secondary tone *separated from the principal tone by rests*, as in fig. 784, *i*, *k* : (Compare § 38.)

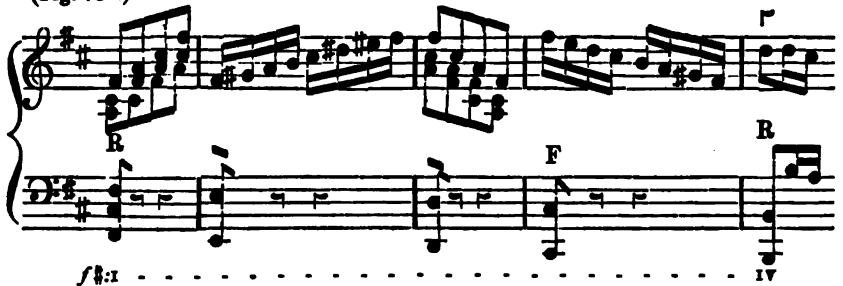
(Fig. 784. *i*.)

(*k*.)



This is still more strikingly exhibited in fig. 785 :

(Fig. 785.)



(3.) *Intermediately inserted tones.*

§ 446.

One or more tones may, moreover, be struck between the secondary tone and the principal; that is to say, a sort of interpolation may take place between a secondary and a principal note.

In fig. 786 *i*, for example,

(Fig. 786, *i*.)

(*k*.)



the secondary tone  $\bar{d}$  is introduced before the harmonic tone  $\bar{c}$ . In fig. 786 *k*, above, the same passage appears in an *harpegiate* form (compare § 434), the upper part here giving alternately the tones of the three parts of fig. 786 *i*;

and here, in fig. 786 *k*, the harpegiate part, after having given the tone  $\bar{d}$  as a fore-note to  $\bar{c}$ , does not proceed immediately from this  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{c}$ , but first strikes intermediately the tones  $\bar{g}$  and  $e$  as representatives of the two middle parts.

In fig. 787 *i*, also,

(Fig. 787, *i*.)

(*k*.)

(*l*.)

C: I F: V I C: V I

where the tone  $\bar{c}$  is interpolated between  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{f}$ , as is also the tone  $\bar{d}$  between  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{g}$ , we may either regard the upper part fragment-wise as an harpegiate representation of two parts, as in *k*, or we can imagine that the upper part, instead of making a quarter-note rest between the secondary and the principal note, as in *l*, which it would indeed require (according to § 445), makes use of this free time meanwhile to strike another harmonic interval.

A similar interpolation is found in fig. 788, second and fourth measures, &c.

(Fig. 788.)

HAYDN'S CREATION.

#### § 447.

In the foregoing examples, the tones struck between the secondary tone and the principal, were harmonic intervals. But there may be transition-tones of the description found in fig. 789 (compare § 434),

(Fig. 789.)

where the harpegiate part does not proceed directly from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{d}$ , though the

former constitutes a transition to the latter, but first descends to  $\bar{a}$  as a fore-note to  $\bar{b}$ , &c.

In fig. 790, *i*,



the harmonic tone  $\bar{c}$  is preceded by the secondary tone  $\bar{d}$  from above and by the secondary tone  $\bar{b}$  from below. In fig. 790 *k*, above, this passage appears in an *harpeggiate* form, since the secondary tone  $\bar{d}$ , which was given in *i* by the upper part, and the secondary tone  $\bar{b}$  which was given in *i* by the second part, are here in *k* both struck by *one* part. But as this one part cannot indeed carry along both the others *at the same time*, but must strike the one after the other, it follows that the harpeggiate part cannot proceed immediately from the secondary tone first struck to its principal tone, but must previously take in the other secondary tone.

The fore-notes of the vocal part, in fig. 791, are to be explained in the same way.

(Fig. 791.)

*Allegro assai.*

MOZART'S DON JUAN.

In like manner are to be explained also the two sixteenth-notes of the upper part in the third measure of fig. 792, as are also the eighth-notes in the fourth measure of the same example :

(Fig. 792.)

J. S. BACH.



(The  $\bar{c}\sharp$  in the first measure is explained by § 461.)

Fig. 793,  $\bar{i}$ , admits of being explained in the same way, perhaps, as an *harpaggiate* representation of a three-part passage, as in  $k$  or  $l$ .

(Fig. 793,  $\bar{i}$ .)

T. HASLINGER'S MASS.



We may also reckon it under the head of the interpolation of a tone between a secondary one and its principal, that the secondary tone may, before proceeding to its principal, *be made to approximate the same by a chromatic alteration* (compare § 368); as, for example, in fig. 794, the tone  $\bar{c}\flat$  is inserted between the secondary tone  $\bar{c}$  and the principal tone  $\bar{d}$ ; as is also the tone  $\bar{a}\flat$  between  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{g}$  in the fourth measure :

(Fig. 794.)



U 2

The same is true of  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in fig. 795 :

(Fig. 795.)

J. HAYDN.



§ 448.

It belongs also to the category of the interpolation of one or more tones between a principal and a secondary tone, that *other transition-tones are again sometimes inserted* between the secondary tone and its resolution. Thus, for example, in fig. 796,

(Fig. 796.)



the suspension-tone  $\bar{c}$  in the vocal part resolves itself into  $b$  : but in the accompaniment which is placed under this vocal part, the eighth-notes  $\bar{b}$  and  $\bar{a}$ , as transition-tones of the second and the first class, are inserted between the suspension-tone  $\bar{c}$  and the half-note  $\bar{b}$ , which is to be considered as its resolution.

(4.) *Resolution during the present or during the following harmony.*

§ 449.

The resolution of a transition-tone takes place at one time during the continuance of that harmony in connection with which it sounds as a transition-tone, and at another time during the presence of the following harmony.

The latter is of course the case in transitions to intervals of the following harmony. In fig. 797 *i*, for example,

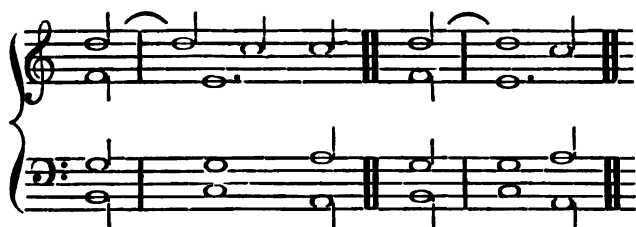
(Fig. 797, *i*.)

(*k*.)



where  $b$  is a transition to  $a$  of the following harmony of  $\mathcal{F}$ , it is clearly apparent that this tone  $b$  does not proceed to  $a$  during the harmony of  $\mathcal{C}$ , but in the following harmony of  $\mathcal{F}$ .

On the contrary, in transitions to intervals of the present harmony, it is the most natural that these transition-tones resolve themselves during the continuance of this harmony; and thus, in fig. 797  $k$ , p. 708, the tone  $b$ , as a transition to the third of the harmony of  $\mathcal{F}$ , during which it sounds as a transition-tone, proceeds to  $a$  during the continuance of this harmony. This is particularly true of suspensions. For, as all suspension-tones are transitions to intervals of the present harmony (§ 430, at 1), it is most natural that they should resolve themselves into an harmonic interval of this harmony during its continuance; as is the case, for example, in fig. 798  $i$ :

(Fig. 798.  $i$ .) $(k.)$ 

where the tone  $\bar{d}$  as a transition to  $\bar{c}$  of the harmony  $\mathcal{C}$ , during which it sounds, resolves itself into this  $\bar{c}$  during the continuance of this harmony.

Now this species of resolution, being the most simple and natural, may be designated by the term *natural resolution*.

But sometimes a secondary tone to an interval of the present harmony may delay its progression to the principal tone until a new harmony occurs. This species of resolution is usually named, in contra-distinction from the natural, a *retarded resolution*, or a *retardation of the resolution of the transition-tone or of the suspension-tone*. In the foregoing fig. 798, for example,

(Fig. 798,  $l$ .) $(m.)$  $(n.)$ 

the tone  $\bar{d}$  may, instead of proceeding to  $\bar{c}$  during the continuance of the  $\mathcal{C}$ -harmony, as in  $i$ , continue on until another harmony takes the place of this harmony of  $\mathcal{C}$ , as in  $k$ , so that the tone  $\bar{d}$ , though in itself a secondary tone to  $\bar{c}$  of the present  $\mathcal{C}$ -harmony, still is continued on until the appearance of the following harmony of  $\mathcal{A}$ .—Fig. 798,  $l$ , is of the same description.

In like manner, in fig. 799, *i*,  
(Fig. 799, *i*.)

(*k*.)



the tone  $\bar{e}b$  is a transition to  $\bar{d}$  the third of the harmony  $Bb^7$ , and is thus a transition to an interval of the present harmony, that is to say, of a harmony during which it appears as a transition-tone, and accordingly it moves to its principal note  $\bar{d}$  during the continuance of this harmony. But in *k* it is otherwise. There the transition-tone  $\bar{e}b$  does not proceed to its principal tone  $\bar{d}$  during the continuance of the harmony  $Bb^7$ , but is retarded till the fourth part of the measure, where that harmony has disappeared and given place to a new harmony; namely, the three-fold harmony of  $C$ , which likewise contains the tone  $\bar{d}$ . Thus the tone  $\bar{e}b$  was in itself indeed a transition to an interval of the  $Bb^7$ -harmony, in relation to which it was heard as a transition-tone; but, instead of resolving itself into its principal tone  $\bar{d}$  during the continuance of this harmony, it waited to resolve itself into this same  $\bar{d}$  as an interval of the next following  $C$ -harmony, and by this means, though it was originally a fore-note to an interval of the former harmony (namely, of the  $Bb^7$ -harmony), it now becomes a fore-note of an interval of the latter harmony (namely, of the  $C$ -harmony).

In like manner, the tone  $\bar{f}$ , at the commencement of the following measure in *k*, is a transition to the tone  $\bar{e}b$ , the third of the three-fold harmony of  $C$ , and should, therefore, properly proceed to this its principal tone  $\bar{e}b$  during the continuance of the first quarter of the measure; but as this  $\bar{e}b$  is also contained in the following harmony  $Ab$ , it [the tone  $\bar{e}b$ ] is in no particular haste, we may say, to make this progression to  $\bar{e}b$ : it is quite seasonable to do this at the second quarter of the measure, since the tone  $\bar{e}b$  is fitted also to the harmony of  $Ab$ ; and, relying upon this fact, the tone  $\bar{f}$  confidently continues on till the arrival of this latter harmony.

So also, in fig. 800,

(Fig. 800.)



the third quarter-note of the upper part is in itself indeed a suspension to  $\bar{d}$ , the third of the harmony  $\text{Bb}^7$ ; but the suspending part, instead of proceeding to  $\bar{d}$  during the continuance of this harmony, lingers on until a following harmony makes its appearance, namely, the harmony  $\text{G}^7$ , which likewise contains the tone  $\bar{d}$  as its appropriate fifth, into which tone the part now for the first time resolves itself.

In the same manner, the tone  $\bar{f}$  of the following measure delays its progression to  $\bar{c}_b$  as the third of the tonic three-fold of  $\mathfrak{c}$  in the key of *c*-minor, and first makes its progression to this  $\bar{c}_b$  on the occurrence of the next following harmony of  $\mathfrak{A}_b$ , in which the tone  $\bar{c}$  constitutes the interval of the fifth.

So also, in fig. 801,

(Fig. 801.)



the upper part retards the tone  $\bar{d}$ , in its progression to  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , until the introduction of the harmony  $f\sharp$ , which also contains the tone  $\bar{c}\sharp$ .

The tone  $\bar{d}$  is retarded in the same manner in fig. 802 :

(Fig. 802.)

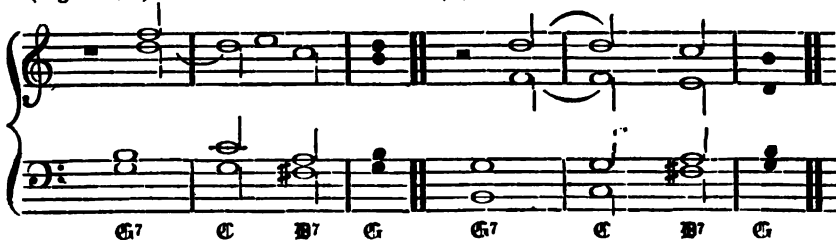


(Compare § 320, III, p. 556, and fig. 435, *t*, p. 547.)

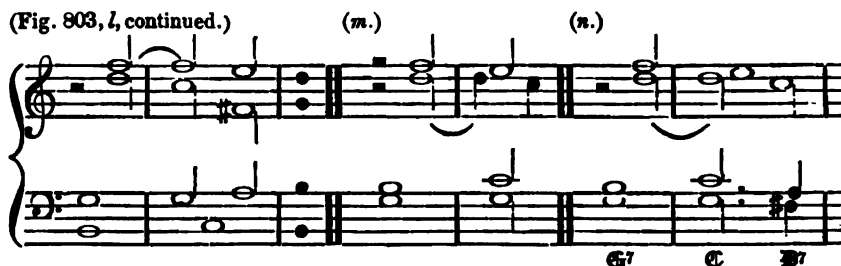
In a similar manner, the tone  $\bar{d}$ , in fig. 803, *i, k, l*,

(Fig. 803, i.)

**(k.)**





(Fig. 803, *l*, continued.)

is retarded until the appearance of the next following harmony  $\text{D}^7$ , instead of proceeding to  $\bar{c}$  during the continuance of the harmony  $\text{C}$ , as in *m* or *n*.—Figs. 804, 805, and 806 are of the same species.

(Fig. 804.)



(Fig. 805.)



(Fig. 806.)



In fig. 807 also,

(Fig. 807, *i*.)

where the tone  $\bar{g}$  is a suspension to the fundamental third  $\bar{f}$  during the continuance of the harmony  $\text{D}$ , the tone  $\bar{g}$  lingers until the introduction of the following four-fold chord  $\text{G}^7$ . In fig. 808,

(Fig. 808.)

HAYDN.

donā nobis pacem

G:IV °vii7 III vi7 II V7

though the tone  $\bar{d}$ , in the first measure of the vocal part, resolves itself into  $\bar{c}$  during the continuance of the same harmony, still the second violin part is delayed by interpolated tones until the introduction of the following harmony.

In the second measure of fig. 809 i,

(Fig. 809, i.)

(k.)

a: V7 I V C:I IV V7 I V C:I

the tone  $a$  lingers, in its descent to  $g\sharp$ , until a following harmony appears, and then, instead of resolving itself into  $g\sharp$ , a tone which is not contained in this latter harmony, it passes into  $g\flat$ . Now the ear, in this case, which had expected some such resolution as is found in  $k$ , is but very imperfectly satisfied; and, accordingly, this example is somewhat repulsive.

In fig. 810,

(Fig. 810.)

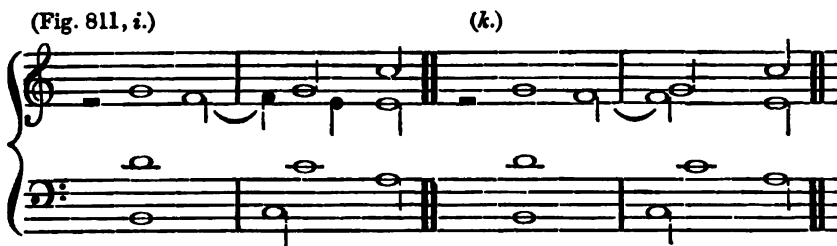
V7 I VI IV

the tone  $\bar{b}$  is a suspension to  $\bar{a}$  in the harmony  $\bar{a}$ , and lingers in its resolution until the appearance of the *second* following harmony  $\bar{b}$ .

#### § 450.

The before-mentioned retardation of the resolution of a suspension-tone is not to be confounded with the retarded resolution of a seventh, which was

mentioned in § 314. The retarded resolution of a seventh, in fig. 811 *i*, for example,



is itself a suspension ; but the resolution of this suspension itself, here in *i*, is in no wise retarded, for the tone *f* resolves itself into *e* during the continuance of the harmony *C*. But when, in a case of this kind, where the suspension itself is already a retardation of the resolution of the seventh, *the resolution of the suspension* itself is also retarded, as in *k* : such a case involves a double retardation ; namely, a retardation of the resolution of the seventh by a suspension, whose resolution itself is likewise retarded.

---

§ 451.

It has been received as a universal rule among musicians, even to the present period, that every transition-tone in general and all suspensions in particular must resolve themselves during the continuance of the same harmony. Now, after all that has thus far appeared, it surely must be unnecessary to exhibit any farther proof that this rule is most positively untrue and fallacious.

But particularly the manner in which these theorists consider themselves obliged to explain all those resolutions, which do not take place until the introduction of the following harmony, again as *exceptions to the rule*, is not in all cases satisfactory. Thus, for example, they say of such resolutions as that found in fig. 803, *i*, page 711, there is concealed here again such an “anticipation.” This passage does not contradict their rule in the very slightest measure: one has only to conceive to himself that it is otherwise than it is, namely, that it may be as it is in fig. 803 *n*, p. 712. The suspension may here be resolved entirely according to the rule, during the continuance of the *C*-harmony, the tone *f*♯ which occurs immediately afterwards may be only transient; this transition-tone (*f*♯) may be in *i* only—*anticipated*, namely, a quarter-note earlier than in *n*.—Now the child has got a name: it is called an *anticipation of a transition-tone*; such an anticipation of a transition-tone is even again only a *licence*—an allowed violation of the rule—an exception, an elliptic, catachretic observance of the rule, &c. ; and consequently the rule is saved! Now let me ask, why create a rule for the explanation of so many cases to which it does not prove itself adequate ;—a rule, which, without being at all necessary in itself or attended with any advantages, only creates a necessity again for the additional contrivance of otherwise unknown things, such as are,

In this case, for example, anticipations of transition-tones, &c. as shifts and expedients for carrying out an arbitrary assumption? And, what is more, this exception-wise mode of explanation, ingeniously as it has been devised, is far from being adequate to the explanation of all the cases which contravene the rule. Where, for example, would be the anticipated transition-tones in the foregoing fig. 798 *k*, *l*, or fig. 805, pp. 709 and 712?

But what avails reason and conviction against the authority of a once-established and long time accredited dogma!

But, finally, what shall we say to the fact, that *Kirnberger* even teaches that the distinguishing sign by which we are to know whether a note is a so-called accidental dissonance or a substituted dissonance (a suspension), consists in the circumstance that it resolves during the continuance of the same harmony; and that even to the present day this characteristic sign of *Kirnberger* has been constantly reiterated in musical works and confided in as correct: how easily one might convince himself, even with the smallest share of independent thought, that, according to such a criterion, the tone *b*, for example, in fig. 798, *l*, p. 709, cannot be recognized as a suspension. (Compare remark on § 99.)

#### (5.) *Resolution of Transition-tones into Consonant or Dissonant Tones.*

##### § 452.

Theorists have again invented another rule, which requires that the resolution should always be made into a consonance; and if in any case it is made into a dissonance, this again is called an exception.

If we hold this position on the natural ground, that every secondary tone must resolve itself into its principal, then it amounts to saying, that secondary tones can only be prefixed to consonant tones, and if in any case a secondary tone is prefixed to a dissonant tone, this is an exception.

Now then, from any one who takes pleasure in rules and exceptions, in the technical terms consonances and dissonances, ellipses and catachreses, we will no longer withhold the privilege of carping at pleasure against the two resolutions of  $\underline{\underline{e}}$  to  $\underline{\underline{f}}$ , &c. in fig. 812,

(Fig. 812.)



resolutions which are individually and collectively irregular and exceptions to the rule; and the same is true of the resolution from  $\underline{\underline{d}}$  to  $\underline{\underline{c}}$  in fig. 803, *i* and *k*, p. 711, and of the resolution from  $\underline{\underline{f}}$  to  $\underline{\underline{e}}$  in fig. 803, *l*, p. 712, and of a thousand

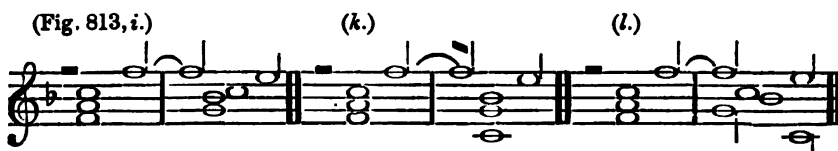
others, where a transition-tone or a suspension-tone is prefixed to a dissonant tone; in all which cases the principal which follows the secondary tone is a so-called dissonance (not a fundamental tone, not its third, nor its fifth, but *some other tone*)—I say, whoever is pleased with such bombast, let him enjoy it: but I must confess myself unable to account for his taste. (Compare remark on § 99.)

(6.) *Movement of other Parts during the Resolution of a Transition Tone.*

§ 453.

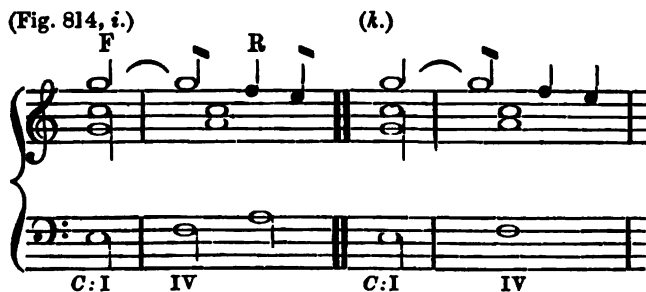
A circumstance which is not entirely essential in the resolution of a secondary tone, is, *whether, at the moment at which the secondary tone proceeds to its principal, the other parts likewise move, or remain stationary*. In many of the foregoing examples, the other parts continue at rest during the resolution of the transition-tones, while in others, on the contrary, at the moment when one part moves from a secondary tone to a principal tone, one or more other parts move also in various ways at the same time.

It scarcely need be mentioned, that the fact of *other parts* remaining stationary or moving during a resolution, has properly no *essential* influence whatever upon the resolution itself. The resolution of the tone  $\bar{f}$ , in fig. 813,  $\bar{i}$  and  $\bar{k}$ ,



is in all essential respects the same as in  $\bar{l}$ : in both cases the secondary tone  $\bar{f}$  resolves itself into the principal tone  $\bar{e}$  as the proper third of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}^7$ .

So, also, in fig. 814,  $\bar{i}$ ,



the resolution of  $\bar{g}$  into  $\bar{f}$  is exactly the same as in  $\bar{k}$ : in both cases,  $\bar{g}$  is a secondary tone to  $\bar{f}$ , and thus to the fundamental tone of the harmony  $\mathbb{F}$ .

Decidedly unessential, therefore, as *we* are compelled to regard such progression of other parts, so far as it respects the resolution of the secondary tone into its principal one, yet correspondently great importance has been attached to it by our theorists, inasmuch that they have felt themselves obliged even to assume it as a rule, that a suspension must resolve on the same base-note on which it was struck; as, for example, in fig. 814, *k*, p. 716; but in case it happens to resolve on some other base-note, as in *i*, this is again an exception, an ellipsis. Thus, for example, *Schicht*\* does not know how to justify the faultless passage in fig. 815,



in any other way than by passing upon it the remark that the base causes an "ellipsis" in the resolution.—To me it is not difficult to see, that here again we might very well spare the unnecessary rule, and with it also the unnecessary exception. (Compare remark on § 99.)

---

§ 454.

In musical works generally we find a wonderful *ado* made about the doctrine of *resolution into this or that interval*. A great importance is attached to the fact, that, for example, in fig. 813, *i*, p. 716, the tone  $\bar{f}$  resolves itself into the sixth, as they express it; but, in *k* and *l*, into the third (meaning that, in *k* and *l*, the tone  $\bar{e}$  stands on the third [10th] degree as reckoned upwards from the lowest tone, while in *i* the tone  $\bar{e}$  is the sixth tone, the sixth from the base tone  $\bar{g}$ ;) and that in fig. 814, *i*, the ninth, namely,  $\bar{g}$  (the 9th tone as reckoned from the lowest), resolves itself into the sixth, namely,  $\bar{f}$  (the sixth tone from the base tone), while in *k* the ninth resolves itself into the octave, &c.

Now we do not know how to make much of such things. We have hitherto found no occasion for concerning ourselves about the enumeration of the degrees from one interval to that other interval which accidentally happens to be the lowest, having thus far contented ourselves with becoming pretty well acquainted with every interval in its *essential nature*, in its *relationship to the fundamental harmony*, without feeling ourselves compelled to acquire such a knowledge of it in the extremely uncertain and casual way of reckoning its distance

---

\* In his *Grundregeln der Harmonie*, page 51.

from the lowest tone; and when, accordingly, we know, that, in fig. 813,  $i-l$ , p. 716, the secondary tone  $f$  resolves itself into its principal tone  $\bar{e}$ , which is the fundamental third of the dominant harmony  $\mathbb{C}^7$ , we know more, and that which is more substantial, than when one tells us that, in  $i$ , the seventh (the tone which lies seven degrees higher than the base-tone  $\bar{g}$ ) resolves itself into the sixth of the base-tone—that in  $k$  the fourth of the base-tone resolves itself into the third, and that in  $l$  the seventh resolves itself into the third. And he who knows no more than to tell us, in relation to fig. 798,  $l-n$ , p. 709, that in  $l$  the ninth resolves into the third, in  $m$  into the sixth, and in  $n$  into the octave, does not by this means enlighten us in the smallest measure as to the essential nature of this passage, and really tells us far less in relation to it than we already knew. (Compare remark on §§ 99, 314, and 320.)

(7.) *Resolution on a light or on a heavy Part of the Measure.*

§ 455.

Resolution in general occurs *at one time on a heavy part of the measure, and at another on a light*: the former takes place in the case of light transition-tones, while the latter occurs in the case of heavy transition-tones.

As it respects *the resolution of prepared transition-tones*, that is, *suspensions*, in particular, this happens indeed, in most cases, on a *light* part of the measure. The rule laid down by theorists, that all suspensions must be resolved on a light part of the measure, is again only true to the same extent as it is true that when the preparation is made on a light part of the measure, the striking of a suspension must follow on a heavy part. (See §§ 427—430.)

DIVISION VIII.

MERITS OF TRANSITIONS IN GENERAL.

§ 456.

In general, it is self-evident, that transition-tones, as they are foreign to the fundamental harmony, and, so to speak, are of a different species, do not appear so perfectly natural to the ear as does a tone belonging to the fundamental harmony. But that the introduction of such tones, if it be done in the right manner, is not only not disagreeable, but sometimes very essentially contributes to give an elegant smoothness to the progression of a part, and to bestow upon its connection a more graceful outline and a more agreeable movement than it would otherwise possess, may be seen from the examples adorned with transi-

tion-tones, which are referred to in § 343, figs. 578—585, pp. 603—605, by comparing these examples with the dry skeletons found alongside of them, which do not contain such ornamental transition-tones.

The introduction of tones which do not belong to the harmony, but which are proximate to those which do, sometimes serves also as a means of concealing and palliating forbidden parallel progressions, as we shall take occasion to observe in a subsequent part of this work.

Still other small incidental advantages resulting from this employment of proximate tones foreign to the harmony, were adverted to in § 6 of the present work.



## CHAPTER IX.

## SOME PECULIAR SPECIES OF TONES FOREIGN TO THE HARMONY.

## § 457.

CAREFULLY and scrupulously as we have, in the eighth chapter, investigated the laws according to which transition-tones may occur, still the principles thus far developed are not adequate to the explanation of *all* the ways in which a tone may appear in connection with a harmony without belonging to it.

For we find, for example, in figs. 816, *i.*, 817, and 818, tones foreign to the harmony whose existence cannot be explained by any of the principles thus observed.

(Fig. 816, *i.*)

I IV I a:V7 I IV I V7 I

(*k.*)

(*l.*)

(Fig. 817.)

I V IV I V7 I V7 I V I V



By what authority, for instance, can the tone  $\bar{a}$  in the second measure of fig. 816 sound in connection with the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , since it does not resolve itself as a secondary tone into a proximate principal tone, this latter circumstance being, according to our principles as thus far established, an indispensable condition to the possibility of its existence in the second measure?—By what authority does the tone  $\bar{d}$  in the first measure of fig. 817 appear in connection with the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ ?—How does the tone  $\bar{b}$  occur in connection with the harmony  $\mathbb{F}$  in the third measure?—And how, in fig. 818, does the base tone justify its appearance in connection with all the different harmonic combinations of the other parts?

These and other like examples show us that we have not thus far become acquainted with all the laws by which tones may occur which are foreign to the harmony, but that such tones must sometimes be admissible also according to *other* principles, which we will now make it our object to investigate.

If we carefully examine the before-mentioned examples throughout, and place together those that are similar to one another, we shall find that they are of *four* different species, which we will consider separately.

## DIVISION I.

### PROLONGED INTERVALS.

#### § 458.

The first observation which presents itself to us in this connection, is, that the tone  $\bar{a}$  which occurs in the upper part in the second measure of fig. 816, i, p. 720, referred to in § 457, is the same tone which this part had given immediately before as an interval of the foregoing harmony, and that, instead of its proceeding immediately from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{c}$  on the appearance of the harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , as is the case in fig. 816, k, p. 720, it as it were lingers behind on the tone  $\bar{a}$  after the proper time.

Thus there is here also, in a similar way as in the case of suspensions, a retardation, a lingering of the part on an interval of the foregoing harmony,

as it were a *preparation* of the foreign tone; with this essential difference, however, that here the lingering  $\bar{a}$  fails altogether to follow the laws which suspensions so invariably observe.

So also, in the fourth measure of the same example, the tone  $\bar{f}$  is a prolongation of the  $\bar{f}$  situated in the very same part in the foregoing harmony: in fig. 819,

(Fig. 819.) SPONTINI'S VESTALE.

the tone  $f\sharp$  of the second measure is in like manner a prolongation of the same tone in the foregoing measure: and in fig. 820,

(Fig. 820.)

the tone  $\bar{a}$  of the first chord is prolonged into the second; and a similar prolongation may be found from the first to the second measure.

This first class of examples, therefore, teaches us *that it is often quite admissible for a part* (particularly a principal part) *to prolong, during a following harmony, a tone which it had given in a previous one, even without resolving this lengthened tone as a secondary tone to an immediately proximate principal tone.*

In order to have a name for tones of this species, we will call them *prolonged* or *retarded intervals*.

In like manner, the tone  $\bar{a}$  in the third measure of fig. 531, p. 583, admits of being explained merely as a prolonged tone; and so also the tone  $\bar{c}$  twice in fig. 532, p. 583 (compare § 328, at ((II))); as also the tone  $\bar{g}$  in the fifth measure of fig. 617, i, p. 621; so that in all these cases we may take the harmonies to be merely three-fold harmonies, instead of four-fold harmonies.

#### § 459.

Now what has been remarked above differs very widely from all that we had observed from § 343 to the present place, in relation to the practicability of

introducing tones foreign to the harmony; and it would truly be very interesting to be able to seek out a satisfactory explanation of such deviation. What we find on this subject in other musical works can give us but very little satisfaction.

That is to say, these authors find again, in such a prolongation of tones, only elliptical resolutions. Thus they say, for example, of the foregoing fig. 816, *ι*, p. 720, one has only to imagine it to be otherwise than it is, namely, as it is in *λ*, p. 720. Here the tone  $\bar{a}$  would be resolved according to the rule for the resolution of suspensions, and this resolution would only be omitted in *ι*, and thus the tone  $\bar{a}$  would be resolved by the omission of the resolution!

To us, who do not possess the fortunate gift of feeling satisfied with such windy food, it would serve as no explanation to be told that the thing would be entirely natural, if only it were different from what it actually is.

For this reason I could most earnestly wish it were possible to go into an inquiry, *how, when, and according to what laws* our ear will justify such a prolongation of a tone belonging to the foregoing harmony. For, that it is not everywhere, unconditionally and in every manner, admissible, but only may occur in many cases, will be readily ascertained by the least inquiry. Since, however, the time and the space allotted to this work so urgently impel me to brevity and dispatch, I must here restrain myself from these inquiries. I should regret it the less, if I could refer my readers to another work in which they could find the due information on this subject; but, as it is, I must refer them to their own correct feeling and good ear, in which, I can easily persuade myself, they will find at least a more certain guide than in our elliptic and catachretic books of instruction.

It will be observed, moreover, that such a prolongation of a tone generally takes place only in a very few cases, and usually not with good effect otherwise than in the principal part.

## DIVISION II.

### ANTICIPATED TONES.

#### § 460.

If we examine the example in fig. 817, p. 720, we shall find that the tone  $\bar{d}$  which occurs in the first measure is indeed foreign to the  $\text{C}$ -harmony of this measure, but that *the tone  $\bar{d}$  is found in the following harmony  $\text{C}$* .—In like manner the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the second measure is found in the  $\text{F}$ -harmony of the third measure.—And so also in fig. 821,

(Fig. 821.)



(Fig. 821 continued.)



the first  $\bar{c}$  is not indeed found in the first harmony, but in the following one. The same is also true of all the following similar tones; as it is also in relation to the tone  $f\sharp$  in the last chord but one of fig. 822:

(Fig. 822.)

HAYDN'S SYMPHONY IN D-MINOR—FINALE.



in relation to  $\bar{g}\sharp$  in fig. 823,

(Fig. 823.)

VOGLER'S MISSA PASTORALE.



in relation to  $\bar{b}\flat$  in the second measure of fig. 824,

(Fig. 824.)

SPONTINI.



and also in relation to  $\bar{c}\sharp$  in the first measure, and the last  $\bar{b}$  in the third measure of fig. 825,

(Fig. 825.)

J. S. BACH.



This second class of examples shows us, therefore, that our ear in many cases tolerates and approves of the fact, *that, shortly before an harmonic step, a part, during the continuance of the first harmony, strikes an interval of the following harmony, and thus anticipates the latter.*

I would very gladly here again go into the inquiry, how, when, and according to what laws, such an anticipation of a tone belonging to the following harmony during the continuance of the first harmony, is practicable, compatibly with the organization of our ear. But I must here also repeat the regret which I formerly expressed in relation to *prolonged intervals*, and likewise the remark, that these anticipations take place as rarely and as limitedly as do the before-mentioned prolonged intervals.

## DIVISION III.

## APPENDED NOTES.

## § 461.

The tone  $\bar{b}$  in the third measure of fig. 817, p. 720, is again different from both the foregoing species of notes foreign to the harmony. It is neither continued on from the foregoing  $\mathcal{F}$ -harmony (§ 458), nor is it an anticipated interval of the following harmony  $\mathcal{C}$  (§ 460); but—we know not how else to name it—is arbitrarily *appended* to the tone  $\bar{a}$ . In the same arbitrary manner the tone  $\bar{g}$  is appended to the tone  $\bar{f}$  in fig. 826:

(Fig. 826.)



Accordingly, we perceive, from this third class of examples, that *an harmonic note may many times have arbitrarily appended to it (hitched on behind it) a neighbouring tone, of short duration, which is foreign both to the present and to the following harmony.*

For reasons which have already several times been mentioned, I must here again deny myself the privilege of a farther investigation, and must satisfy myself with merely remarking, that I designate tones of this species by the term *appended notes*.—It is perceived what an extensive field of theory here remains unexplored. May an abler hand than mine undertake the labour of its examination. (See §§ 458—461.)

## DIVISION IV.

## ORGAN-POINT.

## § 462.

Still another deviation from all that we have yet observed is afforded by the example in fig. 818, p. 721. Here the harmonic combinations of the second half of the first measure, namely,  $[c \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{b}]$  and  $[c \bar{b} \bar{d} \bar{f} \bar{a}]$ , admit of being explained neither as consisting of purely harmonic tones nor according to any of the thus far known laws for the progression of tones foreign to the harmony. (For, if we assume the fundamental harmony here to be  $\mathbb{C}^7$ , and the tone  $c$  of the base a transition-tone, it follows that the latter does not resolve itself.— If we assume that the fundamental harmony continues to be  $\mathbb{C}$ , and that the tones of the upper part are transition-tones, then it is not easy to see how the upper part, instead of proceeding from the tone  $\bar{b}$ , foreign to the harmony, to a proximate principal tone, should be permitted rather to go by a skip to another tone foreign to the harmony, namely, to  $\bar{a}$ , and how also the other parts could move so unnaturally.)

Similar harmonic combinations of a still more striking character will be found in the following measures, — as also in figs. 827 — 835 :

(Fig. 827.)



(Fig. 828, i.)



MOZART.

(Fig. 828, k.)



MOZART.

(Fig. 829.)

*Recit. Bellm.* *Oboe.* *Bellm.* **MOZART.**

Co - stan - za! Co - stan - za!

(Fig. 830.)

**HAYDN'S VIOLIN QUARTETT.**

G: I C: V7 I V7 G: IV I V7 I

(Fig. 831.)

**MEYERBEER'S ENMA.**

F: I C: V7 F: V7 I V7 I

(Fig. 832.)

**F. SCHNEIDER'S MASS.**

1st Cho. *p*

2d Cho. *p*



(Fig. 833.)

J. G. SCHICHT'S VENI SANCTI SPIRITUS.



(Fig. 834.)

*Allegro.*

BEETHOVEN'S MOUNT OF OLIVES.



(Fig. 835, i.)

MOZART'S CLEMENZA DI TITO.



(k.)



If we carefully examine all these examples, we shall find that *they all agree with one another in the following characteristics.*

The continued stationary tone is always first heard as an harmonic interval, and indeed either as a tone of the first or of the fifth degree of the key, and then during the time of one or more harmonies it remains stationary until again some chord occurs to which it belongs as an harmonic interval; and thus it is a genuine harmonic interval both at the beginning and at the end of its duration, and is foreign to the harmony only during the intermediate time.

From this observation we may deduce the following general principle, namely: it is quite compatible with the due gratification of our ear, *that the tone of the first or of the fifth degree of the scale, after it has once been heard as an harmonic tone, should still continue on during the occurrence of other harmonies to which it is totally foreign, until again another harmony appears to which it belongs.*

---

§ 463.

A passage in which a tone is thus continued on is technically called an *organ-point*—(perhaps because it may have first come into use in connection with organ-playing).

The examples referred to, teach us at the same time, that these continued stationary tones *occur in various ways.*

At one time (and indeed most usually) they appear in the base, as in fig. 818, p. 721, and figs. 827—833, pp. 726—728; at another time in a middle part, as in fig. 834, p. 728, and still at another time in the upper part, as in fig. 835, p. 728.

The stationary tone is at one time actually continued on without interruption, as in fig. 827, p. 726, at another time repeatedly struck anew, as in fig. 828, p. 726, and near the end of fig. 830, p. 727; and again even ornamented with secondary tones, as in fig. 818 *k*, p. 721; and so also the other parts are frequently garnished with transition-tones and suspensions, as is the case, for example, in fig. 830, &c. p. 727.

---

§ 464.

From the above-mentioned practicability of allowing a tone to continue on in the manner proposed, arises again a new species of *equivocalness*. For, we can now, for example, explain the passage in fig. 836 also as an organ-point:

(Fig. 836.)



According to our earlier explanation (§ 355), the combinations  $\overline{[b \ d \ f \ a]}$  and  $\overline{[ab \ b \ d \ f]}$  consisted purely of tones foreign to the harmony, and accordingly the harmony was, without interruption, the three-fold chord of  $\mathbb{C}$ ;—but now we know that the above-mentioned combinations may also be regarded as actual  $\mathbb{C}^7$ -harmonies, while the tone  $\bar{c}$ , which is continued on in the base, may be regarded as an organ-point.

In like manner, as was observed in § 381, we may very much simplify and facilitate the explanation of fig. 663, p. 645, by regarding the uninterruptedly continued  $\bar{d}$  as an organ-point:—and in like manner also that of figs. 664 and 665, pp. 645 and 646.

---

### § 465.

Many theorists will not acknowledge the above-mentioned (§ 462) right of a tone to consider stationarily on in the manner proposed, and accordingly *prohibit all such organ-points*, as contrary to rule and to the ear; particularly *Vogler*, who compares it to the monotonous doggerel of the bag-pipe. (A *Mr. von Driberg* also, in a little book entitled “*The Practical Music of the Greeks\**,” calls the tone which is continued on as an organ-point, in the commencement of the Allegro of the Overture in *Don Juan*, an *unprecedented cacophony*, which he compares to the lowest kind of buzzing, rattling music—!) But organ-points, after all, are not only in general use and recognition, but may in fact often be employed with fine effect. Only recollect, for instance, *Mozart’s* “*Constance!*” (fig. 829, p. 727); or hear the before-mentioned most beautiful organ-points of *Haydn* and *Meyerbeer*; and hear the many other organ-points in all the works of our most distinguished composers; and remember of how imposing effect it often is, particularly at or just before the close of a great and elaborate piece of music; and, finally, see how even *Vogler* himself, in spite of his disapprobation of organ-points, brings it frequently enough into his Pastoral Mass, (fig. 482, p. 565); and, after all this, one will no longer hesitate to regard this bigotted opposition to organ-points in its true light.

Moreover, he who, yielding a partial deference to the authority of the theorising musical literati, would still bring into his composition something analogous to the organ-point, namely, a tone continued on stationarily during several successive harmonies,—he must content himself with merely choosing those harmonies to all which this continuous tone is adapted.—The field of such a one is indeed far more limited than it would otherwise be; but yet not entirely without variety. Thus, if, for example, he wishes to introduce such a quasi-organ-point upon a base tone, he is not obliged to confine himself exclusively to the three-fold and four-fold chord of the base-tone and its fourth-sixth chord, as *Vogler* is accustomed to do in his organ-points; fig. 837:

---

\* *Die practische Musik der Griechen*, p. 95 and foll.

(Fig. 837.)

VOGLER.

Gott, des Weltalls Herr, Gott, des Weltalls Herr, Gott, des

Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah,  
Weltalls Herr, Gott, des &c.

Welt-alls Herr, Gott, des Weltalls Herr, Gott, des Weltalls Herr,  
Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah, Hal-le-lu-jah.

although this is sometimes done with great effect ; as, for example, in the *Pleni* of Vogler's Mass in *d*-minor ; in the conclusion of *C. M. von Weber's* Hymn, "*In seiner Ordnung schafft der Herr* ;" and especially in that most admirable closing chorus of his declamatory piece, "*Der erste Ton*," &c. ; but, as is shown by fig. 838,

(Fig. 838.)

I V d: V7 C: V I V

there are, even in this case, still other chords at command—and the example in fig. 234, p. 404 (measures 20 to 31), shows how one and the same tone *f*♯ may continue stationarily on during a very *long* series of very various modulations.

#### CONCLUDING REMARK

*On the Doctrine of Tones foreign to the Harmony.*

#### § 466.

I think I may safely assume, that the different ways in which a part may combine tones with itself which are foreign to the harmony have been detailed

with sufficient fulness, in what precedes, to warrant me in saying, that, if a part contains any tone foreign to the harmony whose existence cannot be explained in one or another of those ways, such a tone is always repulsive to the ear and and of ill effect. Thus, for example, one would find it difficult, in the second measure of the *Magnificat* of *J. S. Bach*, so excessively praised in musical journals, fig. 839, where the three upper series of notes so definitely and firmly

(Fig. 839.)

J. S. BACH.

express the harmony  $\text{C}\flat$ ,—I say, one would find it difficult here to explain or rather to justify the existence of the tone  $c$  in the base part, and how the base part should move by a skip from the fundamental tone of the  $\text{C}\flat$  harmony, through the tone  $c$ , which is foreign to the harmony, down to the tone  $g$ :—Observe, too, how intolerably harsh the tone  $c$  sounds. So also let me call attention to the intended transition-tone  $\bar{c}$  in the upper part of fig. 630, p. 628, &c.

It is true, indeed, that we not unfrequently find, in reading the works of the most approved masters, tones foreign to the harmony which sound perfectly well, while at the same time they appear to conflict with our rules; but this contrariety exists *only in appearance*. Thus, for example, we easily find such passages as that in fig. 625, *l*, p. 625, where the transition-tones of the base could not be justified according to our principles of transitions of the first and of subordinate ranks—(for the tone  $B\flat$  could not be a secondary tone of the first rank to  $c$ , because it is more remote than it could be in the scale of  $c$  minor; nor can it be a secondary tone of the second rank to  $B$ , because it stands on the same degree as  $B\flat$ , &c.):—but the whole problem is at once solved, when we write these secondary tones as in fig. 625, *k*, p. 625.

In fig. 835, *i*, also, p. 728, the transition-tones are properly to be explained as in *k*;—and all other like apparent contradictions of the rule admit of being explained in the same way.

*On a particularly remarkable passage in Mozart's Violin Quartett in C.\**

§ 466 bis.†

It now remains for me to fulfil the promise made at the end of § 225 (vol. i, p. 389), of presenting an analysis of the texture of the transitions, as well as of the modulatory course and other peculiarities, in the Introduction of Mozart's violin-quartett in *C*, which has been so frequently criticised in various journals during late years.

(Fig. 839½.)

[illegible]

\* These remarks are also printed in the periodical *Cäcilia* for 1831, bk. 53.

† The translation of this section has been added by the editor, Mr. Warner having omitted the whole of it, although he has allowed several references to it to remain uncanceled.—Ed.

(Fig. 839½ continued.)

The musical score is arranged in three systems, each containing two grand staves (treble and bass clef). The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and slurs. Dynamic markings are prominently featured throughout the piece.

**System 1:**

- Staff 1 (Treble): *p*, *cres.*, *f*
- Staff 2 (Bass): *cres.*, *f*
- Staff 3 (Treble): *cres.*, *f*
- Staff 4 (Bass): *f*

**System 2:**

- Staff 1 (Treble): *p*
- Staff 2 (Bass): *p*
- Staff 3 (Treble): *f*
- Staff 4 (Bass): *f*

**System 3:**

- Staff 1 (Treble): *sf p*, *f*, *p*
- Staff 2 (Bass): *sf p*, *fp*
- Staff 3 (Treble): *sf p*, *sf p*, *sf p*, *fp*
- Staff 4 (Bass): *sf p*, *sf p*, *sf p*, *fp*

The piece concludes with the instruction: *Segue (Allegro).*

The passage in question forms, as is well known, the commencement of the Introduction (given in fig. 839½) to Mozart's superb violin-quartett—No. 6 of the six, which he, in the dedication prefixed to the original edition (*Vienna presso Artaria e Comp.*), inscribed to his best friend, "*al suo migliore amico*," Joseph Haydn, as the fruit of a long and laborious work, "*il frutto di una lunga e laboriosa fatica*."

Immediately after the first appearance of this quartett, the first 8 or 9 bars of the introduction occasioned a great sensation, and did not well please those who heard them; much harshness and roughness being perceived therein, the allowableness or irregularity of which appeared extremely problematical.

Even old Sarti was so exceedingly amazed at the harshnesses which he here observed, that he wrote a special pamphlet on this passage—" *Osservazioni critiche sopra un quartetto di Mozart*,"—which, according to the testimony of M. Fétis†, still exists in the possession of Sig. B. Asioli, and in which the old master declaims with the most violent indignation against this composition, as opposed both to rule and to the sense of hearing; exclaiming, amongst other things: "*Che si può far di più per far stonare i professori!*"—" *What more can one do to astonish the professors!*"

Far more considerate is Haydn said to have been; for, being in an assembly of musicians, and requested to pronounce a decisive opinion on the controversy respecting the passage in question, he shifted compliance with the evasive declaration, that, as Mozart had so written the passage, he had good reasons for so doing and for not writing it otherwise. In a similar manner, on another occasion, Haydn forbore to pass an opinion on another of Mozart's works, and declared: "I cannot decide the dispute; but this I know, that Mozart is the greatest composer now living."—And at another time he remarked: "Could I but impress in the soul of every friend of music the inimitable works of Mozart, as profoundly and with the like *musical comprehension* and intense feeling as I myself comprehend and feel them, nations would vie with each other to possess such a treasure."—A beautiful parallel to the well-known reply of Mozart to a disparager of Haydn: "Sir, if you and I were melted together, we should both be very far from making a Joseph Haydn!"

Prof. Fétis, in an article specially devoted to this passage in his *Revue*‡, speaks more openly and indiscreetly than Haydn felt himself at liberty to do. He calls the quartett "*entaché d'un début bizarre, ou le compositeur semble avoir pris plaisir à mettre à la torture une oreille délicate*," "*disfigured by an odd beginning, where the composer appears to have taken pleasure in torturing a delicate ear*;"—he terms the passage a "*passage bizarre*," "*a whimsical passage*," and is unable to comprehend "*qu'un musicien tel que Mozart ait écrit de semblable harmonie*,"—" *des fautes grossières*,"—" *une entrée d'imitation mal faite*,"—" *dont l'effet est horrible*,"—" *inconcevables dissonances sans but qui déchirent l'oreille*,"—" *car de pareilles fautes blessent la raison, le sens et le goût*:"—" *how a musician like Mozart could write such harmony*,"—" *with gross faults*"—" *a bad entry of a point of imitation*,"—" *the effect of which is horrible*"—" *inconceivable dissonances without any design, which lacerate the ear*,"—" *for such faults are offensive alike to reason, sense, and taste*."

Even the *authenticity* of the passage was very recently inclined to be doubted||; and, in order to be convinced on this point, it was thought necessary to visit London, where the original manuscript, written by Mozart himself, still exists in the possession of Mr. Stumpf, the harp maker; which long journey, however, might have been spared, by

\* For extracts from this pamphlet, see the *Harmonicon* for 1832, pp. 373—378.—Ed.

† *Revue Musicale*, tome v; No. 26, July 24, 1829.

‡ Tome v; July 1829, p. 601 and following.

|| *Revue Musicale*, tome v; July 24, 1829, p. 605.



referring to A. André's edition of Mozart's well-known Thematic Diary, or Catalogue of his Compositions, from February 9th, 1784, to November 15th, 1791; the autograph original of which is still in the possession of Mr. André\*: an inspection of this would have proved that, at pages 10 and 11, under No. 13, Mozart had entered the passage in question in his own hand-writing exactly as it is engraved in the quartett, and dated it January 14th, 1785—consequently eight months prior to the date of the dedication†.

Against the frankness of M. Fétis, there arose a champion in the person of a M. Perne, of Laon‡, who said nothing more than so many words on Mozart's excellence, and that such and such a harmony and succession of harmonies, &c. even—such and such a harmony and succession of harmonies exist,—and that the *force tonale* makes all right.—

M. Fétis, however, immediately answered M. Perne|| with specious counter-arguments, and with the increasing assurance that he had not yet exposed half the offensive features of the passage in question, and that he could still point out many more: "*Si j'avais eu l'intention de corriger tout ce qu'il y a de choquant dans ce passage, j'aurais eu beaucoup à faire. Par exemple,*" &c.—"*Had it been my intention to have corrected everything that is offensive in this passage, I should have had much to do. For example,*" &c.

But a new opponent, Mr. A. C. Leduc, instantly appeared in the Leipzig Musical Journals§, in order, as a vindicator of Mozart, to maintain and defend, step by step, the correctness and beauty of the passage, and to assure us, that Mozart, when writing the introduction, exercised his free will and consideration, and had a determinate effect in view¶,—and then, after the usual fashion, proceeded to personalities, charging M. Fétis with envy of Mozart's fame, little-minded vanity, and other impurities—impure enough!

This again occasioned a further article on the harmonic and contrapuntal value of the passage in question, in which M. Fétis defended his views; but, despising the personalities, dispatched them in a few words\*\*.

The dispute was still further carried on by another article in the before-mentioned journal††, and not less disfigured by personalities against M. Fétis;—and who knows how much longer they will continue to quarrel with so much bitterness?

Frequently have I been asked since that time, why *I* have abstained from saying a word on a subject of such lively discussion.

But I considered that a special dissertation on my part would be superfluous, chiefly because I had taken this very passage, in *many places*‡‡, as an example for the elucidation of this or that theoretical tenet, and consequently, for the most part, had fully analysed whatever appeared peculiar or remarkable in these combinations of tones.

\* *Cécilia*, vol. xi, page 329.

† Prof. Fétis is therefore in error, when, in his *Revue* (tome vi, No. 2, Aug. 7, 1829, p. 32), he writes of this quartett: "*Il y a environ cinquante ans que le quatuor de Mozart a été publié.*"—"About fifty years have elapsed since the publication of Mozart's quartett." At that time, 44 years had not expired.

‡ *Revue*, tome vi, No. 2, Aug. 7, 1829, p. 25.

|| In the place before referred to, p. 32.

§ Leipzig *Allgem. Musik. Zeitung*, 1830, pp. 117—132.

¶ In the place before referred to, p. 123.

\*\* *Revue*, tome viii, p. 821.

†† Leipzig *Allgem. Mus. Zeitung*, 1831, pp. 81 and 101.

‡‡ For example, in §§ 642, 643, 644, 750, 756, 772, 774, 775, 777, 814, of the first edition of 1817—1821; and in §§ 360, 361, 362, 363, 408, 493, 494, 495, 500, of the second edition of 1824, and of the third, of 1830—31.

Nevertheless, if, in answering a new challenge, to me of particular importance, I also devote to a special consideration the oft-discussed composition, in order to employ it, in a precisely similar manner as I have done several other pieces in § 225, as an example for the practice of analyzing the course of the modulation, &c. &c.—I must yet request, before-hand, that no one will on any account expect a *judgment on the frequently disputed theoretical allowableness and irregularity* of the passage in question.

Whoever is acquainted with my Theory, and its nature and method, knows that the unconditionally enjoining or forbidding—the explanation of this or that combination or succession of tones, succession of chords, &c. as allowed or prohibited—is in no instance my forte. This tendency of mine, consisting only in essentials, drawn from *observation* of what sounds well or ill, smooth or harsh—entirely discarding all *a priori* and dogmatically theorizing *demonstrations*, as to *why* this or that must be so and so, and not otherwise—I have already taken occasion to explain, in the Remark to § 95\*, in the following words:—"In general—for I now speak at once both of *great* and of *little strictness*,—the present Theory will be found neither more free nor yet more strict than every other, but just as strict and just as free as any other. I shall call attention to *every* harshness which other writers have left unnoticed, and others again I shall unconditionally forbid. How many or how few harsh or smooth combinations of tones *are to be made use of*, for this or that object of art, is a question which it is not the province of *technics* to determine; its decision belongs rather to a correct musical feeling, and to the most advanced departments of *æsthetics*."

Of this, however, we may be fully assured, that the problem of music by no means solely consists in offering to the ear the most soothing combinations of tones, and whatever is exclusively delicate and sweet-sounding; but much rather in presenting to it, at times and to a certain degree, even rough, harsh-sounding, strange combinations, which must be employed for the sake of contrast. *How far* these may be carried, or to *what degree* of harshness they may be permitted or desired to strike the ear, is a matter to which, as in all relative cases, no absolute limits can be theoretically assigned. Considerably harsh, coarse, rough and shrill combinations must be allowed to the musical composer, according to the amount of harshness, &c. which he aims at expressing: and that alone can be said to be absolutely forbidden, which sounds in so high a degree harsh, or even ugly, as to be actually *offensive* to the ear. Whether such is the case in this or that combination of tones—whether so much of the harsh and coarse is comprised therein, that the total amount of harshness is indeed too much for the ear—must in the end be altogether left to the supreme decision of refined taste and a musically educated ear.

Once for all, music is not a science endowed with mathematical deduction and completeness; it is not a system presenting us with absolute rules of permission or prohibition, the adoption of which can in all cases determine—like "twice two are four"—the value or worthlessness, the accuracy or inaccuracy, the lawfulness or unlawfulness of this or that combination or succession of tones; and all the pretensions of those who have imagined they could found the theory of music on mathematics, and from such an assumed foundation deduce and establish absolute precepts, appear on the slightest examination as empty and ridiculous dreams, the fallacy of which can be clearly proved by the first best example†. (§ IX, Remark‡.)

This is *my* musical theoretical creed, which I have not only expressed in numberless parts of this work, but also established by frequent examples.

From *me*, therefore, a *judgment* will not be expected on the question, whether, and

\* Vol. i, page 218.

† In the original: "*durch das erste beste Beispiel*."—Ed.

‡ There is no "Remark" to this section. It is appended to § X (vol. i, page 14). The subject is also alluded to in the last paragraph of the Remark to § IV, page 8.—Ed.

to what extent, this or that occurring in the Introduction under consideration may be *allowed or disallowed, and categorically forbidden.*

But what I can furnish is the following:—

That the passage in question sounds strange to the ear—and that, too, *very strange*—is certain. *The causes which produce this strangeness*, partly alone and partly in their co-operation, *admit of being theoretically pointed out* (and have been, as already mentioned, generally referred to in several parts of this work).

A complete *analysis of the entire harmonic and melodic texture* of the before-named passage will enable us to understand all those causes, as well singly as in their connection, and will thus account to us *what it is* which seems so very strange in these clashings of sounds, and which strikes the ear with such decided harshness.

*To deliver such an analysis is the sole task I here propose to myself; and when accomplished, it may be freely left to the taste and ear of every person to decide whether the harshness, the peculiarity, the strangeness—or whatever else we may choose to call it—resulting from the concurrence of the unravelled details, is too great, or not too great, to be offered to the ear.*

---

[ § 1. ]

In proceeding to furnish the promised analysis, I think the best mode of accomplishing it will be for me to examine the controverted passage; first,

(I) In respect to the *succession of harmonies*, or the *modulation*, on which it [the passage] is based;—then,

(II) In considering the *tones foreign to the harmony*, or *transition-tones* which occur therein;—then,

(III) Some of the so-called *cross relations*—as also

(IV) Some remarkable *parallel movements of the parts*;—afterwards,

(V) To examine the entire passage once more, in regard to all the above-mentioned points *taken together*;—and lastly,

(VI) To discuss the rhetorical meaning of the passage, on which account Mozart doubtless so wrote it.

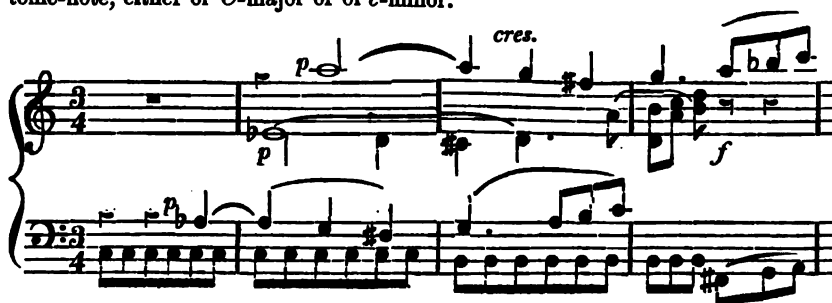
---

(I)—*Modulation.*

[ § 2. ]

The very commencement of the piece, until the entrance of the second measure, presents the ear with a series of interesting and highly agreeable *equivocalnesses*, both as regards the key and the succession of harmonies.

The base tone c, which is first sounded alone, forms in itself a perfectly equivocal beginning. This, however, the ear is soon inclined to receive as the tonic-note, either of C-major or of c-minor.



[ § 3. ]

At the last quarter-note of the first measure, the tone  $ab$  comes in with this  $c$ . Here, again, the ear is left in doubt, whether to consider this tone as  $g\sharp$ , or as  $ab$ . (§§ XIX, XXI, 219, 280 A\*.)

It would indeed appear as  $g\sharp$ , *e. g.* if the passage were continued, perhaps, as follows :



And even understood as  $ab$ , there still remains much that is equivocal ; for the ear has yet to choose whether it shall regard the combination  $[c, ab]$ . . . . . as belonging to the harmony. . . . .  $Ab$  and, as such, either as the harmony of the sixth degree of  $c$ -minor. . . . .  $c:VI$ , or as the tonic harmony of  $Ab$ -major. . . . .  $Ab:I$  ; —or whether it shall regard it as belonging to the minor three-fold harmony. . . . .  $f$  and, as such, either as the harmony of the fourth degree of  $c$ -minor. . . . .  $c:IV$ , or perhaps as the tonic harmony of  $f$ -minor. . . . .  $f:I$ .

More exact information and assurance respecting the key, which is still not decisively indicated, must be gathered by the ear from what follows. (§ 221.)

As the only two tones yet heard ( $c$  and  $ab$ ) hereupon seem to be completed into a three-fold chord of  $Ab$ , by the entrance of the tone  $eb$ , at the beginning of the following measure, the ear experiences that agreeable satisfaction which it almost invariably receives from the gentle removal of harmonic equivocalness.—But even now it is still only a sweet misgiving of assurance ; for the choice yet remains to the ear to consider the harmony. . . . .  $Ab$



either as. . . . .  $c:VI$ , or as. . . . .  $Ab:I$ .

—Is it, then, to be considered as the former, or as the latter ? for, even now, no decisively preponderating reason is to be formed for either ; to say nothing of the fact that it has not yet been determined, whether the tone  $ab$  is not, perhaps, a mere transition to  $g$ , in which case the harmony would depend on the minor three-fold chord  $f$ .



Still, therefore, doubtful of the key, the ear is yet kept in a state of expectancy for the result of what follows.

\* This last reference is given in the original, but it is evidently a mistake. Perhaps § 208 may be intended.—Ed.

## [ § 4. ]

In this state of undecided attunement, from which the ear longs to be freed, by a subsequent confirmation either of the key of *c* or of that of *Ab*, it hears the tone *ab* descend to *g*, at the second quarter-note of the second measure, and at the same moment the tone  $\bar{a}$ —which is foreign to the expected key—appears in the upper part; and, far from removing, it much rather augments the uncertainty; for, after the previous combination [*c ab eb*], the tones [*c g eb a*] now sound together—



a combination which, regarded as a four-fold harmony with minor fifth. . . . .<sup>°a7</sup>, might be assumed as belonging to the seventh degree of *Bb*-major. . . *Bb* : <sup>°v</sup>II<sup>7</sup>, or—as being nearer to the previous assumption of the ear—to the second degree of *g*-minor. . . . .<sup>°g</sup>II<sup>7</sup>. (§ 177, Table *f*.)

Instead of these two assumptions (which in any case presupposes a modulation, from one of the keys previously assumed, either into *Bb*-major or into *g*-minor), the ear may also assume that the tone *g* is perhaps a mere transition, not at all belonging to the harmony, and, on that account, will probably explain to itself its relation, in a more simple manner, in the following part of the measure.

Still, however, continuing in doubt, it longs to hear that which follows.

## [ § 5. ]

At the next quarter-note, indeed, the *g* descends to *f*♯, in order to produce the combination [*c f*♯  $\bar{d}$   $\bar{a}$ ], which, in accordance with all that precedes, the ear then unhesitatingly receives as the transferring dominant chord (§ 201)



of *c*-minor; consequently as. . . . .<sup>°c7</sup> (in the third inversion).

Thus, then, is it confirmed, that the tone *g*, which was heard in the combination [*c g eb a*] during the previous second quarter-note, was in fact only a mere transition to *f*♯, whose place it had for a moment occupied; that, consequently, the succession of harmonies in this second measure was not really

*Ab*—<sup>°a7</sup>—<sup>°c7</sup>—(!)

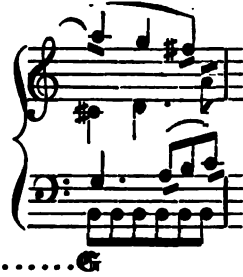
but at once, and more simply,

*Ab*—<sup>°c7</sup>.

After this <sup>°c7</sup>-harmony, as the transferring dominant chord of *c*-minor, the ear now expects the major three-fold harmony of *C* to follow.

## [ § 6. ]

The harmony entering in the next measure appears, therefore, wholly in accordance with the expectation of the ear, as.....

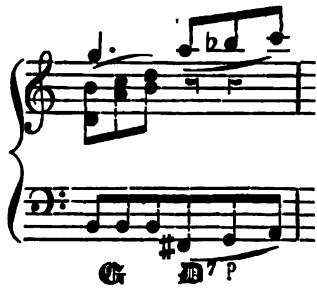


(where  $\bar{c}\sharp$  in the second part appears as a minor second heavy transition-tone [changing-note] to the following harmonic tone  $\bar{d}$ , and  $\bar{a}$  as a prepared changing-note [suspension, § 417] to the following principal tone  $\bar{g}$ ;—subsequently, the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the upper part,  $\bar{a}$  in the second part, and the tones  $a$  and  $\bar{c}$  in the third part, are interwoven as transitions).

By the entry of this  $\bar{G}$ -harmony, therefore, the previous equivocalness is at last so far removed, that the ear perceives this harmony established as that of the dominant or fifth degree (dominant harmony) either of  $c$ -minor, or of  $C$ -major. (§ 211.)

## [ § 7. ]

During the first two parts of the following measure also, the ear is still sensible of the same dominant harmony, until, at the last part of the measure (at the 5th eighth-note), the tone  $\bar{b}\flat$  enters in the upper part, contrary to this harmony, and being foreign both to the scale of  $C$ -major and to that of  $c$ -minor, the ear is compelled to receive the combination [ $G \bar{b}\flat$ ] as belonging to another harmony of some other key; and indeed, in accordance with the combination itself, it will perhaps most readily take it for a minor three-fold



$\bar{g}$ -harmony.....  
as the tonic-chord of  $g$ -minor.....

The succession of harmonies in this measure is, therefore,

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{G} \quad \bar{D} \quad \bar{g} \\ G:I \quad - \quad V \quad -g:I \\ \text{or } C:V \quad - G:V \quad -g:I \end{array}$$

or, if we regard the tones  $\bar{f}\sharp$  and  $\bar{a}$  as mere transitions:

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{G}:I \quad - \quad g:I, \\ \text{or } C:V \quad - \quad g:I. \end{array}$$

## [ § 8. ]

In this, although the most natural, mode of explanation, the following is nevertheless particularly worthy of remark.

First, a modulation of this kind (namely, one which is so effected, that, after a dominant harmony—*e. g.* after the three-fold  $\text{G}\flat$ -harmony, as the dominant harmony of *C* or *c*—there follows immediately, or what is equivalent to immediately, the tonic-harmony of the minor key of the major fifth above, consequently  $\text{g}$ , as 1 of *g*)—such a modulation is of rare occurrence, and but little familiar to the ear; on which account it is not particularly inclined to be satisfied with it in any case.

## [ § 9. ]

Secondly, however, the manner in which this modulation takes place in the above instance, is by no means the most favorable; as the  $\text{b}\bar{\text{b}}$  here only enters, casually as it were, on the weak, last part of the measure (§ 241, No. 4), after we have been previously accustomed for a long time always to hear  $\text{b}\bar{\text{b}}$ .—In the third measure and the first two parts of the fourth, after hearing in the first place the third part [viola] proceed in eighth-notes from  $\text{a}$  to  $\text{b}$ , then the second part [2nd violin] in like manner from  $\bar{\text{a}}$  to  $\bar{\text{b}}$ , and then again the third similarly from  $\bar{\text{a}}$  to  $\bar{\text{b}}$ ,



and now also hearing the upper part [1st violin] ascend from  $\bar{\text{a}}$ , one very naturally supposes that it will likewise proceed from this  $\bar{\text{a}}$  to  $\bar{\text{b}}$ :



Quite contrary, however, to all expectation, it does not so proceed, but differs from the example of its associates—for what reason one cannot well perceive,—and, instead of the previous  $\text{b}$ , now suddenly introduces  $\text{b}\flat$ :



and, after the third part has just before given

$\text{a} - \text{b} - \bar{\text{c}}$ , and then  $\bar{\text{a}} - \text{b} - \bar{\text{c}}$ ,



and the second part, in like manner,

$\bar{\text{a}} - \bar{\text{b}} - \bar{\text{c}}$ ,

departing from these precedents, it now at once gives,

$$\text{not } \overline{\text{a}} - \overline{\text{b}} - \overline{\text{c}}, \quad \text{but } \overline{\text{a}} - \overline{\text{bb}} - \overline{\text{c}},$$

and that, too, at a part of the measure (on the last light part of  $\frac{3}{4}$  measure) which, on account of its brevity and want of internal weight (§ 241, Nos. 1, 4), is not adapted to form an epoch for the ear in respect to a digression and modulation so slightly apparent. Thus this upper part seeks to achieve such a reform (which, were it presented in a more imposing manner [§ 241, No. 5; § 495], or even with somewhat greater fulness, *e. g.*

(n.)  or (o.) 

the ear would perhaps sooner accommodate itself to), not only at a moment of so little weight, but also in a mere two-part passage, accompanied only by G in the base, without the least co-operation of its pausing associates, while their b still resounds in the ear,—to achieve it, too, purely on its own authority, without being generally moved thereto; setting up itself above the other parts, and, as knowing better than they, seeking to reform the major three-fold  $\overline{\text{G}}$ -harmony (which, as the result of the co-operation of all four parts, has hitherto held sway during a longer and more weighty part of the measure) to a minor three-fold  $\overline{\text{g}}$ -harmony; in which, moreover, it derives but little satisfactory assistance from the base, which, as yet, alone accompanies it, as this lies at so great a distance,  $\text{G} - \overline{\text{bb}}$ , without the interposition and filling up of middle parts, and is therefore unfavorable to a ready apprehension by the ear (§ 69).

On the occurrence of a change of harmony entering in such an undecided manner, the ear will be almost led to doubt whether it should really and seriously believe what it hears: whether the first violinist, with his fine, thin, retailed  $\overline{\text{bb}}$ , has a mind, in the last third part of the measure, to reform the b which has hitherto been played by all: or whether he may not have stopped  $\overline{\text{bb}}$ , instead of  $\overline{\text{b}}$ , entirely by mistake.—Or perhaps it doubts whether the  $\overline{\text{bb}}$  should not rather be considered as  $\overline{\text{a}\sharp}$ , and, as such, a minor second transition to a following  $\overline{\text{b}}$ ; thus:





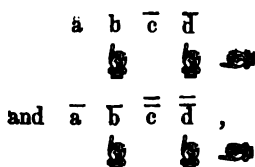
which conjecture, however, is certainly disappointed, as not  $\bar{b}$ , but  $\bar{c}$  follows,



and the ear is consequently necessitated (§§ 370 and 380) again to abandon the appeasing explanation ( $\bar{a}\sharp$  instead of  $\bar{b}\flat$ ), and quickly to attune itself to the key of *g*-minor, during this last light part of the measure.

[ § 10. ]

Scarcely, however, has it had time to conform to this necessity, than another new and unexpected succession of harmony is again presented to it, at the very beginning of the next (5th) measure, by the entry of the combination [ $B\flat \bar{\bar{d}}\flat$ ], brought in by the upper part, which, notwithstanding its lower associates have just before given



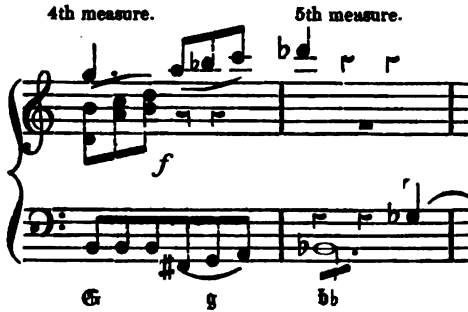
now suddenly proceeds in quite an opposite way, and gives



The ear, which has already sought for a satisfactory explanation of the appearance of  $\bar{b}\flat$  instead of  $\bar{b}$ , is now still less able clearly to account for the combination [ $B\flat \bar{\bar{d}}\flat$ ].

However, the connection in which it stands with the following (6th) measure,

shows that the combination in question is really meant for the minor three-fold chord  $\text{bb}$ , as the tonic harmony of  $\text{bb}$ -minor,



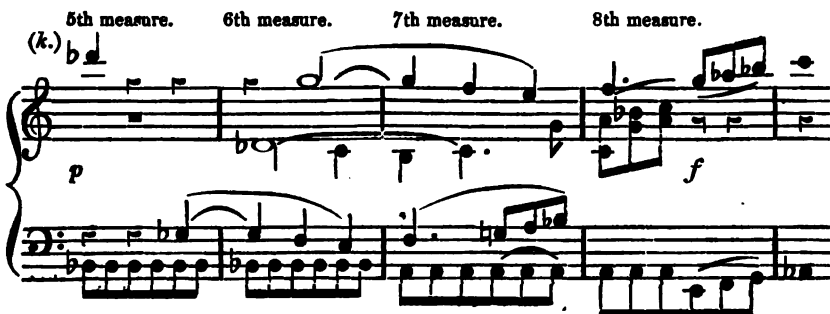
and consequently forms, of itself, a modulation from the scarcely announced key of  $\text{g}$ -minor, into that of  $\text{bb}$ -minor (a key far remote from  $\text{C}$ -major,  $\text{c}$ -minor,  $\text{G}$ -major, and  $\text{g}$ -minor, § 180),—and that, too, by a wholly unprepared entry of the harmony  $\text{bb} : 1$ , immediately after the minor three-fold  $\text{g}$ -harmony, as  $\text{g} : 1$ ; and, moreover, only in two tones, very widely distant from each other.

[ § 11. ]

Perhaps the ear might spare itself the reception of this more remote modulation, by taking the  $\text{db}$  of the first violin for  $\text{c}\sharp$ , and hence as a minor-second transition to an expected  $\text{d}$ .



But this assumption is as little confirmed as that before mentioned, of  $\text{a}\sharp$  instead of  $\text{bb}$ ; for no  $\text{d}$  follows, but the phrase of the upper part rather concludes with that  $\text{db}$ , while the bass, with its repeated  $\text{Bb}$ , introduces anew the same formula



as that in the first and following measures, in the same manner as it there occurs, only in a key one degree lower, and the whole course of the measures 1, 2, 3, 4, is again repeated a tone lower—(with the sole difference that, in the 9th measure, the first violin proceeds, not to  $\overset{=}{\text{db}}$ , but to  $\overset{=}{\text{c}}$ , which latter sounds far less strange to the ear than the  $\overset{=}{\text{db}}$  did in the 5th measure).

## [ § 12. ]

By the foregoing analysis of the passage in question—the comprehension of which [passage] will now present no farther difficulty to the reader of all that precedes,—I have fulfilled the promise (in arrear from the end of § 225 to this place) of an *analysis of its modulatory course*. It will, however, be rendered still clearer by the subsequent consideration of its melodic or part intertwining.

(II)—*Transition-Tones.*

## [ § 13. ]

The second respect in which the passage under consideration is especially worthy of notice, and in part offensive, arises from several of the transition-tones which occur therein.

All, however, which appears remarkable under this head, has been already explained in §§ 360, 361, 362, 363, and 408, of the present volume (pages 617, 618, 620, and 678), to the perusal of which, in regular order, I must again call the attention of the reader.

(III)—*Cross Relations.*

## [ § 14. ]

In this respect also, the passage is peculiarly remarkable; in which point of view we shall consider it in §§ 492, 493, 494, and 495, and in the mean time can only refer to these places.

(IV)—*Parallel Movements of the Parts.*

## [ § 15. ]

The last remarkable feature that we observe in the oft-mentioned passage is, that, in two instances, two of the parts proceed together at the distance of a second, parallel to each other; respecting which, as not being a matter of particular importance, we also merely refer, in advance, to our § 500.

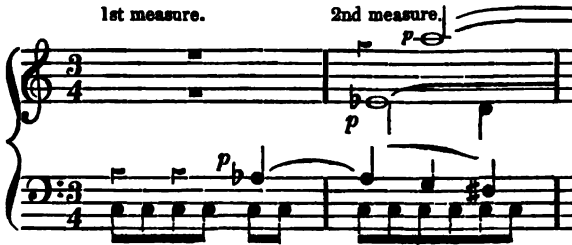
(V)—*Review of the Grammatical Construction of the Passage as a whole.*

## [ § 16. ]

Having examined the quoted passage in the foregoing separate divisions, in reference to [the subjects treated in] particular chapters of the theory of composition, it now remains for us to take a general review of it in regard to all these considerations and their *combined effect*.

## [ § 17. ]

The first thing which strikes the ear as particularly harsh in this passage, is the combination [c g  $\bar{e}b$   $\bar{a}$ ] in the second measure; and indeed the strangeness



lies in the meeting of several of the circumstances mentioned in the former paragraphs; in the entry of  $\bar{a}$  in the upper part forming a cross-relation (§ 493), besides the unprepared transition-tone g (§§ 361, 362), struck at the same time with this  $\bar{a}$  and with c of the base part, and thereby giving rise to the combination [c g  $\bar{e}b$   $\bar{a}$ ] at which the ear is doubly astonished. (See the former §§ 4 and 5.)

That the strangeness principally arises from the union of the above circumstances, will be evident, if we so alter the passage as to omit them; perhaps, *e. g.* in the following manner:

(i.) (k.)

Compare [ § 24. ]

(l.) (m.)

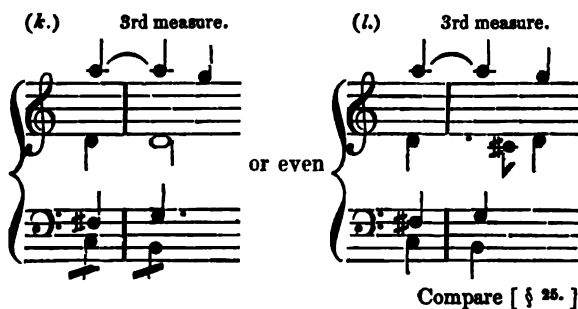
(n.) (o.)

[ § 18. ]

The second thing which sounds strange to the ear, is the combination [B g  $\bar{c}\sharp$   $\bar{a}$ ], at the beginning of the next (3rd) measure.



The appearance of the  $\bar{c}\sharp$ -harmony, it is true, is here perfectly welcome to the ear, and quite in accordance with its expectation (see § 6 preceding); but the satisfactory effect of this is again disturbed, by the sounding of  $\bar{c}\sharp$  in the second part. Willingly would the ear consent that, in the upper part, the secondary note  $\bar{a}$ , which has been prepared in the foregoing measure, should precede the fundamental tone  $\bar{g}$ , while the fundamental note g itself is also heard in the third part (§§ 360, 361): it is not this circumstance, nor the secondary note  $\bar{a}$ , which disturbs the satisfaction of the ear, but the  $\bar{c}\sharp$ ; as it will at once be found that the combination loses its harshness when the principal note is put in the place of this secondary note.



That  $\bar{c}\sharp$ —as secondary note of the tone  $\bar{d}$  belonging to the  $\bar{c}\sharp$ -harmony—which, as a boldly entering changing-note, robs its principal note  $\bar{d}$  of the heavier part of the measure during the value of an entire quarter-note (§ 354), and which, moreover, is also struck at the same time with the harmonic tones B and g (§§ 362, 363), comes, in this place, particularly unseasonable to the ear; which, having just before experienced dissatisfaction, had now expected a plain  $\bar{c}\sharp$ -chord—or perhaps one taken with the suspension  $\bar{a}$ ,—but certainly not that this  $\bar{c}\sharp$  would intrude itself, instead of the tone  $\bar{d}$  belonging to the harmony, and

produce harshness in the very first part of the measure, even at the entry of the desired  $\text{C}\sharp$ -harmony, thus changing the latter into the combination  $[\text{B } g \text{ c}\sharp \bar{\text{a}}]$ , which does not even form an apparent chord (§§ 407, 408).

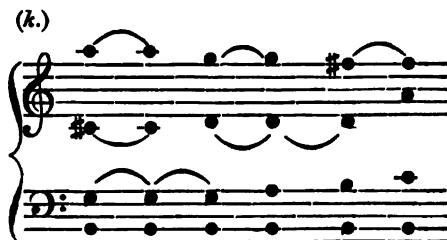
[ § 19. ]

In the same (3rd) measure also, sounds the secondary tone  $a$ , as a transition to  $b$ , which is struck, in the third [viola] part, with the fourth eighth-note in the base,  $\text{B}$ , (which is neither the fundamental tone, nor the fifth, but the third of the fundamental harmony § 361), and thus both tones are struck at the same time (§ 363).



And at the moment when that  $a$  passes on to its principal note, the upper part also moves again from the fundamental tone  $\bar{g}$  to the transition tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ ; and, simultaneously with this  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , the tones  $\text{B}$  and  $b$  (the third of the fundamental harmony) are likewise struck anew in the two lower parts (§ 363).

The transient  $\bar{f}\sharp$  still continues sounding, even when, in the last eighth-note of this measure, two other transition tones,  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{a}$ , occur—the latter, indeed, as a transition to  $\bar{b}$ . To these three tones [ $\bar{c}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ , and  $\bar{f}\sharp$ ], foreign to the harmony, the fundamental third  $\text{B}$ , in the base, is again struck anew (§§ 361, 363); so that, during the six eighth-notes of this measure, the following combinations are successively presented to the ear:



Immediately afterwards, at the second eighth-note of the following (4th) measure, the transitions  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{c}$  appear together, to which the fundamental third  $\text{B}$  in the base is again struck anew.

## [ § 20. ]

The second half of this (4th) measure presents us again with two peculiarities: the changing of the major  $\text{G}$ -harmony into a minor  $\text{g}$ -harmony (mentioned from § 7 to § 9), by the entry of  $\overline{\text{bb}}$ , instead of  $\overline{\text{b}}$ , in the upper part, with but little apparent reason (§ 9),—and also the cross relation produced by the entry of that very  $\overline{\text{bb}}$  in the upper part, against the  $\overline{\text{b}}$  which has been previously sounded in all the other parts (§ 494).

## [ § 21. ]

Lastly, the passing from this fourth to the following measure presents, through the entry of the combination [ $\text{Bb}$   $\overline{\text{db}}$ ], that little-called-for, and therefore strange, succession of keys  $\text{g}$ — $\text{bb}$ , mentioned in § 10.

That the whole phrase of the first four measures is now regularly repeated, from here onwards, in the four following—only in the key one degree lower—has been already remarked (§ 11, at the end).

(VI)—*Consideration of the Rhetorical Meaning of the Passage.*

## [ § 22. ]

Having hitherto considered the quoted passage wholly in reference to its *grammatical* structure, we have now to take a review of it in regard to its rhetorical treatment,—to consider it in relation to the rhetorical phrases employed by the composer, and their connection with each other; a consideration which will first unfold to us *why* Mozart could not avoid, or disdained to avoid, certain of the before-mentioned, and in part really perceptible, harsh peculiarities; and why, of the many exquisite suggestions for the improvement of the passage with which the critics so eagerly favored him, he had no inclination to employ a single one of them—(no, not even one of those named in the foregoing §§ 17 and 18).

## [ § 23. ]

The fundamental design of the whole passage was evidently the following imitation:



namely, where the melody of the part entering at the end of the first measure (the viola),

$\text{ab} - \text{ab} - \text{g} - \text{f}\sharp - \text{g}$

is *imitated* in the upper part (1st violin) entering one measure later, note for note, in the double octave above,

$\overline{\overline{a}}-\overline{\overline{a}}-\overline{\overline{g}}-\overline{\overline{f\sharp}}-\overline{\overline{g}}$

with the single exception, that the first tone of the 1st violin is not  $\overline{\overline{ab}}$ , like that of the middle part, but  $\overline{\overline{a\sharp}}$ , and hence the step from the first to the second tone in the upper part— $\overline{\overline{a}}$  to  $\overline{\overline{g}}$ —is that of a major second, whereas the step of the viola was from  $\overline{\overline{ab}}$  to  $\overline{\overline{g}}$ ; consequently, the imitation is not *quite* strict.—(The reason why  $\overline{\overline{a}}$  instead of  $\overline{\overline{ab}}$  stands in the upper part is easily explained: for, were  $\overline{\overline{ab}}$  given in the upper part at the moment when  $\overline{\overline{f\sharp}}$  sounds in the middle part, the combination [c  $\overline{\overline{f\sharp}}$   $\overline{\overline{ab}}$ ] would arise, which, whether regarded as a real or as an apparent chord (§ 91 B, or §§ 407, 408), would be decidedly less well-sounding;—whereas the combination [c  $\overline{\overline{f\sharp}}$   $\overline{\overline{a}}$ ] very naturally refers to a transferring dominant chord (§ 201).

[ § 24. ]

On a closer consideration of the passage alluded to in the foregoing section, we find, however, that, between the two imitating melodies before described, a third imitating part is also inserted, which, entering a quarter-note later than the  $\overline{\overline{ab}}$  of the viola, imitates the melody of it,

$\overline{\overline{ab}}-\overline{\overline{ab}}-\overline{\overline{g}}-\overline{\overline{f\sharp}}-\overline{\overline{g}}$

quite strictly, a fifth higher :

$\overline{\overline{eb}}-\overline{\overline{eb}}-\overline{\overline{d}}-\overline{\overline{c\sharp}}-\overline{\overline{d}}$



but with this difference, that the entry of this new middle part (the 2nd violin) does not begin, like that of the others, on the last part of the measure, and then by syncopation continue on to the heavier part of the next measure; but, on the contrary, it commences on the heavy, first part of the measure, and is continued on to the following lighter part (a difference which, in technical language, is called *imitatio per thesin et arsin*, with the more particular explanation of which, however, I will not here trouble the reader).

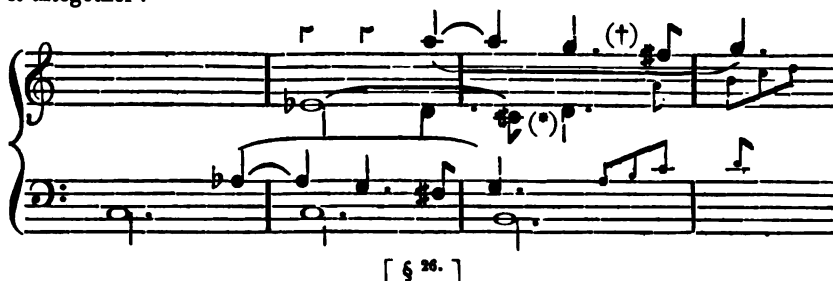
[ § 25. ]

That the before-mentioned harshness (§§ 18, 19) would naturally arise from the insertion of this new imitating part, and indeed from the  $\overline{\overline{c\sharp}}$  in the third

\* Compare [ § 17 ], fig. i.



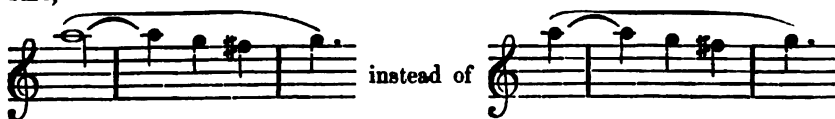
measure occurring therein, must have appeared unimportant to the composer; as otherwise, by a slight alteration of the melodies, he could easily have removed it altogether:



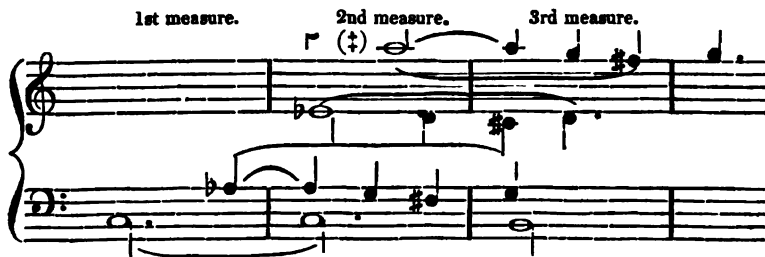
Thus, in the way heretofore mentioned, three imitating parts were obtained; but, besides that the imitations are not absolutely strict, as already remarked (§§ 22, 24), there yet remains the farther dissimilitude, that the melody of the viola is followed by that of the second violin *one* quarter-note later; but this melody of the 2nd violin is then followed by the 1st violin *two* quater-notes later:—or, in other words, the entry of the viola and of the 2nd violin are distant from each other *one* part of a measure (one quarter-note),—but that of the 2nd violin and of the 1st are distant *two* parts.

It might appear desirable to render the distance between these entries more uniform—to let the 1st violin enter as soon after the 2nd, as this did after the viola.

With a view to this, it certainly will not do to let the entire melody of the 1st violin begin a quarter-note earlier and so continue; but a similarity in the distance of the entry may be attained, *in a certain degree*, or, if the expression be preferred, as it were in appearance, by simply extending the duration of the first tone  $\bar{a}$ , by the value of a quarter-note, into the preceding part of the measure,



in which case, *each* imitating part will really *begin* at the distance of *one* quarter-note later than another:



\* Compare [ § 18 ], fig. 1.

† Compare [ § 19 ], second paragraph.

‡ Compare [ § 17 ].

only that, by thus extending the first tone of the upper part, the literal strictness of the imitation is certainly again impaired in another respect; and, furthermore, through the earlier entry of the  $\bar{a}$  immediately after the  $ab$  of the viola, the harshness arises which is mentioned in § 17: which casualties, however, the composer preferred to disregard, rather than relinquish the idea of making each part enter a quarter-note later than the preceding\*.

## [ § 17. ]

If we still continue to consider the course of the quoted passage in regard to imitation,—even the still more brief imitations which may arise from here onwards,—we shall find that the farther course of the melody of the viola

$$a-b-\bar{c}-\bar{d}$$

is imitated by the 2nd violin, which continues to follow the viola a quarter-note later,—yet no longer at the distance of a fifth, but at that of an octave:

$$\bar{a}-\bar{b}-\bar{\bar{c}}-\bar{\bar{d}}$$

after which the same melody is likewise repeated in the upper part, two quarter-

\* This is perhaps the place to say a few words in reference to the assertion made by Prof. Fétis, in the periodical before-mentioned, that the cause of the harshness of the passage in question arises from the non-observance of the maxim set up by him: that, in an imitation which is made alternately in the fifth and in the fourth, there should always be one or two times [parts of a measure], and in some cases one or two measures, more between the second and third entries, than between the first and second—(“*que dans une imitation que se fait alternativement à la quinte et à la quarte, il doit toujours y avoir un ou deux temps, et quelquefois une ou deux mesures de plus entre la seconde et la troisième entrée qu’entre la première et la seconde.*” *Revue Mus.* tome v, Juillet 1829, page 603;—*Traité du Contrepoint et de la Fugue*, liv. 1, p. 75, § 120)—a maxim, against which tolerably weighty objections, and still more weighty musical examples, have been already brought forward for M. Fétis, in the *Leipzig Allgem. Mus. Zeitung* for 1831, No. 6, p. 81.

But the whole maxim (whose discussion I reserve for my Theory of Double Counterpoint, which I hope soon to be able to finish†, where it is explained, so far as it is true, in an extremely simple manner, as a naturally understood consequence of known things)—the whole maxim, I say, is altogether unsuited to the passage to which it is intended to be applied, and so also are the objections brought against it; which will at once be perceived, if we simply bear in mind that, in this case, as before observed (§ 20), no real, but *only an apparently similar* distance of the entry exists, and that, in fact, *the imitation in the upper part begins with the THIRD quarter-note of the third measure (!)*, and, as continuing the *viola part*, it enters—not two, but positively *three* quarter-notes (or a whole measure) later!—hence there is, in reality, *un temps de plus entre la seconde et la troisième entrée qu’entre la première et la seconde.*

† It is to be regretted that the author did not live to publish this. Two papers on Double Counterpoint, from his pen, appeared in the periodical *Cécilia* for 1831.—ED.

notes later, only

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{not } \overline{\overline{a}} - \overline{\overline{b}} - \overline{\overline{c}} - \overline{\overline{d}} \\ \text{but } \overline{\overline{a}} - \overline{\overline{bb}} - \overline{\overline{c}} - \overline{\overline{db}} \end{array}$$

and this, because the composer has now at once a mind to repeat the phrase comprised in the previous four measures, one degree lower, in the key of *bb*-minor, in the following measures. (§<sup>11</sup>, at the end.)

---

(VII)—*Conclusion.*

[ §<sup>20</sup>. ]

The foregoing are the most important peculiarities which, comprised in so few bars, present themselves to our consideration.

That the accumulation of so many peculiarities at once astonishes the ear, and that in a lively manner, no one possessing the sense of hearing can deny. In what the strangeness consists—by what combination of circumstances it is caused—and for what purposes it has been brought in—we have learnt from the preceding analysis:—all that technical theory could do, it has done in this matter.

Whether this union of harsh combinations and successions at any time exceeds, or does not exceed, the limits of harshness which it is well to offer to the ear, is a question which is certainly not categorically decided by the foregoing discussions, but which nevertheless has perhaps been clearly illustrated. (That I do not at all believe in the rules by which, as mentioned in the introduction, one person demonstrates the irregularity, and another the regularity, of the passage; on this subject have I already, more than once, stated my firm conviction.)

*The musically cultivated ear alone* must here be the judge in the last instance; and in this case a *supreme* judge has already decided in *favor* of the passage,—I mean *the ear of a Mozart*, who dedicated this quartett, as the best that he could produce, to his best friend and model, *Joseph Haydn*, as a tribute of profound admiration.

As regards *my own* ear, I frankly confess that it does *not* receive pleasure from sounds like these;—on this subject I can freely speak as I think, and, in defiance of the silly and envious, dare even take up the haughty words and say: *I know what I like in my Mozart.*

## CHAPTER X.

## MOVEMENT BY SKIPS.

## § 467.

WHEN we first adverted to the skipping progression of a part, in a former part of this work, we could say but very little in relation to its merits; because there are many things involved in this species of progression with which we were not at that time acquainted.

But having now acquired this pre-requisite information, we are prepared to go into an investigation of the merits of the skipping progression of a part.

## DIVISION I.

## MERITS OF THE SKIPPING MOVEMENT IN GENERAL.

## § 468.

As it respects the character and merits of the skipping movement in general, we have already remarked, in a former part of this work (§ 42), that the *gradual* progression is the most simple, natural, and flowing, and the one whose unbroken thread the ear can most easily follow; while, on the other hand, a part which moves *by skips* demands a closer attention of the ear, in order to keep the run of its progression.

It follows from this, that though the skipping movement is not in itself really incorrect, yet it is not always and in all cases equally good and admissible.

And, besides, the before-mentioned peculiar character of the skipping progression of a part, answers the question, where and when this species of movement may be introduced with good effect, or otherwise.

This answer consists in the following conclusions.

## § 469.

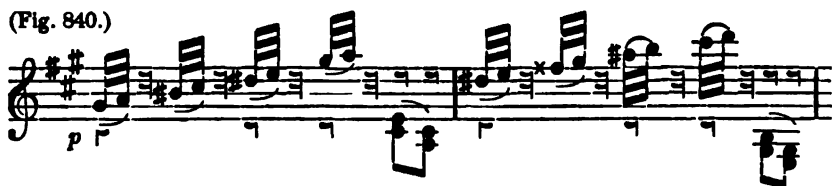
Inasmuch as a skip, occurring in the movement of a part, always in a measure interrupts its progress, a regard must always be had to this point in all cases where one aims at a very evenly gliding, a very uninterruptedly continuous and smooth progression of a part, or, in other words, where the unbroken continuation of the melodic thread is a point of interest to the ear; and in such cases it is always judicious to employ everywhere more of the gradual than of the skipping movement.

But this consideration of course becomes neutralized in cases where the thread of the melody is already more or less broken from other causes.

In the first place, a skip of a part, even if it be a difficult one for the ear to follow, may be made without hesitation *whenever a break or pause in the musical phrase is interposed between the two notes*. For, where such a break occurs, and where thus the thread of the sense is more or less broken at any rate, it is no longer of any particular importance to the ear to be able exactly to follow the thread of each part from the end of the one section to the commencement of the next; and hence it cannot disturb the ear, if a part which gave this or that tone at the end of a section, assumes another and perhaps a very remote tone at the commencement of the following section, and thus makes a skip during the break between the two.

The principle above stated applies not only to the *larger* pauses, but also to the smaller, even down to the shortest possible interruptions in the progression of a passage.—Thus, for example, the skip of the upper part from  $\bar{a}$  down to  $\bar{d}\sharp$ , in fig. 840,

(Fig. 840.)



is admissible without hesitation, on account of the break lying between the two tones.—And for the same reason also the other skips which occur in this part are above question.—That is to say, every two notes here constitute together a kind of small independent member, separated in a measure both from the preceding and following by a small intermediate break. Now the skip of a superfluous second which is made by the upper part from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{b}\sharp$  in the first measure, and from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{f}\times$  in the second measure, would, under ordinary circumstances, as we shall observe hereafter, be harsh and offensive to the ear; but in the present connection it is not so, for the reason, that here a small break is introduced between  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{b}\sharp$  and also between  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{f}\times$ .

---

#### § 470.

For a similar reason the skipping movement may be unhesitatingly admitted in cases where an harpegiate part passes alternately backwards and forwards from the tone of one broken part to that of another. Such a species of skipping movement does not impress the ear as a disagreeable interruption of the thread of the part, provided the broken parts are in themselves smooth and flowing.

Thus, for example, in fig. 841,

(Fig. 841.)



the harpeggiate part everywhere moves by mere skips; but the three parts designed to be represented by this one broken part proceed, throughout, not at all by skips, but exclusively by diatonic degrees, and thus of course the skipping part represents three others which do not move by skips. Hence the conduct of parts, so far as we regard the passage as an harpeggiate representation of three parts, is perfectly smooth and flowing—which is the more satisfactory in this case, since the several parts of this harpeggiate progression are very clearly and decidedly exhibited. (Compare § 27.)

The same may easily be applied to the skipping movement of the harpegiate parts in the examples found in fig. 59 *n—q*, p. 135, and in figs. 60—76, pp. 136—143.

**§ 471.**

As a general rule, moreover, those skips are very easily apprehended by the ear, which are made *from one interval of a harmony which forms the basis of any combination of tones to another interval of the same harmony.*

Thus, for example, in fig. 842,



the upper part skips from the seventh,  $f$ , of the fundamental harmony  $C:V^7$  to the third of this same harmony, namely, the tone  $\bar{b}$ , even though this latter tone stands at the distance of an eleventh from the former; and, in like manner, the second part (the alto, § 14) skips a tenth upward from the fifth to the seventh, and the tenor from the third to the fifth, while the base skips downward an octave from the fundamental tone  $g$  to its lower octave  $G$ .—The skips in fig. 843,

(Fig. 843.)



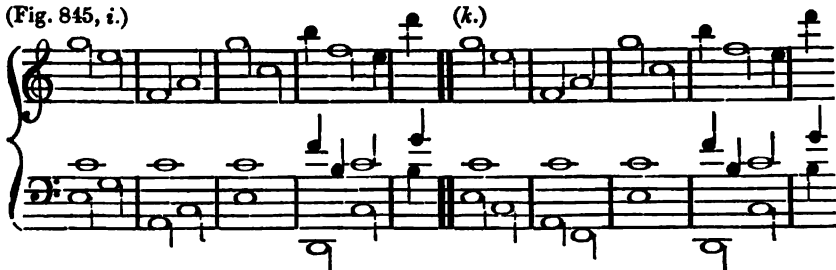
are of a similar description, as are in general most of the skips which occur in an *harpeggiate* part: such, for example, are all the *upward* skips in fig. 844,

(Fig. 844.)



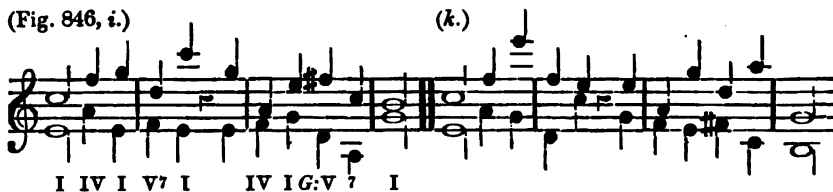
(Compare §§ 26, 27.)

It is less easy for the ear to follow a part which skips *from an interval of a previous harmony to an interval of a newly occurring harmony* at the moment when an harmonic step is taken. Hence, in fig. 845, *i*, *k*,

(Fig. 845, *i*.)

the skips of the upper part from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{f}$ , from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{g}$ , from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{b}$ , and from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{d}$ , are extremely disagreeable to the ear,—and an equally abrupt and jolting progression is made in the base by its skipping from  $c$  to  $A$ , from  $F$  to  $e$ , and thence to  $D$ , and again to  $c$ ; whereas the other skips (from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{a}$ , from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{c}$ , &c.), which are made from one interval to another of the same continued harmony, are entirely free from everything rough or disagreeable, as we have already seen in the above fig. 843, where the very same skips occur, and that too in part even still farther extended.

It is for similar reasons also that the passages in fig. 846 *i* and *k*, are so stiff and repulsive, in comparison with that in fig. 846 *l*:

(Fig. 846, *i*.)

I IV I V7 I IV I G:V ? I

(Fig. 846, *l*.)

C:I IV I V7 I IV I G:V ? I

The downward skips from  $\bar{e}$  to  $b$  and from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{c}$  in fig. 844, p. 757, are also skips into intervals of new harmonies, and hence the conduct of parts here is not so perfectly easy of apprehension, nor so entirely smooth, as it is in fig. 847,

(Fig. 847.)



where these skips are wholly avoided (compare §§ 26, 27, and 321). In like

manner also, in fig. 848,

(Fig. 848.)



the skips of the harpegiate part are avoided at the point of time when a change of harmonies occurs. (Compare fig. 841, p. 756.)

§ 472.

It results, moreover, from the very nature of the case, that it is doubly difficult for the ear to follow the thread of a part which skips from an interval of the previous harmony to an interval of the newly occurring harmony, *whenever the harmonic step is in itself rather an unusual one*, and thus of course little familiar to the ear, and, perhaps, even involves a somewhat harsh progression. For the ear, already subjected to a sufficient amount of difficulty in following the course of the modulation, is scarcely prepared to encounter, at the same moment, the additional trouble of tracing a difficult progression of a part, but claims rather that the apprehension of the unusual progression of harmonies should be as much as possible facilitated by a plain and easily traceable conduct of parts. How very much one and the same harmonic succession, *e. g.* a digressive modulation which is in itself unusual, may at one time be made repulsive to the ear, and at another be rendered welcome to it, by a more or less easily comprehensible conduct of parts, is shown by a comparison of the harmonic succession  $f: V - a: I$ , in fig. 849 *i*, with that in fig. 849 *k*, (Fig. 849, *i*.)



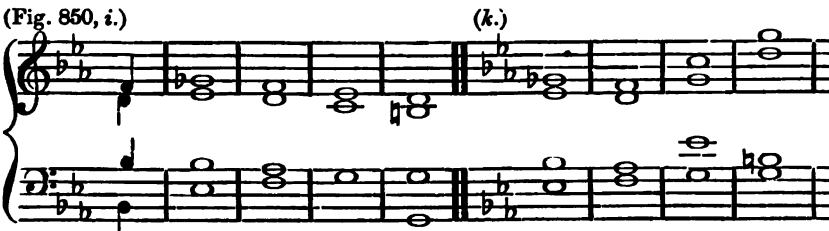
(Compare fig. 197, p. 346.)

(Fig. 849, *k*.)



as also by the unusual harmonic succession  $eb: ^{\circ}VII - c: I$  fig. 850 *i*, which, with such a skipping conduct of parts, say, as occurs in fig. 850 *k*, would be quite unpalatable:

(Fig. 850, *i*.)



(*k*.)

Compare § 241, (3), p. 431; fig. 204, pp. 371 and 372; and fig. 235, 24th measure, p. 411.



Those skips, on the contrary, are far less exceptionable which occur in *very usual harmonic progressions, and perhaps into an interval of a harmony which is in itself very common, occurs very frequently, and thus is very familiar to the ear.* Thus, for example, skips into an interval of a principal four-fold chord, when an harmonic step is taken, are seldom offensive, particularly if the latter is a dominant chord of the previous key, and of course belongs to the same scale, and hence is quite natural to the ear; as is the case, for example, in fig. 851:

(Fig. 851.)



The same is true even of a digressive modulation, provided the principal four-fold chord belongs to a nearly allied key, and not to one that is too remote; as, for example, in fig. 852:

(Fig. 852.)



## § 473.

It likewise follows, from a consideration already several times adverted to, that the skip of a part to a *note foreign to the harmony* is ordinarily less natural and flowing, than one to an *harmonic tone*.—Here again, however, it depends very much upon circumstances, and especially upon the question whether the harmonic tone to which the transition-tone connects itself is a tone which itself very naturally occurs to the ear, or not. In fig. 853 i,

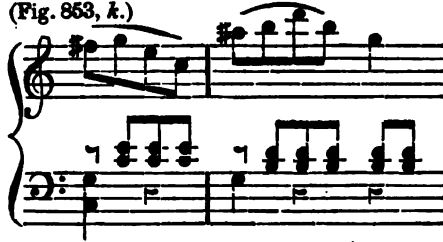
(Fig. 853, i.)

MOZART'S ZAUBERFLÖTE.



the skip of the upper part from  $\bar{c}$  to the transition-tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is very easy to be apprehended, because the tone  $\bar{g}$ , to which this  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is an accessory tone, was already under a very natural tendency of suggesting itself to the ear. In fig. 853 k, on the contrary,

(Fig. 853, k.)



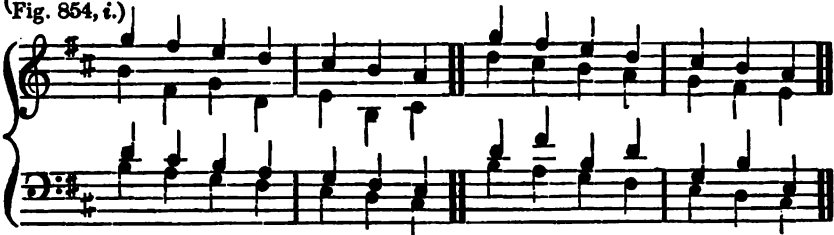
the skip from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{a}$  as an accessory tone to  $\bar{b}$  would be doubly infelicitous; because a skip to  $\bar{b}$  itself would not naturally suggest itself to the ear, and still less would a skip to an accessory tone of this  $\bar{b}$ .

## § 474.

The skipping movement is, moreover, for the most part, *better adapted to principal than to secondary parts*, not only because it is more difficult in itself for the ear to follow the thread of a secondary part than that of a principal one, but because the latter has also a stronger claim to demand that more fixed attention of the ear which is requisite in following the skip. For this reason, it happens, for example, that, in so-called bravura passages, in concertos, &c. skips of prodigious extent not unfrequently occur in the principal part, which are in such a case so far free from technical fault, at least, to the same extent that the ear is aided in following the thread of such a skipping progression, by having its attention particularly directed to the part in consequence of its peculiar character.

Hence, cases not unfrequently occur, in which we conceal a somewhat infelicitous, though unavoidable, skipping movement in less conspicuous middle parts, rather than allow it to appear in other parts, which are always more striking to the ear, or in parts which otherwise assume the prominence of principal parts. Thus, for example, in fig. 854 i,

(Fig. 854, i.)



(Fig. 854, *k*, continued.)

the skips of the second part are not at all repulsive; because, occurring as they do in this middle part, they are not prominently exhibited. In fig. 854 *k*, on the contrary, where the two upper parts exchange progressions with each other, and the first part makes the same skips which had been as it were secretly and imperceptibly made just before by the middle part, these skips become far more striking and disagreeable than they previously were. But cases of this description, where the skipping movement of a middle part avoids giving offence to the ear, only because the latter neglects to attend to the progression of this middle part, are merely individual cases, and not real exceptions to the general rule, that the ear, which should always as far as possible be able to follow the thread of *all* parts, always more freely and easily follows the skipping progression of an outer and principal part than that of a middle part.

On this latter ground, it is particularly allowable for the *base part* to move with special frequency by skips; that is to say, because the base, as an outer part, is always in some measure a principal part, and, as such, is not only more easy to follow, but also holds a stronger claim upon the attention of the ear, than does a mere middle part.

We shall again recur to the skipping progression of the base part in a subsequent part of this work.

## DIVISION II.

### MORE PARTICULAR CONSIDERATION OF SOME CERTAIN SPECIES OF SKIPS.

#### § 475.

Having thus far considered the peculiar character of the skipping movement of a part, in general, we will now turn our attention to some particular ways in which this skipping progression occurs.

#### (A.) MEASUREMENT OF SKIPS

#### § 476.

We have not, in our preceding treatment of skips, measured their dimensions; we have not *specifically attended to the magnitude of the skips*; that is to say, we have not inquired into the intermediate distance, the interval, that is

passed over in making the skip, whether it be large or small, whether, for example, it be a skip of a third, and that too of a major, a minor, a superfluous or a diminished third,—a fourth, a fifth, a sixth, &c.

But this subject surely merits our attention; for it is certain that skips of particular intervals sometimes produce a peculiar effect, and are in some measure offensive to the ear.

The consideration of the different species of skips in respect to the magnitude and nature of the intervals between the tone from which and the tone to which the skip is made, may be denominated the *measurement of skips*.

We may, on this point, remark the following things.

*First*, it is natural that skips of very wide extent, such as tenths, fifteenths, and the like, should ordinarily be more difficult for the ear to follow, than skips of only small extent, such as mere thirds, &c. Large skips seem to convey an impression of something majestic, forcible, violent; while small skips, on the contrary, usually exhibit a much more moderate aspect.

Let it be observed that I state the above principle as only a *general*, but not as a *universal* one; for it is indeed true, that in many cases a skip of a small interval is more harsh to the ear, than many that are of much larger extent. This depends upon the peculiar nature of the interval.

The safest of all intervals in this respect is that from a tone to its octave; for this is properly only a skip from one tone to the same again, the latter differing only by being in another octave, it being a repetition of the same tone on a smaller or a larger scale. A skip of an octave, though, *dynamically*, that is, according to the number of intermediate degrees, a somewhat large skip, yet, *harmonically* considered, is properly equivalent to no skip at all.

---

§ 477.

On the contrary, many skips of far smaller compass sometimes produce a peculiar effect, and involve much that is rough, harsh, and repulsive. Such, for example, are progressions of a part by a *superfluous interval* (in which class we may reckon the so-called *tritone*, the *major*, or, as some call it, the *superfluous fourth*),—the *diminished third*, the *diminished fourth*, the *major seventh*, and still others, which at one time this theorist, and at another time that, forbids or allows.

In fact, we may find, in every species of such skips, not only those which are offensive and positively repulsive, but also others which, though not directly disagreeable, still have something in them which is peculiar, strange, harsh, and abrupt, and others again which are entirely free from anything offensive.—Accordingly, here also a universal law declaring such skips to be forbidden, is not admissible, is not true.

This conviction becomes still stronger, if we turn our attention to the very essential difference which exists among the different examples of each class. It seems never to have occurred to theorists to consider in how many essentially different ways, for instance, a skip of a major, minor, diminished, or superfluous second, third, fourth, &c. in an upper, middle, under, principal or secondary

part, during the continuance of this or that harmony of a major or minor key,—or at the moment of one or another of the 6888 different harmonic steps enumerated in § 227—harmonic steps which may be more or less natural or repulsive, belonging to the same scale, or perfect, or more or less imperfect digressive transitions into other scales,—skips too of this or that interval of one harmony to this or that interval of another, up or down, under this or that combination of these or those circumstances enumerated in §§ 241—243, 469—475, or of very many others which cannot here be specified.—I would not attempt to reckon the number of such various possible progressions of a part by seconds, and then, in like manner, also of all possible progressions of major, minor, diminished, and superfluous thirds, fourths, &c. even in the most superficial manner; and much less would I undertake to prove the merits of each one of them: and surely, least of all, would I venture to dispatch such a truly immense number of essentially different melodic steps with so few arrogant words, as, for example, “progressions of a part by superfluous seconds or fourths are forbidden,” &c.

Therefore, with the reiterated assurance that, in cases where a true universal rule does not exist, or at least has thus far failed to be discovered either by me or by others, it is better to satisfy ourselves with mere individual, though not untrue observations, than to lay down sweeping universal rules, which are for that very reason incorrect,—therefore, I say, I will content myself with making merely the following remarks upon these various species of skips, without attempting to exhaust the subject.

---

§ 478.

The skipping progression of a part by intervals of the magnitude mentioned in § 477, is not unfrequently strange to the ear, in a measure harsh and grating, and sometimes even disgusting, repulsive, and of positively ill effect; and, in this latter case, such progressions are of course to be avoided, in music where euphony is an object.

Thus, for example, *skips of a superfluous second* have something in them that is rather singular and foreign, as may be seen from figs. 855—858:

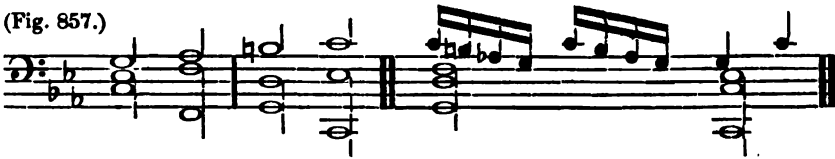
(Fig. 855.)



(Fig. 856.)



(Fig. 857.)



(Fig. 858.)



and we have already remarked, in Chapter VIII, that this not unfrequently gives occasion for a necessary approximation of a transition-tone to its principal, and sometimes even for removing the secondary tone farther from the principal tone than it would stand according to the natural scale.

§ 479.

This is more particularly the case with one species of superfluous interval than with another, and the difference subsists even between those species of superfluous intervals, one of which is only the inversion of the other.

Thus, for example, the skips of a superfluous sixth in figs. 859 *k* and 860 *k*, are more harsh than those of the diminished third in figs. 859 *i* and 860 *i*,

(Fig. 859, *i*.)

CALPURA.



(Fig. 859, *k*.)

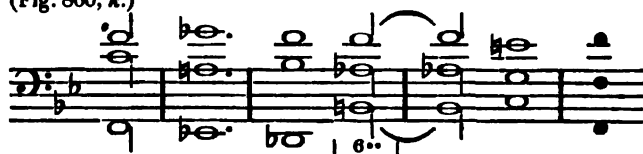


(Fig. 860, *i*.)

BENED. MARCELLO.



(Fig. 860, k.)



(Fig. 860, l.)

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. B. MARCELLO.

Ab-ba - stan-za com-pren-do il gran-de ec - ces - so del

Ab-ba - stan-za com-

7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13.

-- mio de - lit - - - to

pren-do il gran-de ec - ces - so

Ab-ba - stan-za com-pren-do il gran-de ec - ces -

14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19.

so, il gran-de ec - ces - so

20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25.

So, also, skips of a minor fifth are usually found to be less harsh than those of a major fourth:



those of a diminished seventh, less harsh than those of a superfluous second:



§ 480.

But the very pungency and harshness which pertains to many skips of the above-mentioned species may often afford the composer a very welcome means of expressing certain peculiar species of sentiments. Thus, for example, the various skips in figs. 859 and 860, pp. 765 and 766, and figs. 861 and 862 below, carry with them the peculiar property of giving to the passage the colour of painful emotion:

(Fig. 861.)

PERGOLESI.

Sta - - bat Ma - - ter do - - lo - ro - -

f: I V I Ab: V I f: V7 bb: V7

R t t F R s t R F t R s

t F T R T

f: V7 I V 7 bb: V7 I IV I V7 I

sa.

5



(Fig. 862.)

PERGOLESI.



With a similar design, several skips of this species are amassed in fig. 863:

(Fig. 863.)

Cru - ci - fix - us  
 cru - ci - fix - us e - ti - am  
 cru - ci - fix - us e - ti - am  
 e - ti - am cru - ci - fix - us  
 fix - us e - ti - am pro no - bis  
 cru - ci - fix - us pro no - bis  
 Arco.

*Soli.*  
*Pizz.*  
*Tutti.*  
*Arco.*

*a:V* *V7* *I* *V7* *I* *117* *V* *V17* *11*

and a similar purpose seems also to have governed *Vogler*, in fig. 864:

(Fig. 864.)

Voci. VOGLER'S REQUIEM.

*p* Liber scriptus pro - fe - re - tur

*Pizz.*

In fig. 865 also,

(Fig. 865.)

BINK'S ORGAN SCHOOL.

*p* *f*

$\flat\flat:IV$   $V7$   $VI$   $\flat\flat:VI$   $\flat\flat:I$   $V7$   $I$

the harmonic succession  $\flat\flat:VI-\flat\flat:VI-\flat\flat:I$  is rendered extremely prominent, and presented in an entirely new light, by the fact, that while the harmony  $\flat\flat$  appears in an uninverted position, the base part skips from  $g\flat$  to  $c\flat$ , and thence passes by a skip of a major fourth to the proper fifth of the harmony  $\flat\flat$ .

It is quite probable that the steps of a superfluous second  $\overline{cb}-\overline{d}$ , and at the same time  $\overline{d}-\overline{cb}$ , in the first measure of the passage, fig. 57, p. 132, from Hummel's Mass, mentioned in §§ 16 and 17, as also the skip of a diminished seventh,  $\overline{cb}-\overline{d}$ , &c. in the sixth measure, were introduced by specific design.

---

§ 481.

In all skips of this species, moreover, much depends upon the concurrence of more or fewer of the favorable or unfavorable circumstances enumerated in §§ 469—475, as also of others yet to be mentioned in the sequel, by which [circumstances] one and the same species of skip may at one time be very much softened, and at another be rendered more disagreeable.

Particularly, the ear will be able more easily and conveniently to follow the skipping progression of a part in a moderate or slow movement, than in a very quick movement; and hence it happens that, in a slow movement, many skips are admissible which the ear would find it difficult to follow in a quicker movement.

---

§ 482.

It should also be particularly remarked, in relation to the conduct of vocal parts, that these are in their own nature better adapted to the gradual than to the skipping progression, and especially that they do not usually perform such skips as those mentioned in § 477, with ease, and therefore not in a happy manner; and, on this account, it is advisable to be more cautious about using such skips in vocal parts than in instrumental.

---

§ 483.

I must limit myself to the few foregoing remarks. Whoever of my readers would seek for more and better, must endeavour to find it in other authors, who indeed all possess the enviable talent of despatching this subject in far fewer paragraphs, or, in fact, with a most masterly assurance, even in a few lines; though it is true indeed that in these few lines, as must naturally and necessarily be the case, they say more untruth than, as I hope, can be found in all my many lines together. Look at the treatment of this subject, for instance, in *Kirnbeger's Art of pure Composition*\*, *Marpurg's Manual of Thorough-Baset*, *Türk's Thorough-Baset*, or in the writings of *Fux*, *Albrechtsberger*, *Vogler*, and *Koch*, in *Reicha's Treatise on Harmony and Treatise on Melody*§, and, in short, in all our authors.

---

\* *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I. Bd. 9 Abschnitt.

† *Handbuch beim Generalbass*, III Thl. 6 Abschn. § 5 & foll.

‡ *Generalbass*, § 53, &c.

§ *Traité d'Harmonie and Traité de Mélodie*.

REMARK.

Thus, for example, *J. G. Schicht*\* has despatched the whole doctrine of the progression of parts by skips in a single paragraph of five lines:—"§ 10, All superfluous intervals—and the skip of a major seventh, are—forbidden. The superfluous third—is in melody entirely forbidden." That the fact is not as here stated, is shown by several of the examples already quoted, though it is true, indeed, that the six examples referred to by Mr. Schicht in proof of his position sound very roughly. For this very reason it is a matter of surprise to me that he should have appended to several of these passages which he quotes as examples of *forbidden* progressions, and especially to the example in fig. 866, the remark, that still they may sometimes be *allowed*.

(Fig. 866.)



Even laying aside the contradiction subsisting between the general interdict and the grant for its individual violation, I could not, if I were disposed to be as strict as Mr. Schicht, by any means tolerate at least the passage just mentioned, even in a slow movement; to say the very least, it would first depend very much upon what harmonies should be subjoined to such a melody—(*sit venia verbo*). When, moreover, he appends the remark to the example in fig. 867,

(Fig. 867.)



(in reference to the skips of a superfluous fifth  $\bar{c}-g\sharp$  and  $\bar{d}-a\sharp$ ) that these skips are admissible in ascending, but not to be tolerated in descending, this is true only in the present case, for the reason that the tones  $\bar{g}\sharp$  and  $\bar{a}\sharp$  occur in this connection as sub-semi-tones [leading notes], and have, indeed, in such a case a tendency to move upwards to  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{b}$ , and which could not with propriety skip downwards to  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{d}$  (in the latter case it would be, say, somewhat as in fig. 868);

(Fig. 868.)



but the reason does not lie primarily in the fact that a skip of a superfluous fifth downward sounds, in general, worse than the same skip would upward; for, the opposite of this is apparent from the above-mentioned example in fig. 866.—The same is true of the skip of a major seventh, &c.

In respect to *diminished* intervals, Mr. Schicht merely says: "Since they (he here means superfluous intervals) become diminished by inversion, and are in that case more easy to sing, they (meaning diminished intervals) may also be allowed."

\* In his *Grundregeln der Harmonie*.

Moreover, in connection with this doctrine of these melodic skips, the musical literati have been particularly accustomed to disgorge themselves of the favourite technical distinction between *the strict and the so-called free style of writing*: they conceive themselves to have fully disposed of this subject by teaching that such progressions are wholly forbidden in the so-called strict or church style, but are allowable in the so-called free style under the warrant of exceptions and licences. Thus, for example, F. G. Paolucci\* speaks of superfluous seconds as follows: "*Nello stile a Cappella, e nello stile rigoroso non è permesso il procedere in questa forma, anzi se non è per qualche espressione di parola, ovvero per qualche andamento non è lecito ne pur in altro stile usar simil progresso, essendo fuori dell'ordine della Scala naturale,*"—(?)—"nella quale s'ascende, o si discende per Tuoni, e Semituoni, e non per un Tuono e mezzo"....; "*onde ogni volta che si farà tal progresso, SARA PER LICENZA!*"—"In the sacred style and in the strict style, it is not admissible to proceed in this manner; unless it be for the expression of some particular sentiment, or to accommodate some peculiar turn of the melody, it is not lawful to employ such a progression in any other style, it being out of the order of the natural scale"—!—"in which one ascends or descends by tones and semitones, but not by a tone and a half"....; "*therefore, every time such a progression shall occur, IT WILL BE BY LICENCE!*" (This then is about equivalent to saying, in every instance, "*avec votre permission!*"—"with your permission!")

After having once already expressed my opinion of such a distinction of different styles (§ 99, Remark—§ 107, Remark), I shall, in treating the technics of the art, say nothing farther on the subject of so nugatory a prohibition.

That there was, however, in Paolucci's times, a theorist who was free from such musical bigotry, is shown by D. A. Eximeno's book†, in which the author exclaims (though indeed only on the occasion of a skip of a minor seventh  $\text{eb}-\text{db}$  occurring in Pergolesi's Stabat mater): "*Ed eccovi confermato il principio, che non vi è salto alcuno di sua natura contrario alle regole di armonia: certo è che il salto di Settima riesce alle volte penoso alla voce umana: ma per questo appunto è attissimo ad esprimere un Soggetto pieno di amarezza e di pena.*"—"And behold here a confirmation of the principle, that no skip of its nature is contrary to all the rules of harmony: it is true, indeed, that the skip of a seventh is at all times troublesome to all human voices; but still this very skip is most perfectly adapted to the expression of a subject full of sorrow and pain;" and the fact, that the truest and the most celebrated old practical masters of the art did not regard such progressions as incorrect, and that too even in the strict church style, is shown by numerous examples, and, among the rest, by the skips of a superfluous second in the following Kyrie of the celebrated church composer, Durante:



\* In his *Arte pratica di contrappunto*, Venez. 1765, vol. i, p. 121, note (a).

† *Dell' origine e delle regole della musica*, Roma 1774, Part I, Lib. III, Cap. 8, art. 4, p. 265, et seq.

- - - i - son.

son, e - le - - i - son, Ky - - - ri - e e - le - i -  
Ky - - - ri - e e - - - le - i -  
Ky - - - ri - e e - - - le - i -

The same thing is also shown by skips of a major (or so-called superfluous) fourth  $g-c\sharp$  and  $ab-d$ , in fig. 869, *i*, *k*.

(Fig. 869, *i*.)

G. A. PERTI'S CONFITEBOR.

(*k*.)

as it is also by the passages quoted above from *Caldara* and *Pergolesi*, in figs. 859, 861, and 862, pp. 765, 766, 767; and so also by a passage from *Marcello*, fig. 860, *l*, p. 766, where this author characterizes the words "Abbastanza comprendo il grande eccesso del mio delitto" ["Deeply do I feel the heavy burden of my guilt"], by the skip of a *superfluous* second; and in respect to this very passage, *Paolucci*, quite carried away by his inspiration, exclaims, at the place above quoted: "*indì per esprimer ben la parola, dalla Sesta minore passa alla Settima maggiore, che è andar di grado per ECCESSO, passandovi da una Corda all' altra una Seconda superflua. . . il qual modo di procedere, benchè non sia da usarsi di frequente, nondimeno nel caso presente, a motivo DI ESPRIMER LA PAROLA, fa un bellissimo sentire.*" "Then, in order to express the sentiment of the words, he passes from the minor sixth to the major seventh, which involves a progression by an *EXCESSIVE* step; namely, in passing from one chord to another by a *superfluous* second. . . which mode of proceeding, though not often to be adopted, nevertheless, in the present case, as a means of expressing THE SENTIMENT OF THE WORDS, produces a most beautiful effect."

Those were indeed glorious times when a man could earn such eulogiums from theorists by merely, "*per licenza*," making the word *excess* chime to a *superfluous*, *second*, and by portraying the "*eccesso*" of the load of sin by a "*grado per ECCESSO*." Compare § 480.

## (B.)—SKIPS IN THE BASE PART.

## § 484.

In addition to what has hitherto been observed relative to the skipping progression of a part in general, there are some particular points connected with the skipping movement of the *base* part which merit further consideration. They refer chiefly to those skips of the base part which occur in connection with an harmonic step. (§ 472.)

This skipping progression of the base most frequently occurs by a skip of the latter from the fundamental note of a chord into that of the following chord, so that thus both harmonies appear in an uninverted position. Such a conduct of the base involves a peculiar force, energy, and firmness. This property manifests itself chiefly in making a perfect or so-called full close [cadence], which latter (as was observed in § 255) is perfectly satisfactory to the ear only when the harmonies  $V^7$  and  $I$  or  $i$  appear in an uninverted form; and in this case the base skips from the fundamental tone of the dominant harmony into that of the tonic chord.



## § 485.

Skips of the base part, either from or to *another interval* of the fundamental harmony (from or to a *subordinate* or *secondary* tone, § 50), are less frequent, and appear less smooth and flowing, than those from the fundamental note to the fundamental note; as should be naturally expected, because the position of a secondary tone in the base, or, in other words, the inverted position of a chord, is in itself less satisfactory to the ear; and a skipping progression of the base part, either to or from an inverted base note, must be doubly unwelcome to the ear.

Not all such base skips, however, are disagreeable and faulty. The most unquestionable are those from or to *the third of the fundamental harmony*. In fig. 870,

(Fig. 870.)



the base part moves by skips from the fundamental note of the  $C$ -harmony to the third of the harmony  $D$ . In the following example, fig. 871,

(Fig. 871.)



the base, at the first harmonic step, skips from the fundamental tone of the first harmony to the fundamental third of the second; in the second measure, from the third of the  $\text{C}_4$ -harmony to that of the following  $\text{D}^7$ -harmony; in the third measure, from the third of the harmony  $\text{C}_4$  to the fundamental note of the harmony  $\text{D}$ ; and in the fourth measure, from the fundamental tone of the tonic chord to the third of the harmony  $\text{C}$ ; and from this third again to that of the tonic. Base skips of a similar character are found in fig. 872,

(Fig. 872.)



from  $\bar{e}$  to  $b$ , from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{a}$ , from  $\bar{c}$  to  $a$ , from there to  $e$ , and from  $a$  to  $f$ ; in fig. 873,



the skip from  $e_b$  to  $B$ , and from  $E_b$  to  $B$ ; in fig. 874,

(Fig. 874.)



the skip from  $A$  to  $d\sharp$ ; in fig. 875,

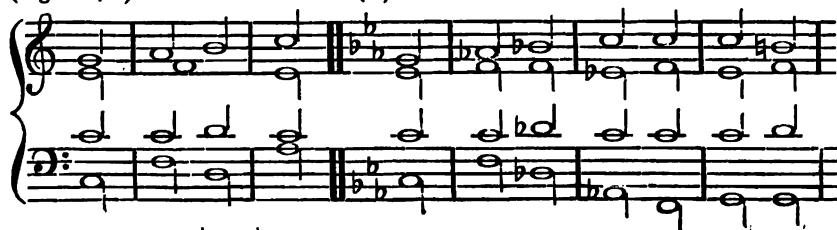
(Fig. 875.)



the skip from  $g$  to  $e\sharp$ ; in fig. 876,  $i$  and  $k$ ,

(Fig. 876, i.)

(k.)





## § 486.

The skipping progression of the base part either from or to the *fifth* of the fundamental harmony is much more exceptionable than either of the two preceding species of base skips; or, in other words, when, on the occurrence of an harmonic step, the first of the two harmonies appears in the second inversion, it rarely sounds well for the base to move by a skip in this harmonic change; and it is equally exceptionable to let the base part, on making an harmonic step, pass by a skip into the second inversion of the second chord.—It may be said that the second inversion of a chord is so imperfect a position, and one so unsatisfactory to the ear, as to render it necessary to smooth its introduction and connection, by immediately uniting it to the foregoing and following harmonies by the gradual movement.

We will analyze this subject somewhat more minutely.—I say, in the first place,

(1.) When the first of two successive harmonies *occurs in the second inversion*, it seldom sounds well to allow the base, on the occurrence of the harmonic step, to proceed by a skip. Therefore, in fig. 877, for example,

(Fig. 877.)



the skips of the base from *g* to *A*, and from *c* to *e*, are quite offensive to the ear (compare fig. 845, *i*, *k*); and also the skip from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{d}$ , in fig. 878,

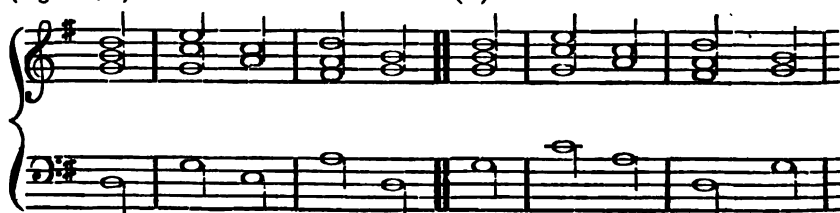
(Fig. 878.)



as are likewise all the progressions of the base part in fig. 879, *i*:

(Fig. 879, *i*.)

(k.)



(2.) It is likewise rarely of good effect to let *the base skip into the fifth of the following harmony when an harmonic step is made*; or, in other words, to make a base skip into a second inversion of a chord on the occurrence of a change of harmonies, and, for example, to allow the base, as in the following passage, fig. 880,

(Fig. 880.)



to pass by a skip from the third of the harmony  $\text{C}$  into the fifth of the harmony  $\text{F}$ ,—from the fundamental note of the harmony  $\text{C}$  into the fifth of the harmony  $\text{F}$ .

The reason, too, why the example quoted above, in fig. 879  $\text{t}$ , sounds so ill, is that the base part in it skips from the fifth of one harmony to the fifth of the other; and hence it is that this passage is so deficient in smoothness, connection, and euphony.

§ 487.

The rule that a skip of the base into the second inversion of the following harmony, when an harmonic step is taken, usually sounds ill, has a few exceptions; as follow:

(a.) The second inversion of *the tonic harmony* forms an exception, particularly when it occurs on a heavy part of the measure (§ 207), as in fig. 881  $\text{t}$ :

(Fig. 881,  $\text{t}$ .)

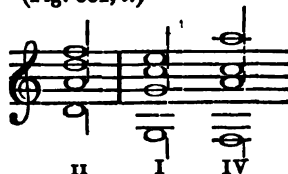
( $\text{k}$ .)

( $\text{l}$ .)



and also where the ear might naturally expect the harmony of the fifth degree after the tonic harmony, even though that harmony does not actually follow; as is the case, for example, in fig. 881  $\text{l}$ ,

(Fig. 881,  $\text{l}$ .)



where the base part throughout skips to the fundamental fifth of the tonic harmony. (Compare fig. 865, p. 769.)



consideration is due to the skip of an octave, G—g (§ 476), as also to the skips which do not occur at the time when a change of harmonies takes place ; as, for example, f—G, e—G, &c.

§ 488.

The base may with propriety pass by a skip into *the seventh* of a principal four-fold chord, that is, into its third inversion, as we see at the fourth quarter-note of the first measure, in fig. 886, and also in fig. 887 :

(Fig. 886.)



(Fig. 887.)



So also the skipping of the base part into the seventh of the harmony  $\circ_{II}7$ , when its third is accidentally elevated (§ 89, and what follows), is in no wise of ill effect.

(Fig. 888.)



The skipping movement of the base into other secondary sevenths is but rarely practicable ; because this would involve an *unprepared* introduction of these sevenths.

Moreover, the base cannot, with propriety, pass from a seventh by a skip at the time when an harmonic step takes place ; because a skipping progression of the seventh in a cadence would not be compatible with the natural progression of sevenths.

§ 489.

That the base part can, moreover, proceed by a skip to a tone foreign to the harmony (§ 473), is shown by the skips  $\bar{d}-a\sharp$ ,  $\bar{d}-g\times$ ,  $\bar{c}\sharp-e\sharp$ , in fig. 889.

(Fig. 889.)



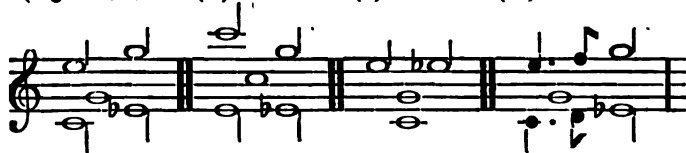
## (C.) CROSS-RELATION.\*

## § 490.

Besides the various species of skips thus far considered, there is yet another species to be attended to, which it is usual to designate by the term *cross-relation*.

*The skip of a part into an interval which had been heard immediately before, chromatically different, usually sounds harshly and disagreeably; or, in other words, when one and the same tone occurs twice in immediate succession, but chromatically higher or lower the first time than it is the second (e. g. first  $e\sharp$  and then  $e\flat$ , or first  $f\sharp$  and then  $f\flat$ , and vice versâ), it is ordinarily undesirable to make a part skip into this chromatically altered interval. Thus, for example, in fig. 890,  $\sharp$ ,*

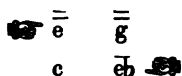
(Fig. 890,  $\sharp$ )      (k.)      (l.)      (m.)



\* The heading given to this section by Mr. Warner is "*The counter-stand*;" for the use of which term he offers a kind of apology, which will be found below. The German is *Querstand*, which (in §§ 324 and 335) has previously been rendered "*the squinting position*"! Neither of these terms has been adopted in the present edition, from the consideration, that, of the several expressions already in use in England to designate the circumstance here alluded to, *cross-relation* is sufficiently explicit for all practical purposes.—ED.

[Mr. Warner's Remark.]—Undesirable as it generally is to coin a word, yet, in the present instance, it seems a matter of necessity, or, at least, the less of two evils. The German word "*Querstand*," here translated '*counter-stand*,' has no corresponding word in the English language; and to render it by almost any other combination of words than the one above proposed, would violate some of the principles upon which every technical term should be chosen;—it being always desirable, namely, that such term should be *short, definite, and easy to be understood*. The German term "*Querstand*," as employed in the present instance, means, substantially, '*contrariety of state or condition*,' and to give this idea a fair presentation in English, without employing terms which are either too long, or too indeterminate, or too remote from common apprehension, seems impossible. Accordingly, the term '*counter-stand*,' though certainly far from what we could wish, is, nevertheless chosen, as approximating nearer to the requisition, than any other term that occurs to mind. The term "*false cross relation*," adopted by Kollman—whose work always murders the King's English—is too long, unwieldy, and indefinite; the old Latin term "*relatio non harmonica*," employed by the musicians of ancient days, was certainly better adapted to the period when hoods and cowls were in fashion, than it is to the present age; and the literal adoption of the Anglicised German term "*Querstand*" (more correctly written "*Queer-stand*," the German *Querstand* being a compound of the word *Quer* or rather *Queer*—the same as the English word *queer*—and the word *Stand*) would surely be too '*QUEER*' to be admissible in an English community. We are left, therefore, to the at best sufficiently unfortunate choice of the term '*counter-stand*,' with which the reader will please to associate, as far as possible, the generic idea of '*conflictive relationship*,' '*state of contrariety*.'—TR.

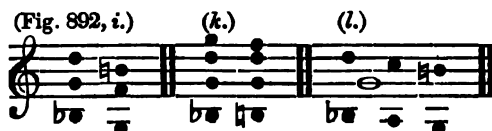
it is not well that the base part should pass by a skip to the tone  $\bar{e}b$  immediately after the tone  $\bar{e}q$  had been heard in the upper part:



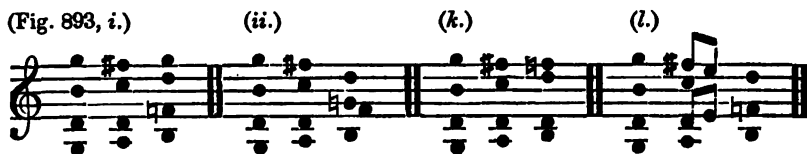
The tone  $\bar{e}b$  or  $\bar{e}q$  appears far more natural and agreeable as it is in fig. 890, *k* and *l*.—The skip of the base into  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in fig. 891, *i*,



is of a like description; but in fig. 891, *k*, on the contrary, the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the upper part appears much more natural.—In like manner, it will be found, that the following passage in fig. 892 *i*, is more repulsive than that in fig. 892 *k*;



that the following one in fig. 893 *i* and *ii*, is less agreeable than that in *k*,



and that the passage in 894 *i* is less welcome than the one in *k*:



So, likewise, in the passage fig. 895,

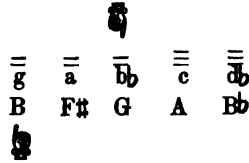
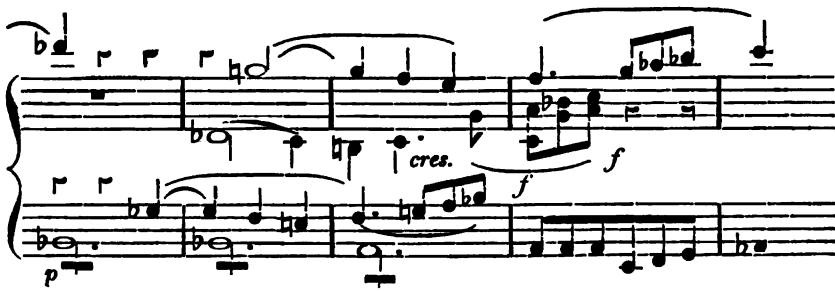
(Fig. 895.) J. HAYDN.

Lass dein Lei - den und dein Ster - ben nicht an.

Eb: I      V7      Ab: II      f: V7  
f: IV

the skipping introduction of the tone  $\bar{d}b$  in the base forms a cross-relation in reference to the immediately preceding  $\bar{d}q$  of the tenor.





(Compare §§ 495 and 466 *ba.*)

### § 493.

A case very analogous to the cross-relations above-mentioned, is that in which a part, instead of proceeding by skips, introduces itself *quite independently*, and strikes an interval which had just before been heard chromatically different. In fig. 897, *i*, for example,

(Fig. 897, *i*.)

(*k*.)



the tone  $\text{f}\sharp$  is first heard in the middle part, and immediately afterwards the tone  $\text{f}\sharp$  makes its appearance in the upper part. This free and independent introduction of the tone  $\text{f}\sharp$  in the upper part is not materially different from a skipping progression of the upper part to this tone; the effect is nearly the same as if the upper part had skipped, say, from  $\text{g}$  to this  $\text{f}\sharp$ ; and it is quite perceptible that such a conduct of a part is far from being so smooth and flowing as would be such a one as is found in fig. 897, *k*, above.—The same species of cross-relation is formed by the introduction of the upper part in fig. 898, *i*:

(Fig. 898, *i*.)

(*k*.)



Not unlike this example is the introduction of the upper part in the second (and sixth) measure of the foregoing fig. 896, p. 782. (Compare § 466 *ba.*)



## § 494.

Now, as it respects *the admissibility or inadmissibility* of such *cross-relations*, it can only be said, in general, that they *not unfrequently* destroy, in a disagreeable manner, the proper flow of parts, as several of the above-mentioned examples demonstrate; while, indeed, others again show that these so-called inharmonious cross-relations sometimes, under favourable circumstances, do not sound ill at all; as is the case, for instance, in fig. 895, p. 781, and in fig. 899. (§ 324.)

(Fig. 899.)

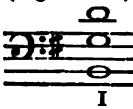


The cross-relations (referred to in §§ 492 and 493) in the preceding fig. 896, p. 782, are not, according to my own feelings, quite equally unexceptionable. (Compare § 495 at the end, and § 466 *ibid.*)

## § 495.

Among the circumstances by whose favourable influence many otherwise repulsive cross-relations are softened and rendered more acceptable to the ear, we must give a prominent place to *slow movement*, whereby the ear has time to follow more conveniently the thread of the progression.

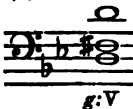
Thus, for example, such progressions of a part as occur in fig. 899, above, and also such as are found in fig. 900, *i*, *k*, *l*, and even *m*, in case they do not too quickly succeed each other, as in fig. 900 *n*,

(Fig. 900, *i*.)

(k.)



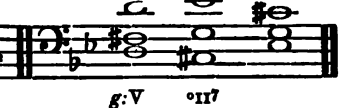
(l.)



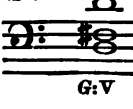
(m.)

(n.)  
*Allegro.*

(o.)



(p.)



g:V °II7

G:V g:°II7

not only do not sound ill, but are even frequently used. Especially have we already become familiarized to the cross-relations in *l* and *m*, these being more readily tolerated by our ear, than are the repulsive positions found in *p*.\*

The cross-relations in the fourth and fifth measures of fig. 896, p. 782, mentioned in § 494, seem so foreign to the ear, chiefly because only a short eighth-note is interposed between them; the same modulations, however, in a very slow movement would be far more acceptable to the ear, as, for example, in the following passage: (Compare § 466 <sup>19</sup>.)



§ 496.

Those cross-relations, on the contrary, which do not, like those above-mentioned, admit of being softened and rendered acceptable to the ear, are always as much as possible *to be avoided*.

The manner in which cross-relations of this species are avoided by a slight alteration in the conduct of parts, is easily seen by a comparison of the example in fig. 890 *i*, with fig. 890 *k* and *l*, p. 780; and of fig. 891 *i*, with fig. 891 *k*, p. 781; of fig. 892 *i*, with fig. 892 *k*, p. 781; &c.

In the method of shunning undesirable cross-relations which has just been mentioned, not only is a skipping progression to the chromatically altered interval, or an independent introduction of that interval, avoided, but such interval is moreover given by the same part which had previously given it in a chromatically different form. Thus, for example, in fig. 890, *k*, p. 780, the tone  $\bar{e}$  occurs in the base part; and this same part is also made to perform the tone  $\bar{e}b$ . In fig. 891, *k*, p. 781, the same part which first gave the tone  $\bar{f}$  gives also the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$ ,—&c.

But this latter rule it is not necessary in all cases to observe; as is shown, for instance, by fig. 891 *l*, p. 781, where the tone  $\bar{f}$  occurs in the upper part, and immediately afterwards the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  in the under part; and yet the ear is not at all offended by this, because the tone  $\bar{f}\sharp$  is *not introduced by a skip, but by the gradual movement*.

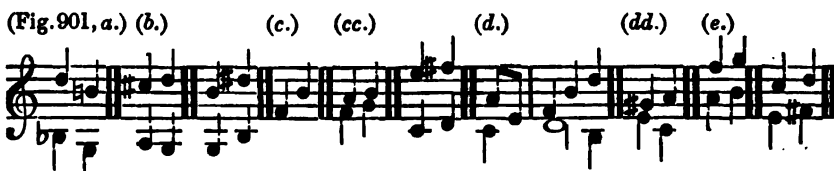
\* No reference occurs in the original to fig. 900, *o*, which resembles the commencement of *p*, but is in the key of *g*-minor.—ED.

## REMARK.

A queer figure is made in our books of instruction, moreover, by the doctrine of cross-relations.

In the first place, *the unlimited diversity of views* which we find exhibited under this head, assures us that writers are not even clear yet as to what they shall understand by the term *cross-relation*. Hence, it comes to pass, that we find in our theories such strange definitions of cross-relations. Thus, for example, *Türk*\* teaches that cross-relations are "certain progressions of two parts, which are not, indeed, in themselves or individually taken, at all objectionable, but which, taken together, produce a disagreeable effect, because, in that case, each part involves a different key."—He has copied *Kirnberger*, who† likewise does not know how to describe the thing otherwise than as follows: "There are cases where, indeed, each part has in itself a good progression, where also the harmony of all the parts appears faultless in itself, and yet where the progression, taking two parts together, is disagreeable; such a case is commonly called the inharmonious cross-relation." But what cases these are, is no-where shown.—(According to the latter description, one would almost be led to suspect the cases referred to were rather those of forbidden fifths, &c.)

It is a perfectly natural consequence of such an indefiniteness of idea, that we find, for instance, in *Türk*, at the place above referred to, the passages contained in fig. 901, b,



quoted as examples of rather inharmonious cross-relations,—fig. 901, c, and also the two consecutive thirds in fig. 901, cc, as inharmonious cross-relations in which *an harmonic skip* is made; but fig. 901 d and dd, on the contrary, as not being, in his opinion, inharmonious cross-relations, because no harmonic step is taken in the case;—fig. 901 e, indeed, as a cross-relation again, yet as admissible and less offensive than that of major thirds. It is perceived how much that is entirely heterogeneous and dissimilar the learned man has here woven together!

We find also the following passage characterized by theorists as involving a cross-relation:—



\* In his *Anleitung zum Generalbass*, § 54.

† In 1 Bd. p. 139.

(Fig. 902, k.)



Though it is true, that not very much depends upon a mere name, yet, to say the least, I should find it impossible to invent any definition which would apply to all the examples just quoted; and if all these so entirely and essentially different things are unitedly to bear the common name of cross-relation, I must certainly acknowledge myself incapable of stating *what a cross-relation is*.

Equally unsatisfactory with the above-mentioned definitions, appears to me the *reason* which theorists are accustomed to assign, *why* cross-relations sound repulsively. It is, as already observed, supposed to lie in the fact that "each part involves a new key."—But, not to speak of the fact that an intelligent meaning can scarcely be connected with this idea of two different keys being involved in the two parts—even setting this aside, I would still ask, why two different keys may form the basis of one and the same part, rather than of two different parts!! The former, surely, should be regarded as more repulsive than the latter.

Moreover, the importance which is supposed to be attached to the so-called *harmonic skip* I cannot really understand, and the instruction in relation to it which is imparted to us by *Türk*, in the remark on § 16, does not clear it up to me. It is there said, namely, that, "in order to understand what is here observed in relation to the *harmonic skip*, one must know that the tones (keys) do not stand in an equal degree of relationship to one another. Those major and minor tones (keys) which are most alike in respect to their scales or signatures, or only differ from each other in one degree, and hence also in only one transposition-sign, as, for example, C-major and G-major, or E-minor and B-minor, &c. are said to be related to each other in the first degree. Accordingly, C-major and D-major, or, descending, C-major and B $\flat$ -major, stand in the second degree of relationship to each other; while C-major and A-major, or, in the descending line, C-major and E $\flat$ -major, &c. stand in the third degree of relationship to each other. (And so, of course,"—(!)—"the threefold chords also do not stand in the same degree of relationship to each other.) This more remote relationship, that is to say, from the second degree of relationship onward, is called an *harmonic skip*"—and it is farther said, in § 54, in relation to the foregoing fig. 901 a, p. 786; "the under part, namely, indicates G-minor, while the upper part, on the contrary, indicates G-major."—

Thus our author means to say: when two harmonies follow each other, which, considered as two tonic threefold chords, would not be related to each other in the first degree, this is called an *harmonic skip*,—such an *harmonic skip* is faulty,—and thus the said so-called *cross-relations* sound ill, because they involve an *harmonic skip*;—for example, in fig. 901 a, p. 786, the minor threefold chord g, and then the major threefold chord G, follow each other in immediate succession; and since the keys g-minor and G-major do not stand in the nearest degree of relationship to each other,—it follows, that this harmonic succession is an *harmonic skip*; and because the example involves an *harmonic skip*, it is a *cross-relation*,—and, therefore, of ill effect.

Now who does not see that such an explanation fails at *all points* in logical consistency!!—Passing over much which must spontaneously suggest itself to every reader, I will merely observe, that the very principle upon which this explanation proceeds,

namely, that the immediate succession of two harmonies of the above description is faulty, is utterly untrue, as we have already learned with sufficient certainty in the doctrine of harmonic progression. (Who will, for example, explain, as faulty *harmonic skips*, the harmonic succession  $C: I-II$ ; or  $C: II-V$ ; or  $C: IV-V^7$ ; or  $g: I-c: V$ ; or  $C: V^7-vI$ ; [ $\mathcal{E}-\mathfrak{u}$ ; or  $\mathfrak{u}-\mathcal{E}$ ; or  $f-\mathcal{E}^7$ ; or  $g-\mathcal{E}$ ; or  $\mathcal{E}^7-a$ ], because the *keys*  $C$ -major and  $d$ -minor,—or  $d$ -minor and  $G$ -major,—or  $F$ -major and  $G$ -major,—or  $g$  and  $G$ ,—or  $G$  and  $a$ , are not related to each other in the first degree!—) But if such an harmonic succession is *not* of ill effect, it cannot of course furnish the reason why the *cross-relations* in question sound ill.

And since, moreover, the harmonic successions quoted as ill-sounding *cross-relations* in fig. 890 *i*, p. 780, and figs. 891 *i*, and 892 *i*, p. 781, cease to sound ill, so soon as they are made to follow the rules recommended in §§ 490 and 491, as in fig. 890 *k*, p. 780, and figs. 891 *k*, and 892 *k*, p. 781, so it is clearly perceived that the cause of the ill-effect does not, as our theorists teach, lie in the harmonic succession,—not in the phantom denominated an *harmonic step*,—but rather, only in the neglect of those rules.

## CHAPTER XI.

## MERITS OF PARALLEL PROGRESSIONS.

## § 497.

The doctrine of the various merits, of the admissibility or inadmissibility of the different species of the parallel progressions of several parts, already adverted to in §§ 45 and 46 of the present work, has been postponed until now, in order that we might be able, at a more advanced stage of our inquiries, to investigate it the more intelligibly. In now entering upon the treatment of this subject, we will examine the different species of parallel progressions, according to the order of the intervals by which the parallel parts are separated from each other (§ 45).

## DIVISION I.

## PARALLELISM BY PRIMES.

## § 498.

*Of parallel progression in primes* nothing can properly be said; or, all that admits of being said, consists simply in the fact, that, as we already know, two or more parts which proceed together in primes, cease to be different parts, and are regarded as one and the same part (§ 15). This, therefore, can be called a parallel movement with as little propriety as it can be said of a man that he walks parallel with himself.

## DIVISION II.

## PARALLELISM BY SECONDS.

## § 499.

Two parts which run parallel to each other at the distance of a second, seldom produce an agreeable effect upon the ear, but, for the most part, offend it, whether the tones which thus run parallel to each other be tones *belonging to the harmony*, or *tones foreign to it*.

Fig. 903, i, contains an example of harmonic tones thus running parallel (Fig. 903, i.)

(k.)



C: I IV V7 d: V7 i C: V7 I

(Fig. 903, l)



to each other, a passage which sounds incomparably worse than the same harmonic succession as found in *k*, where this parallelism by seconds is avoided.

The cases in which one could be advised to attempt such a conduct of *two harmonic tones* but rarely occur, especially since other difficulties, for the most part, incidentally interpose themselves in the way of such a conduct of parts.

That is to say, these tones would necessarily always be the fundamental tone and the seventh of a four-fold chord, of which the former would again move to the fundamental note of another four-fold chord and the latter to the seventh of the same chord. Now such a succession of two four-fold chords is not only of rather unfrequent occurrence in itself, but, involving as it does the progression of the first seventh to a second seventh, it would also, in many cases (§ 105), prevent the necessary *preparation* of the latter.

---

§ 500.

A parallelism by seconds between *an harmonic tone* and a *tone foreign to the harmony* does not sound agreeably, as appears from a comparison of fig. 904 *i*, with fig. 904 *k*:

(Fig. 904, i.)

(k.)

the parallelism of seconds being, in this latter example, avoided.—See also fig. 905 *i*, as compared with fig. 905 *k* and *l*,—and also fig. 906 :

(Fig. 905, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)

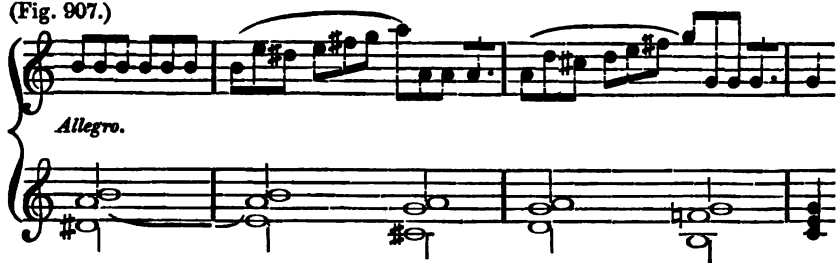
(Fig. 906, *i*.)

J. G. SCHICHT'S VENI SANCTE SPIRITUS.



Yet, the following example

(Fig. 907.)



shows that such a progression, particularly in middle and in accompanying parts, sometimes may be of perfectly good effect.

It would be an error to endeavour to find the cause of the unpleasant effect produced by the example in fig. 903 *i*, p. 789, directly in the fact that the principal seventh  $\bar{f}$  which occurs in the third chord proceeds upwards at the following harmonic step, while the subsemitone  $b$  skips up to  $\bar{e}$ ; for, in such an harmonic succession as this, as we have already seen in the doctrine of resolution, the principal seventh need not *necessarily* proceed downwards, nor need the subsemitone *necessarily* go upwards to the tonic (as is clearly shown by the perfectly good effect of the example in fig. 903\*, p. 790, where the intervals in question actually proceed as we have here suggested).

Moreover, in the passage in fig. 896, p. 782, a passage already several times referred to (§ 492), it is never of particularly good effect to hear the base, in passing from the second measure to the third, proceed from  $c$  to  $B$

\* Doubtless the example *l* of this figure is here intended, although not specified in the original.—ED.



while the second part proceeds at the same moment from  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{c}\sharp$ , and to hear the same parallelism of pure seconds recur again in passing from the sixth measure to the seventh; namely:

From 2d to 3d measure. $\left\{ \begin{array}{cc} \bar{d} & \bar{c}\sharp \\ c & B \end{array} \right.$	From 6th to 7th measure. $\left\{ \begin{array}{cc} c & b \\ B\flat & A \end{array} \right.$
---	--

(See § 466 *bis*.)

A parallelism of seconds between tones foreign to the harmony usually sounds ill also; as, for example, in fig. 908:

(Fig. 908.)

The passage in fig. 909, also, belongs in some respects to the present connection:

(Fig. 909.)

since, here, during the continuance of the harmony  $C:V?$ , the tone  $G\sharp$  of the base is a transition to the following tone  $A$ , while the tone  $g\sharp$  of the vocal part is a transition to the major ninth  $a$ , and thus not only the tones  $G\sharp$  and  $a$  are struck together, in a manner that has rather a strange appearance to the eye, but, if we imagine the  $G$  of the base to be continued on to the following  $G\sharp$ , the two parts also run parallel to each other at the distance of a minor second; namely:

$g$	$g\sharp$	$a$	$f$
$G$		$G\sharp$	

Still, this case not only involves no unpleasant effect whatever, but the flow of its progressions throughout is uniformly sweet and graceful, so that no hearer could here think of finding the slightest fault.

### DIVISION III.

#### PARALLELISM BY THIRDS.

##### § 501.

Parallel progressions by thirds are in themselves universally faultless, whether they are major or minor thirds, or major and minor thirds alternately, as well between harmonic tones as between tones which are foreign to the harmony, as well in the gradual as in the skipping movement, and as well in outer as in middle parts.—Examples may be found in figs. 910—916, in which the parallel progressions by thirds are pointed out by brackets.

(Fig. 910.)

(Fig. 911.)



(Fig. 912.)

(Fig. 913.)



(Fig. 914.)

(Fig. 915.)

ROSSINI.



(Fig. 916.)

R s t F CALDARA.



But, more particularly, the progression by thirds is the most natural and flowing species of progression of two parts interspersed with *transition-tones*; it is that species of progression which the most readily impresses the ear, is the most easy to understand, and which, for this reason, is extremely frequent, altogether too frequent indeed, and hence is sometimes rendered at last really dull and tedious, and, instead of exhibiting an air of flowing smoothness, becomes even positively insipid.

§ 502.

The old music-teachers entertained the belief that the succession of *two major thirds* sounded ill, and also knew how to adduce the most learned reasons why such a progression, which they called a *Mi contra Fa*, could not possibly be allowed. In order to impress this the more firmly upon the mind of their pupils, they caused the latter carefully to commit to memory the little verse

“ Mi contra Fa  
Est diabolus in Musica,”\*

and they regarded such a parallelism of thirds also as a species of cross-relation (see remark on § 496), while *Vogler*† denounces it as a rough, ear-cutting offence against the capabilities of harmony [*“ Harmonabilität ”*].—Fortunately, we have no occasion to plunge into this abyss of learned names and reasons; since our ears at the present day, to say the least, perceive nothing repulsive in these successions of thirds; as the examples quoted in the foregoing section plainly show.

It is true, indeed, that many passages sound ill in which two parts move by major parallel thirds; or, in other words, we find many ill-sounding passages in which these parallels occur; as, for example, fig. 917 i:



But surely it does not follow from this that the parallelism by major thirds is the cause of the ill effect of such passages; for, in that case, the very

\* The *Mi contra Fa* is the devil in music. [John D. Heinichen observes,—p. 101 of his work, “*Der General-Bass in der Composition*,”—that we might with greater justice say:—

“ Octava deficiens et superflua  
Sunt duo Diaboli in Musica.”

i. e. The diminished and the superfluous octave are two devils in music.—Ed.]

† Page 62 of his *Handbuch der Harmonielehre*.

passage above quoted would, by being so altered as to remove those parallelisms as it is in *k*, cease to sound ill. But such, it is readily perceived, is not the case; and this is of itself sufficient proof that the parallelism by thirds is not the cause of the ill effect produced by the passage in fig. 917 *i*. The true cause seems rather to lie in the several times repeated trivial and insignificant alternation of the two secondary harmonies III—II—III—II—III.—(Compare the remark on § 242, as also § 243.)

---

REMARK.

*The cause of the faultiness of parallelism by thirds is supposed by our theorists, again, to lie in the fact that such two successive thirds, particularly two major thirds, always involve an harmonic skip.*—Without being obliged to repeat what I have already said in the remark on § 496, relative to the strange article denominated *an harmonic skip*, I will simply glance at the following points, in a word.

If a faultiness were to be demonstrated to exist in the passage fig. 918,



arising from a so-called harmonic skip, it would be necessary to pre-suppose, in such a demonstration—(1) that two major thirds, following each other in two parts by the regular degrees of the scale, always depend upon two major three-fold chords successively situated on two proximate degrees of the scale; and (2) that such a step of a second in the fundamental harmony is faulty; (3) that two proximate three-fold harmonies are not to be found together in any one key, but always indicate two different keys, and that too even very remote keys, and thus always a digressive modulation into a key but remotely related to the previous one; and (4) that such remote digressions are faulty.

After all that has already been said on former occasions, it surely cannot require any farther proof to show how very untrue are *all these premises*, and how little adapted they are to serve as fundamental principles for a demonstration of the reason why the above-mentioned examples sound ill, and so much the less, too, since it is not even true that a parallelism of two such thirds does sound ill in itself, as we have already seen, partly from the above examples in fig. 918 *k* and *l*, and partly from several of the foregoing ones.

---

DIVISION IV.

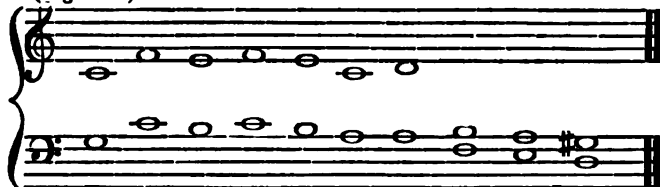
PARALLELISM BY FOURTHS.

§ 503.

Parallel progressions by fourths are far less acceptable to the ear than are those by thirds.

The worst cases of this kind are those in which two parts *alone* run parallel to each other at the distance of a fourth, as in fig. 919:

(Fig. 919.)



The reason why fourths of this description sound so very inharmoniously and insignificantly, lies very much in the fact that the ear either cannot satisfy itself, from such progressions, what harmonies form the basis of these harmonic combinations, or is compelled to consider them, perhaps, as a series of chords all in the second inversion, with the omission of the third (§ 74).

But, even when the parallels are not thus naked, such a species of movement is often rather disagreeable to the ear, and the most so when one of the parallel parts is the *base*, because the ear in this case, for the most part, perceives a series of chords in the second inversion; fig. 920, *i*, *k*:

(Fig. 920, *i*.)

We sometimes, however, hear a part proceeding parallel to the base at the distance of a fourth, without experiencing any ill effect from it; as, for example, in fig. 921, *i*;

(Fig. 921, *i*.)

KIRNBERGER.

(k.)



but this is the case only to the same extent that the ear justifies the fourths which the eye here perceives, by conceiving to itself that the under part is an harpegiate part, and that this three-part passage is thus a four-part one, as in fig. 921, *k*.

But parallel progressions by fourths are not particularly agreeable even in middle parts. The passage in fig. 922, for example,

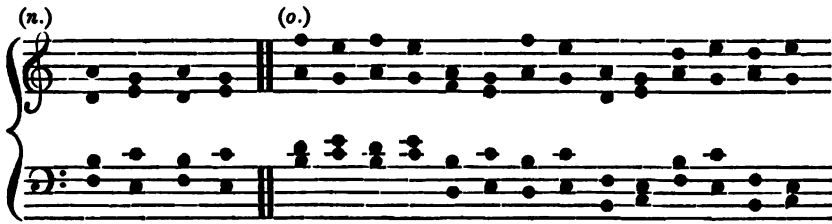
(Fig. 922, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)

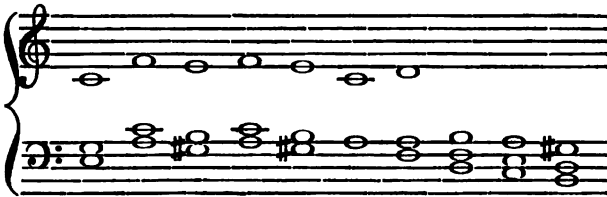




sounds less agreeable in *i* and *k*, where the first and second parts, and in *l*, where the two middle parts, run parallel to each other by fourths, than it does in *m*, *n*, and *o*, where such parallels are avoided. (Compare § 80.)

Parallel progressions by fourths are the most agreeable in cases where several harmonic combinations follow each other in the form of sixth-chords, particularly in the gradual (not skipping) movement, as in fig. 923 :

(Fig. 923.)



The continued parallels between the two upper parts of fig. 924, moreover, do not produce a disagreeable effect :

(Fig. 924.)



§ 504.

Parallel progressions by fourths between *transition-tones* are still more rarely fit to be used. Figs. 925—929 :

(Fig. 925.)

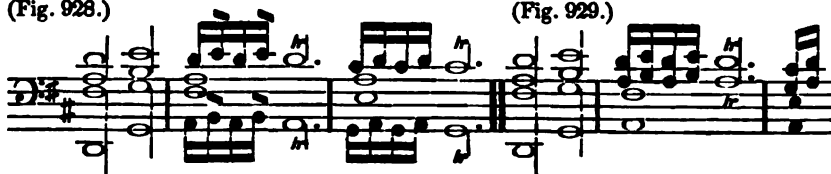
(Fig. 926.)

(Fig. 927.)

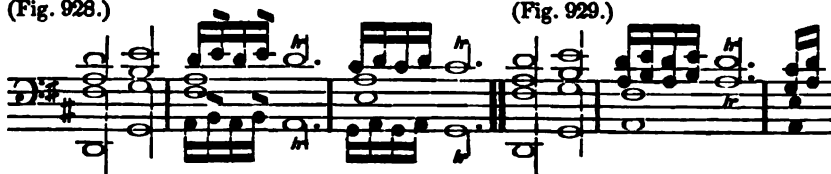


C:V7 I IV7 °VII III7 VI G:V7 I

(Fig. 928.)



(Fig. 929.)



Still, however, in the above-mentioned *third-sixth position*, they sound perfectly well ; as in figs. 930—932 :

(Fig. 930.)



(Fig. 931.)



(Fig. 932.)



## DIVISION V.

### PARALLELISM BY FIFTHS.

#### § 505.

Parallel progressions *by fifths* usually sound ill, and it is very seldom of good effect to allow two parts to run parallel to each other at the distance of a fifth, or, as musical composers are accustomed to express it, to place two fifths immediately after each other in direct motion.

The prohibition of these parallel progressions by fifths, which are usually called *forbidden fifths*, forbidden fifth-successions, or forbidden progressions by fifths, has acquired great celebrity in the theory of musical composition, and not unfrequently have the entire merits of a musical production been decided according to the more or less scientific observance of this prohibition ; so that one should thus be led to believe that the whole doctrine of musical composition consists simply and solely in the injunction to avoid such parallelisms.—Musical writers have, accordingly, in every instance treated this chapter of the theory with special fulness, and have, besides, even extended it to many cases which can only, in a greater or less degree, *improperly* be called parallelisms by fifths, under the name of *concealed* or *hidden fifths*.

In order, on our part also, to confer the due honour upon this celebrated

chapter, we will prepare ourselves likewise to examine it with some measure of fulness and detail.

We will, therefore,

(A.) First examine the various species of *actual* or *proper* parallel progressions by fifths,—then also those which are improperly so termed, namely, those progressions which, though really involving no parallel movements by fifths, still have some resemblance to these, and are, on this account, brought into this category, being considered as it were *concealed* parallelisms by fifths.—After this,

(B.) We will inform ourselves as to the *merits* of such a species of movement, as to the admissibility or inadmissibility of the different varieties of such proper, or more or less improper, parallelisms by fifths.

(A.) ENUMERATION OF THE DIFFERENT SPECIES OF PARALLEL PROGRESSIONS BY FIFTHS.

(1.) *Proper, actual or open Parallels by Fifths.*

§ 506.

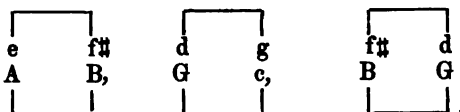
We will first consider the *proper* parallelisms by fifths, where, namely, two parts actually run parallel to each other at the distance of a fifth.

This may take place in two different ways, that is to say, either

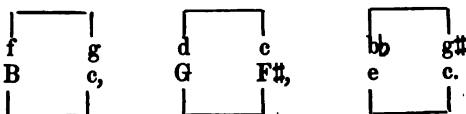
(a.) *In a strictly parallel movement, or*

(b.) *In a movement not strictly parallel;*

just according as the fifths are of the same species; as, for example,



or of a different species; as, for example,



§ 507.

(a.) *In strictly parallel movement, and that too*

(a.) At the distance of *purely major fifths*, parts are found to run parallel to each other in fig. 933 i:



(Fig. 933, i.)                      (k.)                      (l.)                      (II.)

(m.)                      (n.)

(o.)                      (p.)

(q.)

T R t R s T F R

namely, first the two outer parts :

Upper part :

Base :

d	e	a
G	A	D &c.,

then in *k* :

Middle part :

Base :

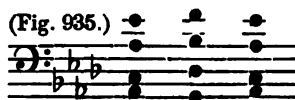
d	e	A
G	A	D &c.;

and so also the middle parts in fig. 934 :

(Fig. 934.)

as is shown by the brackets drawn from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{a}$  and from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{d}$ .

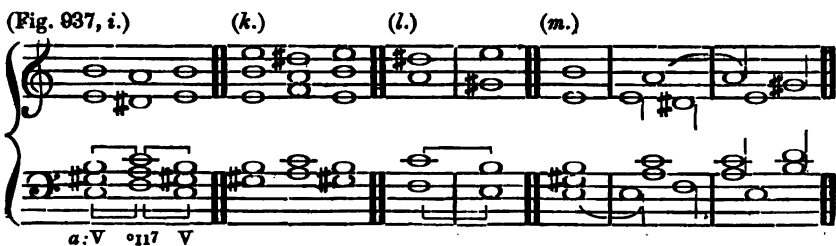
In fig. 935,



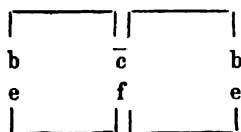
the two upper parts move twice in such parallel progressions, as do also the two lower parts in fig. 936 :



In fig. 937, *i*,



the third part and the base, in like manner, take two of these parallel steps :



(Compare § 508.)—

In fig. 938,

(Fig. 938.)

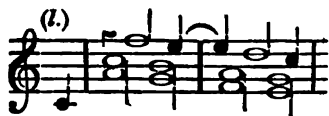
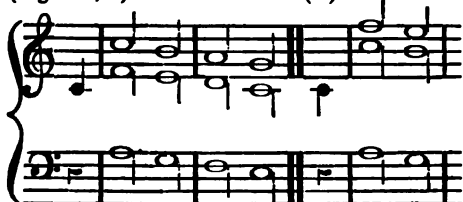


the tenor proceeds, from the second to the third measure, parallel to the upper part at the distance of a fifth.

In fig. 939,

(Fig. 939, i.)

(k.)



several such parallel steps of the two upper parts occur.

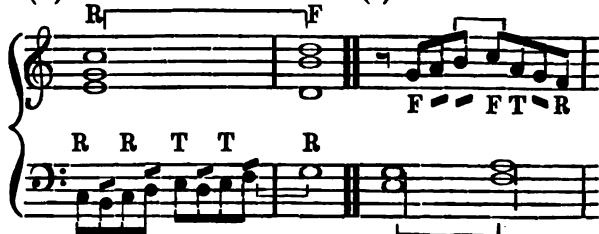
These have all been parallels by fifths between harmonic tones. Now also for examples in which *transition-tones form fifths with harmonic tones*.

In fig. 940, i,

(Fig. 940, i.)

(k.)

(l.)



the transition-tone *f* forms an under fifth with the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the upper part, whereupon the fifth *g*— $\bar{d}$  follows in parallel movement.—Similar fifths are found in *k* and *l*,—and in figs. 941—946:

(Fig. 941.)



(Fig. 942, i.) F t (A.) (L) (m.)

R F R F R

d:V7 i C:V7 I vi

(Fig. 943.) BACH'S PIANOFORTE SONATA.

C:I IV G:V I a:V I

(Fig. 944.) E. W. WOLF. (Fig. 945.) F F F R

a:I IV C:V7 I IV7 vII a:V7 I

(Fig. 946.) CH. G. SCHRÖTER. (Fig. 947.)

V I IV7 vII III7

In the following examples,

(Fig. 948, i.) F F F F F t T F F R R

R R R R t F F R R

(Fig. 948, *k*.)

(l.)



fifths occur *between transition-tones themselves*.—Parallel progressions by mere fifths are easily discovered also in figs. 949—952 :

(Fig. 949.)



(Fig. 950.)

(Fig. 951, *a*.)

(b.)

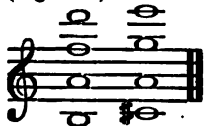


(Fig. 952.)



(b.) In the following passages, two parts likewise move in strict parallelisms by *minor fifths* :

(Fig. 953.)



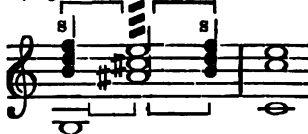
(Fig. 954.)



(Fig. 955.)

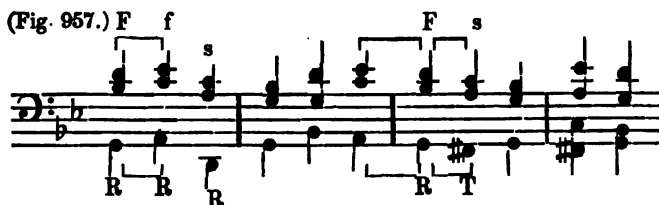


(Fig. 956.)

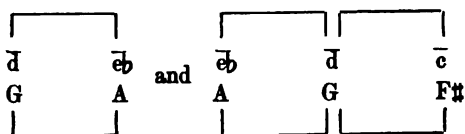


§ 508.

(b.) An example of two parts proceeding together in a movement *not strictly parallel* (in fifths of unlike magnitude) may be seen in the two outer parts of fig. 957 :



namely :



Progressions of a similar description occur also in figs. 958—961 :

(Fig. 958, i.) (k.)



(Fig. 959.)



(Fig. 960.)



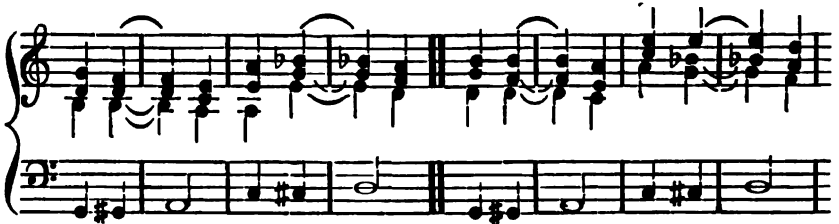
(Fig. 961.)



also in fig. 962, second and fourth measures,—and in fig. 963 :

(Fig. 962, i.)

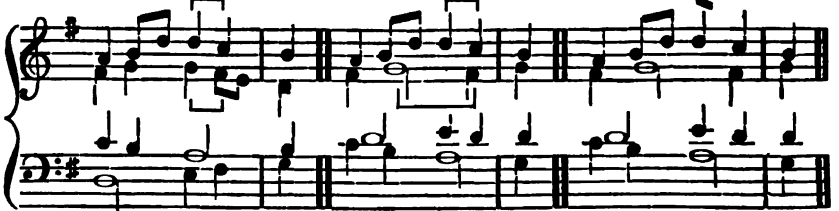
(k.)



(Fig. 963, i.)

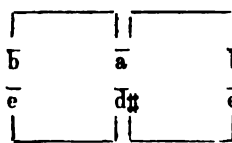
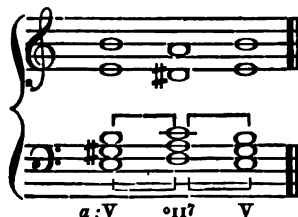
(k.)

(l.)



In addition to the like fifths in the example fig. 937 *i*, p. 801, which have already been remarked upon (§ 507), we find also unlike fifths in the same example, namely, between the first and second parts :

(Fig. 937, i.)



(2.) *Improper or concealed Parallelisms by Fifths.*

## § 509.

All the cases thus far considered have been those of real and open parallelisms by fifths.

But, in addition to these, as already observed, we also reckon here still other forms of movement, which less obviously, and even only in an improper sense, merit this name, and which may, accordingly, be called *improper*, and in part even imaginary, parallelisms by fifths. With these also we will now become acquainted.

(a.) *Parallelisms by Fifths interrupted by Rests.*

## § 510.

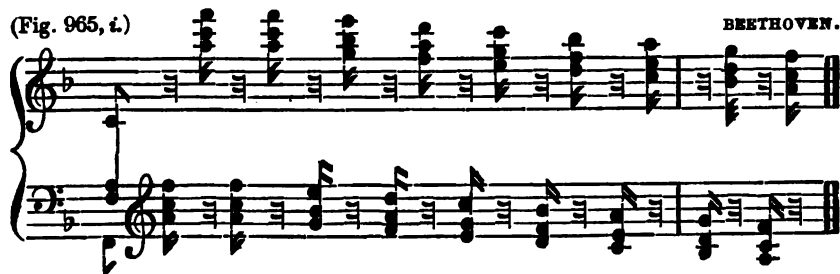
Among the concealed or improper parallelisms by fifths, belong, first, those which are *interrupted by rests*; as, for example, the following:

(Fig. 964.)

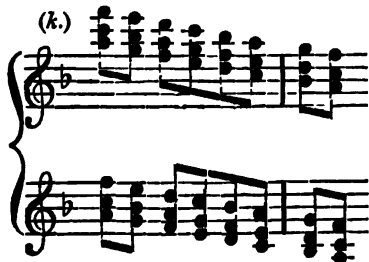


where the brackets, extended over the rests, point out the parallels. In like manner, we can discover pure parallelisms by fifths, though interrupted by rests, in figs. 965 and 966,—and, if we choose, also in fig. 967:

(Fig. 965, i.)



(k.)





(Fig. 966.)



(Fig. 967.)

(b.) *Harpegiate Fifths.*

## § 511.

Another species of improper parallelisms by fifths sometimes arises from *harpegiate progressions* (§ 21). In the following fig. 968, *i*,

(Fig. 968, *i*.)

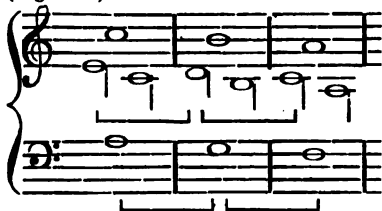
(k.)

(l.)



(compare §§ 513, 532, 542), the eye, it is true, discovers no parallel progressions by fifths; but still, the ear, so far as it conceives the base to be an harpegiate part—an harpegiate expression of two parts, as in *k*, perceives forbidden fifths between the base and the second part, inasmuch as the example, considered in this point of view, appears only as an harpegiate representation of *l*. In like manner, one detects fifths between the base and middle parts in fig. 969 :

(Fig. 969.)



It *sounds* as if it involved these fifths, although *the eye* perceives no parallel progressions by fifths.—Similar fifths may be traced out in fig. 970, *i* :

(Fig. 970, *i*.)

KIRNBERGER. (k.)



as also in figs. 971—975:

(Fig. 971, i.)

KIRNBERGER.



(Fig. 972.)



(Fig. 973, i.)



(Fig. 973, k.)

(Fig. 974.)



(Fig. 975, i.)



(i.)



## § 512.

We have just seen that a passage sometimes exhibits parallelisms by fifths, by its being considered as an harpegiate representation of two or more parts. On the contrary, we find also, in many passages, obvious parallels by fifths, which *cease to be so when they are regarded as harpegiate progressions.*

If we regard the following passage, fig. 976, *i*,



merely according to the notes, the eye sees entirely open fifths, as the brackets show; but the succession of fifths disappears the moment we regard the upper part as an harpegiate expression of two parts, as in *k* and *l*: and, regarded in this point of view, the upper part, from the first to the second measure, is not considered as passing from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{g}$ , but as if it proceeded from  $\bar{a}$  to  $\bar{g}$ , and a second part from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{e}$ ; and in such a conduct of harpegiate parts there is of course *no* parallelism by fifths. (Compare § 27.)—Still less equivocal is the passage in *m*:

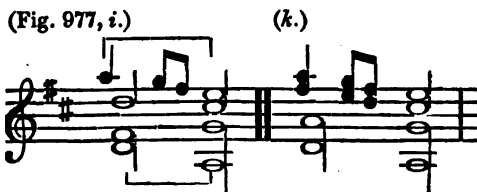
(Fig. 976, *m*.)



(c.) *Parallelism of Fifths by Accent.*

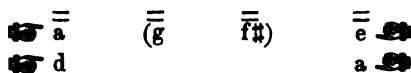
## § 513.

An impression of forbidden fifths is often conveyed to the ear when *the chiefly accented (emphasised) or otherwise prominent notes* of two parts form fifths by our conceiving the less important tones to be absent. In the following fig. 977,



the first and the fourth notes in the upper part render themselves particularly prominent, while, on the contrary, those occurring on the lighter portions of the

measure make a very perceptibly weaker impression upon the ear. Now, if we conceive these less important tones to be absent, fifths, it is perceived, appear between the upper part and the base; as, for example:



In fig. 978, *i*, *k*, also,

(Fig. 978, *i*.)

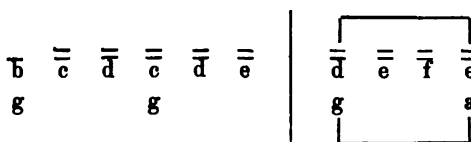
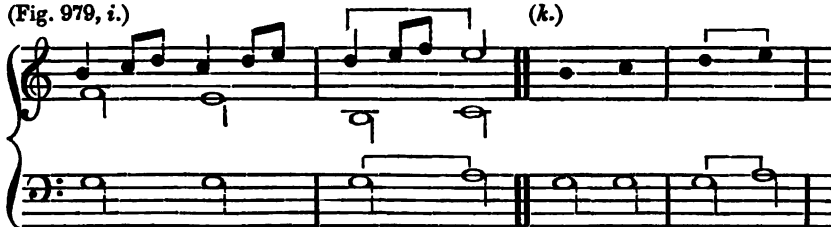
(*k*.)



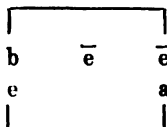
two fifths exhibit themselves, if we conceive the notes between  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{d}$  in the upper part to be absent;—and also in fig. 979, *i*, as is shown in *k*:

(Fig. 979, *i*.)

(*k*.)



Moreover, in fig. 970 *i*, p. 808, in which we have already (§ 511) found a concealed parallelism by fifths, we detect a still farther and otherwise concealed progression by fifths, if we conceive the after-note  $\bar{e}$  of the tenor, at the fourth eighth-note, to be absent, as follows:



This fact would show itself still more prominently by altering the passage as in *k*, where the concealing after-note  $\bar{e}$  appears still more insignificant, and thus conceals the fifths still more imperfectly than in *i*.

In figs. 968, 969, and 971, pp. 808 and 809, the concealed fifths are also rendered the more prominent by the accent.

(d.) *Parallelism by Fifths concealed by Tones foreign to the Harmony.*

§ 514.

Another species of concealed fifths between harmonic tones are those which

are *disguised by transition-tones introduced between them*, and which, these transition-tones being considered as absent, contain parallel progressions by fifths; as, for example, in fig. 980:

(Fig. 980, i.)

(k.)



so far as we conceive the principal tone  $\bar{c}$  to stand in the place of the suspension  $\bar{d}$ ;—and so also in figs. 981—983:

(Fig. 981.)

(Fig. 982, a.)

(b.)

(c.)

(d.)



(Fig. 983, i.)



(k.)



and also in fig. 984 i :

(Fig. 984, i.)



(Fig. 984, *k*.)

(l.)



as likewise in *k* and *l*, where the concealed harpegiate fifths, in fig. 974, p. 809, are rendered still somewhat more imperceptible by tones foreign to the harmony.

(e.) *Parallelisms by Fifths arising from the Crossing of Parts.*

§ 515.

Again, another species of improper parallels by fifths consists of those which are only concealed from the eye *by the skipping of one part over another, by the crossing of parts*, while to the ear they are still equally obvious,—or, perhaps better expressed, by the movement of two parts, crossing each other, which impresses the ear as a parallelism of fifths, provided it [the ear] conceives the crossing parts *not* to cross each other. The following example explains this:

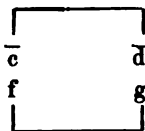
(Fig. 985, *i*.)

(k.)



if the first part here in *i* moves from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{g}$ , and the second from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{d}$ , the case of course involves no parallel progression, and consequently no parallelism by fifths. But if we consider what tones, what combinations of tones, the ear perceives, we shall find that they are none other than, first, [ $\bar{f} \bar{c}$ ], and then [ $\bar{g} \bar{d}$ ]. It is true, indeed, that one part in this case gives the higher tone in the first chord and the lower tone in the second, while the other part, vice versâ, gives the lowest note in the first chord, and then passes by a skip over the first part to the highest note of the second chord; but it may easily happen that the ear does not perceive such a crossing of the parts, or at least takes no notice of it (§ 6), and, instead of truly following the thread of the parts as they cross each other, confounds them, perhaps, and consequently construes the case in such a manner as to make the same part which gave the highest note  $\bar{c}$  in the first chord, also give the higher tone  $\bar{d}$  in the second chord, and so as to make the second part, in like manner, give the two lower tones  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{g}$ ;—and, by

regarding the matter in this light, the ear would of course perceive and understand the said example as follows, as it stands in *k* :



it would, consequently, understand the case as if two parts proceeded parallel to each other by fifths, which, to be sure, is not really the fact, but still it seems so to the ear, and, accordingly, the latter [the ear] conceives itself to be hearing parallel progressions by fifths, although, more accurately considered, none are properly present.

*Kirnberger*\* cites a similar example, fig. 986, *i* :

(Fig. 986, *i*.)

(*k*.)

This passage, in case we disregard the crossing of the two upper parts, sounds most perfectly as if the second part constantly proceeded parallel to the base at the distance of a fifth, as is somewhat more prominently exhibited in *k*.

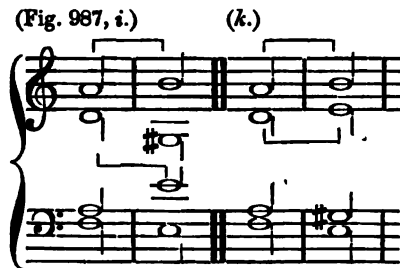
This passage will, therefore, sound as if it contained forbidden fifths, particularly if both upper parts, as is here the case, are executed by like instruments; for example, by two violins, and even perhaps every note detached by each. Certainly, in such a case, the ear has no reason for ascribing the highest note of the second chord to any other part than the one which also gave the highest tone of the first chord: thus it will pay but little regard to the distinction, whether the first violin, which first gave the tone  $\bar{c}$ , gives, in the second chord, the tone  $\bar{a}$  of the upper staff, or the tone  $\bar{d}$  of the next staff below,—whether this  $\bar{d}$  is given by the same violin which gave the tone  $\bar{c}$ , or by the other violin. The ear will, therefore, in this case, easily perceive parallel progressions by fifths, although, according to the distribution of the parts, there are really none present.

It must not be overlooked in this example, moreover, that it is not on account of these fifths alone that the passage sounds ill, but (a thing which

\* In his *Kunst des reinen Satzes*, I. Bd. p. 149.

*Kirnberger* neglected to mention) that it sounds doubly and trebly ill also on the ground that, in addition to this parallelism by fifths, still other infelicities are involved in it; namely, the so-called forbidden octaves (with which we shall shortly become acquainted),—and still farther also the trivial and insignificant harmonic successions: I—II—I—V—VI—V, or I—II—I—*G*: I—II—I. (Compare § 250, *b*.)

The passage in fig. 987, *i*, also (a passage likewise borrowed from *Kirnberger*\*),



seems like a case of forbidden fifths, provided the ear, as may easily happen, confounds the threads of the crossing middle parts, as in *k*.

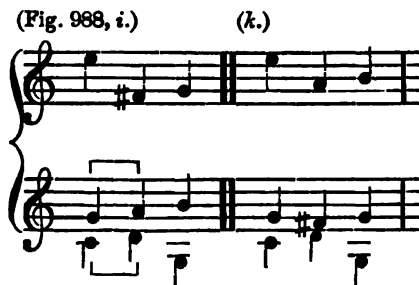
So also in the example fig. 52 *i*, p. 123, if we but conceive the course of the crossing parts to be absent, we can discover a parallelism of two consecutive parts, as may be seen in *k*, p. 123.

Now, whether and when the ear will, in such cases, construe the matter in the one way or in the other, depends chiefly upon the circumstances just mentioned—circumstances which are more minutely detailed in § 6 of the present work.

---

§ 516.

As, in the examples hitherto quoted, parallelisms by fifths exhibit themselves, if we conceive the crossing parts not to cross each other, so also may cases be conceived of where parts which in fact proceed in an *open parallelism of fifths* to each other are so concealed by a third part which crosses one of the former, that the ear scarcely, if at all, perceives the consecutive fifths. Thus, for example, in fig. 988 *i*,




---

\* In the before-named work, p. 254.



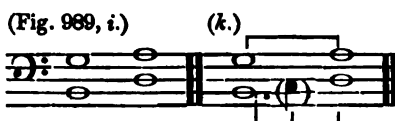
the middle part in itself runs parallel to the base at the distance of a fifth; but the upper part, which crosses the middle part, gives the case the aspect of being as represented in *k*.

(f.) *Inserted Fifths.*

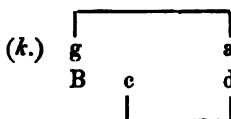
§ 517.

Another case which theorists reckon into the class of concealed (or, as *Vogler* calls them, masked) parallelisms by fifths, is that in which two parts, *proceeding together, not in parallel, but still in direct movement, in one instance only form a fifth with each other*;—or, in other words, theorists reckon here, not merely, as heretofore observed, *two* fifths in direct movement, but even every *individual* fifth which occurs in direct motion.

They say, namely, that if the upper part in fig. 989, *i*,

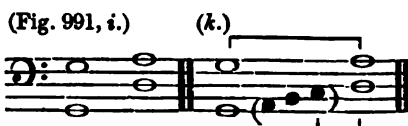
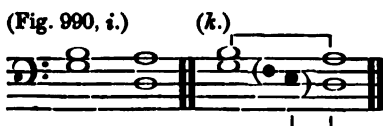


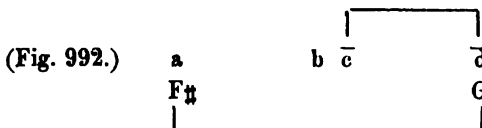
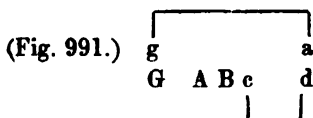
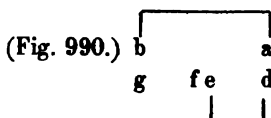
proceeds from *g* to *a*, while the under part skips from *B* to *d*, this latter part might, instead of *skipping* from *B* to *d*, proceed gradually, and not by a skip, but through the intermediate tone, and thus of course from *B* to *c* and thence to *d*, as in *k*: in such a case, the step from *c* to *d*, while the upper part should proceed from *g* to *a*, would be a parallelism by fifths, namely:



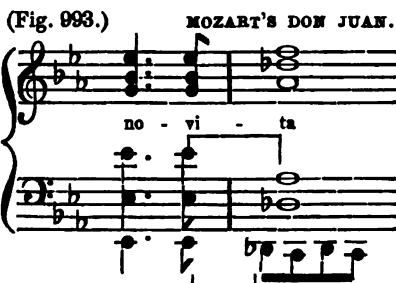
and now, inasmuch as a parallel progression by fifths would occur in the passage, fig. 989 *i*, above, provided only it were otherwise than it is, namely, as represented in *k*, so such progressions as that in fig. 989 *i*, above, are reckoned among the concealed, or, to speak more correctly, the imagined parallelisms by fifths.

Such a contraband progression lies concealed in each of the following examples in *i*, as it may be seen unmasked in each instance in *k*:

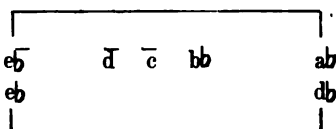




In the following passage also, from Mozart's Don Juan,



the brackets point out such a concealed parallel progression by fifths between the fourth part and the base,



—as also in the following passage, from the first chord to the second, between the soprano and the base :



(Compare §§ 245, 518, 520, and 538.)

I designate this species of improper or concealed parallelisms by fifths by the term *inserted fifths*, on the ground that these progressions are, as we see, only so far parallelisms by fifths, as we, in idea, *insert* or *interpolate* a tone in one of the two parts (for instance, the tone c in fig. 989, the tones f and e in fig. 990, the tones A B and c in fig. 991, &c.).

I must farther observe, that the term *concealed* or *hidden fifths* is not

unfrequently, in our books of instruction, applied exclusively to this one species of prohibited fifths by way of pre-eminence, while all the other varieties above-mentioned are not treated at all.

§ 518.

If, moreover, as is here the case, one will construe every direct step to a *fifth* as a suspicious progression, he must also, in order to be consistent, do the same thing in relation to a direct movement from a *fifth*; as, for example, in figs. 995, *i*, *k*, *l*, and 996, *i*, *k*, *l*:

(Fig. 995, *i*)      (*k*)      (*l*)

(Fig. 996, *i*)      (*k*)      (*l*)

(*m*)      (*n*)

(Fig. 995 *i*)      (*k*)

a	g	a	b
d	c	d	e f g

(*l*)

a	g
d	c B A G

Fig. 996 (*i*)      (*k*)

$\bar{g}$	$\bar{f}$	$\bar{e}$	$\bar{g}$
$\bar{c}$	$\bar{b}b$	$\bar{g}$	$\bar{b}b$

(*l*)

$\bar{a}$	$\bar{b}$
$\bar{d}$	$\bar{e} \bar{f} \bar{g}$

(and *Schicht*, from whose *fundamental rules of harmony* [*Grundregeln der Harmonie*] I borrow fig. 996, is altogether more consistent than other writers, who have entirely overlooked this latter species of inserted fifths).

Concealed fifths of this description may be detected by multitudes in the foregoing manner; in fig. 994, p. 817, for example, from the first to the second quarter-note of the first measure, between the outer parts, are found exactly the same species of fifths that were commented upon in fig. 996 *l*, p. 818, and another case of the same kind occurs also from the last note but one to the last note, between the base and middle parts.

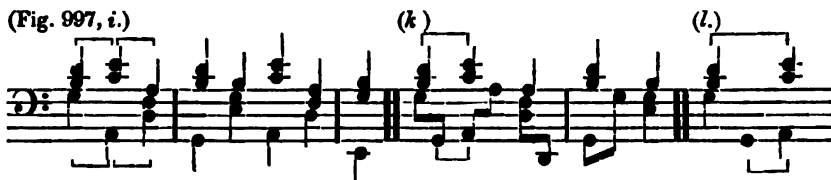
(g.) *Fifths in Contrary Motion.*

§ 519.

Still another species of improper parallelism by fifths is that of the so-called *fifths in contrary motion*.

In fig. 997, *i*,

(Fig. 997, *i*.)



the upper part moves from  $\bar{d}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , while the base proceeds from  $g$  to  $A$ .—This is in itself, certainly, no parallelism by fifths; but since the tone  $g$  is but the copy of the tone  $G$ , this conduct of the base does not differ materially from what it would be, if it proceeded from  $g$  to  $a$ , or from  $G$  to  $A$  (say as in *k* or *l*), which progression,  $G \rightarrow A$ , would form a parallelism of fifths with the upper part  $\bar{d} \rightarrow \bar{e}$ . In like manner, we may detect other fifths in the same example which lie concealed in the contrary movement:

(Fig. 997.)

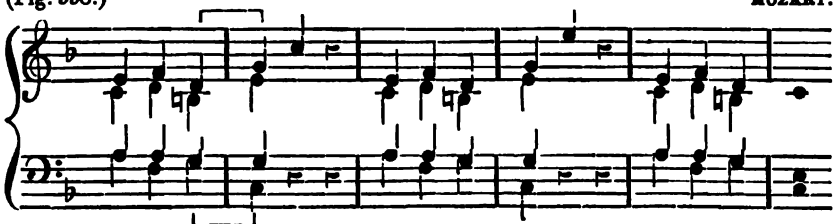
$\bar{d}$	$\bar{e}$	$a$	$\bar{d}$	$b$
$g$	$A$	$d$	$G$	$e$

and, considered in this point of view, this passage is little else than the above quoted fig. 977 *i*, p. 810.

The same species of fifths are found in the following passage, fig. 998.

(Fig. 998.)

MOZART.



D D 2

(h.) *Ear-Fifths.*

## § 520.

Still another species of concealed or imagined fifths is found mentioned in our books of instruction under the singular appellation of *ear-fifths*, though without any regular definition of them being given.—But if we advert to the examples to which authors apply this designation, we find that such cases are uniformly intended by it as is the one in fig. 999, i:

(Fig. 999, i.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)

(n.) (o.) (p.) (q.) (r.)

(s.) (t.) (u.) (v.) (w.)

Thus, for example, *Türck*\* says, "they are those fifths which are not indeed actually present, but which, nevertheless, one imagines himself to hear"—(a definition which applies without distinction to every species of concealed parallelisms by fifths!).

For examples, he refers to such cases as those in fig. 999, *r—w*, above. According to these examples, therefore, ear-fifths would be a particular species of inserted fifths in contrary movement, namely:

(Fig. 999 m.)

$\bar{c}$	$\bar{d}$	$\bar{e}$	$\bar{f}$	$\bar{g}$	$\bar{a}$	$\bar{a}$
$\bar{c}$						$\bar{d}$

More on such fifths in a subsequent part of this work. (§ 538.)

\* In his *Anweisung zum Generalbass*, in the index, at the word, "*Ohrenquinten*."

(3.) *More extended Survey.*

## § 521.

We have thus far considered, with some measure of fulness, how different species of parallelisms by fifths may arise from the different ways of conducting two parts, and from the more or less actually parallel position thence arising. But it will readily be perceived, that this classification of the various species of such progressions falls far short of exhausting the subject. For, we have, in what precedes, uniformly had reference merely to the intervals lying between the two progressing parts, merely to the movement of the parts (and thus as it were have only embraced the dynamic ground of division), but have not at the same time had any regard to the different possible harmonies and harmonic successions which form the basis of such progressions of parts, nor to the obviously most important distinction involved therein, whether the movement by fifths takes place during the continuance of one and the same harmony, as in the previous examples, figs. 955, 956, and 959, p. 805; or at the time of an harmonic step, and that, too, either an harmonic step in the same scale, as in fig. 960, &c. p. 805, or a more or less, wholly or partially digressive step, as in fig. 953, &c. p. 805; and, again, indeed, of what harmony, of what more or less nearly related key, and from what interval of this or that harmony to what interval of what following harmony, under what more or less favourable circumstances, or under what more or fewer concurring combinations of these or those of all the circumstances just adverted to, or of others, &c. (compare remark on § 99). Indeed, a distinct classification might, again, with propriety, have been predicated upon the consideration, whether the progression by fifths is made upwards or downwards, gradually or by skips (which, however, would also be a mere dynamic ground of distinction), &c.

Contemplating the field in this point of view, one readily sees that if we would classify separately all the various ways in which parallel progressions by fifths may occur, according to the above, and still other grounds of distinction, we should not very soon arrive at the end of our labours.

I here again find myself compelled to limit my treatment of the subject to the classifications thus far exhibited, and merely to hint at the great extent of the field, without being able even to measure it minutely, and still less to bestow upon it a full examination.

## (B.) MERITS OF THE PARALLEL PROGRESSIONS OF TWO PARTS BY FIFTHS.

## § 522.

After having thus far (from § 506 to the present place) taken a survey of the different species of actual, and imagined or concealed, parallelisms by fifths, we now come, in the natural order of topics, to the consideration of their various merits.

On this point there exists a great contrariety between the old musicians and the musical artists of the present day. The former avoided everything in the

shape of a parallelism by fifths, with the most assiduous care, and shuddered and had the ear-ache the moment they could anywhere discover even the remotest shadow of a parallel progression by fifths.—The latter, on the contrary, lifting up their heads with a buoyant spirit of liberty and a dignified contempt of antiquated pedantic prejudices, reject and condemn all the old prohibitions of parallelisms by fifths, as pedantic trash and useless scholastic lore.

If we consider this subject in a sufficiently liberal point of view, we shall see that, in this case also, the unconditional prohibition, on the one hand, is as incorrect and ill founded, as is the unconditional contempt of it on the other.

The multitudinous variety of these parallels, and the numerous ways in which they may occur, each of which is so essentially different from the others, and which, on account of their extreme multiplicity, we have not been able fully to enumerate, and much less circumstantially to examine (§ 521),—even this essential diversity of the innumerable possible cases is sufficient proof of itself that this subject again does not admit of being dispatched either by universal prohibitions, or by a universal renunciation of them. Every one, whose ear is not entirely uncultivated, will perceive, on reviewing the various examples thus far referred to, that many of them really sound in the highest degree disagreeably, while many others do *not* sound ill at all, and that thus both parties, as well the old ultras as the modern liberals, each in his own way, are in error: and the chief cause of this error is obviously the fact, that they all, contemplating the matter in a too limited point of view, do not survey the entire extent of the subject upon which they undertake to decide; and hence they fancy themselves to have found a principle of universal application, as soon as they ascertain that it fits the limited scrap of the field which they may happen to have before their eyes. (Compare remark on § 99.)

Far as we would keep ourselves from pronouncing such a universal decision, productive only of partial and limited views, still, on the other hand, we find it equally impossible to consider every branch of this subject separately, and thus to exhaust the field. Here again, therefore, we must, in the very nature of the case, satisfy ourselves with giving mere hints; but these shall at least have the merit of distinguishing themselves from the dogmas heretofore laid down, by the fact that they are not proffered under the misguiding assurance of their being universal precepts.

With these limitations, then, we subjoin the following remarks.

---

### (1.) *Fundamental Principle.*

#### § 523.

It is entirely true that the parallel progression of two parts by fifths is frequently, and indeed usually, disagreeable and repulsive to the ear, as is very perceptibly shown by many at least of the foregoing examples.

The disagreeable effect of such a progression, however, is realized only in cases where the ear can *clearly and distinctly recognize and perceive* such progressions. The more perceptibly and distinctly the parallel progression by fifths

impresses itself upon the ear, the more sensibly is the infelicity usually produced ; whereas, the more concealed, the less perceptible the consecutive fifths are, the less is the annoyance which is experienced therefrom.

This principle, if applied to the different ways in which parallelisms by fifths may occur, leads to the following results.

---

(2.) *Deduction from the foregoing Principle.*

(a.) *Fifths in Passages having several Parts.*

§ 524.

In the first place, it follows, from the principle above stated, that parallelisms of fifths are less perceptible and consequently less repulsive in *passages having several parts*, than in those which have fewer ; because, in the former case, the ear cannot well follow so definitely the progression of each individual part (§ 28) ; and, on this account, the parallel movement of two parts in fifths the more easily escapes its attention. This circumstance in some measure excuses and justifies the before-mentioned example in fig. 937 *i*, p. 801. (Compare §§ 507 and 508.)—It is for the same reason, moreover, that the five-part passage in fig. 949, p. 804, does not sound ill.—The same is true also of fig. 993, p. 817. (Compare §§ 517 and 525.)

---

(b.) *Fifths in Principal and in Secondary Parts.*

§ 525.

A second result of the principle above established, is, that parallelisms by fifths are particularly offensive in cases where they occur in *outer parts*, or in two parts which are by any other means rendered prominent above the others (§ 8) ; as, *e. g.* in fig. 933, *i* and *l*, p. 800. The case becomes somewhat less disagreeable when only one part is an outer or principal part, as in *k* and *ll*,—and is the least so of all, when these parallels occur only between middle or merely accompanying parts, as in fig. 934, p. 800. (Compare 506.)

It is not intended here to say that all parallel progressions by fifths which do not occur between principal parts are simply on that account free from ill effect (the contrary of which is proved by fig. 933, *k* and *ll*, p. 800) ; but merely that those consecutive fifths which are formed exclusively by middle or secondary parts are *less* offensive, and, if still other favourable and meliorating circumstances concur, may sometimes become by such palliative means entirely free from fault, and of perfectly good effect ; as is the case, for example, in fig. 993, p. 817. (Compare §§ 517 and 524.)—The same is true of fig. 943, p. 803.

---

(c.) *Fifths by the Doubling of Parts.*

§ 526.

For the reason already mentioned in the foregoing section, those parallelisms by fifths do not sound perceptibly ill which arise from the mere doubling of parts in a higher or a lower octave, between one part and the duplicate of the other (§ 15). Thus, *e. g.* the passage in fig. 965, *i* and *k*, p. 807, does not sound ill at all, even



though the second part runs parallel to the fourth in open fifths; for, the second part is nothing else than a mere duplicate of the fifth in a higher octave (as, indeed, all the three higher parts together are nothing else than duplicates of the three lower; or, vice versâ, the lower parts may be regarded as duplicates of the upper; and accordingly, in either case, either all three upper parts or all three lower parts are mere *secondary parts*). Hence, consecutive fifths of *this* species, particularly in full instrumental compositions, are unhesitatingly employed every day.

We will, likewise, in the proper place, make some mention also of the parallel progressions by octaves which occur in the same example.

---

§ 527.

What has been said in the foregoing section applies only in cases where the part is most positively and decidedly a mere duplicate of another; and, indeed, in the example quoted, namely, fig. 965, *i* and *k*, p. 807, chiefly because, here, *all* the parts throughout are doubled in the octave. When this is *not*, to the full extent, so decidedly the case, as, for example, in fig. 1000,

(Fig. 1000.)



the parallel progressions by fifths between the first part and the second are more foreign and repulsive. The same thing would be perceived in fig. 965, p. 807, if, say, the first upper part, or the first and third, were absent.

---

(d.) *Fifths between Harmonic and Non-harmonic Tones.* (§ 507.)

§ 528.

It may also be considered as a result of the above-mentioned principle, that the parallelisms by fifths which occur between harmonic tones and tones foreign to the harmony, as in fig. 940, p. 802, or as in figs. 941—945, pp. 802 and 803, sound less disagreeably, than the same parallels between exclusively harmonic tones, as in fig. 933, p. 800, &c. That is to say, it would seem that the ear does not so distinctly and definitely recognize parallels which are made of so dissimilar elements.

Particularly, a mere *short* transition-tone which falls into a parallelism with an harmonic tone at the distance of a fifth, is not usually offensive to the ear; as, *e. g.* in figs. 940, 941, 943, pp. 802 and 803. In these examples, the ear seems not to attend to these non-harmonic, transient, and, consequently, in every respect

insignificant tones, and seems to regard them as not being present, and to view the case as if the base part in fig. 940 *i*, p. 802, had a dotted half-note *e* and proceeded thence immediately to *g*; or as if the upper part in fig. 941, p. 802, had four quarter-notes  $\bar{c}$ , or even a whole-note, instead of the eighth-notes; or as if the middle part in fig. 943, p. 803, proceeded from  $\bar{c}$  to  $\bar{d}$ ; &c.

(e.) *Like and unlike Fifths.* (§ 508.)

§ 529.

It may also be regarded as in some measure a result of the so often quoted fundamental principle, that two fifths *in not strictly parallel movement*, as, *e. g.* in the following passage,



or as in figs. 958 *k*, and 963 *i*, *k*, *l*, pp. 805 and 806, often sound less ill than exclusively strict parallels by fifths: because, namely, such a movement is in fact less parallel than a movement which is strictly so.

On this point our theorists are accustomed to lay down, in particular, the following rule, namely: a minor fifth after a major one is more allowable than the reverse, namely, a major fifth after a minor one; thus, for example, the first of the following forms is preferable to the other:



But, in laying down such universal rules, they have, as may be seen by the examples quoted from them, only a single case before them; namely, the freely admitted individual fact, that fig. 958 *i* sounds altogether worse than fig. 958 *k*, p. 805.—But the ground of this fact lies mainly in the circumstance, that the former example contains also at the same time a comparatively unnatural progression of the fundamental seventh  $\bar{c}$ , and that precisely such fifths as those in figs. 958 *k*, and 963, pp. 805 and 806, in which the one part descends gradually from the fifth degree of the scale to the fourth, while the other goes down from the tonic note to the seventh degree of the next lower octave, do not make a perceptibly unfavourable impression upon the ear.—The fact, that not every succession of a minor fifth to a major one sounds equally well, is proved by the progression from the first to the second chord, in fig. 957, p. 805; as also, on

the contrary, figs. 960 and 961, pp. 805 and 806, show that the opposite species of parallelisms by fifths is not always of ill effect. (Compare remark on § 99.)

---

(f.) *Concealed, improper Fifths.* (§ 509.)

§ 530.

One will, moreover, readily infer from the same principle, that, in general, all those fifths which we have become acquainted with under the name of *concealed* or *imagined* fifths are, in general, less offensive than open and actual fifths, and that they are always the more tolerable and the less prejudicial, the more they are obscured and concealed; but, on the contrary, the more questionable in their effect, the more they approximate the *actual* parallelisms by fifths, and the more deceptive as such they may appear to the ear.

We will endeavour, for the sake of a more particular exhibition of this subject, to make an application of the position just assumed, to the different species of concealed fifths.

---

§ 531.

(a.) *Interrupted by Rests.* (§ 510.)

In the first place, *parallel progressions by fifths which are interrupted by rests*, and which, accordingly, appear as such only by conceiving the rests to be absent, will not, on account of these interrupting rests, appear so definitely and strikingly to be parallelisms by fifths, as they would if they proceeded in an unbroken series; and this effect will be produced in a greater degree, according as the interruption by rests is the more considerable, and the succession is thus rendered the less immediate.

For this reason, in fig. 966, p. 808, for example, especially if the pause be continued rather long, the ear will be scarcely able to perceive the fifths,—and still less the fifths which occur between the first and the middle parts of fig. 967, p. 808. Those which occur in fig. 964, p. 807, especially towards the end of the example, separated as they are only by less considerable rests, would, it is true, be perceived.—(The example in fig. 965 *ι*, p. 807, needs no vindication by the small rests, but has already been vindicated in § 526, and could not, even if the rests were not present—as, for example, in *k*,—be called a case of forbidden progression by fifths.)

---

§ 532.

(b.) *Harpegiate Fifths.* (§ 511.)

For a like reason also, those parallel progressions by fifths which appear as such only in consequence of so conducting a part as to make it represent *harpegiately* two parts, as in fig. 968, *ι*, *k*, *l*, p. 808, are not ordinarily so offensive as an actual parallelism of fifths between two real parts. One can, it is true,

conceive to himself *two* parts in *ι* running parallel to each other in fifths, as in *k* and *l*; but still these are not two *actual* parts, but, so to speak, only an imagined two parts; and hence *such* a parallelism in fifths is not entirely so striking and tangible as would be that of two real parts running parallel to each other by fifths. *These* progressions by fifths are, of course, offensive to the ear only when the movement of the harpeggiate part appears very definitely and decidedly as an harpeggiate representation of two parts proceeding parallel to each other by fifths; and, on the contrary, such a conduct of a part is much less offensive when the part appears to the ear less as an harpeggiate expression of two parts, than as only a mere melody. Thus, for example, fig. 973, *ι*, p. 809, is certainly quite unexceptionable; since, as every one perceives, the ear is more inclined to follow the thread of the melody of the upper part, as the melody of a single part, than to take it as an harpeggiate representation of three parts running parallel to one another, as in *k*. So also fig. 975, *ι*, p. 809, does not sound at all as if it contained parallel progressions by fifths; but in *l*, on the contrary, one distinctly feels the harpeggiate character of the progression, and consequently the parallelism by fifths.

In like manner, those *parallels in fifths which cease to be such whenever the passage is regarded as an harpeggiate progression* (§ 512), must always be so much the less prejudicial, as the passage appears the more definitely to be an harpeggiate progression. Thus, for example, the passage in fig. 976, *m*, p. 810, is less exceptionable than the one in *ι*.

### § 533.

#### (c.) Accent Fifths. (§ 513.)

Those parallel progressions by fifths which one as it were imagines to exist, only because he conceives none but *specially emphasised notes* to be present, leaving the others all out of the account, as if having no existence in the piece, are likewise perceptibly repulsive only when such particularly accented notes are rendered *very perceptibly* prominent, and the other tones are thrown very much into the shade. Therefore it was remarked, in § 513, above referred to, that, in fig. 970, *k*, p. 808, the progression from the second to the third quarter-note sounds more as if it involved prohibited fifths, than it does in *ι*; and, for a like reason, the hidden consecutive fifths are more perceptible in fig. 978, *k*, p. 811, than they are in *ι*.

### § 534.

#### (v.) Fifths concealed by Transition-tones. (§ 514.)

Those parallels by fifths, moreover, which are masked by *inserted transition-tones*, and are as it were bent out of the truly parallel course (§ 514), are always less offensive than open parallels. Consequently, fig. 980, p. 812, is always less repulsive than fig. 938, p. 802; fig. 983, *ι*, p. 812, less than *k*; and fig. 984, p. 812, less than fig. 974, p. 809.

## § 535.

(c.) *Fifths by the Crossing of Parts.* (§§ 515 and 516.)

For the same reason also, those parallelisms by fifths which appear to be so only in consequence of the fact that one does not observe the *crossing of two parts*, and confounds their thread (§ 515), are perceptibly repulsive only in cases where the ear can easily confound the threads of the crossing parts. On the other hand, so soon as the threads of the crossing parts render themselves sufficiently prominent and distinct, those successions which one can imagine to be parallel progressions by fifths only when he apprehends the crossing parts as not crossing each other, cease to involve any perceptible ill-sounding parallelisms by fifths. Thus, for example, the passage in fig. 987, *i*, p. 815, although it exhibits parallel progressions in fifths, provided one considers it merely according to the notes, as in *k*, without any regard to the threads of the parts, still is not to be regarded as a faulty and ill-sounding parallelism by fifths. The same may be said of the passage in fig. 52, *i*, p. 123. (§ 5.)

And, on the contrary, fifths which, like those, for example, in fig. 988, *i*, p. 815, are disguised by the crossing of one part over another, and which accordingly are never free from parallelisms by fifths, except when one imagines the parts *not* to cross each other (§ 516), but which become perceptibly prominent as soon as one observes the crossing of parts,—these fifths, I say, are, on the contrary, so much the more striking and perceptible, the more definite and distinct the threads of the parts which cross each other are made, and the more perceptible the crossing of the parts becomes. Consequently, in fig. 988, *i*, p. 815, if the upper part were to be executed, say by a violin, and the two under parts by wind instruments, the fifths between the base and the middle part would become very perceptible; but far less so, if, say the two upper parts, were to be performed on the pianoforte, in which case one would far sooner perceive the passage as it is in *k*.

## § 536.

(t.) *Inserted Fifths.* (§ 517.)

Mere *inserted fifths* (§ 517), moreover, it is easy to understand, do not sound so ill as actual fifths; for the very natural reason, that they do not, in fact, really constitute parallelisms by fifths: and, after all, the parallelism by fifths in such progressions lies wholly in the imagination. Hence it is indeed true, that even such fifths, though in a measure feigned and unreal, yet often sound really ill; as, for example, in fig. 992 *i*, p. 816, where they occur in the outer parts (not in a middle part, as in *l*); as also in fig. 994, p. 817. But it is equally certain that a sound ear can find nothing objectionable in such passages as occur in figs. 989 *i*, 990 *i*, 991 *i*, 992 *l*, and 993, pp. 816 and 817, or even in figs. 995 and 996, p. 818; and it is unfortunate (for the sake of the consistency commended in § 518) that *Schicht*\* considers himself under necessity of designating such progressions as those in fig. 996, *i*, *k*, *l*, p. 818, by the terms “not allowed,” “faulty,” and “not good.”

---

\* In his § 9.

## REMARK.

A striking contrariety, again, generally prevails among our theorists on the question of the admissibility or inadmissibility of inserted fifths,—a contrariety which doubtless arises again from the fact that the admissibility or faultiness which each individual may have discovered in a single case, or in a few cases, is at once rashly made the basis of a rule for all cases. (Compare remark on § 99.)

*Vogler*\*, for example, allows these concealed fifths without the slightest hesitation.—*Henry Montan Bertoni*†, on the contrary, in the most determined manner, forbids the progressions which occur in figs. 990 and 991, p. 816, as concealed progressions by fifths; while he, again, politely (*poliment*) approves of such cases as the following



“by licence” (“*par licence*,”—“with your permission—according to your good pleasure”), and indeed as “a licence which it is necessary to permit whenever a good effect will justify it” (“*licence qu’il ne faut se permettre que lorsqu’un grand effet peut la justifier*”). Thus we here learn that there is a rule of beauty whose violation may be of finer effect than its observance.—He should also have told his disciples *when* such a violation of the rule produces a “fine effect” (*grand effet*).

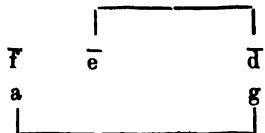
## § 537.

## (g.) Fifths by Contrary Movement. (§ 519.)

Likewise, for the reason mentioned in § 523, *fifths in contrary movement* (§ 519) are not usually so offensive as they are in the direct and actually parallel movement; and sometimes, indeed, they are entirely without fault. Thus, for example, the passage from *Figaro* (compare § 519), in fig. 998, p. 819, has never been suspected by any body to sound ill, although a really sharp-sighted hunter of consecutive fifths might, perhaps, in addition to the fifths of the contrary movement between the upper part and the base,



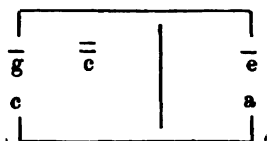
easily descry also concealed fifths between the first and the third parts, from the second to the third chord,



\* In his *Tonwissenschaft und Tonsetzkunst*, p. 65—§ 55, of *Tonsetzkunst*.

† In his *Traité d’Harmonie*.

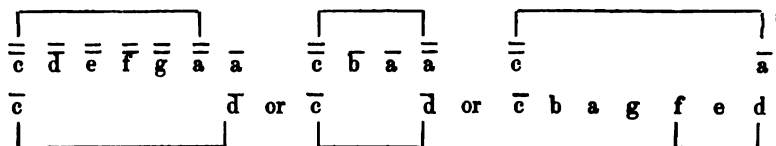
and also a couple more of fifths in contrary movement between the second and third measures,



§ 538.

(§.) Ear-Fifths. (§ 520.)

As it respects the so-called *ear-fifths* (§ 520), it is not to be denied that the passage in fig. 999, p. 820, really sounds ill (and we have already remarked, in § 245, that the harmonic succession I—II does not produce a good effect in such a position); but to endeavour to find the cause of this fact in a masked parallelism of fifths—fig. 999 *m*, p. 820,—



is to drive too far the furious persecution against every thing that has the name of fifths. For, as the above representations show, one must distort the passage in fig. 999 *i*, p. 820, very much indeed, before he can make it appear as a parallelism of fifths.

If it be insisted upon that a reason shall be assigned why the harmonic succession I—II sounds somewhat disagreeably only in such a position as that in fig. 999 *i*, p. 820, I should prefer to seek such a reason, say, in the fact that the two outer parts are not here conducted in such a manner as to form, by themselves alone, without the middle part, a good piece of music (compare § 10); because, if the two outer parts only were present, the third would be wanting in the second harmony (§ 73). Therefore the passage in fig. 999, *i*, cannot, for this reason, sound so well as that in *p*, p. 820, where, even if the middle part were absent, still the third would not be wanting in the second harmony. In like manner, one would find it difficult also to condemn the passage in fig. 999 *k*, p. 820, where the fundamental third of the harmony II is heard in the base.

The above-named conjectural cause is, moreover, still further strengthened by the fact, that fig. 999, *n*, sounds obviously better than *o*. That is, in *n* the second part attracts particular attention to itself, on account of the suspension; so that, in this case, the third *f* is by no means heard in a very insignificant secondary part, but in a middle part which at the present moment attracts the attention of the ear particularly to itself, and which accordingly is not a mere insignificant secondary part.

My presumed explanation seems still farther to be strengthened by the fact, that the infelicitous character which pertains to the passage in *i*, is not to be found in *g*, p. 820. That is to say, the second harmony here is a dominant harmony, and in *this* it is the less necessary to place the fundamental third in a principal part, inasmuch as the fundamental third is by no means indispensable in *this* harmony, but may, without impropriety, be wholly omitted. (§ 74.)

These different considerations may, at least *in some measure*, serve to explain the matter; although I very freely acknowledge that this explanation is by no means completely satisfactory.

---

(g.) *Closing Remark.* (§ 521.)

§ 539.

In addition to the different circumstances adverted to, from § 524 to the present place, still a multitude of others might be enumerated upon which the admissibility or prohibition of a parallelism by fifths may depend.

Thus it may be said, in general, that the ear sometimes fails to receive a disagreeable impression from such parallels, simply because its attention is directed to something else, and thus is as it were diverted from the parallel movement of the parts. This is particularly the case, sometimes, in *digressive harmonic successions*. Thus, for example, the reason why the parallelism of two minor fifths, in fig. 953, p. 805, does not sound ill, lies perhaps chiefly in the fact, that the attention of the ear is diverted from following the thread of the parts by the digressive modulation, and is turned more to following the thread of the modulation.

A favorable effect also seems to be produced by the digressive modulation in figs. 949, 950, 951, 954, and 996 *m, n*, &c. pp. 804, 805, 818.

We might even say, perhaps, that, in figs. 956 and 962, pp. 805 and 806, the simultaneous occurrence of three tones foreign to the harmony in a mass so engrosses the ear, that it forgets to bestow any attention upon the parallel movement.

All these, and still many other circumstances, which it would be tedious fully to enumerate, may contribute to mitigate the ill effect of parallel progressions by fifths; and this is obviously so much more the case, the more these palliative circumstances concur; so that, in fact, many parallels cannot be considered as in the least ill in their effect; as, for example, in figs. 943, 960, 961, 965, 967, 984, 998, pp. 803, 805—808, 812, 819, and others which it would be superfluous here to mention.

Whether, and under what circumstances, a parallelism by fifths may be considered as *sufficiently palliated and free from objection*, cannot, in the nature of the case, be very minutely and accurately defined, and the final decision must, after all, be submitted to the test of a cultivated musical ear.

Upon the whole, I would advise every composer, in doubtful cases, *always to avoid a parallel progression by fifths, in preference to admitting it*; partly



because, even if it does not sound repulsively to *his own* ear, on his trying it, perhaps on the pianoforte, it possibly may sound so to another ear, under different circumstances; and partly, also, because he always at least exposes himself to the criticism of many affected, fastidious pedants, even by the least exceptionable parallel progressions by fifths,—which thing it is preferable, as far as possible, to avoid.

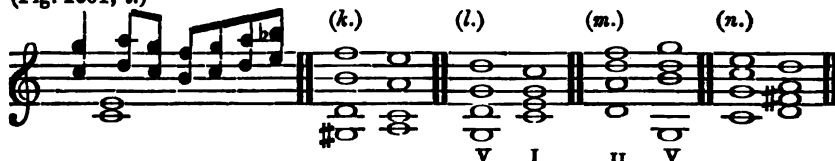
### REMARK.

Musical authors have also felt obliged to assign a reason *why* parallelisms by fifths sound ill, and, in doing it, they have fallen into some of the strangest whims. (Compare remark on § 99.)

There are some, for example, who would derive the cause from the favorite doctrine of consonances and dissonances, and indeed particularly from perfect and imperfect consonances. A fifth, they say, is a perfect consonance, and two fifths, two perfect consonances in immediate succession, are *too excessively* consonant, involve too much natural agreeableness of sound, and, therefore, sound *ill*!...!—

Others teach thus: (1.) two fifths in immediate succession always point to two three-fold chords. (!—See figs. 948, 953, pp. 803 and 805, and 1001, *i, k*, below:)

(Fig. 1001, *i*.)



(2.) two different three-fold chords point to two different keys; (!—Fig. 1001 *l, m*, above), —and (3.) *therefore* (!—Pray! may not two keys, then, follow each other? Fig. 1001 *n*, above), two fifths in immediate succession sound ill.—This is what the gentlemen call a demonstration of the reason why consecutive fifths sound amiss!

Under ordinary circumstances, it would be incredible that a man should presume to proffer demonstrations of *such* a character, in theoretical works of instructions, for pure coin. But, that it is in fact done, and even in the most modern theories, as well as in others, may be seen, for example, from the *Elements of Harmony*\* by Mr. chapel-master Frederick Schneider (previous to the publication of the first edition of the third volume of my theory)†. Here it is,—page 52, § 146.

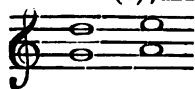
“If one hears two tones which stand at the distance of a major fifth from each other, he will involuntarily be led to construe this connection of tones” (*sic*) “as a threefold harmony of the first degree of a major key. The major third, which is wanting, is supplied by the ear, namely:



\* *Elementarbuch der Harmonie*.

† The reference here is to a portion of the author's work lying between § 312 and § 467, this portion constituting the third volume of the work as originally published.—Ta.

This passage, as one perceives, is synonymous with the one above selected in (1); and here also the very first thought which presents itself, is, (o.) that the entire premises are strikingly untrue. In the first place, as is clearly shown by the foregoing examples, there is not a word of truth in the statement that two tones at the distance of a fifth from each other always point to a three-fold chord, and that two successive fifths always point to two successive three-fold chords. It is untrue, in particular, that the harmonic combinations referred to always indicate *two major* three-fold chords. Why not two minor? *e. g.* II—III in *F*-major,—or a major and a minor? *e. g.* C: V—VI, or G: I—II,—or d: IV—V, &c.



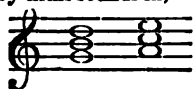
*F*: II—III  
*C*: V—VI  
*G*: I—II  
*d*: IV—V  
*g*: I—d: V  
*F*: II—d: V

But we will assume even, that two-major three-fold chords are always indicated by two such fifths (which is by no means true), yet it is still farther false, that two successive three-fold harmonies always impress the ear as being both tonic three-fold chords, as I; since, for example, the harmonic succession G—A may be, at one time, D: IV—V, at another G: I—D: V, at another C: V—d: V, &c. but will least frequently of all be G: I—A: I!



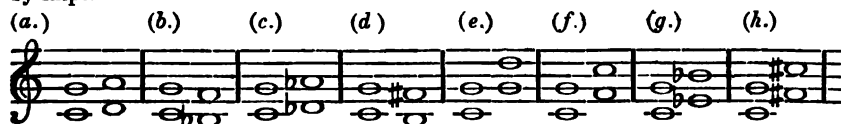
*D*: IV—V  
*G*: I—D: V  
*C*: V—d: V

But even if we assume this to be true, and also let it pass as true, that, in the examples referred to, the ear now directly perceives the harmonic succession G: I—A: I,—also that this harmonic succession is faulty, and that *therefore* the parallelism by fifths sounds ill,—still, even all this being taken for granted, it would follow, (q.) that in the subjoined example *q*, the parallelism by fifths does not sound ill, since the ear does not, in this case, supply the *major third*.



From the foregoing examination of the fundamental principles of *Mr. Schneider's* demonstration, it is seen that an edifice based on *such* a foundation must easily fall to ruin of its own accord, without the necessity of making any onset upon it. It is, namely, farther said, in

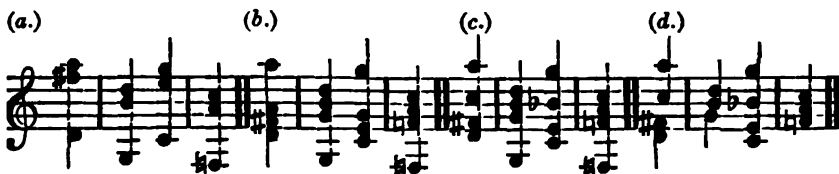
“§ 147. Two consecutive fifths may occur in direct movement, either gradually or by skips.”



“Now if such a fifth-step takes place gradually, as in *a, b, c, d*, the sudden digression into another key, not standing in a sufficiently near alliance to the first, produces a repulsive impression upon the ear; on this account, the consecutive fifths in *c* and *d* are still more harsh, because the keys whose fundamental tones one imagines himself to hear stand in a still more remote grade of relationship, than they do in *a* and *b*.”—(Thus *Mr. Schneider*, here again perfectly agreeing with the position assumed above at (2), supposes the above harmonic combinations to be exclusively tonic three-fold chords, and thus that in (*a*) there is an harmonic step from *C*-major to *D*-major,—in (*b*), from *C* to *Bb*,—in (*c*), from *C* to *Db*, &c. and, in coincidence with the above position (3), he also farther assumes, that such digressions are forbidden digressions, and *therefore* that the parallel progressions by fifths are of ill effect!—) “The skipping successions of fifths in (*e*) and (*f*) are altogether less disagreeable to the ear, inasmuch as the keys of which one conceives himself to hear the fundamental tones” (tonic harmonies) “stand in the nearest grade of relationship;”—(*i*)—“but not so the fifths in (*g*) and (*h*).”—(Now

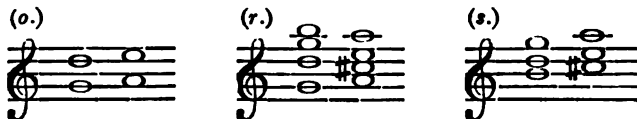
the whole thing depends upon circumstances, and hence, how such examples sound in the present case, entirely without the third, and out of all connection, is of no manner of importance as it respects the cause of the faultiness of their progressions.)—"But such equal skips of chords (we assume, namely, that the ear takes all these fifths to be three-fold chords)",—(and therein lies the oft-repeated great mistake!)"—"are also, according to the remark in § 143, as much as possible to be avoided; consequently it is easy to see why the fifths in (e) and (f) should be avoided."—(In the remark referred to is found only: "Such a like progression of all the parts together upward or downward always exhibits also an air of stiffness and awkwardness.")

Finally, according to § 150, a proof that the causes of the faultiness of parallel progressions by fifths, which [causes] are adduced in § 147, are not only the *true*, but even "the only ones," is supposed to lie in the fact that the following fig. (a.)



sounds badly, but not fig. (b.),—and fig. (c.) still better.—Such an argument (not to mention, for brevity's sake, many others) needs no refutation, for the very good reason that in fact one of the examples sounds as miserably as the other, though fig. (a.) may, perhaps, be a little more repulsive on account of its committing an offence against the principles exhibited in our § 339. See also §§ 524 and 539.

It would be easy, in few words, to point out a multitude of other incongruities to which the before-named mode of explanation would, if adopted, necessarily lead: as, for instance, that if one were to assume the cause of the ill effect of the following example (o.) to lie in the succession of the two three-folds harmonies  $\text{G}$  and  $\text{A}$ , whether that succession be ideal or actual, then of course a like ill effect would exhibit itself also in (r.) or (s.):—



that the whole demonstration, in general, even if its assumptions were materially correct, would prove a great deal too much, and, in doing so, would fail altogether to prove what it is intended to prove; for, on the one hand, it admits of the inference that every succession of two harmonic combinations, in the first of which occur, for example, the tones  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{d}$ , and, in the second the tones  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{e}$ , would be faulty, and, accordingly, the above fig. (r) also would be a faulty progression by fifths; while, on the other hand, it assigns no cause whatever why two such harmonic combinations sound ill only when the two fifths follow each other in direct or parallel movement, which happens to be just the thing and the only thing to be proved, &c. &c.—!!

It is here again perceived to what it leads, if one feels himself obliged always to assume the air of knowing the cause of everything, even if he really knows nothing at all about it.

Moreover, as it respects the phantom, called "*harmonic skip*" ["*Harmonieensprung*"], which, as we have heard, is likewise employed as an ingredient [*ingrediens*] for demonstrating the cause of the prohibition of consecutive fifths (compare *Türck's Guide* to

Thorough Bass\*, § 55, remark),—it would, after what has been said in remark on § 496, be an idle waste of time to squander another word upon such unmeaning gibberish.

---

(C.) MEANS OF AVOIDING PARALLELISMS BY FIFTHS.

§ 540.

In addition to all that has thus far been said, it still remains to us now to give some hints upon the method of *avoiding* disagreeable parallel progressions by fifths. (See figs. 933—1001, pp. 800—832.)

This can most easily be done, for the most part, *by mutually inverting the two parts which run parallel to each other*, thus converting the upper part into the under, and vice versa. By this means the parallels by fifths are changed into parallels by fourths, which latter are usually less disagreeable in their effect than the former. Thus we can remove the *two-fold* parallelism of fifths in fig. 937 *i*, p. 801, for example, by giving the harmony such a position as is found in *k*.—In like manner we can, in fig. 939, p. 802, invert merely the two upper parts, as in *k*.—So likewise the fifths in fig. 933 *i*, p. 800, at least in part, admit of being changed into fourths, as in *m*.—The passage in fig. 948 *i*, p. 803, would not admit of being improved in this way, as is apparent from *k*, p. 804, for it would then be as in *l*. (§ 503.) Nor would the passage in fig. 946, p. 803, sound much better by having its fifths changed into fourths, as in fig. 947, p. 803. Fig. 962, p. 806, on the contrary, would always be less exceptionable in the position which it has in *k*, than in that which is found in *i*.

---

§ 541.

Another means of avoiding parallelisms of fifths consists in *entirely changing the course of the one or the other of the two parts*. Thus, the faulty passage exhibited in fig. 933 *i*, p. 800, would admit of being materially improved by altering the two under parts, say as in *m*,—or the upper parts as in *o*,—or even as in *p* and *q*, where entirely different harmonies incidentally appear.

In like manner, such parallelisms by fifths as occur in fig. 937 *i*, p. 801, may be avoided by altering the conduct of one part, as in *m*, or *n*, &c.

In a similar way we can remove the parallelism of fifths in fig. 942 *i*, p. 803, so far as we find them repulsive, by altering the passage as in *k*, *l*, or *m*.

It must not, moreover, be overlooked, that in the examples thus improved in fig. 937 *m*, &c. p. 801, and fig. 942 *m*, p. 803, at least *concealed* fifths may always be traced out,—which, however, are not here of ill effect.

---

§ 542.

If we either cannot or will not apply the expedients which have been mentioned in the foregoing sections, we must content ourselves with merely

---

\* *Anweisung zum Generalbass.*

*concealing or alleviating as much as possible the parallel progressions of fifths*; that is, with removing them as much as possible from the attention of the ear, and with changing the *open fifths*, where it can be done, into *concealed*. A sufficient guide to this is furnished by §§ 525, 530—537, and hence it is now necessary only to quote a few examples.

It is evident, from what has been said in § 525, that the comparatively ill-sounding passage in fig. 992 *i*, p. 816, admits of being materially improved by transferring the concealed fifths from their situation between the two outer parts to one involving at least *one* of the less conspicuous *middle* or otherwise *secondary* parts, and thereby, as it were, concealing them, as in *l*.

The disagreeable effect of a parallel progression by fifths often admits of being removed also by changing these fifths into the less offensive *harpeggiate fifths*. Accordingly, the very ill-sounding passage exhibited above in fig. 936, p. 801, may be considered as somewhat improved, if it be altered as in fig. 968 *i*, p. 808, or, still better, as in fig. 971 *i*, *k*, p. 809; on which account, even *Kirnberger*\* describes such passages as that in fig. 971 *i*, and also that in fig. 970 *i*, p. 808, as 'free from fault.—So also the passage in fig. 939, p. 802, appears better in such a form as is found in fig. 974, p. 809, and certainly quite unexceptionable if the consecutive parallels of the upper parts be in some measure removed by intermediate tones foreign to the harmony, as in fig. 984, p. 812.

Thus even *Kirnberger*† considers the fifths in fig. 938, p. 802, as sufficiently concealed by the tones foreign to the harmony in fig. 980 *k*, p. 812.

An example, showing how a parallelism by fifths may be not so much concealed as rather converted into mere imagined fifths, *by the crossing of parts*, is shown by the above passages in fig. 987, *i* and *k*, p. 815, since the parallelism of fifths which appears in the latter almost entirely disappears, if we make the parts cross each other as in *i*, so far at least as the one part is perceptibly distinct from the other.—*Kirnberger* gives this example as one that is entirely unexceptionable.

---

#### § 543.

But if these mitigating expedients do not admit of being applied, or if they are not adequate to the entire removal of the disagreeable effect produced by the parallelism of fifths, no other course remains but to abandon altogether the musical thought which involves such an infelicity, and to substitute an entirely different one in its place.

---

#### (D.) THE REGISTER OF FIFTHS IN THE ORGAN.

#### § 544.

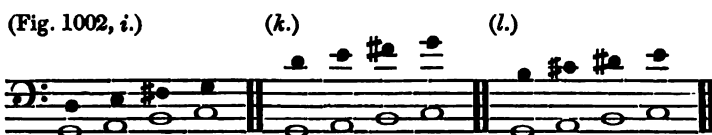
I cannot here deny myself the opportunity of calling the attention of my readers to a peculiar phenomenon, *which seems to nullify the whole prohibition of parallelisms by fifths*.

---

\* pp. 150 and 151.

† I. Bd. p. 30.

That is to say, there is (as already mentioned in the remark on § IV) a peculiar arrangement in the organ—namely, the register of fifths—whereby, by striking any individual key, we are made to hear, in addition to the tone appropriate to that key, also at the same time its major fifth (or double fifth—twelfth, &c.); as, for example, on striking the G-key, we hear, besides the tone G, at the same time also the tone d,  $\bar{d}$ , or  $\bar{\bar{d}}$ ,—on striking the A-key, we hear likewise the tone e,  $\bar{e}$ ,  $\bar{\bar{e}}$ , &c.—and in connection with the B-key, also the tone f $\sharp$ ,  $\bar{f}\sharp$ , or  $\bar{\bar{f}}\sharp$ , &c.—so that if we strike the keys G, A, B, c in immediate succession, we are made to hear, in addition to these tones, likewise the fifths of these with them, as is shown by the points in fig. 1002, i and k:



Thus it is seen that the register of fifths produces an unbroken series of parallels by fifths; and we very justly feel surprised that an intolerably ill effect is not constantly experienced therefrom.

The case becomes entirely unaccountable, when we learn still further, that, besides this register of fifths, there is also another register of *thirds* (the two, taken together, being called also *mixed registers*), which causes us to hear, in connection with every tone that is struck, likewise its normally pure major third (double or triple third), as in fig. 1002 l, above; so that, by virtue of the register of fifths and the register of thirds, we may, on striking, say, the keys c g b $\flat$   $\bar{e}$ , hear all those tones together which are pointed out in the remark on § IV, p. 8.

It would not, in fact, be easy to comprehend how it comes about that our auditory nerves can bear such music! did not the remark made on § IV help us out of the difficulty by assuring us that such registers of fifths never sound otherwise than ill, except when—they are not heard. This remark, whose truth no one, on making an experiment, will be able to evade, at once saves us the trouble of seeking farther, and who knows how learned, reasons and explanations why such registers of thirds and fifths are not painful to our ear. So much at least as this is settled thereby, namely, that the register of fifths in the organ does not conflict with the doctrine of the ill effect of *perceptible* parallel progressions by fifths;—and hence, *Vogler*\* has justly observed that he would not be afraid to let a tenor-violin proceed in a parallelism of pure fifths with the base part throughout an entire piece of music in many parts. He is certainly quite right, so long as his tenor-violin is not heard.

I have written more extensively on this subject in Ersch's Encyclopædia, under the article—*Accessory tones* [Beitöne]. (Compare remark on § IV.)

\* In his *Handbuch der Harmonielehre*, p. 63.

## DIVISION VI.

## PARALLELISM BY SIXTHS.

## § 545.

In relation to parallel progressions by sixths, which are properly nothing else than inverted parallelisms by thirds, it is of course necessary only to say the same that has been said already in relation to thirds.

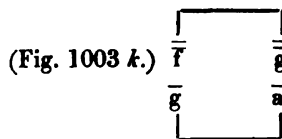
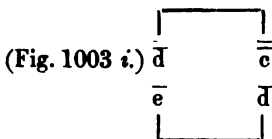
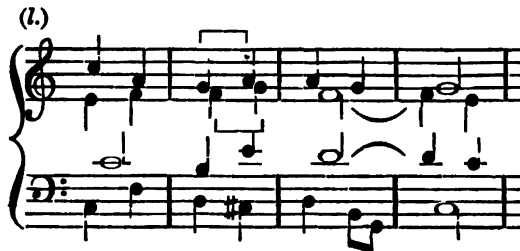
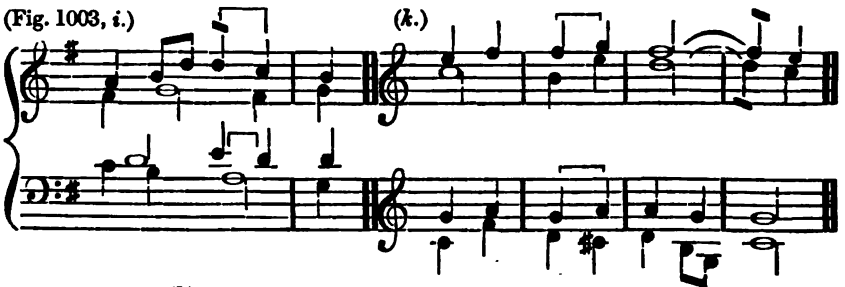
A particular species of parallel progressions by sixths is to be found in such third-sixth series as are mentioned in § 504.

## DIVISION VII.

## PARALLELISM BY SEVENTHS.

## § 546.

In respect to parallel progressions by sevenths, several examples of which are found below, there is likewise not much to be said in addition to what has been remarked already in relation to parallelisms by seconds, of which latter the sevenths are only inversions.



It should be observed, however, that sevenths often sound better than seconds, as is shown by a comparison of fig. 1003 *k* with fig. 1003 *l*;—and our ear has already, as it were, become accustomed to many species of progressions by sevenths; as, for example, to such as occur in fig. 1004, below:

(Fig. 1004.)



## DIVISION VIII.

## PARALLELISM BY OCTAVES.

## § 547.

Musical writers have made the doctrine of the parallel progression of two parts in octaves, under the name of *forbidden octaves*, as notorious as that of prohibited fifths. We will, however, abbreviate the treatment of it, at least to some extent, by availing ourselves of references to much that has been said already on the subject of forbidden fifths.

## (A.) ENUMERATION OF THE DIFFERENT SPECIES OF OCTAVE PARALLELS.

(1.) *Proper, actual or open Octave Parallels.*

## § 548.

In parallelisms by octaves, also, we have the distinction of *proper* or *open*, and of *concealed* or *imaginary*.

Proper or open parallels by octaves are found in fig. 1005,

(Fig. 1005.)



between the upper part and the base.—Octaves in not *strictly* parallel movement may be seen in fig. 1006:



(Fig. 1006.)

VLNI.

VIOLA.

VLLO.

C. BASSO.

I IV II V III VI IV VII V I

(2.) *Improper or concealed Parallels by Octaves.*

§ 549.

(a.) *Separated by Rests.*

Besides such open octaves, the ear sometimes perceives some, where, to the eye and according to the notes, there are none; as, for example, in the following passage, in case the *rests be conceived to be absent*:

(Fig. 1007.)

The case is the same in figs. 1008 and 1009:

(Fig. 1008.)

Bar - ba - ra ed in - fe - del.

PIANOFORTE.

(Fig. 1009, i.)

(k.)



So likewise the passage in fig. 1010, already referred to, contains, in addition to the consecutive *fifths*, separated by rests, also the same species of concealed *octaves* :

(Fig. 1010.)

BEETHOVEN.



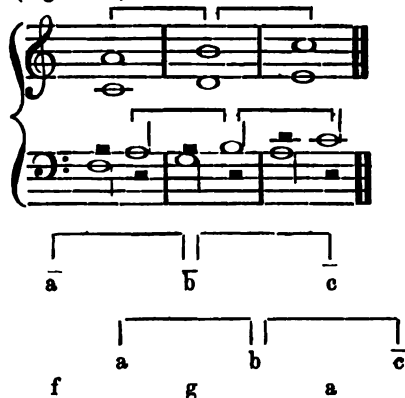
and the same are found also in fig. 1011 :

(Fig. 1011.)



as also in fig. 1012 :

(Fig. 1012.)



## § 550.

(b.) *Harpegiate Octaves.*

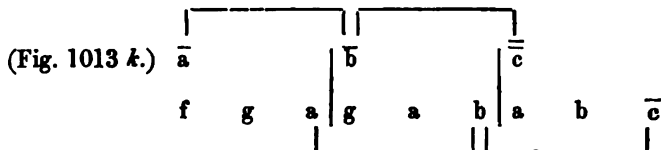
Octave parallels by the *harpegiate* progression of a part are found in the following examples, fig. 1013 : (already quoted as broken parallels in fifths),

(Fig. 1013, i.)

(k.)



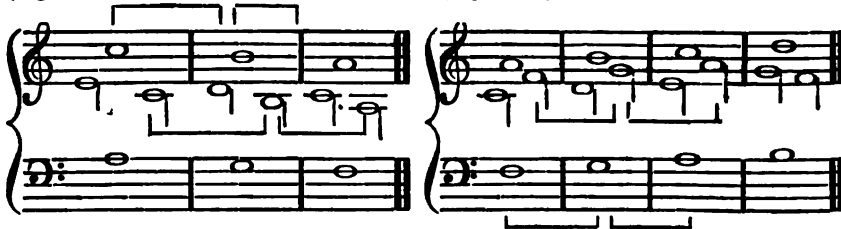
between the upper part and the second base note of each measure: similar progressions are found also in *k*:



The same species of concealed octaves may be recognized also in figs. 1014, 1015, and 1016:

(Fig. 1014.)

(Fig. 1015.)

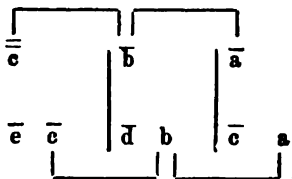


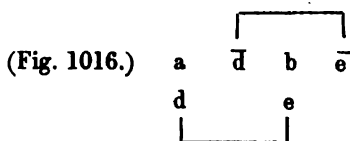
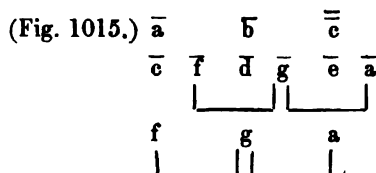
(Fig. 1016.)

KIRNBERGER.



namely: (Fig. 1014.)





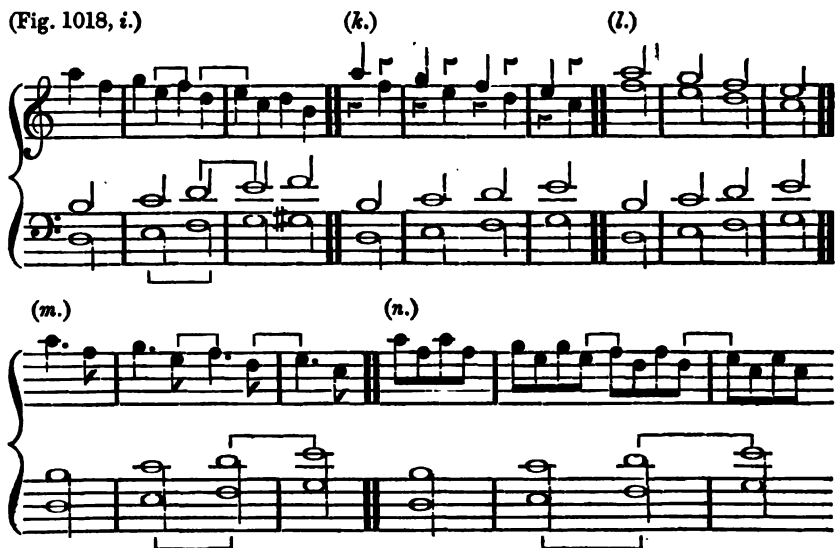
Several such octave parallels are found also in fig. 1017, *i*, as the brackets show:

(Fig. 1017, *i*.) HUMMEL'S 1<sup>st</sup> MASS.



Compare *k* and *l*.

On the contrary, there are passages, again, which, considered merely according to the notes, seem indeed to contain open parallels by octaves, but which cease to do so, in case the passage is regarded as an harpegiate progression. In the following passage, in fig. 1018 *i*,

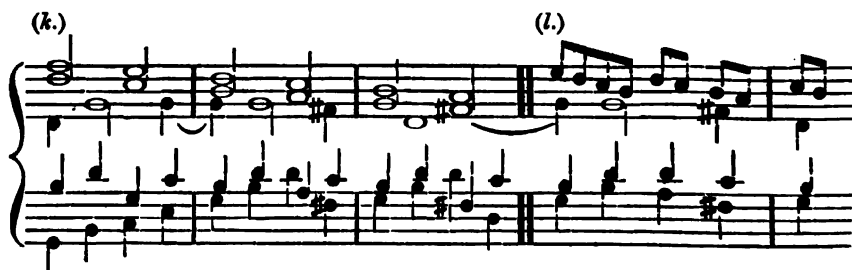
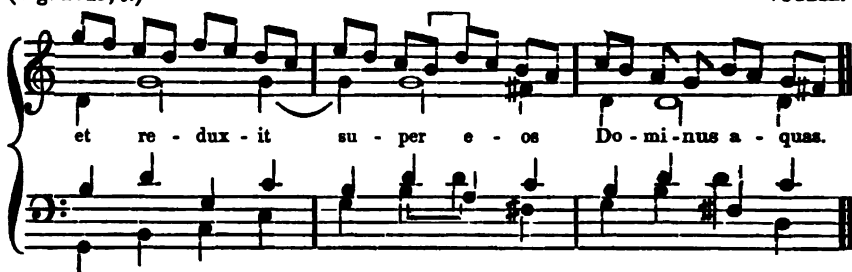


the eye, it is true, provided we regard the passage directly according to the notes, perceives open progressions by octaves. But these disappear, if we look

upon the upper part as an harpegiate representation of two parts, as in *k* or *l*. (Compare § 512.) It would be still more unequivocal as it is in *m* or *n*.—So likewise fig. 1019 *i*,

(Fig. 1019, *i*.)

VOGLER.



admits of being regarded as an harpegiate progression, as in *k*, where, accordingly, no octave parallel would be present.

---

§ 551.

(c.) *Accent-Octaves.*

The ear often perceives octave parallels between *tones rendered prominent by the accent or emphasis* (compare § 513); for example, in fig. 1020, *i*, *k*, *l*, *m*; and in fig. 1021, from the second to the third measure between the base and the upper part:

(Fig. 1020, *i*.)

(k.)

(l.)

(m.)



(Fig. 1021.)

CHERUBINI'S MASS.

qui prop - - - - - ter

nos ho - - - - - mi - - - - - nes, qui prop-

§ 552.

(d.) *Octave Parallels concealed by Transition-tones.*

Octave parallels sometimes occur concealed by transition-tones, as, *e.g.* fig. 1022:

(Fig. 1022.)

Similar octaves, imperfectly concealed by short tones foreign to the harmony, are found in figs. 1023 and 1024:

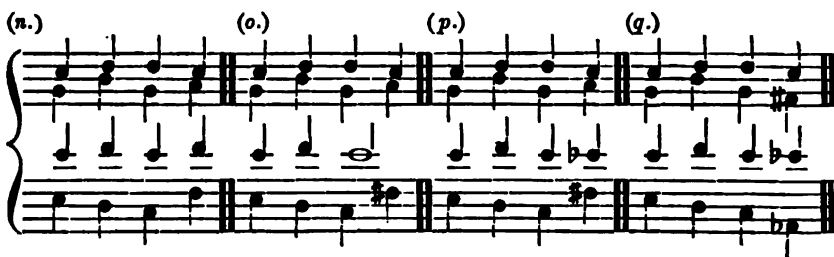
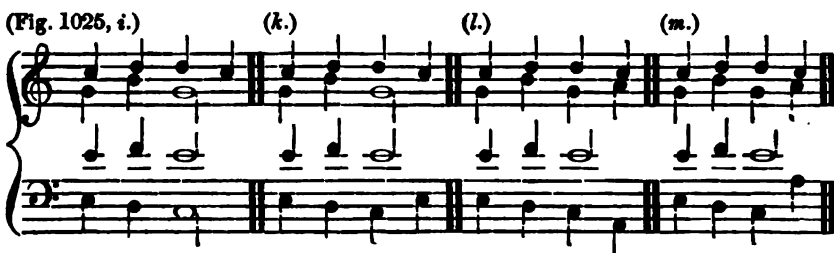
(Fig. 1023.)

(Fig. 1024.)



—The parallel in fig. 1025 is concealed by a more important tone foreign to the harmony.

(Fig. 1025, i.)

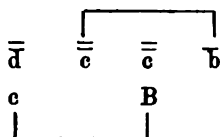


In the following passage also, fig. 1026 i,

(Fig. 1026, i.)



provided one conceives the harpegiate base part not to be such, but as it is in *k*, he will perceive concealed harpegiate octaves between the outer parts.



which are merely forced a little from the parallel course by the transition tones  $\bar{d}$  and  $\bar{c}$  inserted in the upper part, but are still sufficiently perceptible to the ear, inasmuch as such a conduct of the outer parts at once strongly reminds one that the parallels would be open, provided the transition-tones were considered to be absent, as in *l*. The parallels would be still more perceptible in *m* and *n*, than they are in *i*.

### § 553.

#### (e.) Octaves by the Crossing of Parts.

That many octave parallels, only imperfectly avoided by the *crossing* of two parts, are sometimes perceived as actual parallels, may be seen from the passage in fig. 1027, already referred to in § 515, namely:

(Fig. 1027.)

Compare fig. 986, p. 814.

—And so also in fig. 1028 *i*,

(Fig. 1028, *i*.)

(k.)

where in fact no part seems parallel to another, still, one may, by merely comparing the series of the upper tones with that of the lower, discover parallels by octaves, as is shown by *k*.



If, in this example, octave parallels exhibit themselves in proportion as one imagines the crossing parts *not* to cross each other, we likewise sometimes find, on the other hand, that two parts, *really running parallel to each other in open octaves*, are sometimes so concealed by a third part which crosses one of the former, that the ear scarcely, even if at all, perceives the octaves. Thus, for example, in fig. 1029, i,



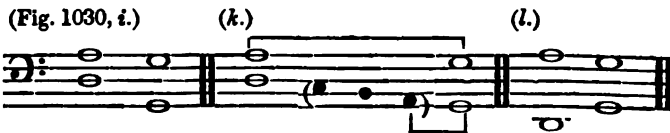
the second part in itself proceeds in octaves with the base (and, besides, the third part also in fifths); but the upper part, which crosses the middle part, gives the passage such an appearance as is exhibited in *k*; so that, by disregarding the crossing of parts and viewing the example simply according to the notes, one perceives neither octaves nor fifths.

In like manner, the octave parallelism of the upper part with the base in fig. 1019 i, p. 844, is concealed by the fact that the latter is crossed by the tenor, whereby the case assumes, in some measure, the appearance which is exhibited in *l*.

§ 554.

(f.) *Inserted Octaves.*

The teachers of musical composition, moreover, will not allow us to employ even *one single octave* in direct movement, and hence find a concealed transgression of the interdict in such passages as in fig. 1030 i,

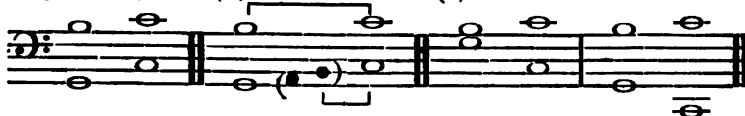


inasmuch as they, in idea, insert the tones c B and A between the skip of the base from d to G, as in *k* (compare § 517).—In this sense, we find concealed octaves also in fig. 1031 i,—

(Fig. 1031, i.)

(k.)

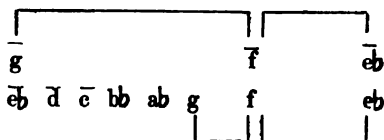
(l.)



as also in the second measure of fig. 1032 :

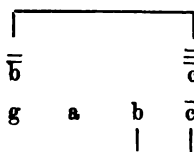
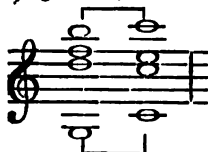
(Fig. 1032.)

GRAUN.



So also in fig. 1033 :

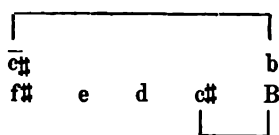
(Fig. 1033.)



And likewise in fig. 1034 :

(Fig. 1034.)

CALDARA.

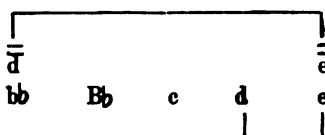


In fig. 1035 also,

(Fig. 1035.)

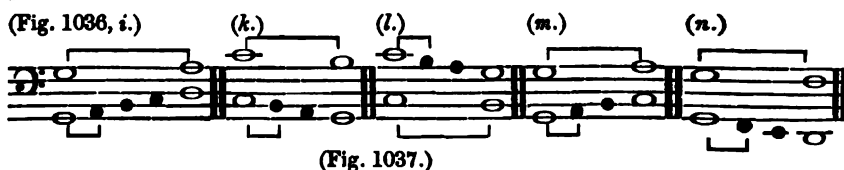


several such concealed octave progressions discover themselves,—and an inserted octave in fig. 1021, p. 845, from the second to the third measure, in addition to the accent octave already mentioned, namely :



Here, again, to be truly learned and consistent, as already suggested in § 518, one must also construe every direct step FROM an octave as a forbidden octave parallelism ; as, for example, fig. 1036 i—n, and fig. 1037 :

(Fig. 1036, i.)



(Fig. 1037.)



And, in fact, Mr. *Schicht* does designate the progression in fig. 1037 as “not allowable.”

#### § 555.

##### (g.) Octaves by Contrary Movement.

Octaves in *contrary movement* are also reckoned into the class of concealed octave parallels ; as, for example, in fig. 1038,

(Fig. 1038.)



and so also in fig. 1009 k, p. 841.

(3.) *More extended Survey.*

## § 556.

Since it would here likewise lead me far too much into detail to pursue the discussion of these and other like species of concealed octaves still farther, I must here again relinquish the merit of completeness (compare § 521), and satisfy myself simply with adding a few remarks on the admissibility or prohibition of parallel progressions by octaves.

## (B.) MERITS OF PARALLELISMS BY OCTAVES.

## § 557.

The case is, in general, the same with these parallelisms by octaves as we have already (in §§ 522—539) observed it to be with forbidden *fifths*.

(1.) *The parallel progression of two different parts at the distance of an octave frequently and indeed usually produces a disagreeable and repulsive effect; as may be clearly enough perceived, for example, from fig. 1005, p. 839.*

(2.) But, for the reasons that *parallelisms by fifths often sound only a little disagreeably and sometimes even not at all*, this is also the case with parallelisms by octaves. Hence,

(a.) Octave parallels in musical compositions *having many parts*, are the more easily passed over by the ear (compare § 524), and especially

(b.) When octave parallels fall into *middle and otherwise subordinate parts*, they are less apt to be noticed by the ear, than when they occur in principal parts. (Compare § 525.)

(c.) But, particularly, those octaves are entirely unexceptionable which arise, in the case of *merely doubling a part* in a higher or a lower octave (§ 15, c), between this part and its duplicate. The octaves in figs. 1010 and 1011, p. 841, for example, are of this description; as are also the open octaves in the first two measures of the pianoforte accompaniment in fig. 1008, p. 840.

So, in an orchestra, we may, *e. g.* in a symphony, allow the part of the violins to run an octave higher than that of a flute. In this case, it is true, the flute proceeds uninterruptedly at the distance of an octave above the violin part; but since it is virtually but a mere doubling of the violin part, the octave progression in *such* a case is quite unexceptionable. The flute part is not to be reckoned as an independent part, distinct from that of the violin, but only as one and the same part, though on a smaller scale; and thus there are not in such a case two distinct parts running in octaves to each other.—In like manner, we often hear, and with the finest effect, a wind instrument playing in octaves or double octaves to a vocal part, or one instrument with another; as, for example, the first violin in double octaves to the vocal part in fig. 1039:

(Fig. 1039.)

So wan-delt er, an Freun - - des

V. 1.

Hand, ver-güßt und froh ins bess - - re Land.

So, in an orchestra, the violoncello almost always proceeds an octave higher than the violono, which latter is in its own nature an octave lower than the violoncello—(as does frequently also the tenor-violin one octave higher, and sometimes, moreover, still other instruments by *several* octaves higher,—to which subject we shall again recur in the doctrine of instrumentation, and of which I will only quote as a single example the so-called cymbal base in the organ). The case is substantially the same when octaves are played with the left-hand on the pianoforte, or a melody or single passage is performed in octaves by the right-hand.—Fig. 1023, p. 845, is of a similar description: here the two under parts, though the one proceeds exclusively in quarter-notes, while the other is ornamented in its course by sixteenth transition-notes, still are in all essential respects to be regarded as virtually one doubled part—as a lowest part—as the base part.—The case is the same in fig. 1024, p. 846.—Likewise in fig. 1006, p. 840, where the violoncello part is ornamented with the harmonically foreign tones  $f\sharp$ ,  $g\sharp$ ,  $a\sharp$ , and runs in (partly unlike) octaves above the violono part, the

two are to be reckoned only as one single base part, and so of course the octave parallels in this case are not to be regarded as forbidden progressions.

Indeed, we find entire passages, and sometimes even whole pieces of music, in which all the parts proceed in octaves to one another (compare § 32), and which in this case are to be considered in one sense as only one-part compositions, and are even not unfrequently marked with the "*all' unisono*" ("*in unison*") although such a case is not strictly in all respects a *unison*, but a *unison* in a subordinate sense.

For a similar reason, we do not regard it as a case of forbidden progression, if a vocal part, particularly a base vocal part, runs in octaves above the merely accompanying proper base part.—It is not inadmissible even for a soprano part occasionally to proceed in octaves to the base, and thus as it were for a time to represent, in a subordinate measure, a base part,—an occurrence which not unfrequently takes place in the terminations of phrases by the harmonic successions  $V^7—I$ , or  $V^7—I$ . An example of this kind is found in fig. 1008, p. 840.

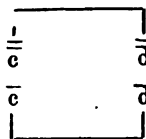
In all cases of this species, where two or more parts proceeding in octaves to each other are virtually one and the same, such progression is altogether unexceptionable, since it is not properly *two different* parts which thus proceed together.—We can speak of forbidden octaves only in cases where two parts which are radically distinct throughout, and which must necessarily be so, run parallel to each other in octaves.

It is a different case, however, when the two parts thus running parallel to each other at the distance of an octave are *not* thus decidedly to be regarded as one and the same (compare § 527), when they do not, as in the example quoted, proceed together throughout, or at least for some entire portion of the way, but while they must properly be considered as in the main two distinct parts, still once in a while incidentally take a single step together in octaves; as, *e. g.* in fig. 1040,

(Fig. 1040.)



where the first and the third parts are in the main two different parts, and yet in a single instance proceed together by octaves, as follows :



—Fig. 1041, likewise, is to be considered as quite impure in this respect:—

(Fig. 1041.)

From Gretry's *Richard Cœur de Lion*, according to the original score.

*Andante.*

Que le Sul-tan Sa-la-din ras-sem-ble dans son jar-din un troupeau de jou-ven.

as is also fig. 1042, *k* and *l*:\*—

(Fig. 1042, *i*.)

(*k*.)

(*l*.)

(*m*.)

(*n*.)

and even the progression designated by brackets in fig. 1039, p. 852, is not entirely above criticism.

(*d*.) All species of *concealed octaves*, in general, are not so offensive to the ear, as *actual and open octaves*, and are always the more tolerable and the less exceptionable, the more they are covered and concealed; while, on the contrary, they are the more unhappy in their effect, in proportion as they approximate the real, actual octaves, and the more illusive, as such, they may seem to the ear. (Compare § 530.)

(*4*.) Hence, those octave parallels which are *separated by rests* (and which appear to the ear as such only by conceiving the rests to be absent) do not, in consequence of this interruption, impress the ear so unfavourably as if they proceeded in unbroken succession; and this meliorating effect is increased in proportion as the interruption is the more considerable and the succession the less immediate. (Compare § 531.) Accordingly, in fig. 1009 *i*, p. 841, the ear can perhaps scarcely perceive the octaves.

(*5*.) For the same reason, moreover, those octave parallels which appear as such only so far as one conceives a part to be an *harpegiate* representation of two (§ 550), are, for the most part, less offensive to the ear, than actual parallels by octaves. (Compare § 532.) Thus, in fig. 1013 *i*, p. 842, one can easily conceive to himself two parts running parallel to each other by octaves, as in *i*; still these are not two actual, but only two imaginary parts, and, con-

\* There are no parallel octaves in *l*, but still the example is faulty; see § 558.—ED.

sequently, the octave parallels in such a case are not so tangible and striking as they would be if two real parts actually thus proceeded together in octaves. Hence, octave progressions of this species are of course repulsive only in cases where the movement of the harpegiate part appears very definitely and decidedly as an harpegiate representation of two; and on the contrary, such a progression is much less offensive in cases where it appears to the ear *not* as an harpegiate expression of two parts, but merely as a single melody. Thus, for example, the passage in fig. 1015, p. 842, so far as it respects the hidden octaves to be found in it, is rather unexceptionable, since here, as every one perceives, the ear is more inclined to follow the thread of the melody of the middle part as the melody of a single part, than to take it as the harpegiate representation of two parts, one of which runs parallel to the base in forbidden octaves.

On the other hand, those octave parallels which *cease to be such so soon as the passage is regarded as an harpegiate progression*, are always so much the more unexceptionable as the passage more definitely and decidedly appears to be an harpegiate one; thus, for example, the passage in fig. 1018 *n*, p. 843, is much less exceptionable than the one in *i*.

In a similar way, the octave parallelism in fig. 1019 *i*, p. 844, excuses itself on the ground that one might, perhaps, as already remarked in § 550, regard the upper part as an harpegiate representation of two parts, as in *k*.

(*c*.) Those octave parallels also, which one imagines to be present only by conceiving *the tones most striking to the ear* alone to be present, and by entirely disregarding the others as if they were not present (§ 551), are never perceptibly repulsive, except when these particularly accented notes are rendered very prominent, while the other tones which are to be struck intermediately between these are thrown comparatively very much into the shade. Those in fig. 1021, p. 845, from the second to the third measure, are rather perceptible. (Compare § 533.)

(*U*.) Those octave parallels also which are concealed by *interposed transition-tones*, and are as it were thrown out of the proper parallel course (§ 552), are always less offensive than open parallels. On this ground, the passage in fig. 1026 *i*, p. 846, may be regarded as excusable.—The passage in fig. 1023, p. 845, needs no such apology, inasmuch as it has already been vindicated in § 557, *c*. (Compare § 534.)

Those passages, in particular, in which, while one part moves forward, the other still lingers on another tone, as in fig. 1025 *i*, p. 846, are still less offensive in cases where the first-mentioned part, without waiting for the last-named to follow, as in *i*, proceeds directly on again, as, *e. g.* in *k*, which latter case (*k*), for this very reason, sounds better than the one in *i*. The passage will become still less repulsive, if the base, instead of proceeding, as it does in *k*, from *c* as the fundamental tone of the *C*-chord to *e*, as the third of the same harmony, be made to go rather to some interval of a new harmony, as, *e. g.* in *l*; and better still in contrary movement, as in *m*, or otherwise as in *n*, &c. and so also in a digressive modulation, as in *o—q*. (Compare § 539.)



So likewise, in fig. 1026 *i*, p. 846, while the upper part dwells on the tone  $\bar{c}$ , the base part proceeds on from B to d and  $g\sharp$ , by which means the concealed octaves are perceptibly meliorated; though the progression of the base part is the less effective here, on account of the impression which one still has that it is fundamentally an harpegiate progression after all, and thus not materially different from the example in *k*, and consequently that, in any case, it involves harpegiate octaves.

(*e.*) For the same reason, again, those octave parallels also which impress the ear as such merely from the fact that it *does not observe the crossing of the parts*, but confounds their threads (§ 553), are not perceptibly offensive, except in cases where one can easily confound the crossing threads. As soon, on the contrary, as the threads of the crossing parts become sufficiently distinct, such octave successions are no longer of perceptibly ill effect. (Compare § 535.) Thus, *e. g.* the passage in fig. 1028, p. 847, although, considered merely according to the notes, as in *k*, it exhibits parallel octaves between the two outer series of tones (see § 553), still cannot be regarded as involving octave parallels of ill effect, since it does this only when one does not follow the threads of the really non-parallel parts; for though it is true that the two outer series of tones are parallel, yet it is not true that the threads of the parts run parallel.

Octaves, on the contrary, which are concealed by the crossing of parts, and which of course are never otherwise than octave parallels, except when the parts are *not* perceived as crossing each other (§ 553), and which therefore appear as real octaves whenever the crossing is observed, as in fig. 1029, p. 848,—such octaves, I say, are the more striking and perceptible, the more distinctly the threads of the crossing parts impress the ear as actually crossing each other. (Compare also fig. 1019, p. 844.)

(*f.*) Likewise octaves in *direct*, though not *parallel*, movement—in the converging and diverging progressions (inserted octaves, § 554), though they may be as really apparent to the ear as actual octave parallels, yet are by no means so disagreeable in their effect; because, namely, they are not really octave parallels at all, and their appearance of being so lies wholly in the imagination.

It might, however, be going too far, directly and unconditionally to allow such octaves (as *Vogler* does, in his *Treatise on Musical Science and Musical Composition*\*) ; while, on the other hand, it would be puerile to undertake to condemn altogether such passages as the one in fig. 1036, *i*, *k*, *l*, p. 850 (§ 554).

(*g.*) Octaves in *contrary motion*, moreover, are not usually so offensive to the ear as they are in *direct* parallel movement. The passage in fig. 1009, *k*, p. 841, will always produce a better effect than that in *i*; and the example in fig. 1019, p. 844, would be quite unexceptionable, if the tone d were employed, in the second measure of the base, instead of  $\bar{d}$ .

(*e.*) Thus it is perceived that, in relation to the admissibility or inadmissibility of octave parallels, as was previously (in § 539) observed in relation to

\* *Tonwissenschaft und Tonsetzkunst*, p. 65 ; § 55 of *Tonsetzkunst*.

parallelisms by fifths, *very much depends upon circumstances*, and that, therefore, the ear is here also the supreme arbiter. Besides, it is well in this instance likewise, in doubtful cases, *to avoid* every thing that is of a suspicious character; *i. e.* every conduct of parts which has the aspect of forbidden octaves, *rather than to venture upon it*. Thus, for example, it is better to write as in fig. 1009, *k*, p. 841, than as in *i*; as in fig. 1025, *k* and *l*, p. 846, than as in *i*, &c.; better as in figs. 1030 *l*, and 1031 *l*, pp. 848 and 849, than as in *i*.

---

(C.) METHOD OF AVOIDING OCTAVE PARALLELS.

§ 558.

*The various expedients* for avoiding forbidden parallelisms of octaves are essentially the same as those which have already been pointed out in §§ 540—543 as means for avoiding parallel progressions by fifths. For the sake of saving an undue copiousness and detail, I must leave it to my readers to make the application themselves. (Only it is to be observed, that the *inversion* recommended for the avoidance of fifths can of course render no service here.) (See § XLIV.)—Moreover, *examples* of the avoidance of ill-sounding octave parallels have, in numerous instances, already been adduced.

It is to be observed, in particular, that (as was incidentally suggested in § 70), *the doubling of intervals which tend to move in a particular direction* (§§ 313 and 317) *may easily give occasion to faulty parallelisms by octaves*. If, for example, in fig. 1042, p. 854, we were to double the seventh of the second harmony, *i. e.* employ it in *two* parts at once, say as in *k*, both of these parts would, on taking an harmonic step, require to proceed from *f* to *e*; and if they were to do this, they would of course run parallel to each other in octaves; or, if they were not allowed to proceed thus, one of them would, as a matter of course, necessarily proceed *otherwise* than from *f* to *e*, and accordingly otherwise than it should *properly* proceed; *e. g.* the upper part, instead of passing from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{e}$ , would go—say from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{g}$ , as in *l*, which progression would not be very particularly smooth and flowing (to say nothing of the consecutive fifths between the upper parts); or, otherwise, the upper part must be made to skip from  $\bar{f}$  to  $\bar{c}$ , as in *m*; or the base part from *f* to *c*, as in *n*, &c.—exclusively progressions which are but poorly adapted, as one's ear readily perceives, to a part that strikes a seventh! Hence it is seen *why* we should usually endeavour to avoid the doubling of such a species of interval: it is, namely, because by doubling such an interval one easily falls into the dilemma of either being obliged, in the next harmonic step, to conduct a part contrary to its nature, as in *m* and *n*, or else to incur the evil of octave parallels, as in *k*. (Compare § 70.)

## CHAPTER XII.

## HINTS TO PRACTICAL EXERCISE IN THE ART OF PURE COMPOSITION.

Here, at the end of the Theory of Pure Composition, I would once more, as I have already several times done in the previous parts of this work, offer my readers the hand, to accompany them a short distance in the practical use of what has been taught, with a view to point out and smooth the way in which, by a practical application of the information acquired from the theory, they must finally arrive at the capacity to actually construct a musical composition conformably to the rules of the art.

In order that such exercises shall be adapted to their object, they must proceed, according to a methodical plan, from the more simple to the more complicated, from the more easy to the more difficult, from tasks in which most is already furnished to their hands, so that they have only a little left them to do, and of course have only a small chance to do amiss, to tasks in which they have much, and, at last, even everything, committed to their own agency.

With this view, I propose the following course in the form of practical lessons or problems.

## DIVISION I.

## TO ONE OR MORE GIVEN PARTS, TO COMPOSE ONE OR MORE OTHERS.

## § 559.

This form of problems shall furnish us the first opportunity to apply the principles with which we have become acquainted for the conduct of parts.

They are *in part* what have heretofore been known under the name of *contrapuntic exercises*.

According to the common usage hitherto, the *only* exercise in pure composition which the teacher prescribed to his pupils, consisted in his writing down for them some part, or melody, to which they were at one time to supply one other higher or lower part, and at another time several,—at one time in like movement, and at another in unlike,—at one time with the interweaving of transition-tones, and at another without, &c. This exercise was called (simple) counterpoint, because it consists substantially in setting against [opposite to] a given part or series of notes, or points, one or more other parts or series of notes or points,—and thus point against point (*puncta contra puncta*).

The given part in such exercise—the part which remains unaltered, is called the *fixed* or *firm* part, the *fixed melody* or *air*, the *cantus firmus*,—and, in contradistinction from this, the parts which are to be set to it are called the *counterpoint*.

We will undertake such contrapuntic exercises according to a somewhat more comprehensive plan; and, in order at the same time to lighten the labour as much as possible, we will proceed in the following manner.

We will take some given piece of music, copy it, but leave out some one of the parts of which it consists in the original, and then attempt to complete it again from our own ideas.

And in order to render these exercises as variegated as possible, we will exercise such omission and re-completion at one time on middle parts, at another on upper parts, and still at another on base parts.

We will next supply a suppressed upper part, say by a new middle or base part, and vice versa.

Afterwards we will attempt to reject and re-supply *two* parts at once,—then still more, so that finally only a single given part remains (a single *cantus firmus*).

One may also try to compose, in the place of *one* suppressed part, *two*, or even *several* others,—or again the reverse,—and thus to re-construct a given piece of music into one with more or fewer parts.

We will take for our example the four-part composition in fig. 1043 i, (Fig. 1043, i.)

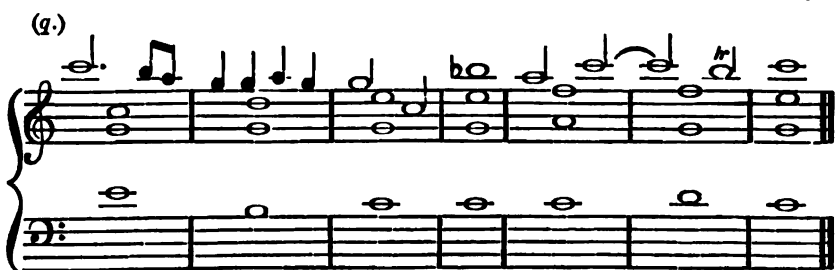
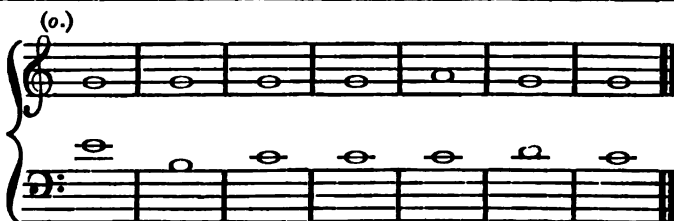
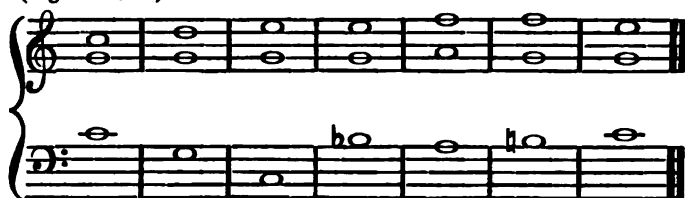
(k.)

Fig. 1043, i. (k.) is a four-part musical composition in C major, 4/4 time. It consists of four staves: Soprano, Alto, Tenor, and Bass. The Soprano and Alto parts are in treble clef, and the Tenor and Bass parts are in bass clef. The music is written in a simple, homophonic style with whole and half notes. The key signature is one sharp (F#), and the time signature is 4/4. The piece is divided into two measures by a double bar line. Below the staves, the harmonic progression is indicated: C:I V I F:V7 I C:V7 I.

(l.)

Fig. 1043, l. is a four-part musical composition in C major, 4/4 time. It consists of four staves: Soprano, Alto, Tenor, and Bass. The Soprano and Alto parts are in treble clef, and the Tenor and Bass parts are in bass clef. The music is written in a simple, homophonic style with whole and half notes. The key signature is one sharp (F#), and the time signature is 4/4. The piece is divided into two measures by a double bar line. Below the staves, the harmonic progression is indicated: C:I V I F:V7 I C:V7 I.

(Fig. 1043, m.)



(Fig. 1043, s.)



(t.)



(u.)



transcribe it, leaving out one part—say the base, as in *k*, p. 859, and then attempt again to supply this deficient part. This complement may be made again just as it was in *i*, or it may be made otherwise,—*e.g.* say as in *l*, p. 859—&c.

Or, we will write the passage in *i* with the omission of the third part, as in *m*, and then add *another* third part—say as in *n*, p. 860,—or otherwise.

Or, we will leave out the base part and the upper part, as in *o*, and write two new parts in their stead, as in *p*, p. 860.

Or, we will leave out the base part, and write, instead of it, a new and higher upper part, as in *q*.

The two middle parts of *i* are left out in *r*, and their place is supplied by one middle part.

All three upper parts are left out in *s*, and two others are substituted for them.

Only the upper part of *i* is retained in *t*, but it is put two octaves lower, and three new upper parts are given to it.

Only the third part of *i* is retained in *u*, and, instead of the three others which are suppressed, only one new base part is supplied.

Moreover, *we will select, for our first exercises, those scraps of music under which the fundamental harmonies are noted.*—It is easy to conjecture how important and welcome such indications of the fundamental harmonies must be in contrapuntic exercises, and indeed they are the more important, the fewer parts are given, and hence the most important of all when only *one single*

part is given, or, in other words, when parts are to be set to a single *cantus firmus*. That is to say, if several parts are given, these mostly point out, with sufficient distinctness, the fundamental harmony, and hence, if the web of parts is again to be filled up, the fundamental harmonies and harmonic successions requisite for this purpose are sufficiently indicated by the parts which are already given, and thus we are saved the trouble of originally choosing these, and therewith all the care of selecting good and pleasing harmonic successions, and the whole danger of violating the laws for the conduct of parts.—But all this is otherwise, when only a few parts are given, or perhaps merely one. If, for example, in fig. 1044,

(Fig. 1044, i.)

(i.)

(k.)

C B7 G7 A7 D7 D C G7 C G7 C

C:V7 d:V7 1 C:I G:V7 I V7 I

only one of the parts is rejected, say the second, the third, or the fourth, still the fundamental harmony is always sufficiently obvious from the remaining parts. Indeed this is the case, even if all three of the above-named parts are suppressed.—But the case is otherwise, if all the parts of this example are stricken out except the second. The unpractised pupil will, in such a case, often be in doubt what fundamental harmony he is to apply to a particular tone of the part which is left as the *cantus firmus*. He will, for instance, be uncertain whether he is to treat the second tone  $\bar{c}$  of this part as a fundamental tone of the major three-fold harmony  $\text{C}$ ,—or as the seventh of the  $\text{B}^7$  harmony, as in i,—or perhaps as a transition tone, as in k?—the first half of the half-note  $\bar{a}$  as belonging to the minor  $\text{B}$ -harmony or the principal four-fold harmony  $\text{B}^7$ ?—

the last three tones of the third measure as belonging to the key of *C*-major or *G*-major?—Consequently, in counterpointing this fixed melody [*cantus firmus*], he is obliged not only to take care for the good conduct of the parts which are to be supplied, but also at the same time for the choice of suitable harmonic successions, which double care might be, to a beginner, somewhat burdensome.

Therefore, in order not to expose ourselves to embarrassments of this species too early, we will at first exercise ourselves only on problems where the fundamental harmonies are indicated with the utmost distinctness;—then afterwards, on others where the fundamental harmonies are less definitely shown,—and finally, on those in which the choice of the fundamental harmonies is left wholly to our own agency.

This more or less perfect indication of the fundamental harmonies under the examples for practice, shall be made the principal ground of division according to which we will arrange our contrapuntic exercises in *the following four classes*:

---

(A.) TO SET ONE OR MORE PARTS TO ONE OR MORE GIVEN PARTS, WHEN THE HARMONIES TO BE SELECTED ARE FULLY SHOWN ACCORDING TO OUR MODE OF DESIGNATION.

#### § 560.

As a model of the manner in which these first and more easy exercises are to be employed, we may refer to the before-mentioned example in fig. 1043 i, p. 859. In a similar manner one may employ the examples found in fig. 226, and onward, p. 390, as problems for exercise.

---

(B.) TO ONE OR MORE GIVEN PARTS, TO SUPPLY ONE OR MORE OTHERS, WHEN, THOUGH THE FUNDAMENTAL CHORDS ARE GIVEN, YET THEIR SITUATION AND RELATIONSHIP ARE NOT ASSIGNED.

#### § 561.

The appropriate conduct of each part to be supplied was facilitated as much as possible to the pupil by the series of signs placed under the given parts in the first-mentioned exercises, which signs indicated, with the greatest possible definiteness, the harmonies appropriately forming the basis of the web of parts to be supplied, and their relations to each other.—The pupil will now try to satisfy himself with intimations which do not thus show him everything.

What we have heretofore marked out to him as fully, particularly, and definitely as possible, we will hereafter indicate to him less definitely, in part by half words, as it were, and by abbreviations in which he must presume upon much—yes, very much, and often indeed the chief part, namely, the internal sense,—in order that he may, by being compelled to lean only upon the imperfect helps of partial and slight intimations, gradually learn to do altogether without them.



These *imperfect* and *half* intimations may be furnished in *different ways*.

In the first place, instead of the designations hitherto furnished, merely the fundamental harmonies may be indicated by letters, whereby, though it is indeed shown what fundamental harmony is to form the basis of the web of parts, yet it is not shown to what degree of the scale of what key this fundamental harmony here belongs. (§ 152.)

For example, it would be an exercise according to this plan, to transcribe only one or two parts of fig. 1044 i, p. 862, to write under these the letters appended to that example, and then to attempt again to supply one or more other parts.

Let this species of practice be tried likewise under all the changes pointed out in § 559; and still in many other examples besides the one here given, as, *e. g.* in figs. 1045—1047:

(Fig. 1045, i.)



(Fig. 1046.)

Figured bass figures: I, V7, F:V7, C:IV, II

(Fig. 1047.)

Figured bass figures: T, R, F, R, T, T, F, t, T, F, R

(C.) THE SAME EXERCISE WHEN THE HARMONIC COMBINATIONS TO BE CHOSEN ARE INDICATED BY THE FIGURES OF THOROUGH-BASE.

## § 562.

Still another species of half-indication is furnished, not by pointing out the fundamental harmonies under a given part, but merely by noting down *what tones are to occur, in the other parts, to this or that tone of the given part.*

In this case, the pupil is subjected to the four-fold duty of (1) deciphering what fundamental harmonies may lie at the basis of the harmonic combinations thus indicated; (2) on what degree of what key these belong; then (3) to invent, for the given part, other parts in which the prescribed tones occur; and (4) to conduct these parts in such a manner as they require to be conducted according to what was observed in Nos. 1, 2, and 3, above, and according to the laws for the conduct of parts.

In order to undertake exercises of this species, we need, first of all, a mode of designation by means of which it can be signified, in connection with the given part, by few and short signs, *what tones are to occur in the parts which are to be supplied.*

We have no occasion for now inventing such a mode of designation; for, there is already a common musical notation by figures and abbreviations, which

seems to have been invented expressly for our purpose, and which we will, therefore, employ to this end. It has already been mentioned in § XXXI, under the appellation of

THOROUGH-BASE,  
OR  
THOROUGH-BASE NOTATION.

We will now proceed to inform ourselves as perfectly as possible of this mode of musical writing.

(1.) *Description of the usual Thorough-Base Notation.*

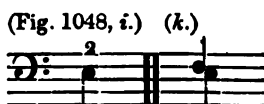
§ 563.

Thorough-base notation is a musical language of signs or figure-writing, which depends essentially upon the circumstance that only *one* part, and that most commonly the *base* part, is written with the ordinary notes, while the tones which are to be performed in connection with this, or, in other words, the tones which are to appear in the other parts, are indicated by figures and certain other signs, which are written over the staff, though sometimes, for the want of room, *under* it.

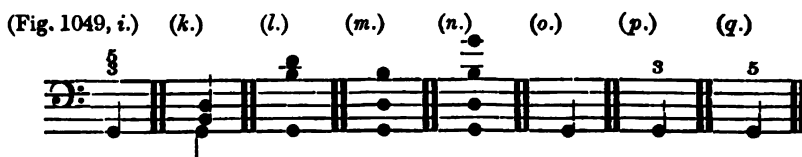
Such figures and signs are in general called *signatures*.

We must, first of all, become acquainted with this language of signs. The following explanation will secure this object.

(I.) *Every figure or other thorough-base signature, placed over (or under) a note, means that, in connection with this tone, that tone is to be heard which lies at such a degree above the base note as the figure indicates; or, in other words, every figure placed over a note represents a higher tone which is to be heard in connection with this one, and that tone, too, which forms with the base note the interval indicated by the figure. If, for example, a figure 2 stands over the base note e, as in fig. 1048, i,*



this means, that, in connection with this tone, the tone of the second degree above the base tone, the second of the base tone—namely, the tone *f*—is to be given as in *k*.—If the figures  $\frac{5}{3}$  stand over the base note, as in fig. 1049, i,



the meaning is, that the third and the fifth of this base tone are to be heard in connection with it in the higher parts, as in *k*;—and so also in fig. 1050,

(Fig. 1050, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.)



the figures in *i* indicate the upper tones found in *k*; while in fig. 1051,

(Fig. 1051, i.)

(k.)



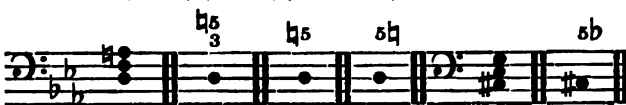
the figures in *k* point out the tones in *i*, &c. The matter may be briefly stated thus: a figure standing over a base note indicates the same thing that would be indicated by the head of a note standing at the given degree above the base note.

Every tone indicated by a figure, in this case, is always understood to be in the state in which it would be according to the chromatic signature placed at the commencement of a piece of music; and, therefore, if an interval is wished to appear otherwise than it would be by the signature, as, for example, in figs. 1052—1054,

(Fig. 1052, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.) (Fig. 1053, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.)



(Fig. 1054, i.) (k.) (l.) (m.) (n.) (o.)



it must be made to do so by placing the requisite transposition-sign before the figure, as is done in the last-quoted figs. in *k*.

Therefore, in accordance with what has thus far been said, if one would write in thorough-base figures the four-part passage written out in notes in fig. 1055, *i*,

(Fig. 1055, i.)



(Fig. 1055, *k*.)

(l.)

12 10 6 12 #11 13 b12 10 5 3 6 5 #4 6 b5 3  
 10 8 4 10 b10 10 10 8 3 1 4 3 b3 3 3 1  
 8 5 1 7 6 8 b7 5 1 5 1 7 6 1 b7 5

(m.) 5 3 6 5 #4 6 b5 3 (n.) 5 #4 b5  
 3 4 3 b3 3 3 5 5 6 3 b3 6 8 3  
 5 7 6 b7 5 3 3 4 7 6 3 b7 5

(o.) 5 5 6 5 #4 6 b5 5 (p.) #6  
 3 3 4 3 3 3 b3 3 6 4 7 b 6 b7

(q.)

(s.)

(r.) 12 17 19 17  
 10 8 14 10  
 8 5 10 8

(t.) 19 24 28 24  
 17 15 19 15  
 15 12 17 12

(u.)

(v.)

(w.)

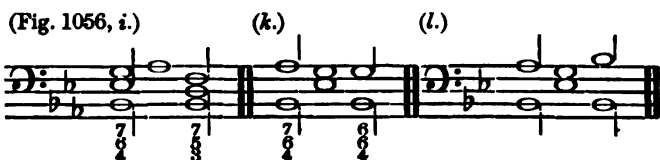
(x.)

the three upper parts should be represented\* by three rows of figures, in the manner exhibited by *k*,—fig. 1055, *q* as in *r*,—and *s* as in *t*, above.

## REMARK.

If we stop here, for a moment, to reflect, before we proceed with the doctrine of thorough-base signs, we shall observe that these signatures represent, fundamentally, nothing else than merely—*notes*. They are only other signs for the same thing; since a figure placed over a base note expresses nothing else than the tone which, in the usual mode of musical notation would be represented by the head of a note standing on such and such a line or space above the base note; and thus, for example, the figures 5 and 6, or  $\sharp$  written over the base note *c*, would indicate nothing else than what would be indicated by the letters *g* and *a*, or  $\sharp$ , placed over it.

Accordingly, therefore, though a tone represented by the figure 3, for example, is of course always *the third of the base tone*, still it is by no means *the third of the fundamental harmony, the fundamental third*. (§§ 57, 63 *bis, ter*, 65, 87 *bis, ter*, 88, 95 *bis, ter*, 99 Remark and 100.) So also the figures 5 and 7 uniformly designate only the fifth and seventh of *the base note*, but not at all the fifth and seventh of *the fundamental tone*; and indeed a base note may be figured with  $\frac{7}{5}$ , without involving the fact that an actual seventh-harmony (a fundamental four-fold chord) forms the basis of this harmonic combination, as may be seen by comparing fig. 1051, *i* with *k*, p. 867. The harmonic combination [*c e g b*], which is found there in the first measure, is by no means a proper seventh harmony, and the note  $\bar{d}$  represented by the figure 7 in the chord [*e g b d*], in the third measure, certainly is not the fundamental seventh; and yet these two chords are, in the language of thorough-base figures, unhesitatingly called *seventh chords*, since every harmonic combination is here uniformly named simply according to the figures by which it is indicated; and thus, for example, the first chord in fig. 1056, *i*,



is termed a fourth-sixth chord, merely because it is represented by the figures  $\frac{7}{4}$ , and so also the entirely different chords in *k* and *l*, because these are represented by the same figures. (§ 65.)

Hence a tone indicated by the figure 7 may be at one time the major, at another time the minor, and at another time the diminished seventh of the base tone; and in like manner also the figure  $\sharp 7$  may at one time indicate a major seventh, at another time a minor, and at another a diminished, and both, too, may indicate an actual or proper seventh of the four-fold harmony of the first degree, or of the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, or seventh degree of the major or minor key,—at one time, moreover, no proper seventh, but either a ninth, or some other tone foreign to the harmony, merely a transition-tone, or a suspension, or, if the base tone itself is a transition-tone, even every possible interval of *any harmony whatever*—fig. 1057:

(Fig. 1057.)

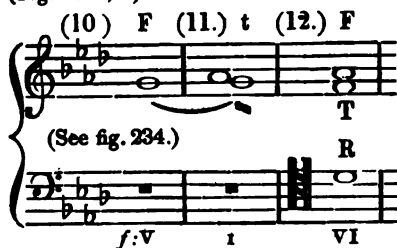




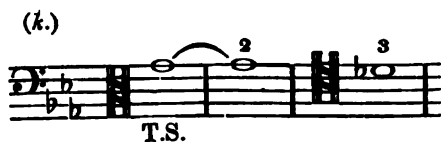
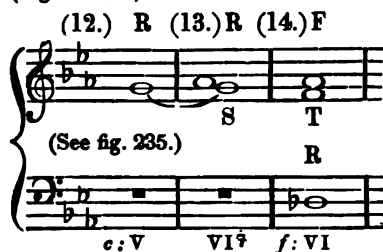
and thus every interval of any single harmony may, in turn, come into a situation in which it would be just seven degrees higher than the figured base note.

In like manner, a thorough-basist would write the three examples in figs. 1058 i, 1059 i, and 1060 i,

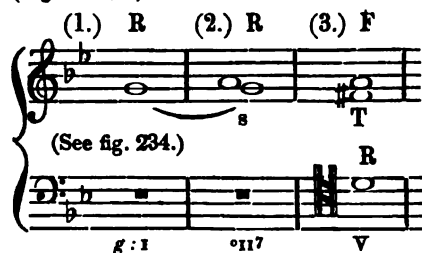
(Fig. 1058, i.)



(Fig. 1059, i.)



(Fig. 1060, i.)



the essential difference between which is rendered obvious by the designation of the fundamental harmonies which is placed under them all (§ 231, fig. 235), as in *k*; so that thus, as one perceives, the thorough-base notation is precisely the same in all these three examples, which are yet so diverse. (Even the  $\sharp$  before the 3 in the last example, whereby this measure is in some degree distinguished from the last measure of the first example, would disappear, if the usual signature in minor keys were entirely consistent (§ 142), and so also the  $b$  in the second example would disappear, if this passage should occur in a piece of music written predominantly in *f*-minor or *Ab*-major.)

This all very naturally arises from the fact that the thorough-base notation is radically nothing else than an abbreviated writing in notes, which [thorough-base writing], as one perceives, represents the distance of the higher tones from the lowest by figures instead

of notes, and thus uniformly expresses only the exterior of tones, but not their internal and essential relationships and meaning—a mode of writing which, for example, puts a figure 6 in the place of a note standing a sixth higher than the base note, &c.

Accordingly, the thorough-base notation very frequently designates things of the same species by different signs, while it, on the other hand, often indicates entirely different things by the same sign—in short, in all cases, only that which is merely incidental, the mere distance of position between the base note and some note or notes above it. Hence it is *entirely different* from the modes of designation employed in §§ 41, 52, 58, 97, 121, 151—153, 187, 188\*, and 231, which uniformly indicate *things which are essential* (e. g. the designation T or t always denotes the major or the minor fundamental third, the third of the *fundamental* harmony—S or s always a fundamental seventh, &c.—the designation  $\mathbb{E}^7$  always points out the principal four-fold chord  $\mathbb{E}^7$ ,—C:  $\mathbb{V}^7$  always denotes the principal four-fold chord  $\mathbb{E}^7$  on the dominant of C-major,—Bb:  $\mathbb{IV}^7$  always means the major four-fold harmony of  $\mathbb{E}^b$  as belonging to the fourth degree of Bb-major, &c.); while the thorough-base figure 7 indicates nothing else than merely, in general, an harmonic combination in which a tone occurs which, reckoned from the base note, is a seventh, but which may be at one time a fundamental seventh of a principal four-fold chord, or of some secondary four-fold chord, and at another time this or that other interval. (Compare remark on § 99.)

But we will return from these preliminary considerations to the farther description of thorough-base writing.

#### § 564.

(II.) *If several figures successively stand over one and the same base note*, the meaning is, as one would readily conjecture, that the upper parts are first to give those intervals which correspond to the first signatures, and then the others. Accordingly, fig. 1061, i, is to be understood as represented in k; and fig. 1062, i, as in k:

(Fig. 1061, i.) (k.)                      (l.)                      (m.)                      (n.)

(Fig. 1062, i.) (k.)                      (l.)                      (m.)                      (n.)

But how long shall each one of these several harmonic combinations, to be given on the same base note, continue? a quarter-note, an eighth-note, a whole-note, &c.?—(a point which the figures do not in themselves determine; because, in themselves, they show nothing more than would be shown by the mere heads of the notes without those cross-strokes which indicate their various lengths—§ 563). This must be determined, by the reader of such figure-notation, *according to circumstances*.

He must first see whether the base note, to which several harmonic combinations are successively to be given, falls primarily, according to its rhythmical



situation and its natural divisibility, into *two* or into *three* parts ; into *halves* or into *thirds*.

(1.) If *two* signatures stand successively over a base note, which, in a rhythmical point of view, fall naturally into *two* parts (into *halves*), then it is the most natural to take the first signature for the first half, and the second signature for the second half; and, for this reason, the two figures standing under the base note in fig. 1063, *i*, *k*,

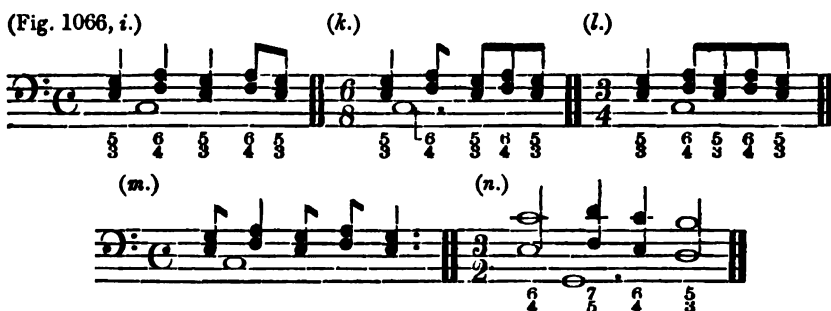


are to be understood as is shown by the notes placed above.

If *three* harmonic combinations are figured over a base note which primarily divides itself into *halves*, the meaning is usually understood to be, that the first of these should have the duration of the first half of the base note, while the two following are to divide the time of the second half equally.—Fig. 1064, *i*.



According to similar principles, *four* harmonic combinations on one such base note are understood to have each a fourth-part of the time of this base note; but *five* harmonic combinations thus figured are to be so construed as to divide the first three-quarters of the time of the base note equally between the first three of these harmonic combinations, and to give the remaining quarter to the two others. Figs. 1065, *i* and *k*, and 1066, *i* and *k*:



(2.) If *three* harmonic combinations are marked over a base note which primarily divides itself into *thirds*, each one of them should have a third part of the time of such base note. Fig. 1064 *l*, p. 872. *Two* harmonic combinations over such a note divide the time of this note in the manner exhibited by fig. 1063 *l*, p. 872; *four* or *five*, as in figs. 1065 *l*, and 1066 *l*, p. 872.

Sometimes the *protractive point* is employed between these signatures; and in such a case it has substantially the same meaning that it has when placed after an actual note; *e. g.* in fig. 1067.



Other and still more minute limitations of the duration of several thorough-base signatures placed successively over one base note, cannot, compatibly with the nature of the figure-notation, well be assigned. Thus, for example, the passage in fig. 1063 *m*, p. 872, cannot be expressed in figures, in any unequivocal and ordinarily intelligible way; and much less other cases, which are still more complicated, as, *e. g.* figs. 1064 *m*, 1065 *m*, and 1066 *m* and *n*, p. 872.

---

#### § 565.

(III.) If a *rest* follows a base note, and signatures are placed over the rest, the meaning is, that those intervals are to be supplied which the figures over the rest would indicate, provided the foregoing base note still continued on in the place of the rest; or, in other words, the intervals which are written over a rest are reckoned *from the foregoing base note*. Accordingly, fig. 1061, *l*, is to be understood as in *m*, p. 871; and 1062 *l*, as in *m*, p. 871.

---

#### § 566.

(IV.) In all the cases thus far mentioned, the figuring was designed to show that the tones represented by the signatures were either to appear simultaneously with the base note to which those signatures referred, as in figs. 1048—1050, 1052—1054, pp. 866 and 867, or in part later, as in figs. 1061 and 1062, p. 871. Or, in other words, the signatures either referred *to the base note over which they were placed, or to the foregoing*.

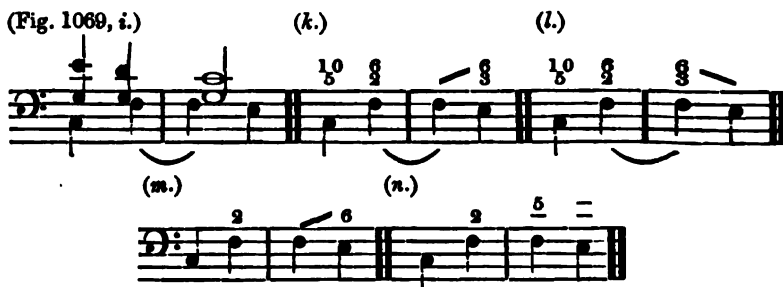
But cases may also occur in which one might wish to indicate that the harmonic combination represented by the signatures should make its appearance *earlier* than the base note to which the figures relate, or, in other words, where it is necessary to represent the tones which are to sound in the upper parts, by figures which refer to a base note *yet afterwards to appear*—a base note which presents itself later than the tones designed to be expressed by the figures. If,

for example, the passage in fig. 1068, *i*,

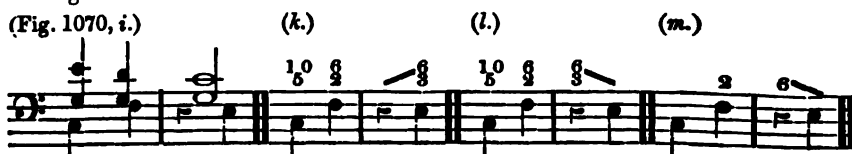


is to be written in thorough-base characters, and the tones which are to be struck in the upper parts immediately at the commencement and even during the rest of the base are to be expressed by figures, this can be done only by figures which refer to the base note *d*, while this latter does not actually occur until after the tones represented by such figures.

Now, in order to show, in such cases, that the tones represented by the signatures are to be struck in the upper parts earlier than the base note to which the signatures refer, while it is usual to write the latter over the base note, still, as a sign to show that the tones represented by the signatures are not to be struck for the first time simultaneously with this base note, but before it, an oblique stroke directed upwards (—) is placed at the point where the intervals represented by the following figures are first to be struck, as in fig. 1068 *k*, above, where the oblique stroke over the rest shows that the tones [*g b f*], represented by the signatures over the base tone *d*, are to be already sounded, even during the rest over which the diagonal stroke stands. In accordance with the same principle, the passage in fig. 1069 *i* can be written as in *k*:



and fig. 1070 *i* as in *k*:



and also fig. 1071 *i* as in *k*:



The form of notation found in figs. 1068 *l*, 1069 *l*, 1070 *l*, and 1071 *l*, would, perhaps, be somewhat more natural and easy for the eye.

## § 567.

(V.) As the figures hitherto spoken of indicate notes or tones which are to be given by an upper part, so, in like manner, the cipher is used, in order to indicate that one or more upper parts give *no* tone, that they are to be, for a time, *silent*.

Thus, with the help of this sign, the example in fig. 1072 *i* can be written in thorough-base characters as in *k*:

(Fig. 1072, *i*.)

(k.)



(l.)

But if the upper parts are to be silent *a greater length of time*, then, instead of placing ciphers continuously over every base note, the silence of the upper parts is concisely indicated by the letters T. S. (i. e. *tasto solo*, an expression which is borrowed from keyed instruments, and which means that merely the base tone, the base key alone, and no higher tones are to be struck in connection with it).—It is usual to employ also the synonymous term *Unisono*, *Unis.*, *All'unisono*, i. e. unison, oneness of sound (by which, however, it is sometimes understood that the other parts are to proceed *in higher octaves with the base part*, in a *unison of a minor grade*.)—This designation holds good until signatures again occur over the notes; where it is customary also expressly to write the superfluous term *Accordi*, meaning that one is now again to play chords,—or the term *Accompagnamento*, meaning that the base notes are now again to be *accompanied* by chords.

## § 568.

The mode of signature-writing hitherto described, were it to be in all cases carried out with as much fulness and detail as it has been in the examples hitherto, could not, indeed, be called an *abbreviated* mode of writing at all; since, in this form, it would prove to be as circumstantial, copious, and troublesome, as if the upper parts were fully written out *in notes*.

But it has become a real short-hand mode of writing, by the fact that it has been subjected to *the following reductions*.

(1.) Since, in the first place, *the higher numerical names of intervals* are only repetitions of the lower on a smaller scale, the octave being only a repetition of the prime, the ninth a mere renewal of the second, the tenth only a higher third, &c.—it was very natural, for the sake of saving figures, to fall upon the idea of not using the higher numerical names of intervals—names which in part also require the use of two figures, such as 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, &c. but to employ, instead of these, the more simple numerical names 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. and, in general, none above 7. According to this, the example in fig. 1055 *k*, p. 868, can be written with fewer figures, as in *l*.

The higher figures are employed only in the following few peculiar cases.

(a.) Every interval foreign to the harmony and standing on the *second* (ninth, sixteenth, &c.) degree, from the base tone, is not ordinarily indicated by a 2, but by a 9, as in figs. 1073 and 1074 :

(Fig. 1073.)



(Fig. 1074, i.)

Fig. 1074, i. shows a musical score with two staves (treble and bass) and a series of figures above the notes. The figures are: F T N R s, T, F, R F, T R s, N. Below the staves, the figures are: C:I IV V I V7 I V I V 7 I G:V7.

(k.)

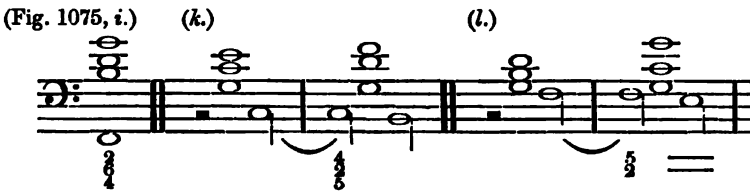
Fig. 1074, k. shows a musical score with two staves (treble and bass) and a series of figures above the notes. The figures are: 98 3 98 43 98 43 98 3 #9 10 6 5 4 7, 6 8 77 66 66 66 55 6 #5 5 3 3 9 5, 4 5 33 44 33 55 33.

(l.)

Fig. 1074, l. shows a musical score with two staves (treble and bass) and a series of figures above the notes. The figures are: 98 6 4 98 4- 98 6- 98 3- 6 #9 10 6 5 4 7, 3- 63 6- 43 5- 3- 6 #5 5 3 - 9 7.

(The major added ninth  $\bar{g}$  of the four-fold chord  $\mathbb{F}^7$ , in fig. 1073, is represented, not by a figure 2, but by a 9; and so in fig. 1074, *k*, *l*, the figure 9 indicates the tone  $\bar{a}$  foreign to the three-fold harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , in the first measure, the tone  $\bar{a}$  foreign to the  $\mathbb{C}^7$ -harmony in the following measure, the tone  $\bar{f}$  foreign to the  $\mathbb{C}^7$ -harmony in the third measure, the tone  $\bar{d}$  foreign to the  $\mathbb{C}$ -harmony in the next measure, &c.)—In all other cases, namely, where the

tone to be represented by 2 or 9 is an actual harmonic interval, it is usual to employ the figure 2; as, for example, in fig. 1075:



where, in *i*, the fundamental note *g* of the principal four-fold chord  $\mathbb{G}^7$  in the third inversion, is represented merely by a 2; as also, in *k*, the fundamental fifth of the  $\mathbb{G}^7$ -harmony is represented by the figure 2, and the fundamental fifth *g* of the three-fold harmony  $\mathbb{C}$ , in *l*.

Every interval represented in the above-mentioned manner by the figure 9 is, in the language of thorough-base, invested also with the title of a *ninth*: (It can scarcely be necessary to remind the reader that such so-called ninths, which are tones casually added at one time to this and at another time to that interval of this or that harmony, are not at all the same thing that *we* understand by the name *ninth*, as is readily perceived from what was observed in the remark on § 563.)

(b.) It is usual, moreover, in the case just mentioned, when the interval designated by a 9 proceeds downwards to the prime or the octave, &c. of the same base note, to represent this prime or octave, not by 1, but by 8.—In case the interval designated by a 9 resolves itself into the third or the tenth of the base tone, this latter interval is usually denoted, not by a 3, but by a 10.—Accordingly, in the first measure of fig. 1074, *k* and *l*, p. 876 the tone  $\bar{g}$  is indicated not by 1, but by 8; and, for the same reason, the figure 9 is employed in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th measures,—while 10 is used in the 5th measure.

(c.) Finally, the higher numbers are employed, in general, in all cases where it is deemed necessary to show very definitely whether the parts are to move upwards or downwards. Thus, for example, in order to exhibit the passage in fig. 1076 *i* by thorough-base signs,



it is preferred to use the figures 8 and 9, as in *k*, in order to show the reader, unequivocally, that, from the tone *b* indicated by 7, the progression is to be, not downward, but upward to *c*, and from this  $\bar{c}$ , not down, but up to  $\bar{d}$ , &c.

#### § 569.

(2.) A second saving of signs is secured in the fact that a tone which is a mere duplicate of the base tone is not usually indicated in thorough-base

*figuring*; as, *e. g.* in fig. 1055 *m*, p. 868, where, in the first chord, the tone  $\bar{c}$  of the third part, being a mere duplicate of the base tone *c*, is not indicated by any figure; and so also the tone  $\bar{d}$  of the second part, in the second chord, and the tone *g* of the third part, in the third chord, &c.

---

§ 570.

(3.) In all the representations by thorough-base figures thus far, *e. g.* *k—m*, of fig. 1055, p. 868, every figure is written in the line of that part in which the tone which it represents is to occur. But this order is usually relinquished, and *figures are written indiscriminately over the base notes without observing the lines*, as in *n*, p. 868,—so that the figure of that interval which is to be heard uppermost is not necessarily written highest, and the tones which are to appear in the middle parts, in the middle line; but in other ways, often arbitrarily chosen:—for the most part, figures of the highest denomination are placed highest, while those of a lower denomination are placed below, as in *o*, p. 868.

---

REMARK.

We here again stop a moment to consider. We readily perceive, that while the thorough-base notation has become more concise and condensed by the above-mentioned curtailments and reductions, still, on the other hand, it has lost much in definiteness and precision. Indeed, this cannot be otherwise; for every other abbreviated writing in half-words, or other condensed signs, is always less perfect than a mode of writing in which everything is written out, in a full, clear manner.

We will enumerate *these indefinitenesses*, arising from the above-mentioned retrenchment of figures.

(*a.*) The circumstance just mentioned in § 568 (1), namely, that the pitch of the tone in which each interval is to be executed is not to be shown by the magnitude of the figure, since, *e. g.* the figure 3 serves as well to designate a tone standing only on the *third* degree of the base tone, as to designate one standing on the *tenth* degree above; this circumstance, I say, is of itself a source of no inconsiderable indefiniteness; for, the first two figurings in fig. 1055 *o*, p. 868, for example, can equally well be understood as in *i*, where the upper part proceeds from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{f}$ , and as in *q*, where it proceeds from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{f}$ .

(*b.*) Still more important equivocalnesses arise from the circumstance mentioned in § 570; for, by this means, in the case of several figures standing one above another, it remains entirely undetermined,

(*a.*) Whether the tone represented by one of them is to occur in a higher part than the tone represented by another, or in a lower; and hence, fig. 1049 *i*, p. 866, can as well be understood in the manner exhibited by *k*, as in that shown by *l*, or *m*, or *n*.

(*β.*) It remains farther undetermined, whether this or that part is to proceed from this or that interval of one harmonic combination to this or that of the following; and hence, fig. 1077 *i*,



can either be so executed that the upper part shall, in the first harmonic step, make a skip upward from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{a}$ , while the middle part proceeds downward from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{f}$ , as in *k*, or it may be performed as in *l*, where the former proceeds from  $\bar{e}$  to  $\bar{f}$ , while the latter goes from  $\bar{g}$  to  $\bar{a}$ . So also, according to the figures of thorough-base, fig. 1061 *i*, p. 871, can equally well be executed as in *m* or as in *n*.

(*γ.*) Still more! It is left to the performer to give the harmonic combinations indicated by the signatures either with many parts or with few, or, in other words, to give the harmony, in performance, more or fewer upper parts; *e. g.* fig. 1055 *o*, p. 868, either in four parts, as in 1055 *i*, p. 867, or five parts, as in *u*, or in three parts, as in *v* or *w*, &c. and thus to introduce, at one time, frequent doublings, as in *u*, and at another, omissions as in *w*.

(*δ.*) Indeed, in many cases it remains optional with him either to make a part rest, or to let it proceed, just according to his fancy, or as occasion may require; and thus, for example, either to perform fig. 1077 *m*, above, as in *n*, or as in *o*.

(*ε.*) By putting together all that has been said above, it will be seen that *thorough-base notation leaves the entire conduct of parts undetermined*. (The trivial exception of which we spoke above, in § 568 (*c*), is not to be considered.) Therefore, the entire charge of arranging, distributing, and conducting parts, is left to the one who has to execute such a thorough-base part.

Hence the signature-notation is only made for those who understand the laws for the conduct of parts; and one must, for example, be acquainted with the prohibitions relative to the parallelisms of fifths and octaves, and the downward tendency of the principal seventh, in order to know that the passage in fig. 1055 *o*, p. 868, must not be executed as in *x*; and so one must also be acquainted with the doctrine of the progression of harmonic tones, in order to know that the passage in fig. 1061 *i*, p. 871, is not to be executed as in *n*.

But we will return again to the particular object now before us, namely, the explanation of signatures.

#### § 571.

(4.) Still *an additional retrenchment* has been introduced by means of the conventional agreement that *certain figures shall in many cases be considered as sufficiently intelligible without being written*. That is to say—

(*a.*) If no figure at all stands over a base note, the meaning is understood to be the same as if the figures  $\frac{3}{2}$  were placed over it; and thus fig. 1049 *o*, p. 866, is, in the language of thorough-base, precisely equivalent to *i*.

In like manner, as the figures 3 and 5 are considered to be self-evident in the case of an entirely unfigured base note, so is the figure 5, when the figure 3 alone is (superfluously) placed over a base note—and, vice versa, the figure 3, when a figure 5 stands alone over a base note; accordingly, fig. 1049, *p* and *q*, mean the same thing as *i* and *o*, p. 866,—fig. 1054 *l*, the same as *k*, p. 867.







has the same meaning as *i*, inasmuch as the figures 2 over the second base note are understood to be continued on, as is the figure 7 over the fourth base note.

(i.) It is not unfrequently necessary, however, actually to write *figures which might be understood of themselves*. This is the case:

(a.) First, when the interval corresponding to such a figure is to be played *otherwise than it would be according to the signature of the key* [according to the given scale]; in which case it is necessary expressly to write the figure, even though it might be understood of itself, so as to be able to connect with it the required transposition-sign. If, for example, in a piece of music having no signature at all, the harmonic combination [B d# f#] is to be represented by the signs of thorough-base, the figures 3, though in themselves capable of being understood, still must be written over the base note, merely for the sake of our being able to connect with them the requisite sharps, as in fig. 1052 *k*, p. 867. The same thing is found in figs. 1053 *k*, and 1054 *k*, *l*, p. 867.

But even here a retrenchment has been introduced. It has been assumed, namely, that in the above-mentioned case the figure 3, *the third of the base tone*, need not be written, but that it is sufficient, instead of the figure, to place the transposition-sign alone over the base note, and thus, for example, to employ merely the signs *b*, or *#*, or *b#*, instead of *b3*, or *#3*, or *b#3*. Accordingly, in a piece of music, which has no signature, the harmonic combination (B d# f#) may, instead of being written as in fig. 1052 *k*, p. 867, be more concisely written as in *l*; and the chord [c eb ab], instead of being written as in fig. 1052 *k*, p. 867, may be more briefly written as in *l*.

(β.) A second case where it is desirable, for the sake of definiteness, if not strictly necessary, to write figures which might be understood of themselves, is that in which the rules of assumption, in reference to these particularly condensed thorough-base signatures, become, under certain circumstances, at variance with each other.

If, for example, the passage in fig. 1061 *k*, p. 871, is to be figured in the thorough-base manner, it can be done in no other way than by actually writing the figures 3, though these might in other cases be perfectly well understood; because it can in no other way be shown that the three-fold harmony [c e g] is to follow the fourth-sixth chord [c f a] on the same base note c. For the same reason, the figures 3 must stand over the third base note c in fig. 1077, p. 879. On a like ground, the passage in fig. 1062 *k*, p. 871, cannot be well expressed in thorough-base figures, otherwise than as in *i*. It might possibly be done, indeed, as in *n*, where the figuring 4 stands a little to the right hand of the base note and not directly over it, in order to show that the tones 4 are not to be struck until after the base note; but still the figuring in *i* would always be less equivocal and more explicit.



## § 573.

(6.) Finally, it is not unfrequently found that such portions of the base part as admit of its being easily understood what harmonic combinations must be connected with them, are left entirely unfigured; *e. g.* fig. 1081, p. 882, merely as in *l*; and, in a similar manner, the example in fig. 1083, *i*, is more briefly written as in *k*,

(Fig. 1083, *i*.)

since it is here also assumed to be clearly intelligible to the reader in itself that the three-fold harmony  $\text{C}$  continues during the first four eighth-notes, and the  $\text{C}^7$ -harmony during the four following, &c.

## § 574.

Thus far I have described the thorough-base notation as it is most generally in use.

Many musicians, however, deviate in certain points from this mode of writing, so that not unfrequently one and the same sign indicates, with different writers, quite different things, and one and the same thing is indicated by different signs with different writers; all which tends to make the thorough-base notation the more confused and embarrassing, if not even less perfect.

But, in order that we may be able to read the figured bases of these writers, we will now likewise become acquainted with such variations (*variantes lectiones*).

Some musicians place the chromatic signs  $\sharp$ ,  $b$ ,  $\flat$ ,  $\times$ ,  $bb$ , *after* the figure, instead of before it, and, accordingly, write as in fig. 1052 *m*, p. 867, instead of as in *l*; as in fig. 1053 *m*, p. 867, instead of as in *l*; and as in fig. 1054 *m*, p. 867, instead of as in *l*.

Others find it more convenient, for the sake of brevity, to indicate chromatic elevations by drawing one or two strokes through the figures, than by means of the usual chromatic signs  $\sharp$  or  $\times$ ; and, accordingly, fig. 1052, *n*, would mean the same as *l*, p. 867.

Others, on the contrary, connect the idea of chromatic *depression* with a stroke thus drawn through a figure; as, *e. g.* fig. 1053 *n*, instead of *l*, p. 867.

Still others have fallen into the strange idea of appending a flat ( $b$ ) to every figure 5 which forms a *minor* or so-called diminished fifth with the base tone (Theory, § XXVIII, remark), and hence write fig. 1054 *n*, as in *o*, p. 867.

On the contrary, others again have seen fit to employ a curved line  $\frown$  or the sign  $\wedge$  to designate such a minor fifth; *e. g.* fig. 1084 *i*:

(Fig. 1084, *i*.) (k.) instead of (l.) (m.) (n.) TÜRK.



But others again use this same curve to indicate entirely different things; namely, either that some interval of the chord over which the curve stands is to be left out, *e. g.* fig. 1084 *k*, above; or that the interval over which it stands is a transition-tone, or a suspension, fig. 1084, *l*, *m*; or that the passage thus marked is to be executed only in three parts, as in *n*, above.

We sometimes find, moreover, the sign  $\circ$ , or  $\cup$ , or  $\omega\omega$  used instead of the diagonal stroke  $\diagup$ , so that thus, fig. 1085, *i*,

(Fig. 1085, *i*) (k.) (l.) (m.) TÜRK.



would be written as in *k*, above\*.

Many also employ, instead of the dot, the horizontal stroke (—) and write therefore as in fig. 1067 *k*, p. 573, rather than as in *i*.

(2.) *Application of Thorough-Base Notation—particularly its Application to Contrapuntic Exercises:—To one or more given Parts, to compose one or more others, when the given Parts are furnished with Thorough-Base Figures.*

§ 574 *th*.

Having thus far become acquainted with the meaning of thorough-base signatures (§§ 563—574), it now remains that we say something on the practical advantages and use of them.

\* The three following examples of thorough-base notation, with the music represented thereby placed at the right-hand of each, are not referred to in the text of the present edition of the author's work; but, as they are found among the other examples which the author quotes in connection with this subject, and as they may be of use for the reader's inspection, they are subjoined below:

(Fig. 1086.)



E. BACH.

Thorough-base writing is sometimes, in the first place, a convenient means of writing *merely a figured base part* to a piece of music, or to individual parts of it; *e. g.* to a Choral melody, to a Solfeggio, to a Recitative, and the like, instead of *any other instrumental accompaniment*. For such a purpose, this mode of writing, as being more concise, is, without doubt, of real practical utility, so far as an extremely simple accompaniment is concerned—an accompaniment consisting merely of naked chords, which can be indicated in most cases more easily and briefly by a few thorough-base signatures, than by fully written notes, and which also can be more easily comprehended by the eye and more easily read, by one who understands thorough-base notation, than chords fully written out in notes. This is the case, for example, in the so-called dry recitative (*recitativo secco*), accompanied simply by naked chords struck on a pianoforte, (sometimes, in the Italian opera) by a violoncello, or by some other instrument;—of which species of composition, the following base part, for example,



is not only easy to read, but also affords at the same time the incidental advantage that a thorough-base part of this description, requiring only a single staff, may at pleasure be executed either on the pianoforte or on some other instrument, *e. g.* on the Violoncello, the Harp, perhaps on the Guitar, &c.—on

(Fig. 1087.)



(Fig. 1088.)



the Pianoforte, the Harp, or the Organ, in the following manner, for instance :



On the Violoncello :



On the Guitar :



And so also it may, in many cases, be found more easy and convenient for both writer and reader to write a simple melody, *e. g.* a Choral melody, or perhaps a Solfeggio, and the like, in the following manner,



than in fully written notes, as follows :



(although it is true, indeed, that even in this case, to at least the great majority of readers and players, actual notes would be incomparably more welcome than thorough-base signatures, were it only for the greater clearness with which the music is presented to the eye by notes than by figures.)

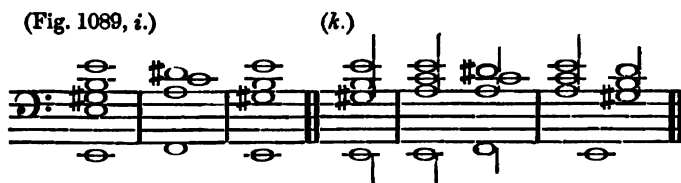
A *second*, and in many respects very considerable, advantage of thorough-base writing consists in the fact, that, when the base part is figured in the thorough-base manner in a score, as is usually done in pieces of church music, such figuring often very much facilitates the understanding of the harmonic web [the structure of the harmony] *in reading and playing from score* ; since a

base staff with thorough-base signatures immediately marked over it is for the most part more easily surveyed by the eye, than the entire mass of vocal and instrumental parts constructed for a wide distance above each other in several staves, and to be read in several different clefs. Thus it here affords about the same facility which is furnished by placing under the full score an abridged pianoforte abstract: that is to say, to an individual who has once rendered himself familiar with thorough-base figures, it secures, in case these figures are not too numerous and huddled together in too confused a manner, not only the advantage of his being able more easily to survey them than the full score, and perhaps also to accompany a vocal part according to them,—but these thorough-base signatures may often be of utility, too, by the fact that they prevent the attention of the player from score, of the conductor in rehearsal, or of any other reader, from passing over unnoticed, say, an unexpected leading tone, or other distinguishing and important interval, which lies, perhaps, in the apparently unimportant part of some wind instrument, in an unusual clef, or in some other obscure situation, where one would not expect to find it. This advantage is obviously of so great importance in itself, that it is really a matter of surprise that it should not have found acceptance also in secular music.

How far it is proper and desirable, in *the execution* of a piece of music in many parts, to allow, besides the full instrumentation, the thorough-base figures also to be performed by a thorough-base player on the organ or otherwise, is another question, upon which I must refer the reader to what I have said in relation to the *gross impropriety* of such thorough-base playing, in the periodical *Cäcilia*\*, as also in my *Treatise on Thorough-base* [*Generalbasslehre*], published by *Schott*, at Mentz.

(These views were first published in the *Leipscic General Musical Journal* for the year 1813, p. 105, and onward; and, ten years afterward, another gentlemen saw fit to publish these same views, first ventured upon by myself, as strictly his own, and that too in the same periodical†.)

A *third* real advantage of thorough-base notation consists in the fact that it often serves superficially to sketch a piece of music in haste, which not unfrequently can be done sooner by figures than by the ordinary notes. Indeed, for that matter, a series of harmonic combinations may be noted down entirely without note-lines and music-paper, by merely using letters in the place of the base notes. Thus, for example, we may, in this rapid way of writing, sketch the harmonic combinations found in figs. 1089—1091,



\* Vol. xiii, p. 145, and foll.

† *Leipzig allg. Mus. Zeitung* for 1822, No. 42, p. 677, and foll.



(Fig. 1090, i.)

(k.)



(Fig. 1091.)



as follows:

(Fig. 1089, i.)  $\sharp \sharp^6 \sharp$  E | F | E. (Fig. 1089, k.)  $\sharp \sharp^6 \sharp^6 \sharp^7$  E | E F | E |

(Fig. 1090.)  $\flat \flat^7 \flat \flat^5 - \flat^7 \flat^5 - \flat^7 \flat^5 - \flat^7 \flat^5$   
c B c A | Ab Ab Ab Ab | Db

(Fig. 1091.)  $\begin{matrix} 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{matrix}$  c |  $\begin{matrix} 9 & 8 & 7 & 6 \\ 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 \end{matrix}$  |  $\begin{matrix} - & 5 \\ - & 3 \end{matrix}$  |

### § 575.

Still a farther species of utility to be derived from the system of thorough-base notation (chiefly for the sake of which, indeed, I have mentioned the subject in this Theory) consists in the fact that it is happily adapted to be used in *contrapuntic exercises*\*.

\* I say in *contrapuntic exercises*, but not in *teaching the theory of composition itself*, for which, or instead of which, it is often (irrationally enough) used amiss. For it follows from the very fact that the thorough-base notation is essentially nothing else than a short-hand species of writing, whose signs uniformly represent nothing but mere notes, though indeed less perfectly than notes themselves, and that they give as little information in respect to the internal harmonic sense and connection of the tones indicated, as if the tones were written in the usual notes, whose substitutes they are (§ 563, remark),—I say, it is evident from these considerations, how irrational it is to attempt to found the doctrine of pure composition upon these thorough-base figures, whose use pre-supposes a complete knowledge of the subject already;—just as if a pedagogue, for instance, should attempt to construct a Latin Grammar upon the doctrine of the abbreviations of Latin words and phrases.

This view becomes the more striking, if we consider in what way persons think to arrive at that object, namely, by assuming the doctrine of pure composition to consist in showing how one is to treat this or that interval—e. g. the seventh tone from the base tone,—or how one is to treat the third, the fourth, and the sixth, in a third-fourth chord,—the third, fifth, and sixth, in a fifth-sixth chord, &c.—just as if one who had occasion to write a theory of arithmetic, for example, should make this consist in first teaching his pupils what they were to do with those numbers in which the figure 1 should occur, &c! (See remark on § 99.)

The utility of the thorough-base notation, in this respect, depends upon the circumstance that its figures uniformly indicate only what tones occur in the other parts,—that is to say, only notes, but not directly the fundamental harmonies involved in them,—and that the entire arrangement and conduct of the other parts are left to the personal agency of the reader himself.

We will, then, take in hand an example furnished with thorough-base figures, say fig. 1092,

(Fig. 1092.)

KIRNBERGER.



and will reject one of the upper parts from it, in order again to supply it from the guidance of thorough-base signatures.

We will afterwards reject several, and finally *all* the upper parts, so that merely the figured base alone shall be left us, from which we will at one time form a composition having two parts, and at another, one having three, four, or more parts.

I avoid mentioning many examples for similar exercises, since every thorough-base part, which every individual can easily supply himself with, may be used for an exercise of this species. Those scores of good composers which have their base part marked with the signatures of thorough-base are particularly to be recommended for this purpose; because the pupil, after having drawn out such a figured base in parts, can compare his work with the conduct of parts found in the original score; which latter serves, in such a case, as an instructive correction of the exercise. The examples given for practice in *Türk's Guide*

It is almost yet more irrational to write, as has been done, so-called *Thorough-base Schools*, which only purport to teach how to play a figured base according to the rules of the art, *without one's being radically acquainted with the theory of pure composition*; a little piece of trickery which seems to me very much like a man's undertaking only to teach a pupil to read a book written in mere abbreviations, without his understanding the language in which it is written.

After these remarks, it will be quite apparent, *why* and *in what sense* I have, in many parts of my Theory, denominated such instruction books *detestable Thorough-base Schools*. Such an intrinsically mistaken attempt can never be and will never be anything else, even had Apollo himself written it; and recipes and prescriptions, how, in this and that case, a tone must be treated which may happen to be the second, third, fourth, &c. from the base tone,—how the third, the fourth, the ninth, the second, &c. in this or that second-fourth-sixth chord, or even the base tone itself, is to resolve itself, &c.—prescriptions which at one time indeed prove correct, but at another not, as we have seen again and again in the course of our Theory.—I say, such rules and prescriptions can never be anything else than a miserably jumbled aggregation of family medicines, promiscuously thrown together in the most arbitrary manner, without any actual internal relationship or connection.

to Thorough-base Playing\* will serve for a similar purpose; as will also those in *Kirnberger's Principles of Thorough-baset*, and many others.

One will soon become able, by proceeding in this way, to place a figured base part before him on the pianoforte, and directly to play off a piece of music in two, three, or more parts; or, as it is termed, *to play thorough-base*.

Finally, one may try to convert the figured base part into a middle or upper part, by transposing it—say one or two octaves higher—so that the tones indicated by the signatures shall at one time be given to the higher parts, and at another to the lower. Thus, the figured part in fig. 1093 may be interwoven

(Fig. 1093.)



into a four-part composition as an upper part, as in fig. 1094, which contains

(Fig. 1094.)

VOGLER'S CHORALSYSTEM.



the harmonic combinations indicated by that figuring.

In like manner, the passage in fig. 1095 can also be treated as a middle part,

(Fig. 1095.)



as is the case in fig. 1094; &c.

- (D.) TO SET ONE OR MORE PARTS TO ONE OR MORE GIVEN PARTS, WHEN THE HARMONIES TO BE CHOSEN ARE NOT EXPRESSLY INDICATED.

#### § 576.

Finally, those contrapuntic exercises in which the harmonic combinations to be supplied have hitherto been indicated to us in one way or another, we will now undertake without any such aid. From some piece having several parts, in which the harmonies are no where particularly designated, as, *e. g.* fig. 1096 or fig. 1097, we will select out one or more parts, so as to supply them again without any such assistance. We can also do the same thing with several other examples.

\* *Anleitung zum Generalbassspielen.*

† *Grundsätze des Generalbasses.*

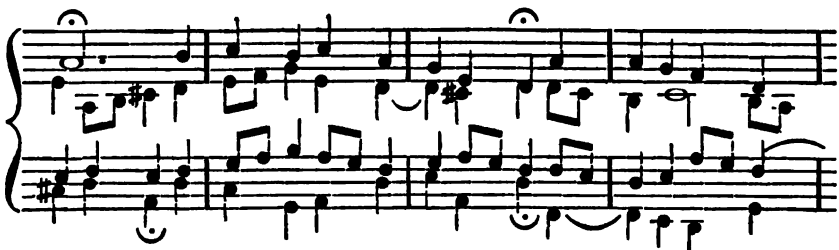
(Fig. 1096, i.) *Doric Key.*

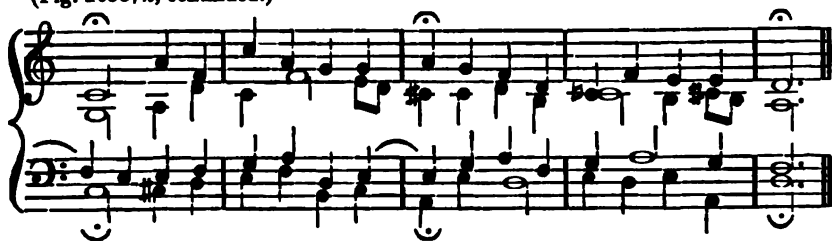
BACH.



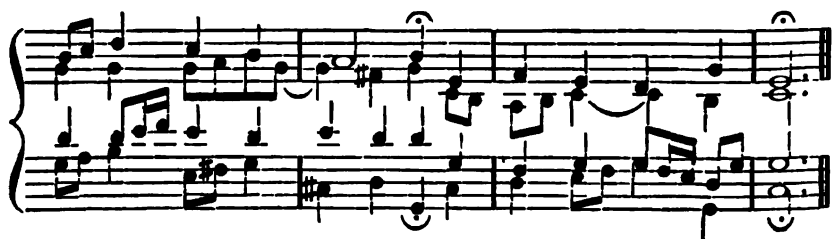
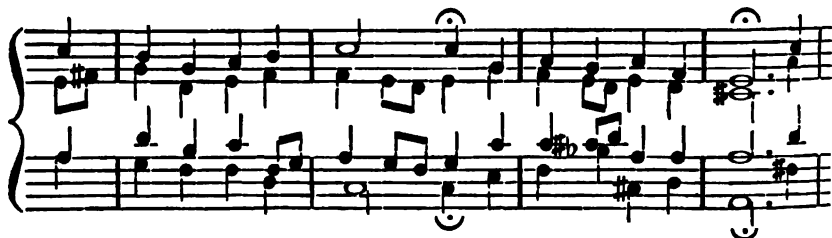
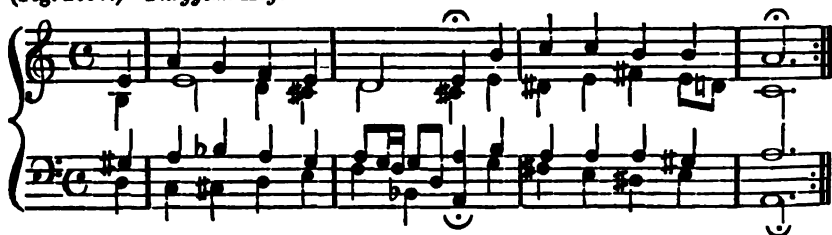
(Fig. 1096, k.)

VOGLER'S IMPROVEMENT.



(Fig. 1096, *k*, continued.)(Fig. 1097.) *Phrygian Key.*

BACH.



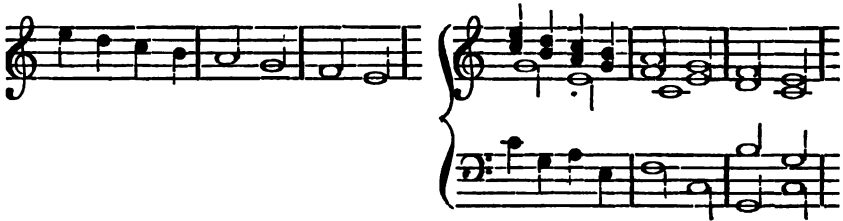
In this way we shall at length become able to set one or more parts to a *single part* which is furnished with no particular indication of the harmonies to be chosen; and this species of exercise is the one with which (as we have mentioned above, in § 559) our teachers of musical composition *begin* and *end* their contrapuntic exercises, as they do in general their exercises in pure composition, but to which *we* should be as little inclined rigidly to adhere, as *we* would to make the first commencement with it.

It is self-evident that the practitioner must, in exercises of this species, himself seek out and select suitable harmonies and harmonic successions for the given part—the *cantus firmus*.

In doing this, one will naturally at first choose those harmonies to which the *cantus firmus* primarily points. Subsequently, however, one can do the opposite, and can, for example, counterpoint the *cantus firmus* in fig. 1098, i,

(Fig. 1098, i.)

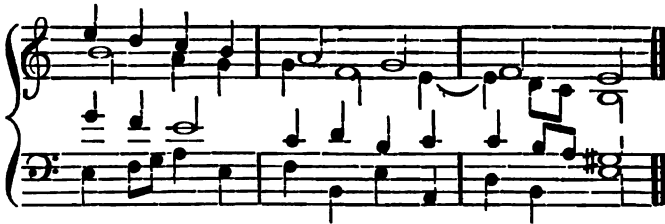
(k.)



at one time as in *k*, and at another as in fig. 1094, p. 890, or in fig. 1099 :

(Fig. 1099.)

VOGLER'S CHORAL SYSTEM.



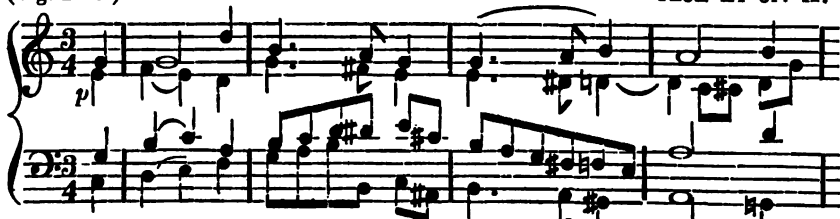
Indeed, one may even attempt to set a whole *cantus firmus* in an entirely different key from the one to which it naturally points. Thus, *e. g.* I have attempted to construct the melody found in fig. 1100—

(Fig. 1100.) *Cantus firmus.*

a melody which very decidedly indicates the key of *G*-major—into a piece of music in *C*-major, without in the least altering its form ; as in fig. 1101 :

(Fig. 1101.)

FROM MY OP. 41.



Aus un - sers Her - - zens Grun - - - - de er . .

(Fig. 1101 continued.)

töt Dir Preise und Dank, nimm an aus un - serm

Mun - - - - de den schwa - chen Lob - - ge - sang.

O Gott! zu Dei - nem Ohr lass uns - - re

Lie - - - der drin - - gen, Was kön - nen wir Dir

from - men Chor.  
brin - - - - gen, als die - sen from - - - - men Chor.  
from - men Chor.

[illegible]

## DIVISION II.

**§ 577.**

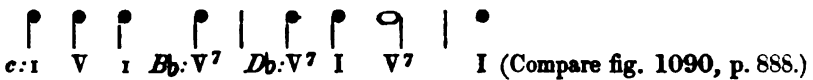
Thus far we have uniformly had either several given parts, or at least one, to which we were to set others. But we will now attempt to form a *series of harmonies*, given alone, into parts. We will, for example, transcribe the designation of harmonies standing under fig. 1074 i, p. 876, alone by itself, adding merely forms of notes, to show how long each harmony is to continue, somewhat in the following manner :

$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} \textcircled{9} & \textcircled{9} & | & \textcircled{0} & | & \textcircled{9} & \textcircled{9} & | & \textcircled{9} & \textcircled{9} & | & \textcircled{0} & | & \textcircled{0} & | & \textcircled{9} & \textcircled{9} & | \\ C:I & IV & & V & & I & V' & & I & V & & I & & V' & & I & G:V' \end{array}$

and will then try to form, according to these given harmonies, a piece of music consisting of two, three, four, or more parts, at one time exclusively of harmonic



tones, and, at another, of harmonic tones combined with others which are foreign to the harmony. Below are found some more problems of this species :



Or:



(Compare fig. 1092, p. 889.)

### DIVISION III.

TO INVENT A PIÈCE OF MUSIC WITHOUT ANY THING BEING GIVEN.

#### § 578.

The exercises naturally preliminary to this problem having been pretty thoroughly canvassed in what precedes, we may now venture with some degree of certainty upon the business of inventing a piece of music entirely from our own resources—of composing a piece.

If we will, however, observe some gradations in this matter, we may proceed somewhat in the following manner. We will first invent merely one part, or simply a melody, and then add to this part several others, in the manner suggested in § 576. In this way we obtain a piece of music in which every thing has been invented by ourselves.

At another time we will invent merely a series of harmonic successions, and then carry out this series of harmonies into parts, according to the directions in § 577. In such a case, too, we shall have by degrees produced a piece of music wholly from our own resources.

In this way we shall at length become able to perform all the above separately treated operations at once, and therewith to produce at one operation a *piece of music grammatically correct, a pure musical composition*, and either to write it on paper, or to play it on an instrument.

To teach the art of doing this, has thus far been the object of the present Theory. Whatever else pertains to the theory of musical composition, namely, the more artificialized forms of musical composition, of what is called Double Counterpoint, of Imitations, Canons, and Fugues, as it were the *Syntaxis ornata* [the ornate syntax], is foreign to the doctrine of merely *pure* composition, the mere *Grammar of Musical Composition*.

# APPENDIX.

## ON THE ANCIENT MUSIC: PARTICULARLY THE OLD GREEK OR CHURCH KEYS.

### § 579.

IN our whole previous Theory, we have entirely passed over one subject, which, in other books of instruction, has been made a matter of very great importance; indeed, with which many have been accustomed to commence their instructions, and upon which—even to found them. This is the doctrine of the so-called Greek or church keys.

I cannot convince myself of the propriety of this mode of procedure, deeming this subject, as I do, to be something wholly foreign to the theory of musical composition; and I here touch upon it supplementarily, simply in the way of historical narration, in order that my readers may not be left in ignorance of a subject, to the knowledge of which, in the eyes of many, so great importance is attached.

### § 580.

In the views which we have thus far taken of musical composition, we have uniformly recognized only *two* different species of keys,—namely, major and minor. These two species of keys, moreover, are properly the only ones which, at least so far as our ears at the present day are concerned, are adapted to the purpose of music. Musical antiquarians, however, assure us that the ancients had, not, like ourselves, merely two varieties of keys, but many more and entirely other keys; and such, for example, are the keys in which figs. 1102—1105 are written:

(Fig. 1102, i.) *Hymn to the Muse Calliopeia, according to Burette's interpretation.*

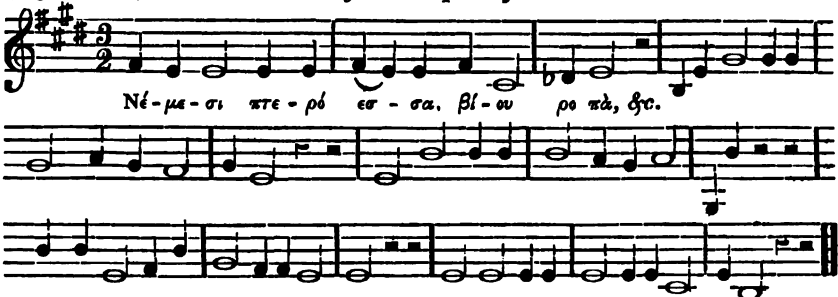
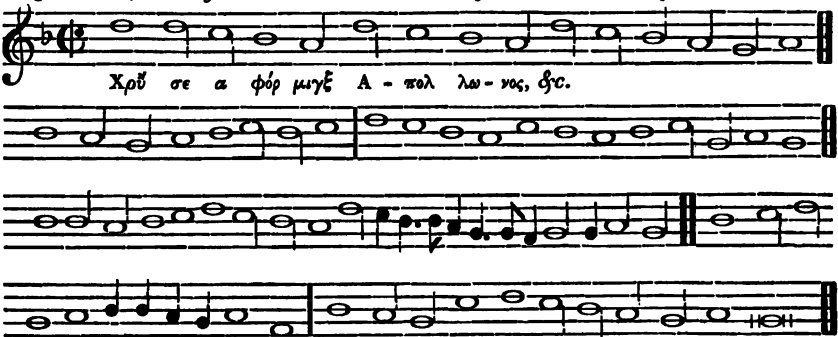


(Fig. 1102, k.) *The same Ode, as printed by Forkel, vol. i, p. 422.*



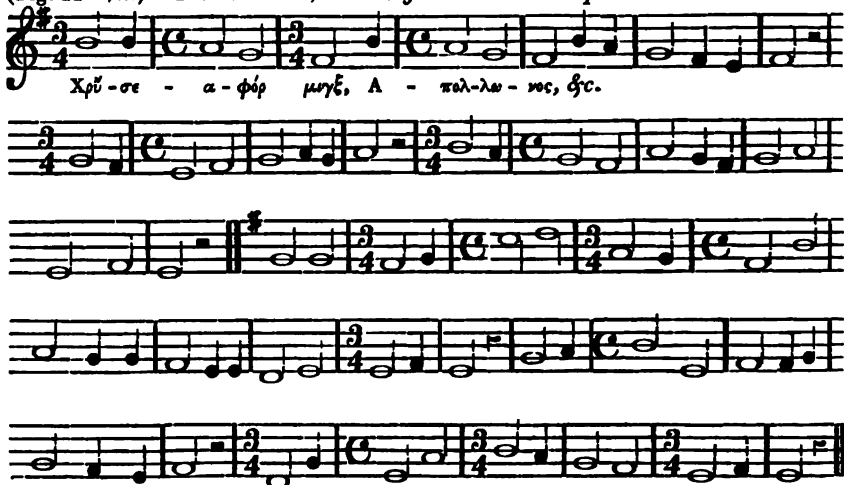
(Fig. 1103.) *Hymn to Apollo, copied by Forkel, vol. i, p. 424.*



(Fig. 1104, i.) *Hymn to Nemesis (in Forkel, vol. i, p. 427).*(Fig. 1104, k.) *The same Hymn, as copied by Rousseau.*(Fig. 1105, i.) *The first Pindaric Ode, according to Kircher's interpretation.\**

\* The 1st, 7th, and 35th notes of this example are indicated as *minims* by the author; but they have been altered to *semibreves* by the Editor, in accordance with Kircher's version as given in his work, "*Musurgia universalis*." Tom. I. p. 542.—Ed.

(Fig. 1105, k.) *The same Ode, according to Burette's interpretation.*



Let one first sing or play these through, and then form his own judgment.

If it is true that Greek music really sounded as these specimens do—if it is true that in Greece *such* musical compositions, which, at least to human ears of the present day, are chiefly of the most strange and singular character, were currently received as products of the fine art of music,—certainly the musical sense of the Greeks must, to say the least, have been very differently constituted, and their music something entirely diverse from our own.

But, in the first place, it is yet a very unsettled question, whether the music of former times *really did sound thus*.

Few subjects of antiquity are invested with so comparatively impenetrable an obscurity, and attended with so great a diversity of views and opinions among learned men, as is the doctrine of the music, and particularly the keys, of the Greeks and the Romans.

The cause of this obscurity lies in the circumstance that historical investigators in this department, more than in almost any other, find themselves almost entirely left without traces to guide them, and without any of the requisite sources of information. While the *plastic* works of the ancients still to this day stand bodily before our eyes, not a single tone is any longer heard from all their *musical* productions. A few paltry fragments of written Greek music—mere dead musical signs—are all that has come down to us. And even these pitiful fragments are not only extremely few, but, what is the worst of all, they are to us properly illegible, and we do not know with certainty how they actually sounded; which latter fact is sufficiently obvious from the consideration that these said manuscripts have, not unfrequently, been quite differently construed by different musical scholars; and, indeed, from the consideration, too, that such constructions of Greek music as are found, for instance, in the examples above quoted, uniformly sound so very strangely, that one can scarcely keep himself from the conjecture, that the interpreters, who suppose the pieces of music designated in those ancient musical writings to have sounded so strangely as they do

when thus translated into our modern notes, might have erred in deciphering those ancient musical manuscripts, and have translated them into notes incorrectly; so that if an ancient Greek were this day to rise from the dead, he would, perhaps, be very much shocked to hear what these gentlemen had proffered as specimens of the music of his so highly cultivated age.

Truly, indeed, if such an ancient visitor, restored from the grave, could stand before us at this day, and play or sing a few pieces of the music of his time,—then should we at once be extricated from the difficulty. Then we should, for once at least, have heard with our own ears, as we now daily see the products of the ancient plastic art with our own eyes. But inasmuch as we have never, either directly or even indirectly, perceived by our own senses how a piece of Greek music originally sounded, so, it appears to me, our speaking and writing on this subject is not much better than treatises of deaf men on tones, or of blind men on colours.

But it is not enough that no ancient Greek arises from the dead to enlighten us upon the nature of his music! No; it would almost seem as if the dead of more than a thousand years had even plotted together to thicken the veil of concealment still more. For, even the historical notices which the ancient writers have left us of the music of their age are almost all in the highest degree unintelligible, often entirely contradictory,—yes, even demonstrably erroneous, untrue, and contrary to nature, when they are not even directly false\*; as, *e. g.*

---

\* The same complaint of the obscurity and uncertainty of this subject has already been made by several other writers before me; as, *e. g.* among others, by the following:

FUXIUS, in *Gradu ad Parnassum, Exercitii V. Lectione VII, De Modis*, pag. 221: "*Ad Modorum materiem tractandam adniti, perinde est, ac antiquum chaos in ordinem redigere. Tanta enim opinionum diversitas inter Auctores, cum antiquos, tum recentiores reperitur, ut ferme quot capita tot sententiæ fuisse videantur. Nec me tenet tanta admiratio Græcorum Auctorum: etenim extra controversiam est, Musicam illorum principio pauperem admodum intervallis fuisse, teste Platone in Timæum. . . .*

. . . . . POSTQUAM AUTEM VIX UMBRA DE MUSICA GRÆCA NOBIS AMPLIUS SUPEREST, non satis mirari possum, existere etiamnum aliquos, qui hodiernæ Musicæ nostræ Modis peregrina hæc vocabula attribuerent, et rem ex se satis intricatam, VANIS HOMINIBUS obscurare audeant."—"To endeavour to treat the subject of keys [modes], is, as it were, to attempt to reduce the chaos of antiquity to order. For, so great a diversity of opinion is found among authors, both ancient and modern, that there seem to have been almost as many opinions as heads. Nor am I so much captivated by the Greek authors: for, it is beyond dispute, that their music was, first of all, very poor in intervals, as we are assured by Plato in *Timæus*. . . . . BUT, SINCE SCARCELY A SHADOW OF GREEK MUSIC STILL REMAINS TO US, I cannot feel surprise enough, that there are still those who, to this day, presume to apply these foreign terms to our musical modes [keys], and thus, BY SENSELESS NAMES, to increase the obscurity of a subject which is already sufficiently obscure in itself."

D. ANTONIO EXIMENO, *Dell' origine e delle regole della Musica*, Roma, 1774, P. 2, Lib. 1. Cap. 1, § 1, pag. 321: "*Gli Europei sono tenuti a rispettore ne' Greci i Maestri delle moderne arti, riti, e costumi; ma questo rispetto non deve impedire il tenerli per la nazione più menzognera che sia stata mai al mondo, ed ambiziosa di farsi stimare più di quello ch'era.*"—"The Europeans are bound to respect the Greeks as the masters of

the story of the hammers and strings of Pythagoras, first unmasked by Galilei, as also by Chladni, which story is handed down to us by Nichomachus Geronensis, Jamblicus and Gaudentius, Macrobius and Boetius, as a sober matter of fact; also the story of the youth of *Tauromenos*, who was thrown into a rage by the sound of a Phrygian flute-melody, and would even set fire to the house of his rival, but from which Pythagoras easily kept him by a musical artifice,

---

*their arts, manners, and customs; but this respect need not prevent our regarding them as the most lying nation that the world ever saw, and a nation that was always ambitious of being taken for more than it was worth.*" And further, p. 339: "*Non pretendo per questo che la Musica greca sia stata onninamente come la nostra, che per decidere questo punto, v'abbisognerebbe sentire que la, e paragonarla con questa.*"—"I do not mean, by this, that the Greek music was entirely like our own; for, in order to decide this point, it would be necessary to hear the former and to compare it with the latter."—And again, pag. 342: "*Vero è che da testimonj degli Antichi non si può chiaramente rilevare il significato delle parole, massimamente in materia di Musica, sulla quale nulla quasi si comprende senza esempj, che mancano affatto sulla Musica greca.*"—"It is true that we cannot easily determine, from the mere statements of the ancients, the real meaning of their words, especially in the department of music, where, even aside from this consideration, scarcely anything can be understood without examples, which latter are here entirely wanting."

ROUSSEAU, in his *Diction. de Musique*, art. *MODE*: "*Les Anciens diffèrent prodigieusement entr'eux sur les définitions, les divisions, et les noms des leurs Tons ou Modes. Obscurs sur toutes les parties de leur Musique, ils sont presque inintelligibles sur celles-ci.*"—"The ancients differ prodigiously among themselves in respect to the definitions, divisions, and names of their tones or keys [modes]. Obscure in all parts of their music, they are here almost entirely unintelligible."

G. JONES, in his *History of Music* (which is not this moment at hand in the original, but only Von Mosel's Translation), expresses himself in a similar manner: "How much it is to be regretted by the friends of the arts that *no trace* is left us of what the music of the ancients actually was, and that all records, which might have diffused light on so interesting a subject, have perished in the rushing stream of time. We have, indeed, treatises and works of the Greeks upon ancient music, but they do not benefit us; for, even the learned professors of modern harmony are not able to understand them. The tedious subtleties of an endless winding through the labyrinth of an analysed Diapason; the particular character of their Tetrachords, and the impenetrable darkness which hangs over the knowledge of their signs of tones, are as substantial causes for sadness to the feelings of the musical artist, as they are to the curiosity of the ancient historian."

The learned and distinguished Dr. BURNBY, in his Introduction to the *History of the Music of the Ancients*, says, as candidly as truly: "What the music of the ancients really was, it is not now easy to determine. . . . the subject of the ancient music is so obscure, and the writers who have treated of it differ so much in their own opinions, that I prefer to omit all discussion in relation to it; for, to tell the truth, the study of the ancient music has become, at the present day, more the business of the antiquary, than that of the musical artist."

FORKEL's expressions, also, in several parts of his history of music, coincide with the views expressed above. He says, *e. g.* among other things, in his first volume, pages viii and ix: "Whoever, therefore, will fathom the true nature of the ancient music,

---

\* *Akustik*, § 86, and *Leipz. Mus. Ztg.* 1826, No. 40.

namely, by calling to the flute-player to play only in quick spondaic measure, which spondaic blowing immediately changed the feelings of the incendiary to such a degree, that he repentantly sneaked away to his home without doing any thing farther : or the story of the musical performances in Solomon's Temple by a court chapel-retinue of not more than four hundred and eighty thousand musicians, of whom alone twenty thousand were trumpeters, ——— &c.\*

certainly (strange as the conclusion may appear to many readers) can but seldom follow the accounts as they have been given us by even the most credible historians of antiquity." . . . . "He may be a very honest, candid, and even learned man, and yet, in individual parts of the sciences, or in the arts, may possess so little true knowledge, that he does not in such a case merit the slightest confidence, and is just as capable of deceiving us by his accounts, as if he were far from being the honest and learned man whom we are bound to consider him, on the ground of his other merits. One thing which greatly enhances the difficulty of our acquiring clear ideas of the nature of the ancient music, besides the above-mentioned uncertainty of historical sources of information, is the entire difference of the interval relations in the modern and the ancient scales, and the hence arising impossibility of making these ancient interval relations sensible to our ear, accustomed as the latter is to other distances of tones which are entirely diverse. Had some such machine been left us from antiquity as is the invention of the mechanical flute-player of *Vaucanson*, or as some of our musical clocks are, then would some melodies also have come down to us in connection with them. From a single piece of music, obtained as it were alive, in this way, we should have been better able to comprehend the nature of the ancient music, the magnitude of the intervals in its scales, its measure, &c. than from a thousand descriptions, or even from the few melodies, of which, after all, only the lifeless signs have come down to us. But such inventions either had never been produced by the ancients, or they have become lost, and we are now no better off, as it respects the true sound of the ancient music, than we are as it respects the true pronunciation of the ancient dead languages."

It would be easy to adduce a great many other writers, who all agree in the same complaint. I have, above, copied only from those who happened to be nearest at hand, while the others, almost without exception, utter the same lamentation, with equal strength, and, so far as I can recollect, in most cases, with much greater.

Disheartened at all these difficulties, and at the want of a solid foundation upon which to establish a sure progress, many are disposed to give up this important branch of musical and antiquarian science, in a manner, utterly and for ever. We might almost approve of their choice in the matter ; for, in so small a number, and in the poverty and uncertainty of the traces which could serve as the basis and support of our investigation, the hope of securing any satisfactory results from this field must necessarily be very small. But notwithstanding all this, it would not be worth while, perhaps, to give up all hope. If, as is well known, we can succeed in getting the genuine sound of certain Greek letters from the bleating of sheep, the howling of a dog, and the like, why should we not hope

\* That even our latest writers offer the fraternal hand to the lies of the writers of antiquity, is shown by a document published in No. 43 of the Berlin Musical Journal for the year 1824—a document presented with entire seriousness as an authentic-historical one, which contained the most important and positively decisive developments upon this subject of antiquity, but which was found, by more recent disclosures, to be a—jesting fiction.—(*Cécilia*, vol. ii, p. 156.) Compare, moreover, *F. A. Wolf*, *Darstellung der Alterthumswissensch.* Museum der Alt. vol. i, p. 65 ; *Serapionsbrüder*, II, 371.—*E. T. A. Hoffmann's Leben*, I, p. 281 ; *Cécilia*, vol. ii, p. 113 ; iv, 213 ; v, 279.



As no rational man believes a word of all these things, so I can never believe, from any assurance of our antiquarians, that the Greek music was anything like what our interpreters of these hymns have given us in figs. 1102—1105, pp. 897—900, and thus anything so entirely different from that which we call music at the present day, a confused and tedious jumble of sounds, without any melodic sense, and (like the above examples) even without any rhythmical sym-

---

we may yet perhaps gain some disclosures from the same quarter, showing how the Greek music may have once sounded, and whether it is actually true that such things as those exhibited in figs. 1102—1105, pp. 897—900, were called music among the Greeks! whether their keys and scales are of such a nature that melodies of *such* a description could be manufactured out of them? or whether they may not have had the same scales and keys as are found to be consonant to the ears of men at the present day.

But, if we would hope to be able hereafter to see light arise on this doubtful subject, investigations must certainly be instituted in a very different manner, in many respects, from what they have heretofore been.

First of all, investigators must transfer themselves more to *the study of the sources*, the authentic remains of the ancient musical art, instead of always yielding themselves up, one to the authority of another, as has for the most part been done heretofore, and instead of looking through the glasses of others, usually ground and polished, not without the distorting effect of prejudice, and not unfrequently without an accurate acquaintance with the subject. For how dangerous it is, particularly in *this* department, to build upon the authority of our writers, appears not only from the fact that they are not all agreed among themselves, and one construes signs, and translates into notes the very same piece of Greek music, in an entirely different way from another, as appears, *e. g.* from a comparison of fig. 1102 *i*, 1104 *i*, and 1105 *i*, with *k* pp. 897—900, but particularly from the fact that the authors who have written upon music, and especially upon the foreign keys and scales, have usually either been merely musicians without a suitable general education, or possessed of a general education with but a small amount of musical knowledge, or persons who possessed no musical qualifications whatever. For, it is nothing new, for example, that W. JONES, as he himself in a very artless and ingenuous manner relates, after he had first occupied himself a long time with a learned comparison of the key and scale of an Indian melody with our keys and scales, finally went at last to a musician for advice, and *then* learned from him, for the first time, that the scale of the said song was nothing peculiar, but was just like our own! (The passage itself will be introduced farther on in the present remark, printed literally.) Thus a learned man, who is not even at all acquainted with our scale, but is obliged first to ask a musician about it, in order to know whether a song which he hears is contained in this scale or not,—such a learned man employs himself with a comparison of this scale with that of India, and causes his views upon music to be printed,—and other equally learned men appeal to him and write again other learned treatises.—Rely not, then, upon the idle tales of the learned!

The more indispensably necessary it is, therefore, in investigations relative to the ancient music, to draw from the original *sources*, to see with one's own eyes, and to use one's own understanding, the more unfortunate it is that these sources are so little accessible to the inquirer. For, where will he find the old manuscripts of the Greek notation? Where the ancient writers who furnish accounts of the music of their own times? Where the relics and copies of the ancient musical instruments, &c.? Where will he find all this? And, particularly, where will he find it all *together*, that he may be able conveniently and thoroughly to examine, compare, and consider it on all sides, in one connected view?

metry; and the very circumstance that antiquarians are not able to construe these otherwise than they have done, seems to be a clear proof that their interpretation is entirely incorrect, and hence that they have not yet succeeded in understanding the Greek notation. In this position of the affair, in consequence of which our writers and artists differ from each other so widely in their views and representations of the Greek keys, while upon the whole subject in general

It is obvious how very much the difficulty of investigation is increased by this circumstance, and the hope of ever arriving at a satisfactory result is diminished. To say the least, if the latter object is ever to be gained, one must begin with first furnishing us with the original documents themselves. Accordingly, our writers, instead of translating the Greek music into modern notes, according to their own ideas, as they have hitherto most improperly done, must give us rather genuine copies, *fac similes* (*copies figuratives*), of the ancient manuscripts themselves, as also the places in the writings of the ancients which speak of music, whether professedly (*ex professo*) or incidentally, together with a careful mentioning of any various readings; true copies of the ancient draughts; and all this with circumstantially explanatory descriptions, with a definite statement of the place where the originals, the reprints, copies, and fac-similes, delivered, are to be found, &c. Only in this way, by placing the materials of investigation before our eyes,—only in this way, could there be any *hope* of ultimately obtaining any light on a subject, of which, if we would but acknowledge the truth, we thus far know nothing, how much soever we may be in the habit of taking pains always at least to show some learning in relation to (*in puncto*) the keys of the ancients, and of demeaning ourselves as if we had fully drank into the spirit of the ancient unutterable music of the priests of On, and had heard the mummy of the beautiful Asnath, the consort of the virtuous Joseph, sing. (See Fink's excellent work—"The first Migration of the most Ancient Musical Art, as an Introduction to the History of Music" [*Erste Wanderung der ältesten Tonkunst als Vorgeschichte der Musik*])—a work which, without any predecessors of its own species, for the first time makes very rich developments in relation to the origin of the art, together with philosophical and musical intimations in an historical point of view. (Compare *Cécilia*, vol. xiv.)

But I must not conceal the fact from my readers, that there is, after all, one writer who, in spite of the uncertainty of our knowledge in the department of the ancient music thus far, has no hesitation in writing, with the utmost positiveness, a formal and detailed system upon the music of the Greeks. This is HERR BARON VON DRIEBERG, the author of quite a readable treatise, entitled—"The Practical Music of the Greeks" [*Die practische Musik der Griechen*])—who, especially in pp. 101—104, has treated me with great severity, because I ventured to participate in the incredulity of the many above-mentioned writers, and to make an open avowal of this fact, in my *preface* to Dr. STÖFEL's *History of Modern Music* [*Geschichte der Modernen Musik*]. In order not to confine my readers exclusively to my own views and those of all the musical authors above named, but to make them acquainted also with the grounds and *proofs* for the opposite opinions, I give, below, a literal insertion of the particular passage of *Von Drieberg*, above alluded to, in which, for reasons unknown to me, he makes his demonstration against me. He speaks as follows:

"By the knowledge of the fundamental principles and rules of an art, we can furnish ourselves with an idea of the practice of the same. Thus, how the Greek music sounded may be ascertained, though the spirit which animated it admits of being only conjectured. Mr. Weber, however, disputes the former, and that too, as we have read above, because there are no notes of a thousands-of-years-duration which still continue to sound and by

they are any thing but agreed, I will, instead of assuming the air of knowing more than either I myself or any body else actually does know, rather openly renounce all pretension of telling my readers definitely what was the nature of the music, and especially the keys, of the ancient Greeks, and how, if at all, they really differed from our own; I will, on the contrary, limit myself to the simple task of presenting, as truly and intelligibly as possible, those ideas of the Greek

which we can hear with our own ears how, for instance, a Greek—catgut sounded. This truly appears to be an impossibility; but Mr. Weber takes the matter in hand, and gives us a recipe to show how we must study the Greek music in order to solve that thousands-of-years-problem. That we have in nowise misconstrued this Mr. Weber, so learned ‘in point of [in *punto*] the ancient music,’ is proved by his similes of persons born deaf, and of the sheep as a Greek language-master, &c. A refutation, in *this case*, would be superfluous. Mr. Weber’s assuming the possibility that the music of the Greeks may have been something entirely different from the modern, is not consistent. For, he will admit, that both harmony, i. e. all the relations of sounds to *space* and rhythm, i. e. all the relations of sounds to *time*, depend upon the unalterable laws of nature, and that this was known to the Greeks. Since, therefore, the union of harmony and rhythm is music, it must be impossible that the music of the Greeks should have been anything entirely different from that of the moderns. But possibly, after all, Mr. Weber even denies the existence of unalterable natural laws in music, and thinks it may all rest upon mere conventional agreement, in like manner as, say, the rules of cricketing do. If such is the case, we must endeavour to inform him. The celebrated William Jones says: ‘After I had long endeavoured to find out the difference of the Indian scale from our own, I requested a German musician of much capacity to accompany, with the violin, an Indian lute-player, who played a written popular song on the loves of Crisna and Rudha. The German virtuoso assured me that the scale was perfectly like our own. I more recently learned, also, from Mr. Shore, that if a tone is given to an Indian singer from the piano-forte, and he adjusts his voice to the same tone [takes the same pitch], the Indian ascending series of seven notes has a minor or major third, just as ours has.’ Wonderful! The same scale of sounds is used alike in India and in Darmstadt, and yet, in this case, any conventional agreement is out of the question. Had Mr. Jones been more of a musician, he would doubtless have traced out the cause. But the cause truly is, *the symphony of sounds*. For, since the symphony not only determines, in the most exact manner, the position of the seven dynamic sounds of the fundamental system, but also the position of the five chromatic sounds, and since the Greeks tuned their instruments likewise by the symphony, as do also the Indians and the people of Darmstadt; *it follows*, as a matter of course, that the spaces of sounds, the system, and the keys of the Greeks could not have been, in the diatonic genus, different from those of the moderns. The assertion of Mr. Weber, that we know nothing of the Greek music, would thus, therefore, prove to be untrue, even if no account of the matter had come down to us from ancient times; it is, consequently, the more groundless, inasmuch as we still possess nearly twenty musical works of the ancient writers. But when Mr. Weber affirms, in his preface, that” [begging your pardon, I have said no such thing—G. W.] “all which those writers have said in relation to their music is unintelligible, contradictory, erroneous, untrue, contrary to nature, and replete with lies, we will let it pass without notice until he assures us that he has read at least a single one of them.”—“The expression *symphony* is employed by the Greeks in two different ways: first, they understand by it the entirely perfect blending of two sounds of different pitch: then, secondly, they also denominate the interval whose sounds thus blend, a symphony, while they call the sounds themselves symphonic sounds. An entirely perfect blending takes place whenever two different

keys which are usually entertained by the musically educated of the present day—a task which, after all, is not entirely of the easiest character, since this subject is found, in our theories, pre-eminently enveloped in learned obscurity and mystifying erudition.

---

§ 581.

The musically educated tell us, though with incomparably more of learned unintelligibleness than I may here repeat, the following things:

The nations which lived thousands of years before us had, not, like ourselves, merely major and minor keys, but six, or in a manner twelve, if not even more, essentially different keys or scales. These, originally derived from the Egyptians and Israelites, and afterwards introduced into Greece, obtained in this latter country, just according to the provinces in which the one or the other of them became particularly used, the appellations of *Doric* key, *Phrygian* key, *Lydian* key, &c. From Greece they were imported into Rome, and thence passed into the music of the oldest Christian churches, which was originally all written in these keys. In these same ancient Christian melodies they find, moreover, very clear traces of the excellence of those ancient keys, and a sublimity, a power, and a dignity, which, in our present pitiful major and minor keys, are totally unattainable. Figs. 1096, 1097, 1106—1109, pp. 891, 892, and below, contain some melodies of this description, which are acknowledged to be pre-eminently genuine.

(Fig. 1106.)



(Fig. 1107.)



objects so unite with each other that the one is not distinguishable from the other, and the mixture,—the blended compound,—appears to the senses like a simple. Hence, there is not only a symphony of sounds, but also a symphony of colors, a *symphony of tastes*!" . . . . And so he goes on,—and, occasionally, still more violently, against myself. Closely in the neighbourhood of this (pp. 95 and 69), he compares the overture to *Don Juan* to the lowest species of the clattering music employed in country festivities, and calls it an "*unheard-of cacophony*" (compare § 465), and, on p. 94, he deals in a similar manner with *Sebastian Bach*. Aye, very well! Such pleasures, to such gentlemen, one can very cheerfully concede.

(Fig. 1108.)



(Fig. 1109.)



## § 582.

The different Greek scales, according to the received ideas on that subject, were as follow :

(1.) One which sounded like our major scale, in which, accordingly, the major and minor degrees were distributed as they are in our major scales.

For example: c d e f g a b  $\bar{c}$ , &c.

or :

d e f $\sharp$  g a b  $\bar{c}\sharp$   $\bar{d}$ , &c.

and thus in this key, just as in our present major scale, the step from the

1st to the 2nd tone was major,

2nd — 3rd — major,

3rd — 4th — minor,

4th — 5th — major,

5th — 6th — major,

6th — 7th — major,

7th — 8th — minor.

This is called the *Ionic key—modus jonius*.

(2.) Another key was called the *Doric—modus dorius* : in this, the step from the 1st tone to the 2nd was major,

2nd — 3rd — minor,

3rd — 4th — major,

4th — 5th — major,

5th — 6th — major,

6th — 7th — minor,

7th — 8th — major.

For instance, as follows :

d e f g a b  $\bar{c}$   $\bar{d}$ , &c.

or :

e f $\sharp$  g a b  $\bar{c}\sharp$   $\bar{d}$   $\bar{e}$ , &c.

Accordingly, the Doric scale was like our minor scale from the first degree to

the fifth, but from that point onward was different; namely, the step from the fifth tone to the sixth was major; from the sixth to the seventh, minor; and from the seventh to the eighth, major: or, more briefly expressed, it was like a major scale commenced on the second degree.

(3.) Again, another key, called the *Phrygian—modus phrygius*, exhibited the following form:

e   f   g   a   b    $\bar{c}$     $\bar{d}$     $\bar{e}$   
 {   {   {   {   {   {   {  
 minor   major   major   major   minor   major   major

or:

c    $\bar{d}b$     $\bar{e}b$    f   g    $\bar{a}b$     $\bar{b}b$     $\bar{c}$  . . . .

&c.—

This scale is, accordingly, like our major scale, if the latter be commenced on the third degree.

(4.) The *Lydian key—modus lydius*, was like our major scale begun on the fourth degree; *e. g.*

f   g   a   b    $\bar{c}$     $\bar{d}$     $\bar{e}$     $\bar{f}$  . . . .

or:

c   d   e    $\bar{f}\sharp$    g   a   b    $\bar{c}$  . . . .

&c.—

(5.) The *Mixo-Lydian key—modus mixolydius*, was like our major scale commenced on the fifth degree; *e. g.*

g   a   b    $\bar{c}$     $\bar{d}$     $\bar{e}$     $\bar{f}$     $\bar{g}$  . . . .

or:

c   d   e   f   g   a    $\bar{b}b$     $\bar{c}$  . . . .

&c.—

(6.) The *Æolic key—modus æolius*; *as, e. g.*

a   b    $\bar{c}$     $\bar{d}$     $\bar{e}$     $\bar{f}$     $\bar{g}$     $\bar{a}$  . . . .

or:

c   d    $\bar{e}b$    f   g    $\bar{a}b$     $\bar{b}b$     $\bar{c}$  . . . .

&c.—

(7.) According to Vogler, the *Mixo-phrygian key—modus mixophrygius*; *as*

b    $\bar{c}$     $\bar{d}$     $\bar{e}$     $\bar{f}$     $\bar{g}$     $\bar{a}$     $\bar{b}$  . . . .

or:

c   d   e   f    $\bar{g}b$     $\bar{a}b$     $\bar{b}b$     $\bar{c}$  . . . .

&c.—

Now, in order to know in what key a Greek melody is written, one must know that the last note of the melody is always to be regarded as the tonic, as the first degree of the scale. Hence, just according as all the different tones occurring in a melody, when they are all presented in a regularly arranged series, form a series of tones in which the major and minor steps are distributed as they are in the Ionic key, or as they are in the Doric key, &c. the melody is said to be in the Ionic key, or in the Doric key, &c. The melody in fig. 1106, p. 907, for example, terminates with the tone d; this tone, therefore, is, in Greek, to be

regarded as the tonic of the piece. Now one has only to consider what sort of a series the other tones occurring in this melody will make with the tone *d*. If we arrange into a series all the tones which present themselves in this piece, and consider the tone *d* as the first of that series, a series of tones is produced which is like the major scale of *C* commenced on its second degree; and thus it is perceived that the said melody is *Doric*. In a similar way, the melody in fig. 1107, p. 907, is found to be *Phrygian*; for, if the tones of which it consists are arranged into a series, and the reckoning is commenced with *e*, as the tone with which the piece closes, the resulting series of tones is found to be the same as that of the major scale of *C* commenced on the third tone, *e*. Fig. 1108, p. 908, is like the scale of *C* commenced on the fourth tone, *f*, and hence is *Lydian*. And fig. 1109, p. 908, is the same as the series in *D*-major commenced on a (or, which is the same thing, it is like *C*-major begun on the tone *g*), and thus is *Mixolydian* (though transposed). And in the same manner one will recognize an *Æolic*, a *Mixophrygian*, and an *Ionian* melody.

In this case, a still farther distinction is to be made, as to whether the tones of which a melody consists lie chiefly within the compass from the principal tone to its octave, or more between the fifth tone and its octave. In the first case, the melody is named *authentic*; in the other, *plagal*; and the prefix *ὑπο-* (*hypo-*) is also applied to the name of the key. For example, the tones of fig. 1106, p. 907, in which the tone *d* is the principal tone, lie chiefly, and in by far the largest proportion, between  $\bar{d}$  and  $\bar{d}$ , and thus between the principal tone and its octave; and hence the melody is *authentico-Doric*. In like manner, the Phrygian melody in fig. 1107, p. 907, is *authentic*, because it keeps itself chiefly between  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{c}$ . On the contrary, the melody in fig. 1108, p. 908, whose principal tone is *f*, consists of tones which lie, not between  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{f}$ , but altogether between  $\bar{c}$  and  $\bar{c}$ ; accordingly, it is *plago-Lydian*, or *hypo-Lydian*. So also is fig. 1108, p. 908, *plago-Mixolydian*, or *hypo-Mixolydian*. In the same way one will ascertain what is a hypo-Ionian, a hypo-Doric, a hypo-Phrygic, a hypo-Æolic, or a hypo-Mixophrygic melody.

Moreover, when the tones of which the melody consists lie within the compass from the under fifth of the tonic note to the upper fourth, the name of the key receives the prefix *ὑπερ* (*hyper—over*); and hence the *hyper-Doric* key, the *hyper-Æolic* key, &c.

---

#### § 583.

Such, at least according to the testimony of the greatest part of our writers, are the so-called Greek keys [modes]; though some other authors, again, give an entirely different description of them. See *Forkel's History of Music*, vol. i, §§ 99—177. Thus, *e. g.* the *Ionian* key is called also the *Iastic* key, *modus iasticus*; the *hypo-mixolydian*, also the *hyper-Iastic*, *modus hyperiasticus*; the *hyper-Æolic*, also the *hyper-Doric*, *modus hyperdoricus*; &c. And so, likewise, in relation to all more specific limitations of these varieties, in general, there still obviously remains much that is unsettled and indefinite.

## § 584.

The first reflection that occurs to every one, on passing through a description of the so-called Greek keys and scales, is, that they are not at all, fundamentally, what we at the present day denominate *keys* and *scales*. A *key* consists in the natural mutual alliance of a certain number of harmonies which all relate to a principal harmony, around which, as their common centre, they all revolve, as do the members of one family around its head; and we apply the term *scale* to the entire series of tones of which the harmonies consist which belong to the family of one tonic harmony—to one key; whereas a Greek scale is nothing else than the tones which occur in a given melody: the former is the result of the analysis of the fundamental harmonies, while the latter is the result of the analysis of a melody.

## § 585.

But as it respects the much-celebrated, *astonishing, and unapproachable excellence and superiority of these keys* over our major and minor keys, it will be found, if we consult our own sense of hearing, that such pieces of music as those hitherto referred to, certainly sound rather strangely, to say the least; and, in fact, the matter is scarcely too strongly expressed by the above-mentioned *Eximeno*, where (p. 337) he exclaims, in relation to the specimens of the Greek hymns now under consideration: "*Le canzoni de' Selvaggi di Canada hanno la modulazione più vaga di quei Inni.*"—"The songs of the Canadian wilds have a more agreeable modulation than these hymns." And if the songs of the Greeks really sounded as our learned men have here given them to us, an unlearned person, one who had not yet learned any better, might easily take them to be the productions of an age when the musical art was yet in its cradle, and was then making its first crude attempts—attempts which might perhaps satisfy, please, and, with their national susceptibilities to emotion and excitement, even animate the feelings of a people totally uncultivated in music (a people among whom, for example, the music directors armed their feet with iron soles, in order to be able to stamp out the time sufficiently loud, and both hands, moreover, with oyster-shells or hollow cymbals, so as to smite them together in chime with the measure; among whom, too, the trumpet virtuosi very commonly rent their cheeks by their efforts, or ruptured blood-vessels, while a flute-player actually blew himself to death in a solo; and so on). For, who knows what an impression even the rudest music might make upon us, if we were accustomed to nothing better?

On the other hand, highly and profoundly educated musical antiquarians, and partly also learned and eminent composers of our own time, assure us that if our ears cannot appreciate the excellence of such melodies, the cause is to be found exclusively in our own vitiated tastes and perverted habits, resulting from our miserable modern major and minor keys. The Greeks, as also the beloved ancients in general, were truly quite a different people from us mere boys; and that which animated them, in their noble age, must necessarily still be of pre-eminent worth, and is indeed by far too sublime for our profane ears.



I will only acknowledge that I belong to the class of the unlearned and unlearnable, who have not yet been able to adopt the blind faith in the glory and superiority of *such* music over all that is called music of the present day. Moreover, I here design to engage in no controversy on this subject; and so much the less, since *Forkel*\* has so illustrated it by examples, that scarcely anything more remains to be said. We will only, in a few words, freely and impartially consider, a little more minutely in an *artistic* point of view, the truth which *Forkel* has verified from *historical* resources; we will subject ourselves to no constraint; we will not allow our sense of hearing to be brought into captivity to the faith, so as to compel ourselves, in spite of our ears, to regard pieces of music like those in the above-quoted hymns and church melodies as agreeable—yes, glorious and excellent, and even unapproachable; but we will have the courage to confess that, as they here stand, they sound to us disagreeably and unmusically.

I say, *as they here stand*; namely, as sung without an harmonic accompaniment, as they were originally intended to be sung, and would be sung by their authors; and thus without any additional ingredient from our present system of music. It must not, therefore, be objected to our view, that such melodies do in fact sound most admirably, and cease entirely to produce the slightest unpleasant effect, when they are furnished with a finely wrought harmonic accompaniment, and are played on the organ, say by a *Vogler* or a *Bach*; as, for example, in fig. 1097, p. 892; or, perhaps, after being thus elaborately improved from the resources of modern art, are performed by a good choir of singers: for, as every such melody ceases to be Greek music the moment it is thus interwoven into the combinations of modern harmony, so nothing more is necessary for the confirmation of the opinion above expressed, than merely the remark, that, while it is the harmony alone that makes such a piece of music agreeable, this harmony is an element wholly foreign to the Greek music, and, by its accession to the latter, a piece of so-called Greek music ceases to be ancient music at all.

For, with all due respect for distinguished learned men and eminent composers, we must be allowed to say that it sounds very strangely to hear them assert that they accompanied these melodies with harmonies in the Greek manner, when it is scarcely a matter of doubt with any one that the Greeks had no knowledge of that which we call harmony, and hence, of course, did not accompany such melodies with harmony at all.†

\* In the work before referred to, and particularly in § 174, and foll.

† To say the least, everything that is left us of the music of that time (figs. 1102—1105, pp. 897—900) is only one-part composition. But what if the ancients, perhaps, after all, had harmonic and polyphonic music? What if the above-mentioned figures 1102—1105 were, perhaps, only secondary and subordinate parts, and by no means the proper melody?—Let one conceive to himself, for once, that some thousands of years after the present period nothing else should remain of the music of our time than, say the Alto part of some chorus in *Don Juan*; and a learned man of that remote age should then take this Alto part, this—so fortunately-preserved precious document, and exhibit it as a specimen of the music of our time, and should teach his cotemporaries: “Thus sounded a piece of a certain opera called *Don Juan*.” In order to make the scandal complete, let us conceive to ourselves, that such learned man should know nothing

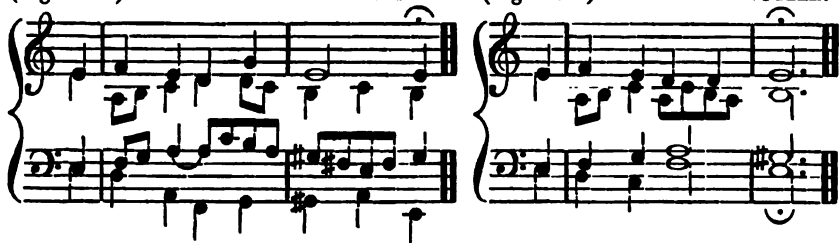
And if one carefully inquires wherein this “in the Greek manner” consists, and thoroughly investigates the harmonic elaborations of such melodies by the most universally acknowledged acquaintants with the ancient keys, *Sebastian Bach*, *Vogler*, and others, it all at last comes to the simple fact, that such a piece of music is always, if possible, commenced with the three-fold chord on the tone which constitutes the last tone of the melody, and is, if possible, closed with the same three-fold harmony; and thus, for example, the melody in fig. 1106, p. 907, is closed as if it were in *D*-major or *d*-minor, as in fig. 1096, *i* or *k*, p. 891; and fig. 1107, p. 907, as if it were in *E*-major, as in figs. 1110—1112:

(Fig. 1110.)

VOGLER.

(Fig. 1111.)

VOGLER.



about our clef: what sort of stuff would he present from this source! I must not be told, that the latter assumption does not apply, inasmuch as we are acquainted with the Greek notation. We are acquainted with it indeed, but *how*?—in such a manner that no two understand or read it alike; as we have seen in the examples several times quoted. But still more! Who will tell us how much or how little the Greek himself, in singing from this notation, actually had, as a clearly settled matter of fact, to do with it! Indeed, we are assured, *e. g.* from *Vogler's Choral System*, that neither sharps nor flats are at all employed in the music of Greece proper even at the present day, but that, instead of this, it is tacitly understood that the singer himself will supply these chromatic alterations wherever they are required; and thus, for example, in a piece of music in *D*-major, will uniformly sing *f*♯, though merely *f* is actually written. “I have,” says *Vogler*†, “in Greece proper, and also in the old cities on the Adriatic sea, . . . heard . . . church music . . . which . . . was written in the Greek keys, where the whole choir, without any written guides before them, would, in certain places, supply sharps. . . . The Discant, or the Alto, &c. introduced a sharp, wherever it was required by the cadence, and they did this so harmoniously, that, although at least four persons were assigned to each part, I could never hear an equivocal tone. I caused the score and the fully written parts to be produced before me, but I never found a sharp; and when I expressed to them my surprise at this, they replied that the feeling of the necessity here and there to raise a tone, had become a second nature to them. Hence came the expression *modus chori*, which is still every where retained in Italy.”

Who can assure us that even those ancient Greek hymns might not possibly have been sung, by virtue of a similar *modus chori*, entirely otherwise than we now read them without a *modus*? Must we not regard this as even very probable, rather than be obliged to believe that the highly cultivated Greeks were accustomed to sing such abominable gibberish! on which point we probably do them as great injustice, as we should do the modern Greeks mentioned by *Vogler*, if we were to conclude that they uniformly sang *f*, and not *f*♯, wherever *f* actually stands,—which would, without doubt, sound as insipidly as does that which our learned men dish up to us as specimens of the ancient Greek hymns.

† At p. 45 of the work above cited.

(Fig. 1112.)

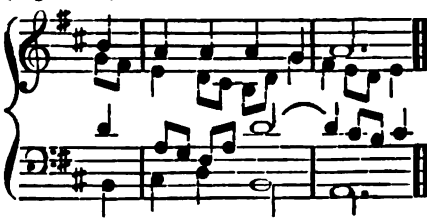
BACH.



and so also the melody in fig. 1109, p. 908, is obviously to be commenced and ended with the  $\mathfrak{A}$ -chord, as in figs. 1113 and 1114:

(Fig. 1113.)

VOGLEB.



(Fig. 1114.)



(though this is not *always* the case, as appears from fig. 1097, p. 892, and fig. 1115:)

(Fig. 1115.)

BACH.



while, moreover, as one sees, an exclusive use, either in beginning and ending a piece, or during its entire course, is by no means made of those harmonies whose tones are contained in the Doric, Phrygian, or Mixolydian so-called scales.

But surely no one has thought of supposing that these melodies were harmonically accompanied *in such a manner* by the Greeks.—What sense, then, is there in applying the term Greek treatment to such an endowing of a so-called Greek melody with modern harmonies? An harmonically treated Greek melody is nothing else than a piece of *modern* music, into whose harmonic texture the tones of a pretended Greek melody are interwoven as one of its threads, but which, as a whole, is as little ancient as would be a modern head-dress, in which there may happen to be a lock of Greek hair, a Greek head-trimming.

Moreover, this mosaic insertion, this interweaving of so wild melodies into a web of modern harmonies, is not always an entirely simple business. For, on the one hand, we have found such melodies to be in themselves not unfrequently more or less repulsive to our natural sense of hearing, and hence they are but poorly adapted to an harmonic series of the modern species; as, *e. g.* fig. 1106, p. 907.

And, therefore, in order to interweave such rough and inflexible threads into an harmonic web, one often finds it necessary to give the harmonic texture at one time this and at another time that unusual turn, and, in general, to employ a thousand different harmonic artifices, in order to make such hard and coarse fare palatable to our ears. But, on the other hand, such an expenditure of musical harmonic shifts is often resorted to, merely with a view to confer upon such a melody a less common character, and, therewith, something that can be called a Greek treatment, though the melody, in itself considered, may *not* involve any thing that is positively strange or disagreeable to our ear, and is only negatively defective—namely, in the want of intrinsic importance. The melody in fig. 1107, p. 907, affords us an example of this species. This melody, if allowed to be in *C*-major and to close with the *C*-harmony, is entirely trite and striking to no one; but an entirely foreign air is forced upon it, by making it, in order, as they term it, to give it a Greek and Phrygian treatment, terminate with the three-fold chord *C*, as in figs. 1110, 1111, and 1112, pp. 913 and 914. In like manner, Vogler, in his Choral System, teaches that, in order to treat the melody in fig. 1093, p. 890, in the Greek or choral manner, one must not accompany it as in fig. 1094, p. 890, but as in fig. 1099, p. 893, in which latter case it is Greek.

---

§ 586.

These same oft-recurring unusual harmonic tones are, moreover, chiefly that which—in conjunction with the solemnly slow movement of choral singing, with the simplicity of the execution, with the incidentally associated religious feeling, with the pious respect for hoary antiquity, and so many other venerable accessory ideas and reminiscences—gives to music of this species a peculiar charm, and an attractive and as it were mystical air of solemnity and sacredness. When, therefore, it is found that a choral, sung from a (so-called or pretended) ancient melody, but with an harmonic accompaniment, produces an entirely peculiar and sometimes even an overpowering effect, which is not usually realized from vocal music of other descriptions, the cause, it is perceived, does not by any means lie in the independent and superior worth of the ancient melody, but, on the contrary, directly in that which is not ancient in the piece of music—namely, in the harmonic furniture and accompaniment, which obtain, in the constraint voluntarily assumed, a particularly favorable opportunity to exhibit their unusual phases, and to expose their more occult features. (Compare § 576, figs. 1094, 1099, 1100, and 1101, pp. 890 and 893.)

---

§ 587.

It is *our* art, therefore, that makes the so-called ancient melodies palatable; it is *our* musical art which pleases in such choral elaborations. For example, such an elaborated choral melody as the one in fig. 1097, p. 892, or in fig. 1110, p. 913, is no longer a Phrygian piece of music; this close is not a Greek or

Phrygian close, but one in *E*-major, procured for this melody by ingenious harmonic turns, though the melody was intrinsically an unfavorable one. (In the doctrine of the modulatory plan of a piece of music as a whole, particularly of the endings of pieces, §§ 303—312, we have exhibited several closes of that description, and explained them according to the principles of *our* musical art.) Thus, all this is the work of *our* art; all this the theory of *our* music teaches us to do; and we by no means have occasion to employ peculiar Greek keys, in order to be able to decorate such melodies by harmony—keys, indeed, which by this very process become in a manner extinct. The theory of *our own* music, rather, affords us the means of harmonically accompanying any melody whatever, as well modern as more or less unusual, whether it be Greek or Chinese, Kampscattian, Hottentot, and what not other cannibal melody; and hence we have as little occasion to believe in the so-called Greek keys as actual keys, as we have to entertain a similar belief in, say, a Chinese key, an Arabian key, &c. and for this reason we have, in *our Theory of Musical Composition*, no peculiar theory of the learnedly obscure Greek keys to propose\*.

The knowledge of these old so-called keys is truly a matter of interest in *musical history*; and it may even appear well in a practical musician to be able to converse upon so high and secret things. Indeed, one who does not attend to this subject may easily be subjected to the misfortune of actually sometimes making a so-called genuine Greek cadence, without knowing how antiquarians name such a close in Greek; or of accidentally treating, with equal ignorance of the fact, an entire piece of music in a manner which an acquaintance with musical antiquities afterwards recognizes as genuinely Greek. (I myself, for example, positively did not, at least for the moment, entertain even a remote idea, while I was writing the melody to *Thomas Körner's* "Morning Song of the Free" ["Morgenlied der Freien"], that, as far as to the plagal echo, "*Amen*," it would be recognized as genuinely Lydian. But let it be called Lydian, or whatever else it may, provided only it be good!)

---

\* One of the distinguishing excellencies of Weber's work is its freedom from those visionary dreams and idle fancies which are so characteristic of musical men, and which abound so much in nearly all other works of musical instruction. It is true, indeed, that in originating those conceptions which form the basis of a good musical composition, and in conferring upon such composition a legitimate mode of performance, imagination and feeling, those attributes which impart to musical men the peculiarly visionary habits of their mind, play an important and very useful part; but it is equally true, that in mere didactic treatises on music, in works of mere intellectual information, these attributes of mind should have as little to do as possible: here the dictates of sober common sense, and of pure, unperverted intellect, should always bear sway. On this point Weber most decidedly excels. The cloudy mystification of former treatises, he, to a great extent, most happily clears up; and, instead of trying to excite the astonished gaze of his readers by holding before them curious, strange, and marvellous things, he strives rather to disabuse them of all erroneous ideas, however gratifying to the fancy, and to give them that mastery of the subject which arises from accuracy and truth. Hence the admirable fitness of Weber's work to purposes of instruction; hence its great popularity with well-informed men, and the powerful agency which it has had in swaying the opinions of the musical world, since its publication —Ta.

The doctrine of the so-called ancient keys, then, properly pertains to the *history of the art*; but it is not to be reckoned as an integral part of the Theory of Musical Composition: and it is pedantry to suppose, as most theorists do, that it ordinarily belongs to *decorum*, in a book of instruction on the science of musical composition—yes, in mere pitiful thorough-base schools!—*eruditionis gratia* [for the sake of showing one's learning] to preach more or less about the keys of the ancient Greeks, about the Greek *genera of sounds*, as they call it,—about *Hypo* and *Mixo*, about *Proslambanomenos* and *Hypoproslambanomenos*, about *Peripate hypaton*, *Hypate hypaton*, &c. &c. &c. even if not (which is, indeed, almost to be denominated positive nonsense) to attempt to establish our theory of musical composition on the so-called Greek keys, as foundations, and to extol the Greek genera of sounds as the basis and fountain of all musical wisdom!! Very nearly the same suggestions that were made in the remark on § X, in relation to harmonic acoustics, apply here also; and we should not, in general, make so great a bustle about things of which, as in the case of the Greek music, we properly know nothing, and should therewith dismiss the affectation of so much superiority and such profound erudition.

THE END.



# GENERAL INDEX.

---

## A.

- A, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 Accent, Accentuation, § x, p. **13**, §§ lxvi, lxvii, p. **82**.  
 Accent-fifths, §§ 513—533, p. **810**. (See Parallel Movement.)  
 Accent-octaves, §§ 551—557, p. **844**. (See Parallel Movement.)  
 Accessory names of intervals, (See Interval.)  
 ——— tones, § iv, remark, p. **8**, § 50, p. **161**.  
 Accidental dissonances, § 101, p. **228**. (See Consonances.)  
 ——— transposition-signs,  $\sharp$ ,  $b$ ,  $\natural$ ,  $\times$ ,  $bb$ , § xxv, p. **39**.  
 Accolade, Brace, § xxiv, p. **39**.  
 Accompaniment, § 8, p. **125**.  
 Acoustics, definition of, § ix, p. **12**. Establishment of the theory of musical composition on acoustic theorems, § iv, remark, p. **8**; § x, remark, p. **14**; § 99, remark, p. **220**.  
 Æolic key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)  
 Æsthetics, § x, and remark on it, p. **13**.  
 Aliquot lengths. (See Accessory tones.)  
 Alla-breve. (See Breve, Brevis.)  
 Altitonans. (See Alto voice.)  
 Alto voice, § 13, p. **127**, § 14, p. **129**.  
 ——— clef, § xxiii, p. **32**. (See Clef.)  
 Ambiguity of tones, &c. (See Equivocalness.)  
 Ancient keys. (See Ancient music.)  
 ——— music, § 579, p. **897**.  
 Anticipated tones, }  
 Anticipation of tones, } § 460, p. **723**.  
 ——— of transition-tones, § 281, p. **503**; § 242, p. **442**; § 324, remark, p. **571**; § 451, p. **714**; § 452, p. **715**; § 459, p. **722**; § 460, p. **723**.  
 Apparent chord, § 98, p. **220**; § 389, p. **658**; § 407, p. **676**; § 408, p. **678**.  
 Appended notes, § 461, p. **725**.  
 Appropriate harmonies of the key, §§ 121—126, p. **257**; §§ 146—160, p. **283**. (See Harmony.)  
 Arpeggio. (See Harpeggio.)  
 Arsis. (See Up-beat.)  
 Ascending movement. (See Movement.)  
 Associated tones, § iv, remark, p. **8**. (See Accessory tones.)  
 Attunement of the ear to a particular key, §§ 190—225, p. **332**.  
 Authentic ending of a piece of music, §§ 303—305, p. **527**. (See Cadences.)  
 ——— key. (See Ancient music.)  
 Avoidance of cadences. }  
 ——— of parallelism by fifths. } (See Evitation.)  
 ——— of parallelism by octaves. }



**B.**

- B, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. 20; § xxix, p. 42.  
 —, as a sign of chromatic depression, § xxvi, p. 40. (See Flat.)  
 — bemol, § xx, p. 26.  
 — cancellatum, § xxvi, p. 40.  
 — durum, bécarre, béquarre, Bisquadro, B-quadratum, B-quadro, B-quarre, B-quarré, § xx, p. 26; § xxvii, p. 41; § xxix, p. 42. (See Transposition-signs.)  
 — molle, B-ritondo, B-rotondo, B-rotundum, § xx, p. 26; § xxvi, p. 40; § xxix, p. 42. (See Transposition-signs.)  
 Barytone, § 13, p. 127.  
 — clef, § xxiii, p. 32. (See Clef.)  
 Base clef, § xxiii, p. 32. (See Clef.)  
 — part, skips of, §§ 484—489, p. 774. (See Skips.)  
 — part, § 4, p. 122; § 13, p. 127; § 14, p. 129.  
 — tone, § 4, p. 122; § 47, p. 160; § 57, p. 171.  
 Basse-taille, § 13, p. 127.  
 Beat, § lii, p. 71.  
 Bécarre. (See B.)  
 Bemol, Bemolle, Bequadro, Béquarre, § xxix, p. 42.  
 B-quadratum, B-quadro, B-quarre, B-quarré. (See B.)  
 B-ritondo, rotondo, rotundum. (See B.)  
 Bianca, § xlviii, p. 62.  
 Bicinium, § 31, p. 147. (See Composition.)  
 Bind, Tie, Ligature, § 111, p. 243; § 421, p. 686.  
 Bisquadro. (See B.)  
 Biscroma, § xlviii, p. 62.  
 Bis unca. (See Unca.)  
 Brace, Accolade, § xxiv, p. 39.  
 Breaking of a part, Harpegiate progression of a part, §§ 21—27, p. 134.  
 — § 48, p. 161. (See Harpegiate progression.)  
 — of parts, §§ 21—27, p. 134.  
 —, transition-tones in. (See Transition-tones.)  
 Breve, Brevis, § xlviii, p. 62. Alla-breve, § xv, p. 21; § lvii, p. 73.

**C.**

- C, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. 20.  
 —, as a sign of  $\frac{1}{2}$  measure, § lxiv, p. 91, § lxxiv, p. 90.  
 Cadence, §§ 252—268, p. 471.  
 —, authentic, §§ 303—308, p. 527.  
 —, avoided, evitated, § 269, p. 493; § 270, p. 494.  
 —, false, § 253, p. 472.  
 —, false secondary, §§ 266—268, p. 490.  
 —, false principal, §§ 256—261, p. 476.  
 —, natural, § 253, p. 472.  
 —, natural principal, § 255, p. 474.  
 —, natural secondary, §§ 263—265, p. 486.  
 —, plagal, § 248, *d*, p. 465.  
 Cæsura, § xcii, p. 105.  
 Cancelling-signs, §§ xxvii—xxix, p. 41.  
 Canonics. (See Acoustics.)

- Canto, § 13, p. **127**. (See Soprano.)  
 Cantus durus, mollis, § xx, p. **26**.  
 ——— firmus, § 559, p. **858**.  
 Catachretic. (See Ellipsis.)  
 Characteristics of keys. (See Keys.)  
 Chopped or detached movement, § 38, p. **152**. (See Movement).  
 Chord, § 1, p. **116**.  
 ———, apparent. (See Apparent chord.)  
 ———, chromatic, § 86, p. **200**, and § xvii, remark, p. **22**. (See Chromatic.)  
 ———, fundamental. (See Fundamental chord.)  
 ———, leading. (See Leading chord.)  
 ———, tonic. (See Tonic chord.)  
 Chromatic, § xvii, and remark, p. **22**; § 86, p. **200**. (Compare Croma.)  
 ——— elevation and depression, § xvii, p. **22**; §§ xxv—xxx, p. **39**.  
 ——— harmony or chord, § 86, p. **200**; § 93, p. **213**. (See Harmony.)  
 ——— intervals, § xxxviii, p. **51**.  
 ——— movement of a part, §§ 40—42, p. **153**.  
 ——— series of tones, § 369, p. **625**,  
 ——— signs, §§ xxv—xxx, p. **39**.  
 ——— signature, §§ 141—145, p. **279**. (See Signature.)  
 Chronometer, § li, p. **66**.  
 Church style. (See Style.)  
 ——— keys, Ancient keys, Greek keys. (See Ancient music.)  
 Circle of fifths, fourths, &c. § 137, p. **271**.  
 Clef, § xxiii, p. **32**; § xxiv, p. **39**.  
 Close harmony, §§ 66—69, p. **163**.  
 Colour, Character, of sound, § 182, p. **317**.  
 Commencement of a piece of music, §§ 290—295, p. **513**.  
 ———, modern, § 205, p. **345**.  
 Commencing transition-tones, § 410, p. **679**; § 411, p. **680**. (See Transition-tones).  
 Composition, exercises in pure, §§ 559—578, p. **858**.  
 ———, four-part, § 29, p. **146**.  
 ———, one-part; in several parts, §§ 3—32, p. **119**.  
 ———, three-part, § 30, p. **146**.  
 ———, two-part, § 31, p. **147**.  
 Compound measure, various species of, §§ lxxi—lxxxiii, p. **88**. (See Measure.)  
 Concordant, § 13, p. **127**.  
 Concurrence of parts, § 5, p. **123**.  
 Conduct of parts, § 2, p. **117**.  
 Connected or continuous movement of a part. (See Movement.)  
 Consonance, Dissonance, §§ 101—103, p. **228**.  
 Contralto, Contraltino, § 13, p. **127**.  
 Contrapuntic exercises, § 559, p. **858**.  
 Contrary movement, §§ 44—46, p. **156**.  
 Contra-octave, }  
 Contra-tones, } § xiv, p. **20**.  
 Converging movement. (See Movement.)  
 Counterpoint, § 569, p. **877**.  
 ———, double, § x, p. **13**; § 578, p. **896**.  
 Croma, § xvii, remark, p. **23**.  
 Creation of the scale, § x, remark, p. **14**. (See Acoustics.)  
 Crossing of parts, § 5, p. **123**.  
 ———, fifths produced by the, § 515, p. **813**; § 516, p. **815**;  
 § 535, p. **826**.

Crossing of parts, octaves produced by the, § 553, p. **847** ; § 557, p. **851**.  
 Cross-relation, §§ 490—496, p. **780**.  
 Cruis, § xx, p. **26**.

## D.

- D**, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 Degree, § xxxiii, p. **45**.  
 Delineation (rhythmical) of a piece of music, §§ lxxix—xciii, p. **103**.  
 Depression (chromatic) of intervals, §§ 89—95, p. **208**.  
 ——— signs, flats, §§ xxvi—xxix, p. **40**.  
 Descending movement. (See Movement.)  
 Designation, marking, our mode of, § 52, p. **166** ; § 58, p. **172** ; § 97, p. **219** ;  
 § 121, p. **257** ; § 149, p. **284** ; §§ 151—153, p. **286** ;  
 § 187, p. **327** ; § 188\*, p. **330** ; § 231, p. **420**.  
 ——— of digressive modulations, § 187, p. **327** ; § 188\*, p. **330**.  
 ——— of fundamental harmonies, §§ 52—149, p. **166**.  
 ——— of fundamental intervals, § 58, p. **172**.  
 ——— of keys, § 121, p. **257** ; § 149, p. **284**.  
 ——— of the leading chord, § 231, p. **420**.  
 ——— of the magnitude of harmonic steps, § 231, p. **420** ; § 232, p. **421**.  
 ——— of the seat of harmonies, §§ 151—153, p. **286**.  
 ——— of transition-tones, § 97, p. **219**.  
 Deusus. (See Soprano.)  
 Detached movement of a part, § 37, p. **151**. (See Movement.)  
 Détaché, § 38, p. **152**.  
 Diatonic, § xxxviii, p. **51** ; §§ 40—42, p. **153** ; § 127, p. **260**.  
 Diesis. (See Chromatic elevation. Sharps.)  
 Digression, Digressive modulation, §§ 185—189, p. **325**.  
 Digressive harmonic successions, Digressive harmonic steps, § 229, p. **419** ;  
 § 272—288, p. **497**. (See Harmonic steps, and Harmonic successions.)  
 Diminished intervals, § xxxvii, p. **50** ; § xxxix, p. **54**. (See Intervals.)  
 ——— three-fold chord. (See Three-fold chord.)  
 ——— seventh chord. (See Seventh chord.)  
 Discant. (See Soprano.)  
 Dispersed harmony, §§ 66—69, p. **183**. (See Harmony.)  
 Dissonance. (See Consonance.)  
 Distances of tones, § xxxii, p. **45**. (See Intervals.)  
 Distinguishing signs of the key, § 312, p. **543**.  
 Diverging movement. (See Movement.)  
 Divided harmony, §§ 66—69, p. **183**. (See Harmony.)  
 Doctrine of the relations and connections of vocal music, § x, p. **13**.  
 ——— of sound, § ix, p. **12**. (See Acoustics.)  
 Dominant, § 50, p. **50** ; § 123, p. **258**.  
 Doric key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)  
 Dot, § xlix, p. **64**.  
 Double flats, Double sharps, § xxvi, p. **40**. (See Transposition-signs.)  
 Doubling, § 70, p. **186**.  
 Doubly superfluous, Doubly diminished, intervals, § xxxix, p. **54**. (See Intervals.)  
 ——— diminished three-fold chords, § 51, remark, p. **165** ; § 95, remark,  
 p. **215**. (See Three-fold chord.)  
 Down-beat, § lxxxviii, p. **102**.  
 Duration of notes, § xlviii, p. **62** ; § xlix, p. **64**. (See Notes.)  
 ——— of rests, pauses, § i, p. **66**. (See Rests.)  
 Dynamics, § 2, p. **117**.

**E.**

- E, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 Ear-fifths, §§ 520—538, p. **820**.  
 Elevation (chromatic) of intervals, §§ 89—95, p. **208**.  
 ——— signs, sharps, §§ xxvi—xxix, p. **40**.  
 Ellipsis, elliptical or catachretical progression, resolution, &c. § 99, remark, p. **220**; § 107, remark, p. **240**; § 242, remark, p. **443**; § 248, remark, p. **468**; § 259, p. **480**; § 320, remark, p. **556**; § 324, remark, p. **571**; § 392, p. **662**; § 451, p. **714**; § 452, p. **715**, &c.  
 Ending of a piece of music, §§ 303—310, p. **527**.  
 ———, authentic, §§ 303—305, p. **527**.  
 ———, plagal, §§ 306—308, p. **531**.  
 ———, other, §§ 309, 310, p. **539**. (Compare Cadence.)  
 Enharmonic, § xix, p. **25**; § xxxvii, p. **50**; § xxxviii, p. **51**.  
 ——— difference, § xix, p. **25**.  
 ——— equivocalness of fundamental harmonies, § 100, p. **225**.  
 ——— intervals, § xix, p. **25**.  
 ——— movement, §§ 40—42, p. **153**.  
 ——— parallel tones, § xix, p. **25**.  
 ——— parallel keys, § 137, p. **271**.  
 ——— tone-series, or scales, § 369, p. **625**.  
 Equivocalness of tones, § xxi, p. **27**.  
 ——— of distance from the base tone, § 63<sup>ma</sup>, p. **176**; § 63<sup>ter</sup>, p. **177**; and § 99, remark, p. **220**.  
 ——— of fundamental harmonies by transformations, § 100, p. **225**.  
 ———, simply harmonic, enharmonic, § 100, p. **225**.  
 ——— of intervals, § xli, p. **54**.  
 ——— of modulation, §§ 218—224, p. **367**.  
 ——— of the seat of harmonies, §§ 155—160, p. **289**.  
 ——— of transition-tones and suspensions, §§ 388—408, p. **658**, § 441, p. **701**.  
 Even measure, §§ lxx—lxxvii, p. **81**. (See Measure.)  
 ——— or direct movement of parts, §§ 44—46, p. **156**. (See Movement.)  
 Evitation of a cadence. (See Cadence.)  
 ——— of parallelism by fifths, §§ 540—543, p. **835**.  
 ——— of parallelism by octaves, § 558, p. **857**. (See Parallel movement.)  
 Exchange of resolution. (See § 320, remark, p. **556**.)

**F.**

- F, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 False cadence. (See Cadence.)  
 Fifths, circle of, § 137, p. **271**.  
 ———, organ-register of, § iv, remark, p. **8**; § 554, p. **848**.  
 ———, parallelism of, §§ 505—544, p. **798**.  
 ——— by contrary movement, § p. 519, **819**; § 537, p. **829**.  
 ——— by the crossing of parts, § 515, p. **813**; § 516, p. **815**; § 535, p. **828**.  
 Fifth-sixth chord, § 65, p. **181**.  
 Figure, § lxxxix, p. **103**.  
 ——— melodic, § 2, p. **117**.  
 Figures, as designation of intervals, § xl, p. **54**; of the steps of parts, § 41, p. **154**; of sevenths, § 52, p. **166**; § 149, p. **284**; of fundamental harmonies and their seat, §§ 151—153, p. **286**; of digressive modulation, § 188\*, p. **330**; of the magnitude of harmonic steps, §§ 231, p. **420**; § 232, p. **421**.

- Figures of thorough base, § 563, p. **800**.  
 Firm song. (See Cantus firmus.)  
 Flageolet sounds. (See Participating tones.)  
 Flats, §§ xxvi—xxix, p. **40**. (See Chromatic signs.)  
 Fluctuation, Fluctuating temperament, § 182, p. **318**.  
 Foot tone, § xv, p. **21**.  
 Foreign tones to the harmony, §§ 76—99, p. **191**; § 343, p. **602**. (See Harmonically foreign tones.)  
 Fore-note, §§ 96—98, p. **218**; § 343, p. **602**.  
 Four-fold chords, enumeration of, § 50, p. **161**.  
 Fourths, circle of, § 137, p. **271**.  
 Fourth-sixth chord, § 65, p. **181**.  
 ——— position, § 207, p. **347**.  
 Fourth-third chord, § 65, p. **181**.  
 Four-part composition. (See Composition.)  
 Fundamental chord, or harmony, §§ 49—53, p. **161**.  
 ——— intervals, § 57, p. **171**.  
 ——— position, § 56, p. **170**.  
 ——— progression, § 226, p. **417**.  
 ——— tone, § 50, p. **161**; § 57, p. **171**.  
 Fusa, § xlviii, p. **62**.

## G.

- G, as the name of a tone, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 Gliding movement, § 38, p. **152**. (See Movement.)  
 Gradations of tones, § xii, p. **18**; § xiii, p. **19**.  
 Gradual movement, §§ 40—42, p. **158**. (See Movement.)  
 Grammar of musical composition, definition of, § x, p. **13**.  
 Greek or church keys, §§ 579—587, p. **897**. (See Ancient music.)

## H.

- Habits of the ear, §§ 204—217, p. **345**.  
 Half-base. (See Barytone.)  
 Half-tones, Semitones, § xxxvi, p. **47**.  
 ——— movement, § 45, p. **156**. (See Oblique movement.)  
 ——— re-attunement of the ear, §§ 210—213, p. **356**.  
 ——— soprano. (See Soprano.)  
 ——— tenor. (See Barytone.)  
 Harmonically foreign tones, §§ 76—99, p. **191**; § 343, p. **602**.  
 Harmonic combination, Pluritone, § 1, p. **116**; § 47, p. **160**.  
 ——— successions, in the same scale, § 229, p. **419**; §§ 243—271, p. **455**.  
 ——— successions, digressive, §§ 272—288, p. **497**.  
 ——— steps, enumeration of possible, §§ 226—228, p. **417**.  
 ——— steps, mode of designating, § 231, p. **420**.  
 ——— steps, dimensions of, §§ 230—232, p. **419**.  
 ——— skip, § 496, remark, p. **785**; § 539, remark, p. **881**.  
 ——— series, §§ 233—240, p. **422**.  
 ——— sounds. (See Participating tones.)  
 Harmonies, appropriate, essential to a key, §§ 122—126, p. **257**; §§ 146—160, p. **283**.  
 ———, seat of, §§ 146—160, p. **283**.  
 Harmony and melody, § 1, p. **116**; § 2, p. **117**; § 8, p. **125**.  
 ———, chromatic, § 86, p. **200**.

- Harmony, close, dispersed, divided, §§ 66—69, p. **133**.  
 Harpegiate progression, §§ 21—27, p. **134**; § 48, p. **161**.  
 ——— progression of parts, §§ 21—27, p. **134**.  
 ——— transition-tones. (See Transition-tones.)  
 ——— skips. (See Skips, Breaking.)  
 Harpeggio, Arpeggio, § 22, p. **137**.  
 Heavy transition-tones, §§ 352—354, p. **611**. (See Transition-tones.)  
 ——— portions of the measure. (See Accent.)  
 Hyper-, Hypo-. (See Ancient music.)

**I.**

- Iastic key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)  
 Independent ninth. (See Ninth.)  
 Inertia, fundamental principle of, §§ 192—196, p. **333**.  
 Inserted or Interpolated tones, §§ 446—448, p. **704**.  
 ——— fifths, § 517, p. **816**; § 518, p. **818**; § 536, p. **828**.  
 ——— octaves, § 554, p. **848**; § 557, p. **851**. (See Parallel movement by fifths and by octaves.)  
 Instrumental music, § vii, p. **11**.  
 ——— musical composition, § x, p. **13**.  
 ——— parts, §§ 11, 12, p. **127**.  
 Instrumentation, § x, p. **13**.  
 Intermediate notes, § 413, p. **681**.  
 Interruptions of rhythmical uniformity, § c, p. **114**.  
 In the scale, out of the scale, § 128, p. **261**.  
 Intervals, as distances of tones, §§ xxxii—xlvi, p. **45**.  
 ———, as elements of a chord, § 47, p. **160**.  
 ———, consonant, dissonant, § 102, p. **229**. (See Consonance.)  
 ———, dimensions of, accessory names of, §§ xxxv—xxxix, p. **46**.  
 ———, doubly diminished, doubly superfluous, § xxxix, p. **54**.  
 ———, enumeration of, numerical names of, § xxxiii, p. **45**; § xxxiv, p. **46**.  
 ———, equivocallness of, § xli, p. **54**. (See Equivocalness.)  
 ———, exhibiting a particular tendency, § 313, p. **545**.  
 ———, general view of, § xlvi, p. **58**.  
 ———, inversion of, §§ xlii—xlv, p. **55**.  
 ———, major, minor, diatonic, §§ xxxv—xxxviii, p. **46**; § 127, p. **260**; § 128, p. **261**; diminished, superfluous, chromatic, enharmonic, § xix, p. **25**; § xxxvii, p. **50**; § xxxviii, p. **51**.  
 ——— prolonged, retarded, § 458, p. **721**.  
 ——— reckoned upward from the base tone, as the basis of previous theories of musical composition, § 99, remark, p. **220**. (Compare Equivocalness.)  
 ———, substituted, § 347, p. **608**.  
 Inversion, rhythmical, § xciv, p. **107**; § xcv, p. **109**.  
 ——— of intervals, §§ xlii—xlv, p. **55**.  
 ——— of harmonies, §§ 55—65, p. **169**.  
 ——— ———, first, § 60, p. **173**.  
 ——— ———, second, § 61, p. **174**.  
 ——— ———, third, § 62, p. **174**.  
 ——— ———, fourth, § 87, p. **200**; § 87<sup>66</sup>, p. **201**; § 91, p. **209**.  
 Ionic key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)

**K.**

- Keys, § 119, p. **253**.  
 ———, ancient. (See Ancient music.)

- Keys, characteristics of, §§ 181—183, p. **317**.  
 —, our mode of designating, § 121, p. **257**.  
 —, relationship of, §§ 161—180, p. **307**.  
 —, signs of in any piece of music, § 312, p. **543**.

**L.**

- Large. (See Major.)  
 Leading chord, § 187, p. **327**.  
 — tone, § 187, p. **327**; § 380, p. **641**.  
 — transition-tone. (See Transition-tone.)  
 Letters, as names of tones, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 —, as designations of fundamental harmonies, § 52, p. **166**; § 149, p. **284**.  
 —, as designations of intervals or individual elements of fundamental harmonies, § 58, p. **172**.  
 —, as designations of keys, § 121, p. **257**; § 149, p. **284**.  
 License. (See Ellipsis.)  
 Ligature, Bind, Tie, &c. § 111, p. **243**; § 421, p. **686**. (See Bind.)  
 Light parts of measures, § lxvi, p. **82**.  
 Like movement, § 43, p. **155**. (See Movement.)  
 Longa, or Long, § xlviii, p. **62**.  
 Lydian key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)

**M.**

- Maelzel's Metronome, § li, p. **66**. (See Chronometer.)  
 Maggiore. (See Major.)  
 Magnitude of harmonic steps, §§ 230—232, p. **419**. (See Harmonic Steps.)  
 — of intervals, § xxxvi, p. **47**.  
 Major, § 120, p. **256**. (Compare Cautus.)  
 — and Minor intervals, § xxxvi, p. **47**.  
 — second transitions. (See Transition-tones.)  
 — diminished, § 95, remark, p. **214**.  
 Massima. (See Maxima.)  
 Mathematical basing of the theory of musical composition. (See Acoustics.)  
 Maxima, or Large, § xlviii, p. **62**.  
 Measure, § xlvii, p. **61**.  
 —, compound, §§ lxxi—lxxxiii, p. **88**.  
 —, divisions of, §§ lii—lv, p. **71**.  
 —, unusual varieties of, §§ lxxxiv—lxxxvii, p. **98**.  
 —, varieties of even, §§ lv—lvii, p. **72**.  
 —, ——— uneven, § lviii, p. **74**.  
 Measure-measurer, § li, p. **66**. (See Chronometer.)  
 Mediant, § 50, p. **161**.  
 Melodies, § 2, p. **117**.  
 Melody, Song, Air, § 2, p. **117**; § 8, p. **125**.  
 —, firm, § 559, p. **858**. (See Cantus firmus.)  
 Men's voices. (See Vocal parts.)  
 Metronome, Maelzel's, § li, p. **66**. (See Chronometer.)  
 Metrum, § xlvii, p. **61**.  
 Mezzo-soprano, } § 13, p. **127**.  
 — tenore, }  
 Middle parts, § 4, p. **122**.  
 Minima, § xlviii, p. **62**.  
 Minore. (See Minor.)

- Minor**, § 120, p. **256**. (Compare Cantus.)  
 — second transitions, § 366, p. **622**. See major and minor intervals ; § xxxvi, p. **47**. (See Intervals, Transition-tones.)  
**Mixed register**, § iv, remark, p. **8** ; § 554, p. **848**.  
**Mixolydian, Mixophrygian key**, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)  
**Mode, Modus**. (See Key.)  
**Modulation**, §§ 184—225, p. **325**. (See Harmonic progression.)  
 —, equivocalness of, §§ 218—224, p. **367**.  
 — in the course of a piece of music, §§ 296—302, p. **522**.  
 — in the scale, out of the scale, § 185, p. **325**.  
 —, usual, § 209, p. **355**.  
**Modulatory structure of a piece of music as a whole**. (See Piece of music.)  
**Mordent**, § 414, p. **682**.  
**Most essential harmonies of a key**, §§ 123—125, p. **258**.  
**Motet, Motetus**, § 13, p. **127**.  
**Movement of a part, slow, quick**, § 34, p. **149**.  
 —, ascending, descending, § 39, p. **153**.  
 —, continuous, interrupted, § 37, p. **151**.  
 —, legato, staccato, § 38, p. **152**.  
 —, like and unlike, § 43, p. **155**.  
 —, rhythmically inverted, § 35, p. **151**.  
 — of melodic steps, § 41, p. **154**.  
 —, parallel, direct, oblique, gliding, contrary, converging, diverging, §§ 44—46, p. **156**.  
 —, skipping, gradual, diatonic, chromatic, enharmonic, §§ 40—42, p. **153** ; §§ 467—496, p. **755**.  
 —, syncopated, § 36, p. **151**. (See Syncopation.)  
**Mozart's Violin Quartett in C**, remarkable passage in, § 466<sup>ba</sup>, p. **783**.  
**Musical composition**, definition of, §§ vi—x, p. **10**.  
**Musical art**, definition of, §§ vi—viii, p. **10**.  
 —, inventive, executive, § viii, p. **12**.  
**Musical instruction**, general, §§ i—c, p. **1**.

## N.

- Names of tones**, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.  
 — of cadences, natural. (See Cadence.)  
**Ninths, independent**, §§ 77—88, p. **192**.  
 — progression of independent, § 325, p. **574** ; § 326, p. **575**.  
**Normal scale**, major, minor, §§ 129—131, p. **261**.  
**Notation of tones, pitches of sound**, § xxii, p. **29**.  
**Note-key**. (See Clef.)  
**Note-lines, staff**, §§ xxii—xxiv, p. **29**. (See Notes.)  
**Notes**, definition of, § xxii, p. **29**.  
 —, appended. (See Appended notes.)  
 —, duration of, § xlvi, p. **62** ; § xlix, p. **64**.  
**Numbering or reckoning of parts**, §§ 15—27, p. **129**.  
**Numerical names of intervals**. (See Intervals.)

## O.

- Oblique movement**, §§ 44—46, p. **156**.  
**Octave-parallels**, §§ 547—558, p. **839**.  
**Octaves by the crossing of parts**, §§ 553—557, p. **847**. (See Parallel movement.)  
**Octaves by contrary movement**, §§ 555—557, p. **850**.



Omission, §§ 71—75, p. **189**.

One-part composition, § 3, p. **119**; § 32, p. **148**. (See Composition.)

Organ-point, §§ 462—465, p. **726**.

Organ-register of fifths, Mixed organ-register. (See Mixed register.)

—— tongue-pipes. (See Tongue-pipe.)

Oscillation. (See Vibration.)

## P.

Parallel movement, § 43, p. **155**; §§ 497—558, p. **799**.

—— by primes, § 498, p. **799**.

—— by seconds, § 499, p. **799**; § 500, p. **799**.

—— by thirds, § 501, p. **799**; § 502, p. **794**.

—— by fourths, § 503, p. **795**; § 504, p. **797**.

—— by fifths, §§ 505—544, p. **798**.

—— by sixths, § 545, p. **838**.

—— by sevenths, § 546, p. **838**.

Participating tones, § iv, remark, p. **8**.

Parts of measures, §§ lix—lxii, p. **75**.

——, § 1, p. **116**. (See Vocal parts.)

——, breaking or harpegiate progression of, §§ 21—26, p. **184**. (See Breaking and Harpegiate.)

——, enumeration of, §§ 15—27, p. **129**.

——, steps of. (See Step.)

Passage, § lxxxix, p. **103**.

Pendulum for the designation of time, § li, remark, p. **66**. (See Chronometer.)

Permutations, § 63<sup>master</sup>, p. **179**; § 87<sup>ter</sup>, p. **201**; § 95<sup>ter</sup>, p. **218**.

Philosophical, rational, musical doctrine. (See Acoustics.)

Phrase, § lxxxix, p. **103**.

Phrygian key, § 582, p. **908**. (See Ancient music.)

Piece of music, modulatory structure of, §§ 289—312, p. **289**. (See Commencement and Ending.)

Pitch of sounds, tones, § ii, remark, p. **3**.

Plagal cadence, § 248, *d*, p. **465**.

—— ending of a piece, §§ 306—308, p. **531**.

—— key. (See Ancient music.)

Pluritone, Harmonic combination, § 1, p. **116**; § 47, p. **160**.

Portions of measures, Times of measures, strong and weak, heavy and light, long and short. (See Accent.)

Position, changes of, § 55, p. **169**.

Preparation, §§ 104—118, p. **236**.

—— of harmonically foreign tones, § 118, p. **252**.

—— of sevenths, §§ 109—117, p. **242**.

—— of suspensions, §§ 418—429, p. **685**.

Prepared transition-tones, § 415, p. **683**; § 416, p. **684**.

Principal cadence, § 119, p. **253**.

—— chord. (See Cadence.)

—— four-fold chord, § 50, p. **161**.

—— parts, §§ 8—10, p. **125**.

—— seventh, § 50, p. **161**.

—— seventh, progression of, §§ 316—320, p. **549**.

—— seventh chord, § 50, p. **161**.

—— tone, principal note, § 119, p. **253**; § 343, p. **602**.

Progression of intervals, §§ 313—341, p. **545**.

—— of transition-tones, § 342, p. **601**; §§ 442—445, p. **702**.

—— of parts, § 2, p. **117**.

Prolonged intervals, § 458, p. **721**; § 459, p. **722**.

**Q.**

Quartett of bow-instruments, § 29, p. **146**.

Quintole, § xlix, p. **64**; § lxxxvi, p. **101**.

Quadricinium, § 29, p. **146**.

**R.**

Re-attunement, partial, §§ 210—213, p. **356**.

Recitative, § c, p. **114**.

Recurrence of passages already heard, § 214—217, p. **363**.

Recurring accessory or secondary tones, § 414, p. **682**.

Relationship of keys, §§ 161—180, p. **307**. (See Key.)

Remarkable passage in a Quartett by Mozart, § 466<sup>ba</sup>, p. **733**.

Resolution, §§ 315—342, p. **548**. (See Progression.)

——— of transition-tones, §§ 442—455, p. **702**.

——— retarded, § 314, p. **546**; § 449, p. **708**.

——— into this or that interval of the base tone, § 314, p. **546**; § 320, remark, p. **556**, and § 454, p. **717**.

Resolution-tone, Tone of resolution, § 313, p. **545**.

Restoration-signs, §§ xxvii—xxix, p. **41**.

Restricted progression, § 319, p. **554**.

Rests, Pauses, duration of, § l, p. **66**.

Retardation, § 242, remark, p. **443**, and § 421, p. **686**.

Retarded intervals, § 458, p. **721**.

——— resolution, § 314, p. **546**.

Returning secondary tones, § 414, p. **682**.

Rhythm, Rhythmus, §§ xlvii—c, p. **61**

———, higher, §§ lxviii—lxx, p. **85**.

**S.**

Scale, §§ 127—145, p. **260**.

——, major, § 129, p. **261**, § 130, p. **262**.

——, minor, § 131, p. **262**, § 379, p. **640**.

——, philosophical creation of. (See Creation of the scale, and Ancient music.)

——, transposed major, §§ 132—140, p. **267**.

——, transposed minor, § 138, p. **272**.

Seat of harmonies, §§ 146—160, p. **283**. (See Harmonies.)

Score, § 33, p. **149**.

Secondary cadences. (See Cadence.)

——— four-fold chords, § 50, p. **161**, § 126, p. **260**.

——— harmonies belonging to a key, § 126, p. **260**.

——— parts, § 8, p. **125**.

——— seventh harmonies. (See Secondary four-fold chords.)

——— sevenths, progression of, § 327, p. **580**, § 328, p. **582**.

——— three-fold chords, § 50, p. **161**, § 126, p. **260**.

——— tones, recurring, § 414, p. **682**.

Second chord, § 65, p. **181**.

Semibiscroma, Semibrevis, Semichroma, Semifusa, Semiminima, § xlviii, p. **62**.

Semitone, § xvii, p. **22**, § xxxvi, p. **47**.

Septimole, Septole, § lxxxvi, p. **101**.

Sequences, §§ 233—240, p. **422**.

Series, harmonic, §§ 233—240, p. **422**. (See Sequences.)

Sestina, Sestola. (See Sextole.)

Settimola. (See Septimole.)

Sevenths, preparation of, §§ 109—117, p. **242**.

———, stationary, § 320, remark, p. **556**; § 324, remark, p. **571**; § 392, p. **662**.

Seventh chord, Seventh harmony. (See Four-fold chord.)

———, diminished, § 83, p. **198**, § 95, remark, p. **215**.

Seventh-ninth chord, § 77, p. **192**.

Several parts, composition in, § 3, p. **119**, § 15, p. **129**. (See Composition.)

Sextole, § xlix, p. **64**, § lxi, p. **77**, § lxii½, p. **80**.

Sfogato, § 13, p. **127**.

Sharps, §§ xxvi—xxix, p. **40**.

Side-beat, § lxxxviii, p. **102**.

Signature, rhythmical, § liv, p. **72**.

———, chromatic, §§ 141—145, p. **279**. (See Chromatic signature.)

Signatures of thorough-base, § 563, p. **866**.

Signs, chromatic, §§ xxv—xxx, p. **39**. (See Chromatic signs.)

Sixth chord, § 65, p. **181**.

———, superfluous, § 91, p. **209**, § 95, remark, p. **215**.

Sixth-fifth, Fifth-sixth chord, § 65, p. **181**.

Sixth-fourth, Fourth-sixth chord, § 65, p. **181**.

Sixth-progression of a harmony, § 249, p. **466**.

Skipping movement, §§ 40—42, p. **153**; §§ 467—496, p. **755**. (See Movement.)

Skips of the base part, §§ 484—489, p. **774**.

Slow movement, § 34, p. **149**. (See Movement.)

Soprano clef, § xxiii, p. **82**.

——— voice, § 13, p. **127**, § 14, p. **129**.

Sound, §§ i—v, p. **1**.

——— considered in connection with rhythm, §§ lxxxix—xcix, p. **108**.

Species of measure. (See Measure.)

Staccato movement, § 37, p. **151**, § 38, p. **152**. (See Movement.)

Staff, Note-lines, § xxii, p. **29**. (See Notes.)

Stationary seventh. (See Sevenths.)

Step of a melody or part, § 2, p. **117**.

Strong portions of measures. (See Accent.)

Structure, modulatory, of a piece of music as a whole. (See Piece of music.)

Style, § 95, remark, p. **215**; § 107, remark, p. **240**; § 242, remark, p. **443**; § 483, remark, p. **771**.

Subsemifusa, § xlviii, p. **62**.

Subsemitone, Subsemitonium, § 128, p. **261**.

Substituted intervals, § 347, p. **608**.

Successions, harmonic. (See Harmonic successions.)

Superfluous intervals, § xxxvii, p. **50**, § xxxviii, p. **51**

——— sixth chord, § 91, p. **209**.

——— three-fold chord. (See Three-fold chord.)

Suspensions, §§ 417—441, p. **685**.

———, preparation of, §§ 418—429, p. **685**.

———, resolution of, § 449, p. **708**.

Syncopation, Syncope, § xcvi—xcix, p. **110**, § 36, p. **151**.

System of tones. (See Tone-system.)

## T.

Tablature, § xxii, r. **29**.

Taille, § 13, p. **127**.

- **Tasto solo**, § 567, p. **875**, § 574, p. **888**.
- Temperament**, § 182 (A.), p. **318**.
- Tempo**, time, movement, § li, p. **66**.
- , designation of, § li, p. **66**.
- Tendency of an interval**, of a tone, § 313, p. **545**.
- Tenor clef**, § xxiii, p. **32**.
- voice, § 13, p. **127**; § 14, p. **129**.
- Terzina**. (See *Triole*.)
- Theory of musical composition**, definition of, § viii, p. **12**.
- , limitedness and partiality of previous treatment, § 99, remark, p. **220**.
- , strict, free, § 95, remark, p. **215**.
- Third**, progression of, §§ 321—324, p. **561**; §§ 329—332, p. **584**.
- Third-fifth chord**, § 65, p. **181**.
- Third-fourth chord**, § 65, p. **181**.
- Thirds**, register of. (See *Mixed register*.)
- Thorough base notation**, § xxxi, p. **44**; §§ 563—574, p. **866**.
- playing in musical execution, § 574 *bis*, p. **884**.
- Three-fold chords**, enumeration of, § 50, p. **161**.
- , doubly diminished, major diminished, minor diminished, § 51 remark, p. **165**; § 95, remark, p. **215**.
- , superfluous, § 387, p. **656**.
- Three-part composition**. (See *Composition*.)
- Tied movement of a part**. (See *Movement*.)
- Time-measurer**, § li, p. **66**. (See *Chronometer*.)
- Tone of resolution**, § 313, p. **545**.
- Tone-system**, **System of tones**, description of, §§ xii—xlvi, p. **18**.
- Tongue-pipes**, § ii, remark, p. **3**.
- Tonic**, **Tonic chord**, § 119, p. **253**.
- Tones**, §§ i—iv, p. **1**.
- , aliquot, § iv, remark, p. **8**. (See *Participating tones*.)
- , anticipated. (See *Anticipated tones*.)
- , whole, half, § xvii, p. **22**; § xxxvi, p. **47**.
- , harmonically foreign, §§ 76—79, p. **191**. (See *Transition-tones*.)
- , inserted or interpolated, § 413, p. **681**; §§ 446—448, p. **704**.
- , names of, §§ xiv—xx, p. **20**.
- , natural, § xvii, p. **22**.
- , series of, § 1, p. **116**.
- , chromatic, enharmonic, § 369, p. **625**.
- of transition. (See *Transition-tones*.)
- Transferring dominant chord**, § 201, p. **342**.
- Transformation of fundamental harmonies**, §§ 54—99, p. **168**.
- Transition into a new key**, § 186, p. **326**.
- note, § 352, p. **611**.
- Transition-tones**, §§ 96—98, p. **218**; § 203, p. **344**; § 345, p. **607**; § 456, p. **718**.
- , as leading tones, § 380, p. **641**.
- , commencing, § 410, p. **679**; § 411, p. **680**.
- , equivocalness of, §§ 388—408, p. **658**. (See *Equivocalness*.)
- from above, from below, § 365, p. **622**.
- , heavy, light, §§ 352—354, p. **611**.
- in harpegiate progressions, § 359, p. **615**.
- in several parts at once, § 355, p. **612**.
- , in the scale, foreign to the scale, §§ 367—381, p. **623**.
- , major second, minor second, § 366, p. **622**.

- Transition-tones occurring by gradual and by skipping movement, § 412, p. **680**.  
 ——— on harmonic degrees, §§ 382—387, p. **649**.  
 ———, prepared, § 415, p. **683**, § 416, p. **684**. (See Preparation.)  
 ———, progression of, § 342, p. **601**.  
 ———, resolution of, §§ 442—445, p. **702**. (See Resolution.)  
 ———, short, long, §§ 350—351, p. **610**.  
 ——— simultaneous with harmonic tones, §§ 362—363, p. **620**.  
 ——— sounding simultaneously with the principal tone, § 360, p. **617**, § 361, p. **618**.  
 Transposition of harmonies, § 55, p. **169**.  
 Transpositions, § 234, p. **424**. (See Transition-tones.)  
 Transposition-signs, §§ xxv—xxx, p. **39**. (See Chromatic signs.)  
 Triads. (See Triole.)  
 Tricinium, § 30, p. **146**.  
 Trill, Triller, § 414, p. **682**.  
 Triole, Triplet, § xlix, p. **64**, § lx, p. **75**.  
 Tuning, Temperament. (See Temperament.)  
 Two-part composition. (See Composition.)

## U.

- Unca, Bis unca, Ter unca, § xlviii, p. **62**.  
 Under part, § 4, p. **122**. (See Base part.)  
 Unison, § xxxii, p. **45**, § 567, p. **875**.  
 Unity of key, § 289, p. **512**.  
 Unlike fifths. (See Parallel movement.)  
 ——— movement of parts. (See Movement.)  
 Unusual harmonic positions, § 208, p. **351**.  
 Up-beat, § lxxxviii, p. **102**.  
 Upper part, § 4, p. **122**.

## V.

- Varieties of measure. (See Measure.)  
 Vibration of a body, §§ i—iv, p. **1**.  
 Violin clef, § xxiii, p. **32**.  
 Vocal parts, §§ 11—14, p. **127**; and § ii, remark, p. **3**.  
 ——— music, § vii, p. **11**.

## W.

- Wind instruments, § ii, remark, p. **3**; § 182, p. **317**; § 183, p. **324**. (Compare Tongue-pipes and Temperament.)  
 Whole-tone, § xxxvi, p. **47**.  
 Women's voices. (See Vocal parts.)

## X. Y. Z.

- X, Y, Z, as marks of ambiguity, § 52, p. **166**; § 121, p. **257**; § 153, p. **288**.

# LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

---

HER ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUCHESS OF KENT.

THE RIGHT HON. THE EARL OF FALMOUTH.

LORD ROBERT MONTAGUE, Cromorne, Coleraine, Ireland.

## A.

Abraham, Mr. John, Taunton.

Adams, Mr. Julian, London.

Adams, Mr. W. H. Professor of Music, Shrewsbury.

Adlington, Mr. Wm. Professor of Music, Derby.

Allen, Mr. Mark, Professor of Music, Lichfield.

Amott, Mr. Organist, Gloucester.

Angel, Mr. Alfred, Organist of the Cathedral, Exeter.

Ann, Mr. Isaac, Music seller, Swindon.

Arnold, Mr. Gustave, Professor of Music, Lancaster.

Armstrong, Mr. Wm. Northampton.

Aspa, Mr. Rosario, Organist of St. Peter's, Portland Terrace, Leamington.

Aspinwall, Mr. John, Organist of St. Thomas's, Charter House, London.

Atkins, Mr. R. A. Organist of the Cathedral, St. Asaph.

Aylward, Mr. Wm. Price, Organist of St. Martin's, Salisbury.

## B.

Baily and Jones, Messrs. Booksellers, Cirencester.

Baker, Mr. George, Professor of Music, Poole.

Barker, Mr. George, Brompton Square, London.

Ball, Mr. Professor of Music, Leamington.

Barlow, Mr. Benjamin, Professor of Music, Leek.

Barlow, Mr. Lawrence, 11, Wilton Street, Millbank.

Barlow, Mr. B. Organist, Leek.

Barnby, Mr. William, Organist of St. Michael's Church, York.

Barratt, Mr. F. R. Professor of Music, Stamford.

Barratt, Mr. J. P. Organist, Stonyhurst College.

Barrett, Mr. John, Organist, St. David's.

Barry, Mr. Wm. Watergate Street, Bandon, County Cork.

Barwick, Mr. Brice W. Music seller, Keighley.

Beale, Mr. Music seller, London Street, Reading.

Besley, Miss H. Professor of Music, Rock House, Yatton, near Bristol.

Bexfield, Dr. 12, Monmouth Road, Bayswater.

Birkinshaw, Mr. Music seller, Barnsley.

Bishop, Mr. John, Cheltenham.

Blackburn, Mr. John, Organist of St. Paul's and Deputy of the Old Church, Leeds.  
 Bloxsome, Mr. C. Professor of Music, Doncaster.  
 Boardman, Mr. J. G. Organist and Master of the Choir of the Clapham Grammar School.  
 Boss, Mr. Thomas, Organist, Sheffield.  
 Boulcott, Mr. J. R. Professor of Music, Stratford-on-Avon.  
 Bray, Mr. Music Warehouse, Dublin.  
 Bridgman, Mr. Professor of Music, St. Heliers, Jersey.  
 Browne, Mr. D. C. Organist of Christ Church, Everton, Liverpool.  
 Browne, Mr. R. Jun. Organist, Lowestoft.  
 Brown, Mr. S. T. 5, Sydenham Grove, Lower Norwood.  
 Brown, Mr. Thomas, Lay-Vicar of Carlisle Cathedral.  
 Buck, Mr. Organist of the Cathedral, Norwich.  
 Buck, Mr. A. Coggeshall, Essex.  
 Buffett, Miss, Professor of Music, Muddiford, near Christ Church, Hants.  
 Bunnett, Mr. Edward, Norwich.  
 Burgess, Miss, Professor of Music, Leamington.  
 Burland, Mr. Jun. Professor of Music, Bristol.  
 Burnett, Mr. H. Professor of Music, Manchester.  
 Burrington, Mr. Professor of Music, Dawlish.  
 Burton, Mr. John, Dewsbury.  
 Burton, Mr. Robert, Senior, Professor of Music, Leeds  
 Bussell, Mr. Henry, Professor of Music, Dublin.  
 Butterworth, Mr. Edwin, Sheffield.

## C.

Caldwell, W. B. Esq. Montpellier Villas, Cheltenham.  
 Callen, Mr. G. D. Band-master, 12th Regiment.  
 Campbell, Mr. John, Musicseller, 53, New Bond Street.  
 Caparn, Mr. W. H. Junr. Organist, Newark.  
 Card, Mr. William, St. James's Street, London.  
 Carvill, H. Esq. Epsom.  
 Caustin, Mr. W. S. Woodbridge.  
 Chadwick, Miss H. M. Organist of St. Peter's, Blackburn.  
 Chater, Mr. W. Professor of Music, Coventry.  
 Chatterton, Mr. Frederic, Harpist to Her Majesty the Queen of the French, and Her Royal Highness the Duchess of Gloucester, 8, Duchess Street, London.  
 Chippendale, — Esq. 188 B, Sloane Street, London.  
 Clarke, Mr. E. Portland Street, London.  
 Cockram, Mr. Musicseller to Her Majesty, Bristol.  
 Coffey, Mr. Music Seller, Belfast.  
 Collett, W. G. Esq. Navarino Cottage, Worthing.

Collins, Mr. Wm. Band-master, Royal Artillery, Woolwich.  
 Colson, Mr. T. Professor of the Harp, 26, Store Street, Bedford Square.  
 Colquhoun, Mr. Wm. Customs, Newcastle-on-Tyne.  
 Conduit, Mr. Musicseller, Winchester.  
 Conran, Mr. M. Organist, St. Patrick's Church, Manchester.  
 Conran, Mr. W. S. 110, Lower Baggot Street, Dublin.  
 Cooke, Mr. T. E. Professor of Music, Warwick.  
 Cramer, Mr. J. B. Organist, Loughborough.  
 Crane, Mr. Percy H. Organist, St. Nicholas, Whitehaven.  
 Critchfield, Mr. S. Professor of Music, Norwich.  
 Crook, Mr. Pembroke Place, Clifton, Bristol.  
 Cross, Mr. Samuel, Professor of Music, Plymouth.  
 Critchfield, Mr. St. Andrew's, Norwich.  
 Cullum, Mr. Organist, Tonbridge.

## D.

Dale, Miss C. 143, Albany Road, Camberwell.  
 Dace, Mr. Robert, Professor of Music, Abingdon.  
 Davies, Mr. Professor of Music, Douglas, Isle of Man.  
 Deacon, Miss, Organist of St. Mary's, Leicester.  
 Dicker, Miss, Organist, Limehouse.  
 Dickinson, Miss, Grey Friar's Green, Coventry.  
 Dixon, Mr. W. Organist, Grantham.  
 Douglass, Miss, 15, Green Street, Grosvenor Square, London.  
 Duchemin, Mr. Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Dyas, Miss, Organist of St. Alkmund's Church, Shrewsbury.

## E.

Eager, Mr. Professor of Music, Edinburgh.  
 Earl, Mr. J. P. Professor of Music, Clapham.  
 Edwards, Mr. Thomas, Organist, Ilfracombe.  
 Elborne, Mr. E. P. 1, Panton Place, Cambridge.  
 Elford, Mr. Edmund, Organist, Hastings.  
 Elliott, Mr. Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Esain, Mr. Professor of Music, Clifton, Bristol.  
 Evans, Mr. E. T. Professor of Music, Gloucester.  
 Evans, Mr. Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Evans, Mr. Thomas, Organist, Usk, Monmouthshire.  
 Evans, Mr. W. E. Professor of Music, Bath Buildings, Cheltenham.  
 Ezekiel, Mr. P. Professor of Music, 47, Goodge Street, Fitzroy Square,  
 London.

## F.

Fagg, Mr. F. Organist of the Parish Church of St. John's, Margate.



Fagg, Mr. John, Professor of Music, Hull.  
 Fawcett, Mr. John, Jun. Professor of Music, Bolton.  
 Fawcett, Mr. Thomas, Professor of Music, Warrington.  
 Fischer, M. Henri, 46, Cambridge Terrace, Edgware Road.  
 Fitzgerald, E. Esq. West Street, Woodbridge.  
 Fitzgerald, Mr. George, Organist, Trinity Church, Woolwich.  
 Flavell, Mr. Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Fletcher, Mr. Organist of the Abbey Church, Shrewsbury.  
 Flick, Miss, Organist, Saxmundham.  
 Flynne, Mr. J. E. Professor of Music, Carrick-on-Shannon.  
 Forbes, Mr. George, 9, Bentinck Terrace, St. John's Wood.  
 Ford, Mr. Henry Edward, Organist of the Cathedral, Carlisle.  
 Frances, Mr. F. L. Professor of Music, Organist of Woodchurch,  
 Cranbrook, Kent.  
 Franklin, Mr. Organist of St. James's, Exeter.  
 Freemantle, Mr. George, Professor of Music, Durham.  
 Frobisher, Mr. Joseph Henry, Organist, Parish Church, Halifax.  
 Frodsham, Mr. J. Professor of Music, Whalley.  
 Fudge, Mr. Edwin, Artist, Fareham.

## G.

Gibsone, Mr. B. G. H. 27, Welbeck Street.  
 Gillens, Mr. Professor of Music, Preston.  
 Gilliland, Mr. L. J. London.  
 Glover, Mr. Stephen, Chesham, Bucks.  
 Gover, Mr. Professor of Music, St. John's Wood, London.  
 Gover, Mr. U. E. Organist and Professor of Music, Derby.  
 Graham, Mr. Thomas, Organist of the Parish Church, Wigan, Lancashire.  
 Greaves, Mr. T. J. Organist of Spitalfields Wesleyan Chapel, and Professor of Music, 11, Portland Street, Soho, London.  
 Greaves, Mr. T. J. Organist of the Centenary Chapel, Boston.  
 Greaves, Mr. Professor of Music, Preston.  
 Griffiths, Mr. F. J. Organist, Surbiton, Surrey.  
 Griffiths, Mr. William, Professor of Music, 8, Pulbore Place, Vauxhall.  
 Grosvenor, Mr. S. Organist, Dudley.  
 Groves, Mr. H. J. Professor of Music, Newport, Monmouthshire.  
 Guernsey, Mr. Wellington, Percy Street, London.  
 Gunton, Mr. Edward, Professor of Music, Birkenhead.  
 Guy, Mr. Joseph, Professor of Music, Titchfield.

## H.

Haddocks, Mr. George, Professor of Music, Leeds.  
 Hamlin, Mr. Thomas P. Organist, Launceston.

Harcourt, Mr. J. Organist, Norwich.  
 Hardman, Mr. Thomas, Professor of Music, Bolton.  
 Hargreaves, Mr. G. A. 14, Cambridge Street, Liverpool.  
 Harris, Sir Wm. Snow, Plymouth.  
 Harris, Mr. J. Thome, Professor of Music, Manchester.  
 Harris, Mr. William, Organist of New Street Chapel, York.  
 Harris, Mr. J. Thorne, Professor of Music, Manchester.  
 Harrison, Mr. Music Warehouse, Birmingham (6 copies).  
 Harrison, Mr. Musicseller, Clifton, Bristol.  
 Harrington, Mr. P. Organist, Bury St. Edmund's, Suffolk.  
 Harrington, Mr. W. R. Organist, Wellingboro'.  
 Harrod, Mr. Thomas, Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Hart, Mr. Joseph, 23, Montpelier Square, Brompton.  
 Harvey, Mr. R. F. Mountjoy Square South, Dublin.  
 Hatherly, Mr. Professor of Music, Solihull, Warwickshire.  
 Havergal, the Rev. H. E. Cople Vicarage, Bedfordshire.  
 Hempel, Mr. C. F. Organist, Truro.  
 Hemmings, Mr. W. Penzance.  
 Hendy, Mr. Henry, Master of the National Schools, Strathfield-Saye,  
     near Hartford Bridge, Hants.  
 Hewitt, Mr. Bookseller and Librarian, Leamington.  
 Hiles, Mr. J. Professor of Music, Shrewsbury.  
 Hill, Mr. Joseph, Organist, Stockton.  
 Hillier, Mr. J. G. Professor of Music, Lamborne, Berks.  
 Hime, Mr. Benjamin, Liverpool.  
 Hinrick, Mr. H. 17, Clement's Inn.  
 Hodges, Mr. F. Clare Street, Bristol.  
 Holdstruck, Miss, 1, Burlington Place, Bath.  
 Hopkins, Mr. W. H. Professor of Music, 34, Broad Street, Worcester.  
 Horsley, Mr. William, 18, High Ousegate, York.  
 Howard, Mr. W. Edinburgh.  
 Hoyland, Mr. W. Organist of the Parish Church, Louth.  
 Hughes, Mr. W. R. 1, Notting Hill Terrace.  
 Hughes, Mr. John, Professor of Music, Wrexham.  
 Hunt, Mr. W. J. Professor of Music, Hinton Blewett, Temple Cloud,  
     near Bristol.

## I.

Isaac, Mr. Benjamin Ralph, Professor of Music, Liverpool.

## J.

James, Mr. Professor of Music, Helston.  
 Janes, Mr. Robert, Organist of the Cathedral, Ely.  
 Jarrett, Mr. W. E. Professor of Music, Cheltenham.

Jeffery, Mr. Walter, Cheltenham.  
 Jenkins, Mr. J. D. Professor of Music, Bath.  
 Jopson, Mr. H. F. Professor of Music, Blackburn.  
 Joule, B. J. B. Esq. Oakfield, Upper Chorlton Road, Manchester.

## K.

Keene, Mr. Francis, 39, Duncan Terrace, Islington.  
 Kemp, Mr. G. Organist, Fairford.  
 Kent, Mr. Thomas, Band-master, 47th Regiment.  
 Kinder, Mr. J. Professor of Music, Glossop, Derbyshire.  
 Kingston, Mr. J. Professor of Music, 10, Sidbury, Worcester.  
 King, Mr. Thomas, Newport, Isle of Wight.

## L.

Lang, Mr. Alfred, Leader of the Choir of St. Chad's, Free Hay, Staffordshire.  
 Law, Mr. Robert, Organist, St. Peter's, Montrose.  
 Leaton, Mr. Chester.  
 Lees, Mr. John, Organist, Oldham.  
 Lever, Mr. Benjamin, Spalding.  
 Lidel, Mr. J. 22, Carlton Terrace, Greenhays, Manchester.  
 Limpus, Mr. H. F. Organist of All Saints, Wandsworth.  
 Lindridge, Mr. Professor of Music, Hastings.  
 Linter, Mr. Ricardo, Professor of Music, Weymouth.  
 Löhr, Mr. George Augustus, Organist, Leicester.  
 Long, Kellett, Esq. Dunstan Hall, Norfolk.  
 Lynch, Mr. J. P. Professor of Music, 7, Mount Pleasant Square, Dublin.

## M.

Macaskie, Mr. T. Meadow Hill, Berwick-on-Tweed.  
 Mackenzie, Mr. Alexander, Professor of Music, Edinburgh.  
 Magill, Mr. John, Organist of St. David's, Liverpool.  
 Magill, Miss Elizabeth, Liverpool.  
 Marr, Mr. John, Pianoforte Maker, Aberdeen.  
 Martin, Mr. Geo. Wm. of Her Majesty's Chapel Royal, Resident Professor of Music of the Training College, and Organist of Christ Church, Battersea.  
 Martin, Mr. J. U. Professor of Music, East Dereham.  
 May, Miss, Professor of Music, Jersey.  
 Mc. Cullagh and Mc. Cullagh, Messrs. Music Warehouse, Dublin.  
 Mellor, Mr. Richard, Huddersfield and Leeds.  
 Minelrin, Mr. H. 88, Lower Dorset Street, Dublin.  
 Mogg, Mr. William, Teacher of the Cornet-à-Pistons, 14, Great Russell Street, Covent Garden.  
 Moir, Mr. J. Music-seller, Inverness.

Molineux, Mr. John, Professor of Music, Liverpool.  
Moncorvo, Baron da Torre, 57, Upper Seymour Street, Portman Sq.  
Morine, Mr. C. H. Professor of Music, Inverness.  
Moses, Mr. Marcus, Music Warehouse, Dublin.

## N.

Nicklin, Mr. Frederic, Musicseller, Barnstaple.  
Nightingale, Mrs. D. Surbiton Hill, Surrey.  
Nix, Mr. Professor of Music, Brentwood.

## O.

Oakey, Mr. Henry, 81, Dean Street, Soho Square.  
Oldham, John Lane, Esq. Audley End, Essex.  
Ould, Mr. Professor of Music, 7, Macclesfield Street, Dean Street, Soho.

## P.

Packer, Mr. F. Professor, Reading.  
Palmer, Mr. W. H. Professor of Music, London.  
Pearce, Mr. George, Professor of Music, Guernsey.  
Pearce, Mr. C. Organist, Stamford.  
Pecket, Mr. A. J. Professor of Music, Scarborough.  
Perry, Frederick, Esq. Avondale House, Cheltenham.  
Perry, Mr. G. Jun. Professor of Music, 103, High Street, Marylebone.  
Phipps, Mr. O. G. Professor of Music, Ramsgate.  
Pigott, Mr. S. J. Music Warehouse, Dublin.  
Potts, Mr. Mark, Organist, Newcastle-on-Tyne.  
Prangley, Mr. Wm. Professor of Music, Salisbury.  
Pratten, Mr. Professor, Clifton, Bristol.  
Preece, Mr. John, 49, Hindon Street, Pimlico.

## R.

Ramson, Miss Fanny, Professor, Exeter.  
Ray, Mr. Thomas Saul, Organist of St. John's Town Church, Jersey.  
Rea, Mr. William, Pianist, 92, Great Portland Street, London.  
Reeve, Mr. David, Professor of Music, Douglas, Isle of Man.  
Regondi, Signor Giulio, Albany Street, Regent's Park.  
Reynolds, Mr. Alfred, Leader of the Theatres Royal, Worcester, Shrewsbury, and Coventry.  
Ribbon, Mr. Band-master, Pembroke.  
Rice, Mr. G. Professor, Exeter.  
Richards, Mr. Brinley, 6, Somerset Street, Portman Square.  
Richardson, Mr. John, Assistant Organist of the Cathedral, Salisbury.  
Riley, Mr. Reuben, Professor of Music, 37, Chaddock Street, Preston.  
Roberts, Miss, 3, Cardington Street, Hampstead Road.

Roberts, Mr. James B. Queen Street, Chester.  
 Robinson, Mr. J. H. Professor of Music, Blackburn.  
 Rogers, Mr. W. 27, Russell Street, Liverpool.  
 Rolfe, Mr. Professor of Music, Mildenhall.  
 Rose, Mr. Robert, Music seller, Bedford.  
 Ross, Mr. Henry, Professor of Music, 3, Coles Terrace, Barnsbury Road, Islington.  
 Rumsey, Mr. Organist, Somerton.

## S.

Sala, Mr. F. W. Professor of Music, 3, Brunswick Terrace, Southampton.  
 Scarisbrick, Mr. Richard, Vicar Choral, Chester Cathedral  
 Seale, Mr. W. Sheffield.  
 Seed, Mr. Richard, Professor of Music, Manchester.  
 Seifart, Mr. Theodore, Harrogate.  
 Senior, Joseph, Esq. Dalton, near Huddersfield.  
 Sharman, Mr. W. H. Organist, Birmingham.  
 Shearman, Mr. Samuel Thomas, Professor of Music, Euston Square.  
 Shelmerdine, Mr. Professor of Music, Nottingham.  
 Simms, Mr. Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 Simpson, Mr. John, Organist, Parish Church, Bradford.  
 Sloper, Mr. Lindsay, 7, Southwick Place, Hyde Park Square.  
 Smith, Henry Stone, Esq. 3, Smith Square, Westminster.  
 Smith, Mr. Wm. Wivenhoe.  
 Smith, Mr. George Townsend, Organist of the Cathedral, Hereford.  
 Smith, Mr. Samuel, Willow Cottage, Egham Hill, near Windsor.  
 Smith, Mr. P. Music seller, Bristol (6 copies).  
 Smith, Messrs. Music sellers, Exeter.  
 Smith, Mr. James, Music seller, 66, Lord Street, Liverpool.  
 Somerford, Mr. Thos. Organist, Christ Church, Greenwich.  
 Sothorn, Mr. G. Organist, Swaffham, Norfolk.  
 Sparke, Mr. Wm. Organist of the Parish Church of St. George, Leeds.  
 Spray, Mr. Frederick, Professor of Music, 11, Tything, Worcester.  
 Staton, Mr. Samuel, Professor of Music, Bolton.  
 Staton, Mr. William, Norwich.  
 Stanley, Charles, Esq. 72, Piccadilly, London.  
 Stanyon, Mr. John, Morlidge Street, Leicester.  
 Street, Mr. William, F. 16, Finchley Road, St. John's Wood.  
 Stephenson, Mr. William, Professor of Music, Stockton-on-Tees.  
 Sykes, Mr. Albert, Swindon.

## T.

Targett, Mr. F. Professor, Southampton.  
 Tattersall, Mr. Samuel, 56, Stock Street, Cheetham, Manchester.

Taylor, Mr. H. Professor of Music, Rose Cottage, London Road, Worcester.  
 Thirtle, Mr. Professor of Music, Boston,  
 Thompson, Mr. James, Professor of Music, Glasgow.  
 Thomson, Mr. Wm. Queen's College, Glasgow.  
 Thorley, Mr. Robert, Professor of the Violoncello, Manchester.  
 Thorne, Mr. H. Organist, Colchester.  
 Thurnam, Mr. E. Professor of Music, Reigate, Surrey.  
 Tillyard, Mr. H. T. Professor of Music, Harrow.  
 Tincombe, Mr. Henry D. Professor of Music and Organist of St.  
 Andrew's Church, Plymouth.  
 Toms, Mr. Charles James, Professor of Music, Liverpool.  
 Tonge, Miss, Professor of Music, Boston.  
 Trust, Mr. H. J. 4, Adelaide Terrace, Bayswater.  
 Turner, Mr. H. Pitt Street, Norwich.  
 Turner, Mr. Professor of Music, Bilston.

## V.

Venua, Mr. F. M. A. (late of the Italian Opera, London) Reading.  
 Vernon, Arthur H. Esq. Royal Horse Artillery, Woolwich.  
 Vernon, Rev. Evelyn H. Grove Rectory, East Retford.

## W.

Waddington, Mr. John, Professor of Music, Manchester.  
 Walker, Mr. George, Worksop, Notts.  
 Ward, Arthur R. Esq. St. John's College, Cambridge.  
 Warren, Mr. Joseph, West Brompton.  
 Watson, Mr. Joseph, Professor of Music, Malton.  
 Watts, Mr. J. Organist, Ormskirk.  
 Weekes, Mr. Thomas Earle, Professor of Music, Plymouth.  
 West, Mr. George Frederick, Professor of Music, London.  
 Wheatley, Miss, Pianiste, 23, South Terrace, Thurloe Square, London.  
 Wheeler, Mr. Professor, Gloucester.  
 Whinfield, Mr. W. H. Bristol.  
 Whitaker, Mr. W. Henry, Rochdale.  
 White, Mr. John Jesse, Professor of Music, Birmingham.  
 White, Thomas, Esq. Solicitor, Berwick-on-Tweed.  
 White, Mr. Thomas Woolsey, Professor of Music, Morpeth.  
 Whitehead, Mr. Organist, Gloucester.  
 Whitehead, Miss, Gloucester.  
 Wilkinson, Mr. Ralph, Professor of Music, York.  
 Willey, Mr. Charles Frederick, Professor of Music, Louth.  
 Williams, Mr. Professor of Music and Organist, Moreton-in-the-Marsh.  
 Williams, Mr. B. Music-seller, Paternoster Row (2 copies)

Williams, Mr. Westcroft Place, Hammersmith.  
Williamson, Mr. James, Professor of Music, Leeds.  
Winter, Mr. J. Professor of Music, Canonbury Lodge, Canonbury Sq.  
Wood, Mr. Benjamin, Bromley, Kent.  
Wood, Mr. John Muir, Glasgow.  
Wood, Mr. Samuel, Clitheroe.  
Woodward, Mr. George, Professor of Music, Cheltenham (2 copies).  
Woodward, Mr. Professor of Music, Wednesbury.  
Woodward, Mr. T. Musicseller, Cheltenham.  
Woolman, Mr. Organist, Preston.  
Worgan, Mr. G. Professor of Music, Coley Hill, Reading.  
Wilson, Mr. St. Martin's Court.  
Wilson, Mr. Walter, Organist, Scarborough.  
Wrenshall, Mr. Wm. Jun. Professor of Music, 1, Falkner Sq. Liverpool.  
Wroe, Mr. Musicseller, Manchester (6 copies).

## Y.

Yardley, Mr. Professor of Music, Bishop Stortford.  
Yeomans, Mr. Alfred, Professor of Music, Stourbridge.









## DATE DUE

[illegible]

**Printed  
in USA**





**3 2044 076 183 888**

## DATE DUE

[illegible]

Printed  
in USA



## DATE DUE

[illegible]

